Office de la Propriété Intellectuelle du Canada
Un organisme d'Industrie Canada

Canadian Intellectual Property Office
An agency of Industry Canada

CA 2784036 A1 2011/06/30

(21) 2 784 036

(12) DEMANDE DE BREVET CANADIEN
CANADIAN PATENT APPLICATION

(13) A1

(86) Date de dépôt PCT/PCT Filing Date: 2010/12/27
(87) Date publication PCT/PCT Publication Date: 2011/06/30
(85) Entrée phase nationale/National Entry: 2012/06/11
(86) N° demande PCT/PCT Application No.: US 2010/062168
(87) N° publication PCT/PCT Publication No.: 2011/079327
(30) Priorités/Priorities: 2009/12/24 (US61/290,030);
2010/03/24 (US61/316,998)

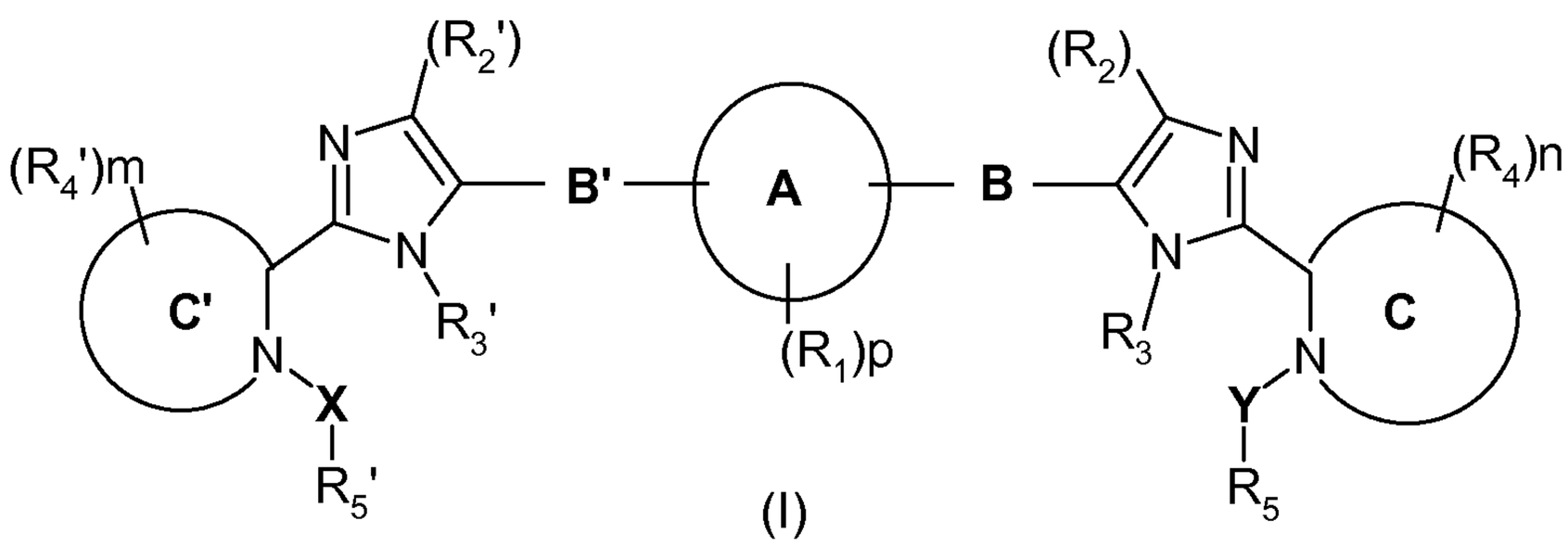
(51) Cl.Int./Int.Cl. *C07D 401/04* (2006.01),
A61K 31/4178 (2006.01), *A61P 31/14* (2006.01)

(71) Demandeur/Applicant:
VERTEX PHARMACEUTICALS INCORPORATED, US

(72) Inventeurs/Inventors:
LIU, BINGCAN, CA;
POISSON, CARL, CA;
KONG, LAVAL CHAN CHUN, CA;
DAS, SANJOY KUMAR, CA;
YANNOPOULOS, CONSTANTIN, CA;
CADILHAC, CAROLINE, CA;
...

(74) Agent: GOWLING LAFLEUR HENDERSON LLP

(54) Titre : ANALOGUES DESTINES AU TRAITEMENT OU A LA PREVENTION D'INFECTIONS A FLAVIVIRUS
(54) Title: ANALOGUES FOR THE TREATMENT OR PREVENTION OF FLAVIVIRUS INFECTIONS



(I)

(57) Abrégé/Abstract:
Compounds represented by Formula I: (I) or pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof, wherein A, B, B', X, Y, R1, R_2, R_2', R_3, R_3', R_4, R_4', R_5, R_5'm, n, or p are as defined herein, are useful for treating flaviviridae viral infections.

CA 2784036 A1 2011/06/30

(21) 2 784 036

(13) A1

(72) Inventeurs(suite)/Inventors(continued): REDDY, T. JAGADEERSWAR, CA; VAILLANCOURT, LOUIS, CA; FALARDEAU, GUY, CA; PEREIRA, OSWY W., CA; BUBENIK, MONICA, CA; MAXWELL, JOHN, US

(12) INTERNATIONAL APPLICATION PUBLISHED UNDER THE PATENT COOPERATION TREATY (PCT)

(19) World Intellectual Property Organization
International Bureau

(43) International Publication Date
30 June 2011 (30.06.2011)

PCT

(10) International Publication Number
WO 2011/079327 A1

(51) International Patent Classification:
A61K 31/4155 (2006.01) *C07D 403/14* (2006.01)
A61P 31/14 (2006.01)

(21) International Application Number:
PCT/US2010/062168

(22) International Filing Date:
27 December 2010 (27.12.2010)

(25) Filing Language: English

(26) Publication Language: English

(30) Priority Data:
61/290,030 24 December 2009 (24.12.2009) US
61/316,998 24 March 2010 (24.03.2010) US

(71) Applicant *(for all designated States except US)*: **VERTEX PHARMACEUTICALS INCORPORATED** [US/US]; 130 Waverly Street, Cambridge, Massachusetts 02139 (US).

(72) Inventors; and

(75) Inventors/Applicants *(for US only)*: **LIU, Bingcan** [CA/CA]; 204 St. Aubin Street, Montreal, Québec H4M 2H9 (CA). **POISSON, Carl** [CA/CA]; 1170 de Louvain Est Street, Montreal, Quebec H2M 1B5 (CA). **KONG, Laval Chan Chun** [CA/CA]; 27 Levere Street, Kirkland, Québec H9J 3X8 (CA). **DAS, Sanjoy Kumar** [CA/CA]; 4451 King Street, Pierrefonds, Québec H9H 2G2 (CA). **YANNOPOULOS, Constantin** [CA/CA]; 55 Poncelet Street, Notre-Dame de I'lle Perrot, Québec J7V 8X3 (CA). **CADILHAC, Caroline** [CA/CA]; 4376 Oxford, Montreal, Québec H4A 2Y6 (CA). **REDDY, T. Jagadeerswar** [CA/CA]; 12546 Bedford, Pierrefonds, Québec H9A 3K5 (CA). **VAIILLANCOURT, Louis** [CA/CA]; 2775 rue des Futaies, Mascouche, Québec J7K 4B8 (CA). **FALARDEAU, Guy** [CA/CA]; 5635 Cleroux Boulevard, Laval, Québec H7X 4A5 (CA). **PEREIRA, Oswy W.** [CA/CA]; 12 Daudelin Street, Kirkland, Québec H9J 1L8 (CA). **BUBENIK, Monica** [CA/CA]; 2775 Rue des Futaies, Mascouche, Québec J7K 4B8 (CA). **MAXWELL, John** [US/US]; 69 Gilford Road, Hingham, Massachusetts 02043 (US).

(74) Agents: **DAVIS, Steven, G.** et al.; McCarter & English, LLP, 265 Franklin Street, Boston, MA 02110 (US).

(81) Designated States *(unless otherwise indicated, for every kind of national protection available)*: AE, AG, AL, AM, AO, AT, AU, AZ, BA, BB, BG, BH, BR, BW, BY, BZ, CA, CH, CL, CN, CO, CR, CU, CZ, DE, DK, DM, DO, DZ, EC, EE, EG, ES, FI, GB, GD, GE, GH, GM, GT, HN, HR, HU, ID, IL, IN, IS, JP, KE, KG, KM, KN, KP, KR, KZ, LA, LC, LK, LR, LS, LT, LU, LY, MA, MD, ME, MG, MK, MN, MW, MX, MY, MZ, NA, NG, NI, NO, NZ, OM, PE, PG, PH, PL, PT, RO, RS, RU, SC, SD, SE, SG, SK, SL, SM, ST, SV, SY, TH, TJ, TM, TN, TR, TT, TZ, UA, UG, US, UZ, VC, VN, ZA, ZM, ZW.

(84) Designated States *(unless otherwise indicated, for every kind of regional protection available)*: ARIPO (BW, GH, GM, KE, LR, LS, MW, MZ, NA, SD, SL, SZ, TZ, UG, ZM, ZW), Eurasian (AM, AZ, BY, KG, KZ, MD, RU, TJ, TM), European (AL, AT, BE, BG, CH, CY, CZ, DE, DK, EE, ES, FI, FR, GB, GR, HR, HU, IE, IS, IT, LT, LU, LV, MC, MK, MT, NL, NO, PL, PT, RO, RS, SE, SI, SK, SM, TR), OAPI (BF, BJ, CF, CG, CI, CM, GA, GN, GQ, GW, ML, MR, NE, SN, TD, TG).

Declarations under Rule 4.17:

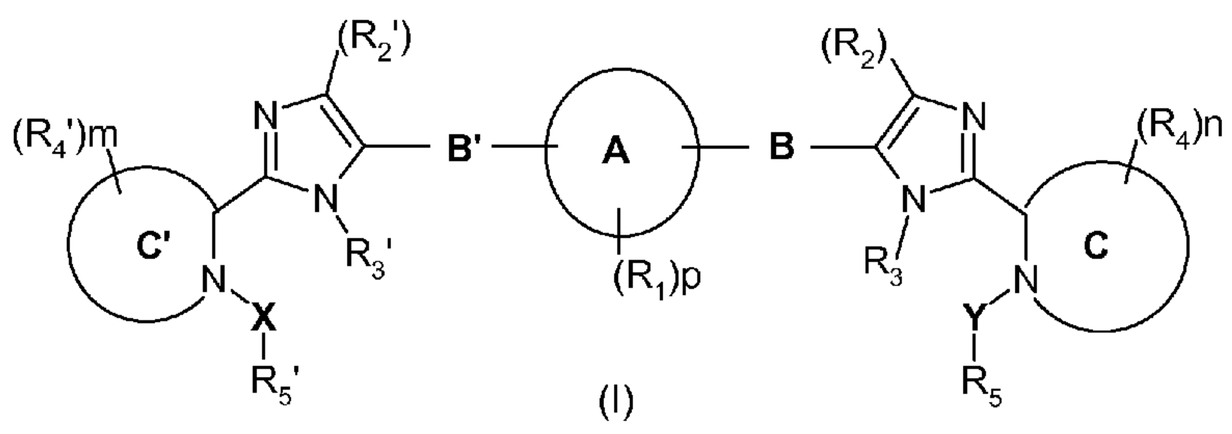
— *as to applicant's entitlement to apply for and be granted a patent (Rule 4.17(ii))*

Published:

— *with international search report (Art. 21(3))*

— *before the expiration of the time limit for amending the claims and to be republished in the event of receipt of amendments (Rule 48.2(h))*

(54) Title: ANALOGUES FOR THE TREATMENT OR PREVENTION OF FLAVIVIRUS INFECTIONS



(57) Abstract: Compounds represented by Formula I: (I) or pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof, wherein A, B, B', X, Y, R1, R_2, R_2', R_3, R_3', R_4, R_4', R_5, R_5'm, n, or p are as defined herein, are useful for treating flaviviridae viral infections.

WO 2011/079327 A1

ANALOGUES FOR THE TREATMENT OR PREVENTION OF FLAVIVIRUS INFECTIONS

The present application claims the benefit under 35 U.S.C. § 119(e) of United States Provisional Application No. 61/290,030, filed December 24, 2009, and United States Provisional Application No. 61/316,998, filed March 24, 2010, both of which are hereby incorporated by reference in their entirety.

The present invention relates to novel compounds and a method for the treatment or prevention of *Flavivirus* infections using novel compounds.

Hepatitis is a disease occurring throughout the world. It is generally of viral nature, although there are other causes known. Viral hepatitis is by far the most common form of hepatitis. Nearly 750,000 Americans are affected by hepatitis each year, and out of those, more than 150,000 are infected with the hepatitis C virus ("HCV").

HCV is a positive-stranded RNA virus belonging to the *Flaviviridae* family and has close relationship to the pestiviruses that include hog cholera virus and bovine viral diarrhea virus (BVDV). HCV is believed to replicate through the production of a complementary negative-strand RNA template. Due to the lack of efficient culture replication system for the virus, HCV particles were isolated from pooled human plasma and shown, by electron microscopy, to have a diameter of about 50-60 nm. The HCV genome is a single-stranded, positive-sense RNA of about 9,600 bp coding for a polyprotein of 3009-3030 amino-acids, which is cleaved co- and post-translationally into mature viral proteins (core, E1, E2, p7, NS2, NS3, NS4A, NS4B, NS5A, NS5B). It is believed that the structural glycoproteins, E1 and E2, are embedded into a viral lipid envelope and form stable heterodimers. It is also believed that the structural core protein interacts with the viral RNA genome to form the nucleocapsid. The nonstructural proteins designated NS2 to NS5 include proteins with enzymatic functions involved in virus replication and protein processing including a polymerase, protease and helicase.

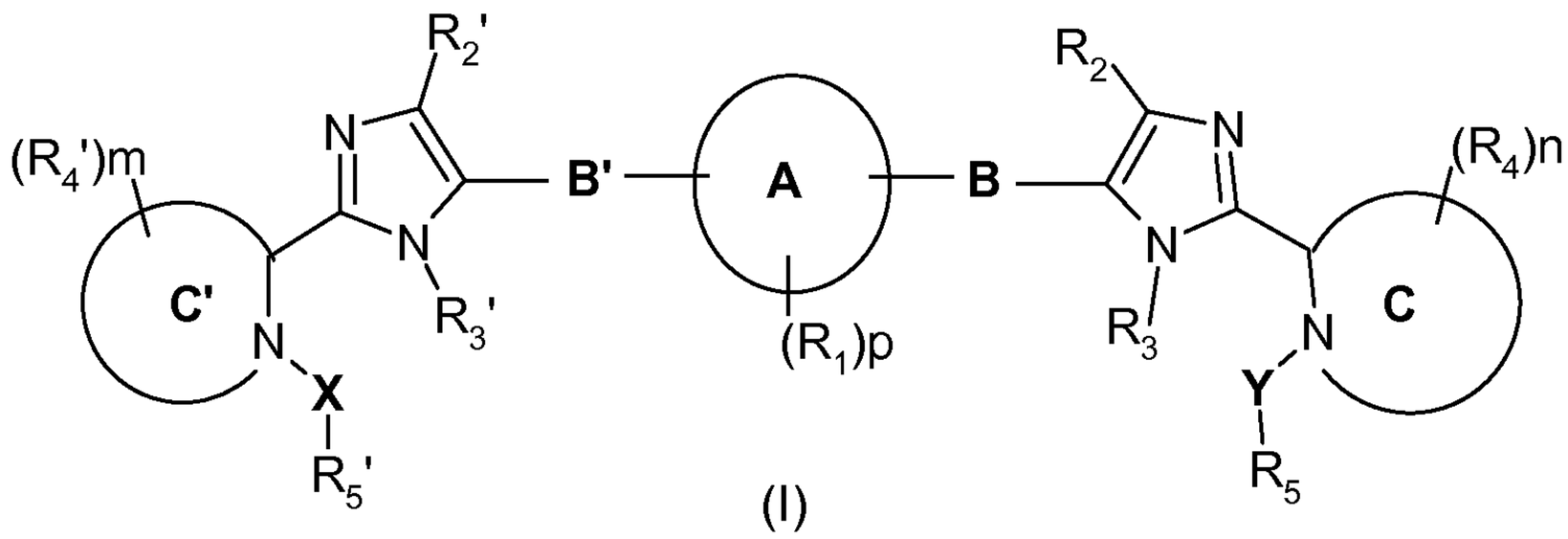
The main source of contamination with HCV is blood. The magnitude of the HCV infection as a health problem is illustrated by the prevalence among high-risk groups. For example, 60% to 90% of hemophiliacs and more than 80% of intravenous drug abusers in western countries are chronically infected with HCV. For intravenous drug abusers, the prevalence varies from about 28% to 70% depending on the population studied. The

proportion of new HCV infections associated with post-transfusion has been markedly reduced lately due to advances in diagnostic tools used to screen blood donors.

Combination of pegylated interferon plus ribavirin is the treatment of choice for chronic HCV infection. This treatment does not provide sustained viral response (SVR) in a majority of patients infected with the most prevalent genotype (1a and 1b). Furthermore, significant side effects prevent compliance to the current regimen and may require dose reduction or discontinuation in some patients.

There is therefore a great need for the development of anti-viral agents for use in treating or preventing *Flavivirus* infections.

In one aspect, the present invention provides a compound of formula (I):



(I)

wherein

A is C_{6-14} aryl, 4-12 membered heterocycle, C_{3-10} cycloalkyl, 5-12 membered heteroaryl, or a bond;

B and B' are each independently C_{1-6} alkyl, C_{2-6} alkenyl, or C_{2-6} alkynyl;

C and C' are each independently a 4-7 membered heterocycle;

R_1 is H, halogen, $-OR_a$, $-NR_aR_b$, $-C(=O)OR_a$, $-C(O)NR_aR_b$, $-C(=O)OH$, $-C(=O)R_a$, $-C(=NOR_c)R_a$, $-C(=NR_c)NR_aR_b$, $-NR_dC(=O)NR_aR_b$, $-NR_bC(=O)R_a$, $-NR_dC(=NR_c)NR_aR_b$, $-NR_bC(=O)OR_a$, $-OC(=O)NR_aR_b$, $-OC(=O)R_a$, $-OC(=O)OR_a$, hydroxyl, nitro, azido, cyano, $-S(O)_{0-3}R_a$, $-SO_2NR_aR_b$, $-NR_bSO_2R_a$, $-NR_bSO_2NR_aR_b$, $-P(=O)OR_aOR_b$, C_{1-6} alkyl, C_{2-6} alkenyl, C_{2-6} alkynyl, or C_{1-6} halogenated alkyl, or any two occurrences of R_1 can be taken together with the atoms to which they are attached to form a 5-7 cycloalkyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{10} or a 5-7 membered heterocycle which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{12},

wherein R_a, R_b, R_c, and R_d are each independently H, C_{1-12} alkyl, C_{2-12} alkenyl, C_{2-12} alkynyl, C_{6-12} aryl, C_{7-16} aralkyl, 5-12 membered heteroaryl, 6-18 membered heteroaralkyl, 3-12 membered heterocycle, or 4-18 membered heterocycle-alkyl;

R_2 and R_2' are each independently H, halogen, C_{1-6} alkyl, $-(CH_2)_{1-3}OH$, $-OR_a$, $-C(=O)OR_a$, $-C(O)NR_aR_b$, $-C(=O)OH$, C_{6-12} aryl, or 5-12 membered heteroaryl, wherein R_a, R_b, R_c, and R_d are each independently H, C_{1-12} alkyl, C_{2-12} alkenyl, C_{2-12} alkynyl, C_{6-12} aryl, C_{7-16} aralkyl, 5-12 membered heteroaryl, 6-18 membered heteroaralkyl, 3-12 membered heterocycle, or 4-18 membered heterocycle-alkyl;

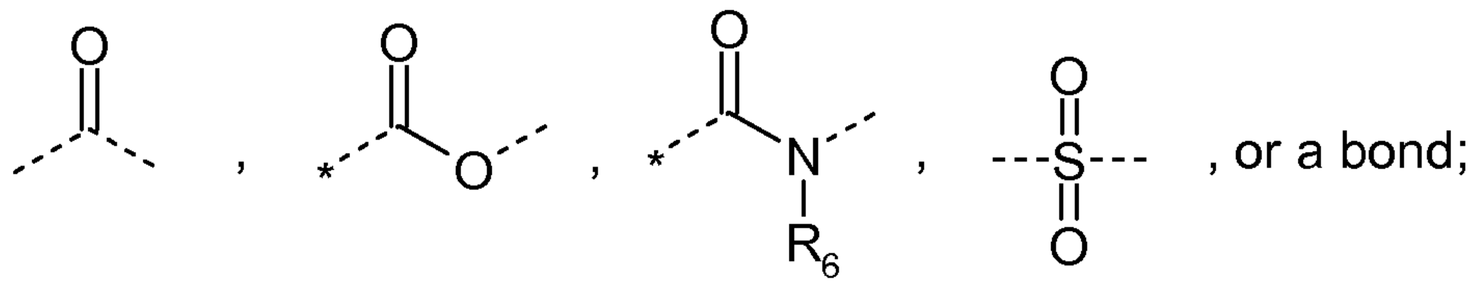
R_3 and R_3' are each independently H, C_{1-6} alkyl, C_{2-6} alkenyl, or C_{2-6} alkynyl;

R_4 and R_4' are each independently H, halogen, C_{1-6} alkyl, hydroxyl, C_{6-14} aryl, or C_{1-4} alkoxy;

wherein two occurrence of R_4 can be taken together with the atoms to which they are attached to form a 3-7 cycloalkyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{10} or a 4-7 membered heterocycle which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{12};

wherein two occurrence of R_4' can be taken together with the atoms to which they are attached to form a 3-7 cycloalkyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{10} or a 4-7 membered heterocycle which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{12};

X and Y are each independently



, or a bond;

wherein the bond marked with an asterisk (*) indicates the attachment to the nitrogen of ring C or C';

R_5 and R_5' are each independently H, C_{1-12} alkyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{10}, C_{2-12} alkenyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{10}, C_{2-12} alkynyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{10}, C_{6-14} aryl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{11}, C_{7-16} aralkyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{11}, 5-12 membered heteroaryl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{11}, 6-18 membered heteroaralkyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{11}, 3-12 membered heterocycle which is unsubstituted or

substituted one or more times by R^{12}, or 4-18 membered heterocycle-alkyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{12};

R_6 is H, C_{1-6} alkyl, or halogenated C_{1-6} alkyl, or can be merged with R_6 or R_6' to form a 3-12 membered heterocycle;

m and n, are each independently 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4;

p is 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4;

R^{10} is halogen, $-OR_a$, oxo, $-NR_aR_b$, $=NO-R_c$, $-C(=O)OR_a$, $-C(O)NR_aR_b$, $-C(=O)OH$, $-C(=O)R_a$, $-C(=NOR_c)R_a$, $-C(=NR_c)NR_aR_b$, $-NR_dC(=O)NR_aR_b$, $-NR_bC(=O)R_a$, $-NR_dC(=NR_c)NR_aR_b$, $-NR_bC(=O)OR_a$, $-OC(=O)NR_aR_b$, $-OC(=O)R_a$, $-OC(=O)OR_a$, hydroxyl, nitro, azido, cyano, $-S(O)_{0-3}R_a$, $-SO_2NR_aR_b$, $-NR_bSO_2R_a$, $-NR_bSO_2NR_aR_b$, or $-P(=O)OR_aOR_b$, wherein R_a, R_b, R_c, and R_d are each independently H, C_{1-12} alkyl, C_{2-12} alkenyl, C_{2-12} alkynyl, C_{6-12} aryl, C_{7-16} aralkyl, 5-12 membered heteroaryl, 6-18 membered heteroaralkyl, 3-12 membered heterocycle, or 4-18 membered heterocycle-alkyl;

R^{11} is halogen, $-OR_a$, $-NR_aR_b$, $-C(=O)OR_a$, $-C(O)NR_aR_b$, $-C(=O)OH$, $-C(=O)R_a$, $-C(=NOR_c)R_a$, $-C(=NR_c)NR_aR_b$, $-NR_dC(=O)NR_aR_b$, $-NR_bC(=O)R_a$, $-NR_dC(=NR_c)NR_aR_b$, $-NR_bC(=O)OR_a$, $-OC(=O)NR_aR_b$, $-OC(=O)R_a$, $-OC(=O)OR_a$, hydroxyl, nitro, azido, cyano, $-S(O)_{0-3}R_a$, $-SO_2NR_aR_b$, $-NR_bSO_2R_a$, $-NR_bSO_2NR_aR_b$, or $-P(=O)OR_aOR_b$, C_{1-12} alkyl, C_{2-12} alkenyl, C_{2-12} alkynyl, C_{6-12} aryl, C_{7-16} aralkyl, 5-12 membered heteroaryl, 6-18 membered heteroaralkyl, 3-12 membered heterocycle, or 4-18 membered heterocycle-alkyl, wherein R_a, R_b, R_c, and R_d are each independently H, C_{1-12} alkyl, C_{2-12} alkenyl, C_{2-12} alkynyl, C_{6-12} aryl, C_{7-16} aralkyl, 5-12 membered heteroaryl, 6-18 membered heteroaralkyl, 3-12 membered heterocycle, or 4-18 membered heterocycle-alkyl;

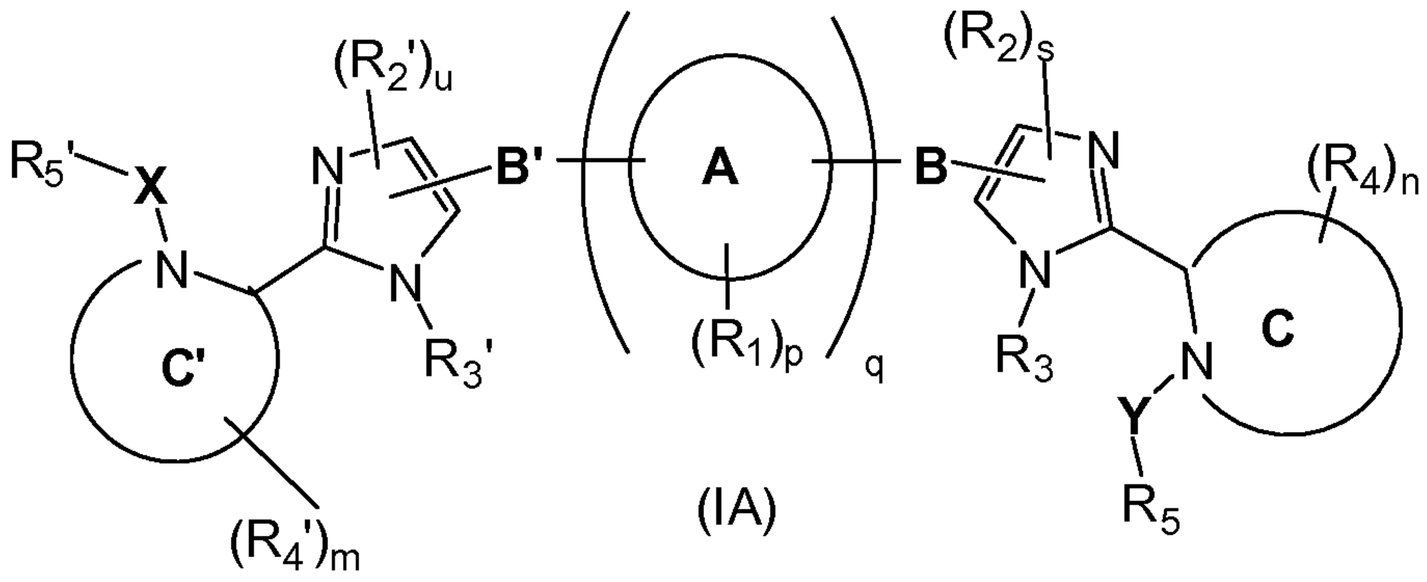
R^{12} is halogen, $-OR_a$, oxo, $-NR_aR_b$, $=NO-R_c$, $-C(=O)OR_a$, $-C(O)NR_aR_b$, $-C(=O)OH$, $-C(=O)R_a$, $-C(=NOR_c)R_a$, $-C(=NR_c)NR_aR_b$, $-NR_dC(=O)NR_aR_b$, $-NR_bC(=O)R_a$, $-NR_dC(=NR_c)NR_aR_b$, $-NR_bC(=O)OR_a$, $-OC(=O)NR_aR_b$, $-OC(=O)R_a$, $-OC(=O)OR_a$, hydroxyl, nitro, azido, cyano, $-S(O)_{0-3}R_a$, $-SO_2NR_aR_b$, $-NR_bSO_2R_a$, $-NR_bSO_2NR_aR_b$, or $-P(=O)OR_aOR_b$, C_{1-12} alkyl, C_{2-12} alkenyl, C_{2-12} alkynyl, C_{6-12} aryl, C_{7-16} aralkyl, 5-12 membered heteroaryl, 6-18 membered heteroaralkyl, 3-12 membered heterocycle, or 4-18 membered heterocycle-alkyl, wherein R_a, R_b, R_c, and R_d are each independently H, C_{1-12} alkyl, C_{2-12} alkenyl, C_{2-12} alkynyl, C_{6-12} aryl, C_{7-16} aralkyl, 5-12 membered heteroaryl, 6-18

membered heteroaralkyl, 3-12 membered heterocycle, or 4-18 membered heterocycle-alkyl;

wherein as valency allows in B, B', R_a-R_d, R_1, R_2, R_2', R_3, R_3', R_4, R_4', R^{10}, R^{11} and R^{12} each of alkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl, alkoxy, aryl, aralkyl, heteroaryl, heteroaralkyl, heterocycle, or heterocycle-alkyl is independently unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by halogen, $-OR_{a'}$, oxo, $-NR_{a'}R_{b'}$, $=NO-R_{c'}$, $-C(=O)OR_{a'}$, $-C(O)NR_{a'}R_{b'}$, $-C(=O)OH$, $-C(=O)R_{a'}$, $-C(=NOR_{c'})R_{a'}$, $-C(=NR_{c'})NR_{a'}R_{b'}$, $-NR_{d'}C(=O)NR_{a'}R_{b'}$, $-NR_{b'}C(=O)R_{a'}$, $-NR_{d'}C(=NR_{c'})NR_{a'}R_{b'}$, $-NR_{b'}C(=O)OR_{a'}$, $-OC(=O)NR_{a'}R_{b'}$, $-OC(=O)R_{a'}$, $-OC(=O)OR_{a'}$, hydroxyl, nitro, azido, cyano, $-S(O)_{0-3}R_{a'}$, $-SO_2NR_{a'}R_{b'}$, or $-NR_{b'}SO_2R_{a'}$; wherein $R_{a'}$, $R_{b'}$, $R_{c'}$, and $R_{d'}$ are each independently H or C_{1-12} alkyl; or

a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

In one aspect, the present invention provides a compound of formula (IA):



(IA)

or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, wherein

each A is independently C_{6-14} aryl, 4-12 membered heterocycle, C_{3-10} cycloalkyl, or 5-12 membered heteroaryl containing at least one heteroatom selected from the group consisting of O and S; wherein when q is 2 then both A rings are not phenyl;

B and B' are each independently absent, C_{1-6} alkyl, C_{2-6} alkenyl, or C_{2-6} alkynyl; wherein when q is 1 then at least one of B and B' is absent;

C and C' are each independently a 4-7 membered heterocycle;

R_1 is halogen, $-OR_a$, $-NR_aR_b$, $-C(=O)OR_a$, $-C(O)NR_aR_b$, $-C(=O)OH$, $-C(=O)R_a$, $-C(=NOR_c)R_a$, $-C(=NR_c)NR_aR_b$, $-NR_dC(=O)NR_aR_b$, $-NR_bC(=O)R_a$, $-NR_dC(=NR_c)NR_aR_b$, $-NR_bC(=O)OR_a$, $-OC(=O)NR_aR_b$, $-OC(=O)R_a$, $-OC(=O)OR_a$, hydroxyl, nitro, azido, cyano, $-S(O)_{0-3}R_a$, $-SO_2NR_aR_b$, $-NR_bSO_2R_a$, $-NR_bSO_2NR_aR_b$, $-P(=O)OR_aOR_b$, C_{1-6} alkyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{10}, C_{2-6} alkenyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{10}, C_{2-6} alkynyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{10}, or any two occurrences of R_1 can be taken together with the atoms to which they are attached to form a 5-7 cycloalkyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{11} or a 5-7 membered heterocycle which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{12};

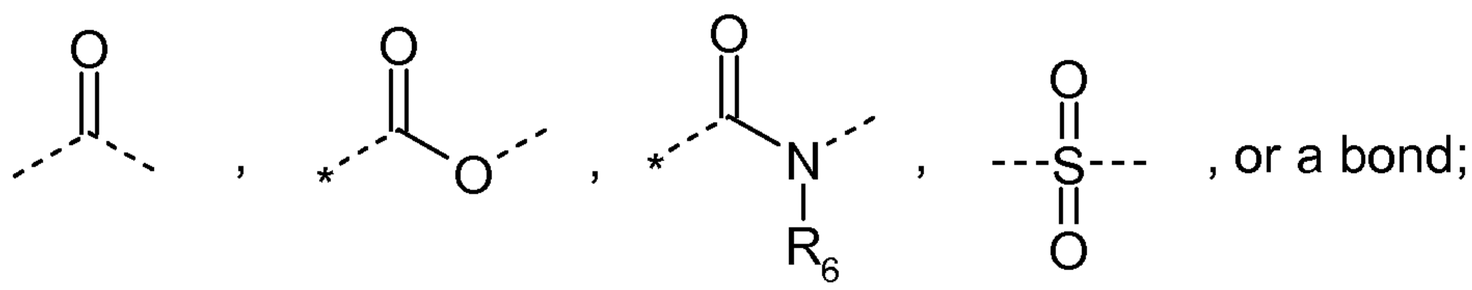
R_a, R_b, R_c, and R_d are each independently H, C_{1-12} alkyl, C_{2-12} alkenyl, C_{2-12} alkynyl, C_{6-12} aryl, C_{7-16} aralkyl, 5-12 membered heteroaryl, 6-18 membered heteroaralkyl, 3-12 membered heterocycle, or 4-18 membered heterocycle-alkyl;

$R_{2'}$ and R_2 are independently halogen, C_{1-10} alkyl, C_{1-6} halogenated alkyl, $-(CH_2)_{1-6}OH$, $-NR_bC(=O)R_a$, C_{6-12} aryl, or 5-12 membered heteroaryl;

R_3 and R_3' are each independently H, C_{1-6} alkyl, $-(CH_2)_{1-6}OH$, C_{2-6} alkenyl, or C_{2-6} alkynyl;

R_4 and R_4' are each independently halogen, $-NR_aR_b$, $-C(O)NR_aR_b$, $-(CH_2)_{1-6}OH$, C_{1-6} alkyl, C_{1-6} halogenated alkyl, hydroxyl, C_{6-14} aryl, or C_{1-6} alkoxy; wherein two occurrence of R_4 can be taken together with the atoms to which they are attached to form a C_{1-6} alkenyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{10}, a 3-7 cycloalkyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{11} or a 4-7 membered heterocycle which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{12}; wherein two occurrence of R_4' can be taken together with the atoms to which they are attached to form a C_{1-6} alkenyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{10}, a 3-7 cycloalkyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{11} or a 4-7 membered heterocycle which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{12};

X and Y are each independently


, or a bond;

wherein the asterisk (*) indicates the point of attachment to the nitrogen of ring C or C';

R_5 and R_5' are each independently H, C_{1-18} alkyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{10}, C_{2-12} alkenyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{10}, C_{2-12} alkynyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{10}, C_{6-14} aryl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{11}, C_{7-16} aralkyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{11}, 5-12 membered heteroaryl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{11}, 6-18 membered heteroaralkyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{11}, 3-12 membered heterocycle which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{12}, or 4-18 membered heterocycle-alkyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{12};

R_6 is H, C_{1-6} alkyl, or halogenated C_{1-6} alkyl;

m and n, are each independently 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4;

p is 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4;

q is 1 or 2;

u is 0 or 1;

s is 0 or 1;

R^{10} is halogen, $-OR_a$, oxo, $-NR_aR_b$, $=NO-R_c$, $-C(=O)OR_a$, $-C(O)NR_aR_b$, $-C(=O)OH$, $-C(=O)R_a$, $-C(=NOR_c)R_a$, $-C(=NR_c)NR_aR_b$, $-NR_dC(=O)NR_aR_b$, $-NR_bC(=O)R_a$, $-NR_dC(=NR_c)NR_aR_b$, $-NR_bC(=O)OR_a$, $-OC(=O)NR_aR_b$, $-OC(=O)R_a$, $-OC(=O)OR_a$, hydroxyl, nitro, azido, cyano, $-S(O)_{0-3}R_a$, $-SO_2NR_aR_b$, $-NR_bSO_2R_a$, $-NR_bSO_2NR_aR_b$, or $-P(=O)OR_aOR_b$,;

R^{11} is halogen, $-OR_a$, $-NR_aR_b$, $-C(=O)OR_a$, $-C(O)NR_aR_b$, $-C(=O)OH$, $-C(=O)R_a$, $-C(=NOR_c)R_a$, $-C(=NR_c)NR_aR_b$, $-NR_dC(=O)NR_aR_b$, $-NR_bC(=O)R_a$, $-NR_dC(=NR_c)NR_aR_b$, $-NR_bC(=O)OR_a$, -

$OC(=O)NR_aR_b$, $-OC(=O)R_a$, $-OC(=O)OR_a$, hydroxyl, nitro, azido, cyano, $-S(O)_{0-3}R_a$, $-SO_2NR_aR_b$, $-NR_bSO_2R_a$, $-NR_bSO_2NR_aR_b$, or $-P(=O)OR_aOR_b$, C_{1-12} alkyl, C_{2-12} alkenyl, C_{2-12} alkynyl, C_{6-12} aryl, C_{7-16} aralkyl, 5-12 membered heteroaryl, 6-18 membered heteroaralkyl, 3-12 membered heterocycle, or 4-18 membered heterocycle-alkyl; and

R^{12} is halogen, $-OR_a$, oxo, $-NR_aR_b$, $=NO-R_c$, $-C(=O)OR_a$, $-C(O)NR_aR_b$, $-C(=O)OH$, $-C(=O)R_a$, $-C(=NOR_c)R_a$, $-C(=NR_c)NR_aR_b$, $-NR_dC(=O)NR_aR_b$, $-NR_bC(=O)R_a$, $-NR_dC(=NR_c)NR_aR_b$, $-NR_bC(=O)OR_a$, $-OC(=O)NR_aR_b$, $-OC(=O)R_a$, $-OC(=O)OR_a$, hydroxyl, nitro, azido, cyano, $-S(O)_{0-3}R_a$, $-SO_2NR_aR_b$, $-NR_bSO_2R_a$, $-NR_bSO_2NR_aR_b$, or $-P(=O)OR_aOR_b$, C_{1-12} alkyl, C_{2-12} alkenyl, C_{2-12} alkynyl, C_{6-12} aryl, C_{7-16} aralkyl, 5-12 membered heteroaryl, 6-18 membered heteroaralkyl, 3-12 membered heterocycle, or 4-18 membered heterocycle-alkyl.

According to a further embodiment for formula (I) or (IA), the distance between C and C' is between about 16 Å and about 24 Å in length.

In another aspect, there is provided a method for treating or preventing a Flaviviridae viral infection in a patient comprising administering to the patient a therapeutically effective amount of a compound, composition or combination of the invention.

In another aspect, there is provided a pharmaceutical composition comprising at least one compound of the invention and at least one pharmaceutically acceptable carrier or excipient.

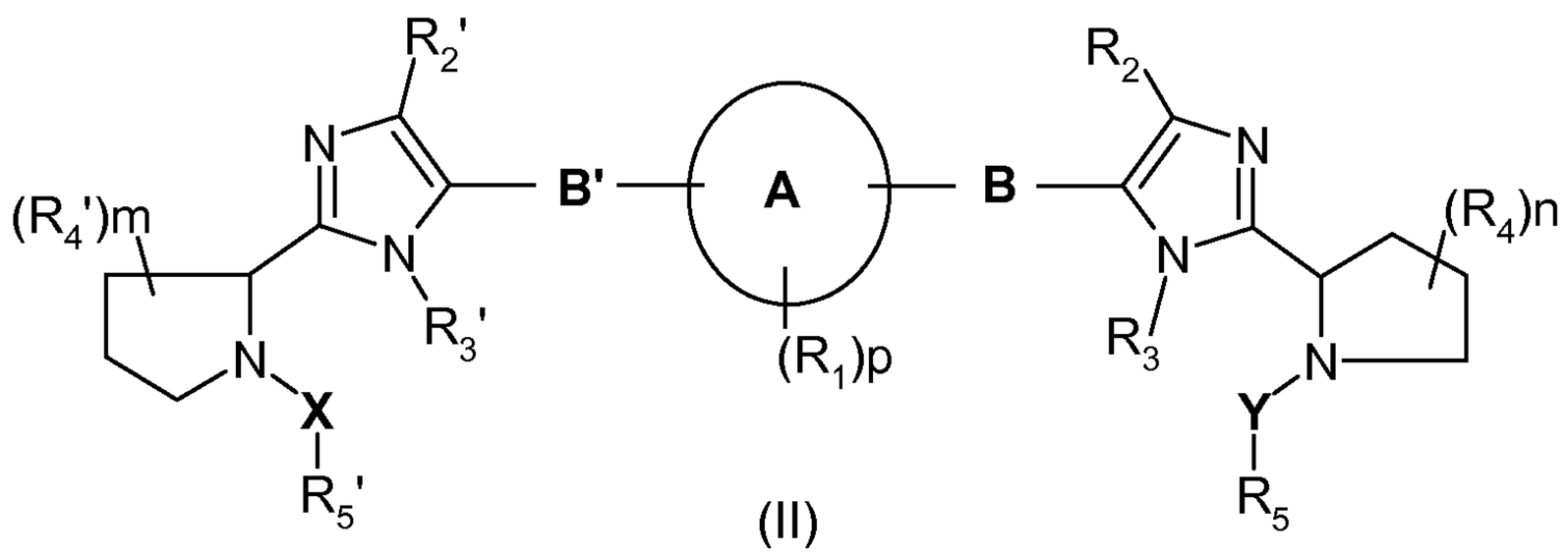
In another aspect, there is provided a combination comprising a compound of the invention and one or more additional agents chosen from viral serine protease inhibitors, viral polymerase inhibitors, viral helicase inhibitors, immunomudulating agents, antioxidant agents, antibacterial agents, therapeutic vaccines, hepatoprotectant agents, antisense agent, inhibitors of HCV NS2/3 protease and inhibitors of internal ribosome entry site (IRES).

In a further aspect, there is provided the use of a compound, composition or combination of the invention for treating or preventing a Flaviviridae viral infection in a human.

In still another aspect, there is provided the use of a compound, composition or combination of the invention for the manufacture of a medicament for treating or preventing a viral Flaviviridae infection in a human.

In one embodiment, compounds of the present invention comprise those wherein the following embodiments are present, either independently or in combination.

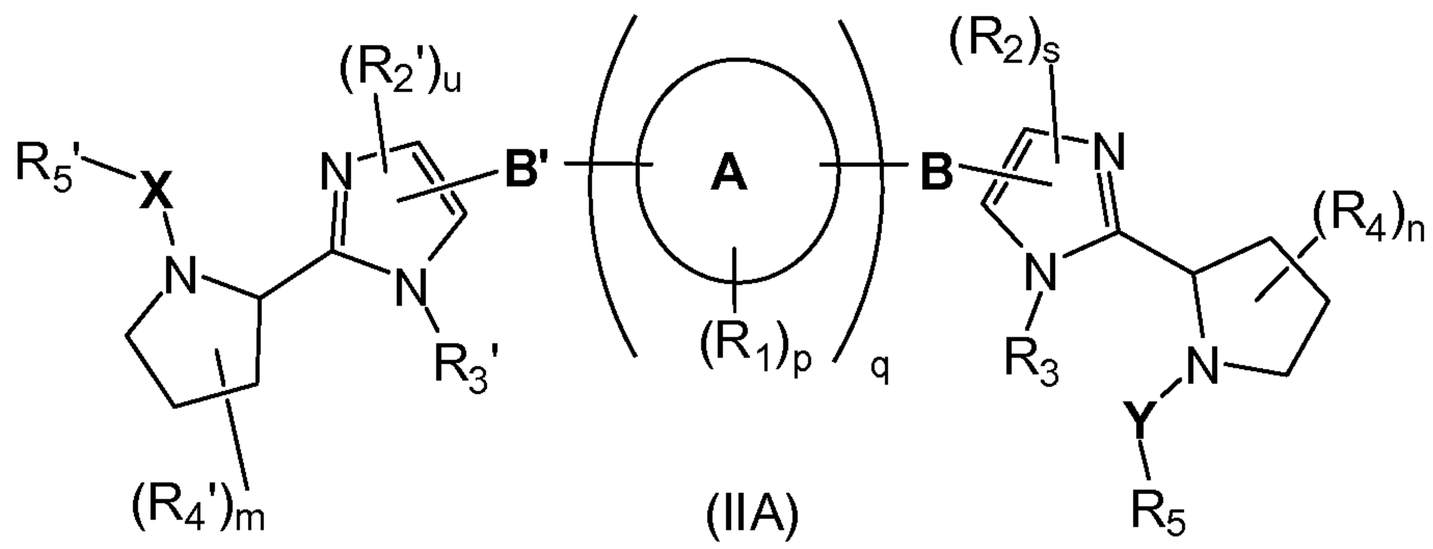
In accordance with a further embodiment, the compounds of the present invention are represented by formula (II):



(II)

or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, wherein each of A, B, B', R^1, p, R_2, $R_{2'}$, R_3, $R_{3'}$, R_4, $R_{4'}$, R_5, $R_{5'}$, X, and Y, are as defined for formula (I).

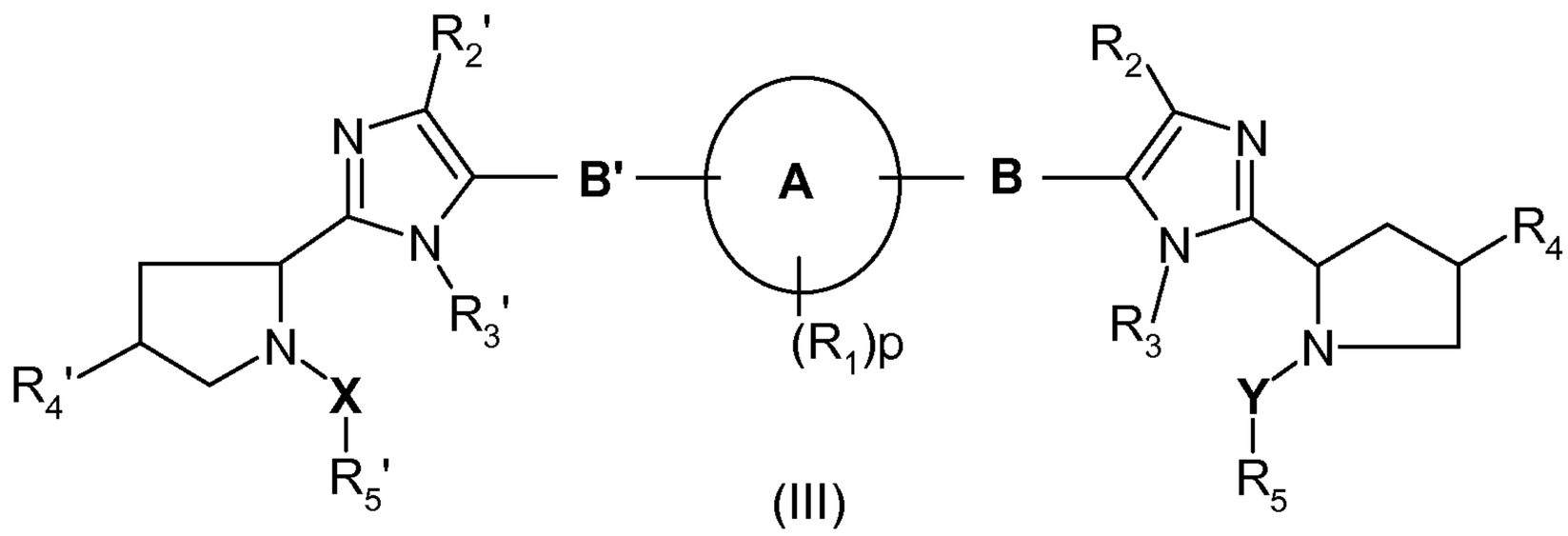
In accordance with a further embodiment, the compounds of the present invention are represented by formula (IIA):



(IIA)

or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, wherein each of q, u, s, A, B, B', R^1, p, R_2, $R_{2'}$, R_3, $R_{3'}$, R_4, $R_{4'}$, R_5, $R_{5'}$, m, n, X, and Y, are as defined for formula (IA).

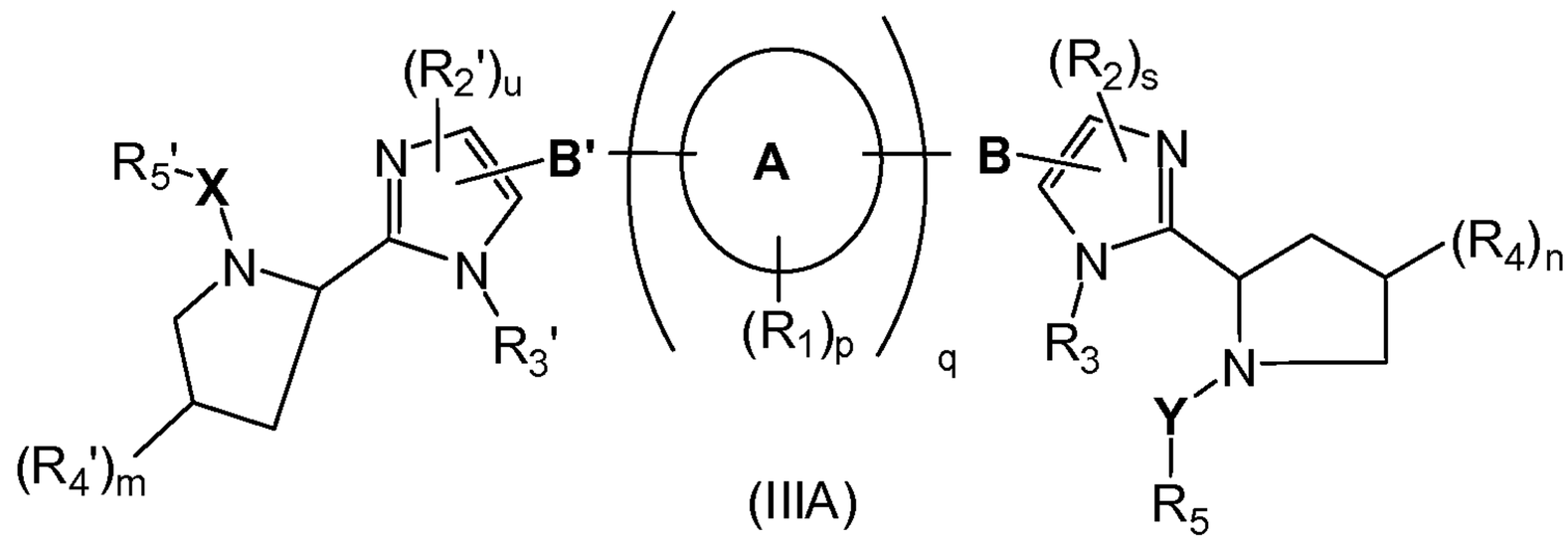
In accordance with a further embodiment, the compounds of the present invention are represented by formula (III):



(III)

or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, wherein each of A, B, B', R^1, p, R_2, $R_{2'}$, R_3, $R_{3'}$, R_4, $R_{4'}$, R_5, $R_{5'}$, X, and Y, are as defined for formula (I).

In accordance with a further embodiment, the compounds of the present invention are represented by formula (IIIA):



(IIIA)

or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, wherein

each A is independently C_{6-14} aryl, 4-12 membered heterocycle, C_{3-10} cycloalkyl, or 5-12 membered heteroaryl;

B and B' are each independently absent, C_{1-6} alkyl, C_{2-6} alkenyl, or C_{2-6} alkynyl; wherein when q is 1 then at least one of B and B' is absent;

R_1 is halogen, $-OR_a$, $-NR_aR_b$, $-C(=O)OR_a$, $-C(O)NR_aR_b$, $-C(=O)OH$, $-C(=O)R_a$, $-C(=NOR_c)R_a$, $-C(=NR_c)NR_aR_b$, $-NR_dC(=O)NR_aR_b$, $-NR_bC(=O)R_a$, $-NR_dC(=NR_c)NR_aR_b$, $-NR_bC(=O)OR_a$, $-OC(=O)NR_aR_b$, $-OC(=O)R_a$, $-OC(=O)OR_a$, hydroxyl, nitro, azido, cyano, $-S(O)_{0-3}R_a$, $-SO_2NR_aR_b$, $-NR_bSO_2R_a$, $-NR_bSO_2NR_aR_b$, $-P(=O)OR_aOR_b$, C_{1-6} alkyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{10}, C_{2-6} alkenyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{10}, C_{2-6} alkynyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{10}, or any two occurrences of R_1 can be taken together with the atoms to which they are attached to form a 5-7 cycloalkyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{11} or a 5-7 membered heterocycle which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{12};

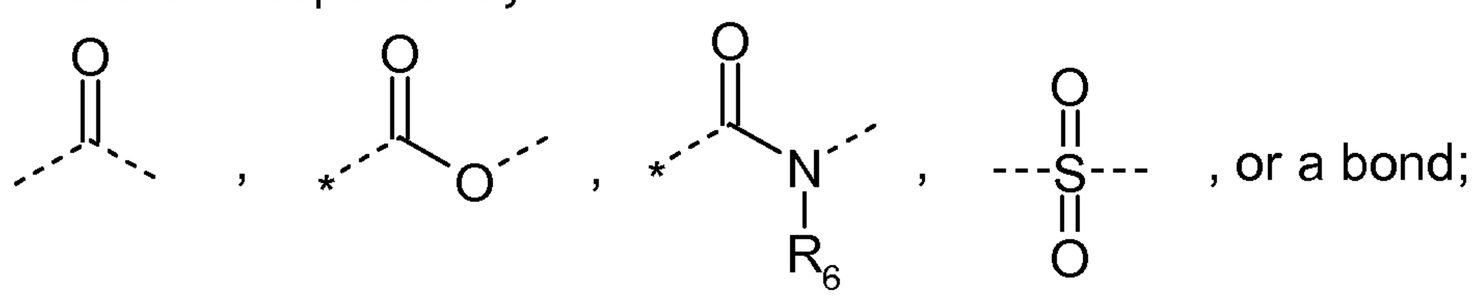
R_a, R_b, R_c, and R_dR_a-R_d are each independently H, C_{1-12} alkyl, C_{2-12} alkenyl, C_{2-12} alkynyl, C_{6-12} aryl, C_{7-16} aralkyl, 5-12 membered heteroaryl, 6-18 membered heteroaralkyl, 3-12 membered heterocycle, or 4-18 membered heterocycle-alkyl;

$R_{2'}$ and R_2 are independently H, halogen, C_{1-10} alkyl, C_{1-6} halogenated alkyl, $-(CH_2)_{1-6}OH$, $-NR_bC(=O)R_a$ C_{6-12} aryl, or 5-12 membered heteroaryl;

R_3 and R_3' are each independently H, C_{1-6} alkyl, $-(CH_2)_{1-6}OH$, C_{2-6} alkenyl, or C_{2-6} alkynyl;

R_4 and R_4' are each independently $-NR_aR_b$, $-C(O)NR_aR_b$, $-(CH_2)_{1-6}OH$, C_{1-6} alkyl, C_{1-6} halogenated alkyl, C_{6-14} aryl, or C_{1-6} alkoxy; wherein two occurrence of R_4 can be taken together with the atoms to which they are attached to form a C_{1-6} alkenyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{10}, a 4-7 cycloalkyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{11} or a 4-7 membered heterocycle which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{12}; wherein two occurrence of R_4' can be taken together with the atoms to which they are attached to form a C_{1-6} alkenyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{10}, a 3-7 cycloalkyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{11} or a 4-7 membered heterocycle which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{12}; wherein R_a-R_b are each independently H, C_{1-12} alkyl, C_{2-12} alkenyl, C_{2-12} alkynyl, C_{6-12} aryl, C_{7-16} aralkyl, 5-12 membered heteroaryl, 6-18 membered heteroaralkyl, 3-12 membered heterocycle, or 4-18 membered heterocycle-alkyl;

X and Y are each independently



, or a bond;

wherein the asterisk (*) indicates the point of attachment to the nitrogen of ring C or C';

R_5 and R_5' are each independently H, C_{1-18} alkyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{10}, C_{2-12} alkenyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{10}, C_{2-12} alkynyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{10}, C_{6-14} aryl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{11}, C_{7-16} aralkyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{11}, 5-12 membered heteroaryl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{11}, 6-18 membered

heteroaralkyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{11}, 3-12 membered heterocycle which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{12}, or 4-18 membered heterocycle-alkyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{12};

R_6 is H, C_{1-6} alkyl, or halogenated C_{1-6} alkyl;

m and n are a positive integer and when combined are 1, 2, 3, or 4;, provided that each of m and n are not 3 or 4;

p is 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4;

q is 1 or 2;

u is 0 or 1;

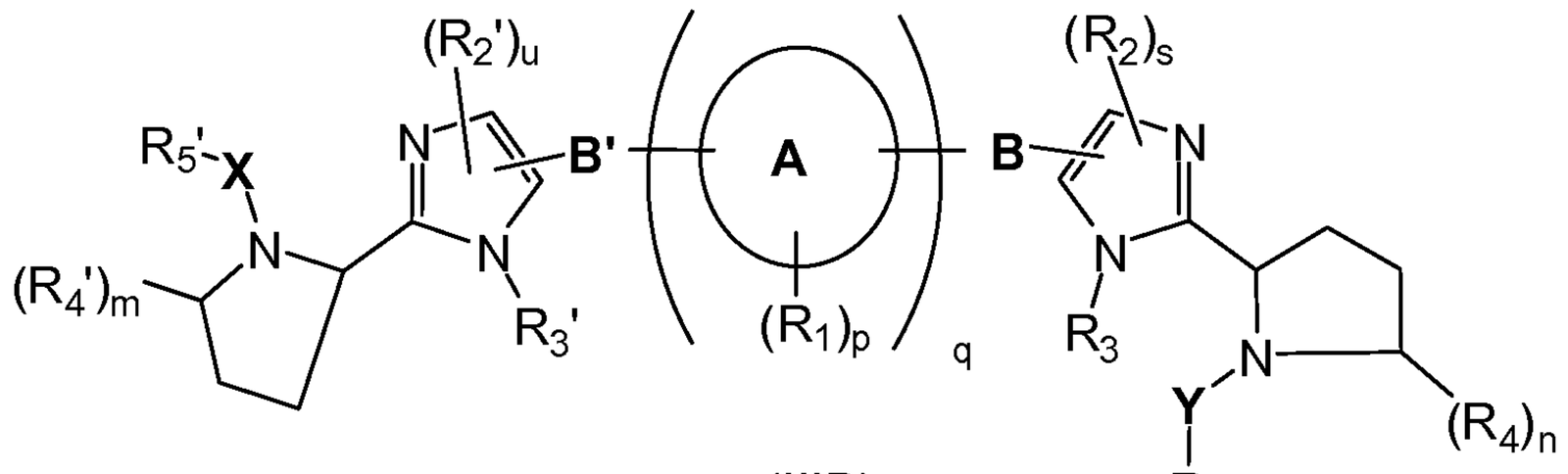
s is 0 or 1;

R^{10} is halogen, $-OR_a$, oxo, $-NR_aR_b$, $=NO-R_c$, $-C(=O)OR_a$, $-C(O)NR_aR_b$, $-C(=O)OH$, $-C(=O)R_a$, $-C(=NOR_c)R_a$, $-C(=NR_c)NR_aR_b$, $-NR_dC(=O)NR_aR_b$, $-NR_bC(=O)R_a$, $-NR_dC(=NR_c)NR_aR_b$, $-NR_bC(=O)OR_a$, $-OC(=O)NR_aR_b$, $-OC(=O)R_a$, $-OC(=O)OR_a$, hydroxyl, nitro, azido, cyano, $-S(O)_{0-3}R_a$, $-SO_2NR_aR_b$, $-NR_bSO_2R_a$, $-NR_bSO_2NR_aR_b$, or $-P(=O)OR_aOR_b$,;

R^{11} is halogen, $-OR_a$, $-NR_aR_b$, $-C(=O)OR_a$, $-C(O)NR_aR_b$, $-C(=O)OH$, $-C(=O)R_a$, $-C(=NOR_c)R_a$, $-C(=NR_c)NR_aR_b$, $-NR_dC(=O)NR_aR_b$, $-NR_bC(=O)R_a$, $-NR_dC(=NR_c)NR_aR_b$, $-NR_bC(=O)OR_a$, $-OC(=O)NR_aR_b$, $-OC(=O)R_a$, $-OC(=O)OR_a$, hydroxyl, nitro, azido, cyano, $-S(O)_{0-3}R_a$, $-SO_2NR_aR_b$, $-NR_bSO_2R_a$, $-NR_bSO_2NR_aR_b$, or $-P(=O)OR_aOR_b$, C_{1-12} alkyl, C_{2-12} alkenyl, C_{2-12} alkynyl, C_{6-12} aryl, C_{7-16} aralkyl, 5-12 membered heteroaryl, 6-18 membered heteroaralkyl, 3-12 membered heterocycle, or 4-18 membered heterocycle-alkyl; and

R^{12} is halogen, $-OR_a$, oxo, $-NR_aR_b$, $=NO-R_c$, $-C(=O)OR_a$, $-C(O)NR_aR_b$, $-C(=O)OH$, $-C(=O)R_a$, $-C(=NOR_c)R_a$, $-C(=NR_c)NR_aR_b$, $-NR_dC(=O)NR_aR_b$, $-NR_bC(=O)R_a$, $-NR_dC(=NR_c)NR_aR_b$, $-NR_bC(=O)OR_a$, $-OC(=O)NR_aR_b$, $-OC(=O)R_a$, $-OC(=O)OR_a$, hydroxyl, nitro, azido, cyano, $-S(O)_{0-3}R_a$, $-SO_2NR_aR_b$, $-NR_bSO_2R_a$, $-NR_bSO_2NR_aR_b$, or $-P(=O)OR_aOR_b$, C_{1-12} alkyl, C_{2-12} alkenyl, C_{2-12} alkynyl, C_{6-12} aryl, C_{7-16} aralkyl, 5-12 membered heteroaryl, 6-18 membered heteroaralkyl, 3-12 membered heterocycle, or 4-18 membered heterocycle-alkyl.

In accordance with a further embodiment, the compounds of the present invention are represented by formula (IIIB):



(IIIB)

or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, wherein

each A is independently C_{6-14} aryl, 4-12 membered heterocycle, C_{3-10} cycloalkyl, or 5-12 membered heteroaryl wherein when q is 2 then both A rings are not phenyl;

B and B' are each independently absent, C_{1-6} alkyl, C_{2-6} alkenyl, or C_{2-6} alkynyl; wherein q is 1 then at least one of B and B' is absent;

R_1 is halogen, $-OR_a$, $-NR_aR_b$, $-C(=O)OR_a$, $-C(O)NR_aR_b$, $-C(=O)OH$, $-C(=O)R_a$, $-C(=NOR_c)R_a$, $-C(=NR_c)NR_aR_b$, $-NR_dC(=O)NR_aR_b$, $-NR_bC(=O)R_a$, $-NR_dC(=NR_c)NR_aR_b$, $-NR_bC(=O)OR_a$, $-OC(=O)NR_aR_b$, $-OC(=O)R_a$, $-OC(=O)OR_a$, hydroxyl, nitro, azido, cyano, $-S(O)_{0-3}R_a$, $-SO_2NR_aR_b$, $-NR_bSO_2R_a$, $-NR_bSO_2NR_aR_b$, $-P(=O)OR_aOR_b$, C_{1-6} alkyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{10}, C_{2-6} alkenyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{10}, C_{2-6} alkynyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{10}, or any two occurrences of R_1 can be taken together with the atoms to which they are attached to form a 5-7 cycloalkyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{11} or a 5-7 membered heterocycle which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{12};

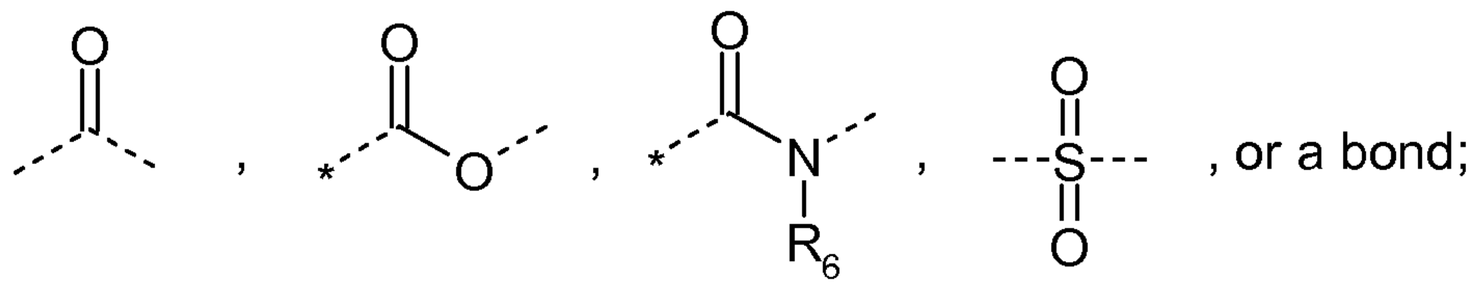
R_a, R_b, R_c, and R_d are each independently H, C_{1-12} alkyl, C_{2-12} alkenyl, C_{2-12} alkynyl, C_{6-12} aryl, C_{7-16} aralkyl, 5-12 membered heteroaryl, 6-18 membered heteroaralkyl, 3-12 membered heterocycle, or 4-18 membered heterocycle-alkyl;

$R_{2'}$ and R_2 are independently H, halogen, C_{1-10} alkyl, C_{1-6} halogenated alkyl, $-(CH_2)_{1-6}OH$, $-NR_bC(=O)R_a$ C_{6-12} aryl, or 5-12 membered heteroaryl;

R_3 and R_3' are each independently H, C_{1-6} alkyl, $-(CH_2)_{1-6}OH$, C_{2-6} alkenyl, or C_{2-6} alkynyl;

R_4 and R_4' are each independently halogen, $-NR_aR_b$, $-C(O)NR_aR_b$, $-(CH_2)_{1-6}OH$, C_{1-6} alkyl, C_{1-6} halogenated alkyl, hydroxyl, or C_{1-6} alkoxy; wherein two occurrence of R_4 can be taken together with the atoms to which they are attached to form a C_{1-6} alkenyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{10}, a 3-7 cycloalkyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{11} or a 4-7 membered heterocycle which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{12}; wherein two occurrence of R_4' can be taken together with the atoms to which they are attached to form a C_{1-6} alkenyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{10}, a 3-7 cycloalkyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{11} or a 4-7 membered heterocycle which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{12}; wherein R_a-R_b are each independently H, C_{1-12} alkyl, C_{2-12} alkenyl, C_{2-12} alkynyl, C_{6-12} aryl, C_{7-16} aralkyl, 5-12 membered heteroaryl, 6-18 membered heteroaralkyl, 3-12 membered heterocycle, or 4-18 membered heterocycle-alkyl;

X and Y are each independently



, , , , or a bond;

wherein the asterisk (*) indicates the point of attachment to the nitrogen of ring C or C';

R_5 and R_5' are each independently H, C_{1-18} alkyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{10}, C_{2-12} alkenyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{10}, C_{2-12} alkynyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{10}, C_{6-14} aryl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{11}, C_{7-16} aralkyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{11}, 5-12 membered heteroaryl which is

unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{11}, 6-18 membered heteroaralkyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{11}, 3-12 membered heterocycle which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{12}, or 4-18 membered heterocycle-alkyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{12};

R_6 is H, C_{1-6} alkyl, or halogenated C_{1-6} alkyl;

m and n combined are each independently 1, 2, 3, or 4;

p is 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4;

q is 1 or 2;

u is 0 or 1;

s is 0 or 1;

R^{10} is halogen, $-OR_a$, oxo, $-NR_aR_b$, $=NO-R_c$, $-C(=O)OR_a$, $-C(O)NR_aR_b$, $-C(=O)OH$, $-C(=O)R_a$, $-C(=NOR_c)R_a$, $-C(=NR_c)NR_aR_b$, $-NR_dC(=O)NR_aR_b$, $-NR_bC(=O)R_a$, $-NR_dC(=NR_c)NR_aR_b$, $-NR_bC(=O)OR_a$, $-OC(=O)NR_aR_b$, $-OC(=O)R_a$, $-OC(=O)OR_a$, hydroxyl, nitro, azido, cyano, $-S(O)_{0-3}R_a$, $-SO_2NR_aR_b$, $-NR_bSO_2R_a$, $-NR_bSO_2NR_aR_b$, or $-P(=O)OR_aOR_b$,;

R^{11} is halogen, $-OR_a$, $-NR_aR_b$, $-C(=O)OR_a$, $-C(O)NR_aR_b$, $-C(=O)OH$, $-C(=O)R_a$, $-C(=NOR_c)R_a$, $-C(=NR_c)NR_aR_b$, $-NR_dC(=O)NR_aR_b$, $-NR_bC(=O)R_a$, $-NR_dC(=NR_c)NR_aR_b$, $-NR_bC(=O)OR_a$, $-OC(=O)NR_aR_b$, $-OC(=O)R_a$, $-OC(=O)OR_a$, hydroxyl, nitro, azido, cyano, $-S(O)_{0-3}R_a$, $-SO_2NR_aR_b$, $-NR_bSO_2R_a$, $-NR_bSO_2NR_aR_b$, or $-P(=O)OR_aOR_b$, C_{1-12} alkyl, C_{2-12} alkenyl, C_{2-12} alkynyl, C_{6-12} aryl, C_{7-16} aralkyl, 5-12 membered heteroaryl, 6-18 membered heteroaralkyl, 3-12 membered heterocycle, or 4-18 membered heterocycle-alkyl; and

R^{12} is halogen, $-OR_a$, oxo, $-NR_aR_b$, $=NO-R_c$, $-C(=O)OR_a$, $-C(O)NR_aR_b$, $-C(=O)OH$, $-C(=O)R_a$, $-C(=NOR_c)R_a$, $-C(=NR_c)NR_aR_b$, $-NR_dC(=O)NR_aR_b$, $-NR_bC(=O)R_a$, $-NR_dC(=NR_c)NR_aR_b$, $-NR_bC(=O)OR_a$, $-OC(=O)NR_aR_b$, $-OC(=O)R_a$, $-OC(=O)OR_a$, hydroxyl, nitro, azido, cyano, $-S(O)_{0-3}R_a$, $-SO_2NR_aR_b$, $-NR_bSO_2R_a$, $-NR_bSO_2NR_aR_b$,

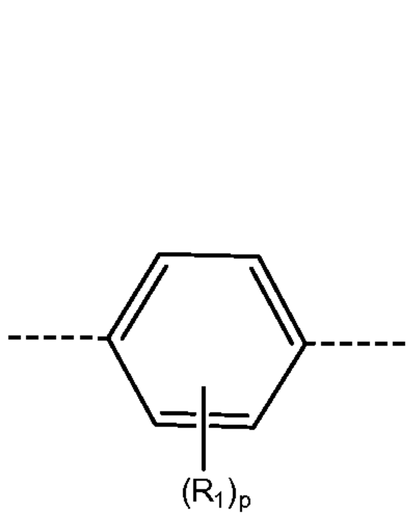
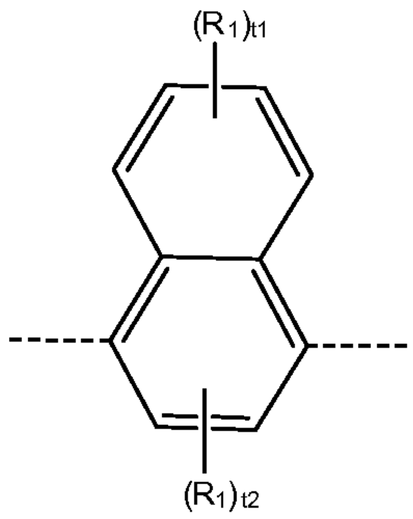
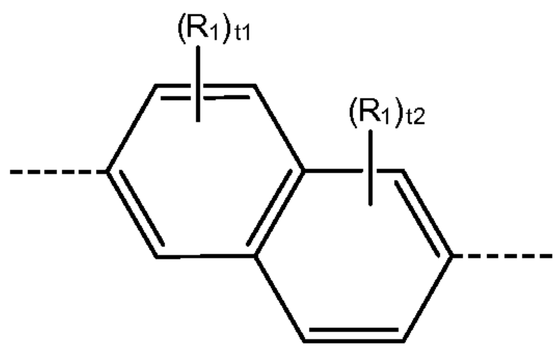
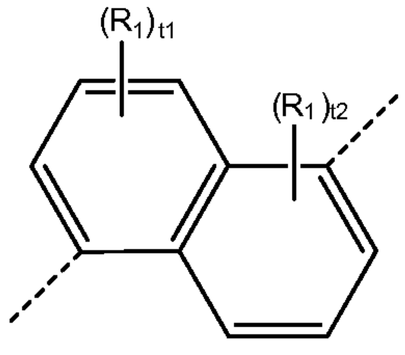
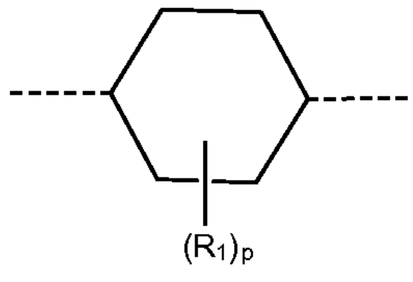
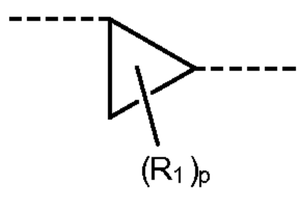
or -P(=O)OR_aOR_b, C_{1-12} alkyl, C_{2-12} alkenyl, C_{2-12} alkynyl, C_{6-12} aryl, C_{7-16} aralkyl, 5-12 membered heteroaryl, 6-18 membered heteroaralkyl, 3-12 membered heterocycle, or 4-18 membered heterocycle-alkyl.

It is to be understood that unless sepcifcally stated otherwise, each of the further embodiments disclosed herein for the variables A, B, B', R_1, p, q, R_2, $R_{2'}$, s, u, R_3, $R_{3'}$, R_4, $R_{4'}$, m, n, R_5, $R_{5'}$, X, Y, R_a, R_b, R_c, R_d, R_{10}, R_{11}, and R_{12}, applies to any and all of the structural formulas in which the variable apprears.

In accordance with a further embodiment, each A is independently cyclopropyl, cyclohexyl, pyrrolidinyl, pyrazolidinyl, imidazolidinyl, piperazinyl, piperadinyl, phenyl, naphthalenyl, thienyl, furanyl, pyrrolyl, pyrazolyl, imidazolyl, thiazolyl, thiadiazolyl, oxazolyl, oxadiazolyl, pyridyl, pyrimidyl, pyrazinyl, pyridazinyl, indolyl, indazolyl, benzimidazolyl, benzoxazolyl, benzodioxolyl, benzothiazolyl, benzothiadiazolyl, dihydrobenzodioxine, thienofuranyl, thienothienyl, thienopyrrolyl, quinolinyl, quinoxalinyl, quinazolinyl, cinnolinyl, or triazolyl; and wherein each A is independently substituted with $(R_1)_p$.

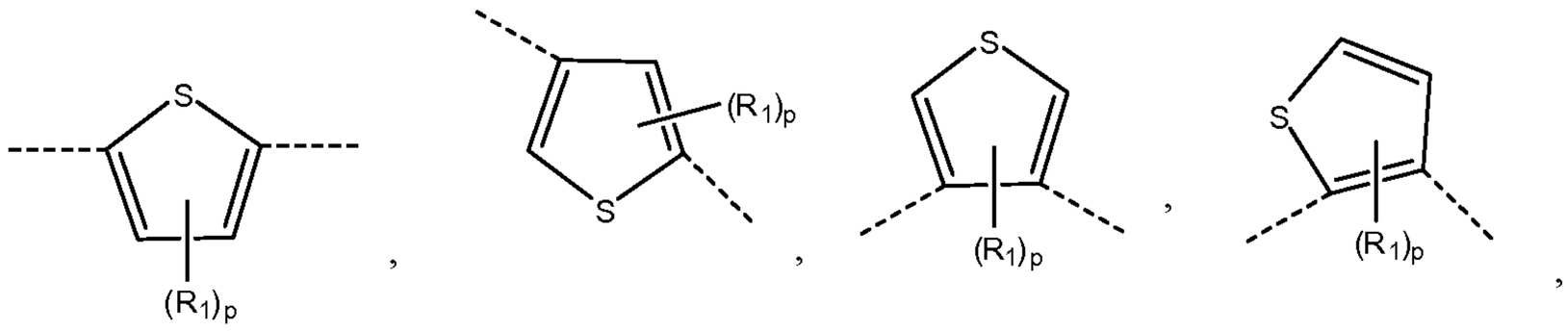
In accordance with a further embodiment, each A is independently cyclopropyl, cyclohexyl, phenyl, or naphthalenyl, wherein each A is independently substituted with $(R_1)_p$.

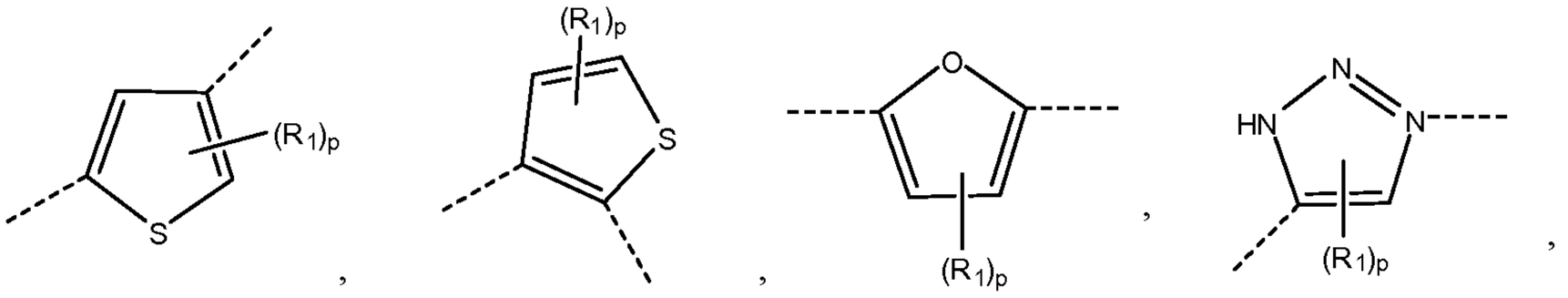
In accordance with a further embodiment, A is independently selected from the group consisting of:

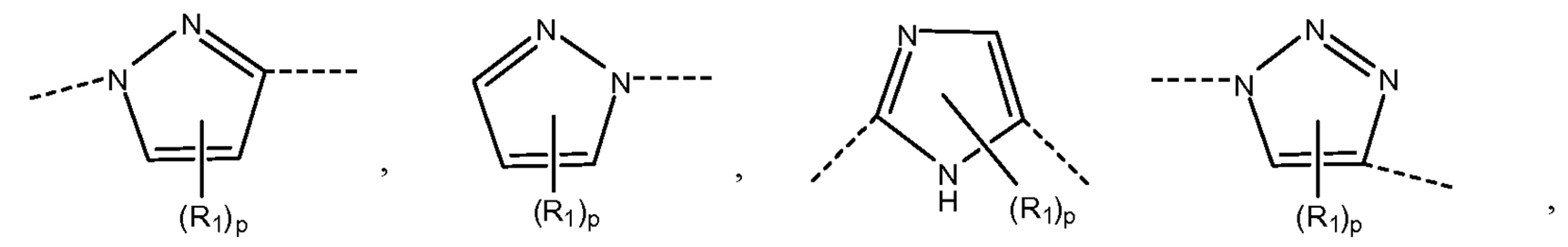







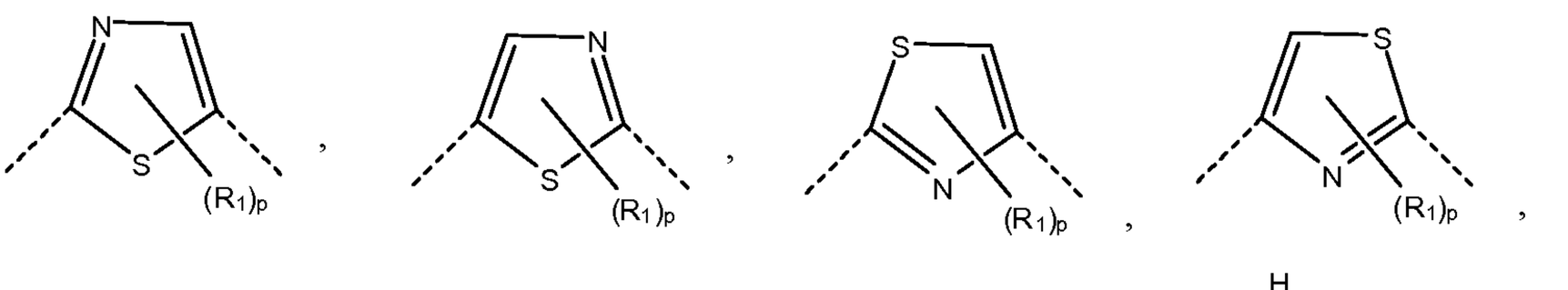
t1 + t2 = p.

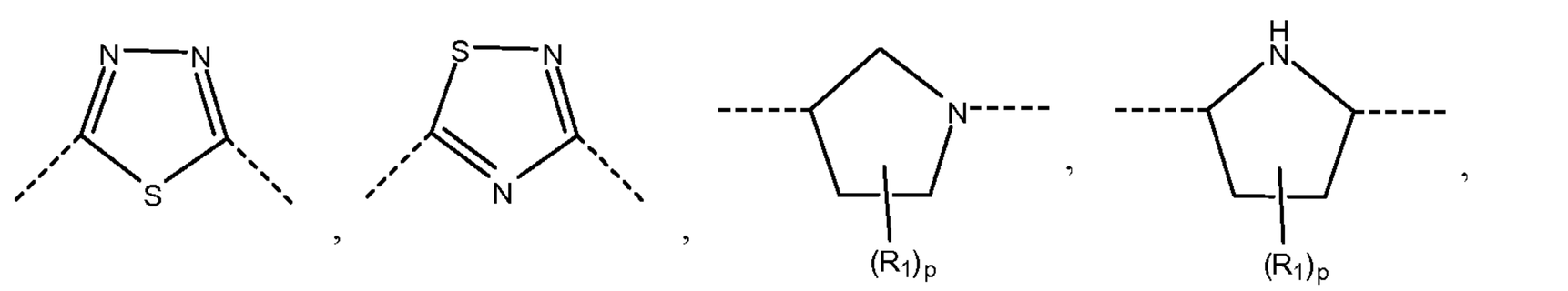
In accordance with a further embodiment, A is independently selected from the group consisting of:

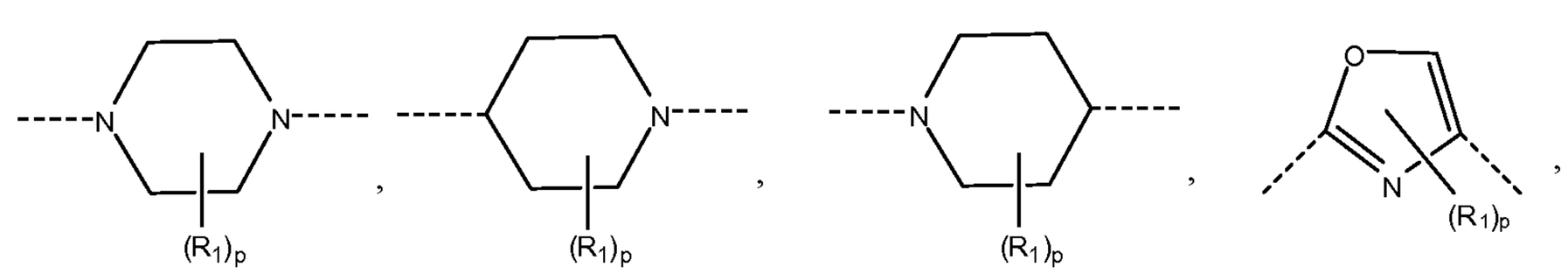


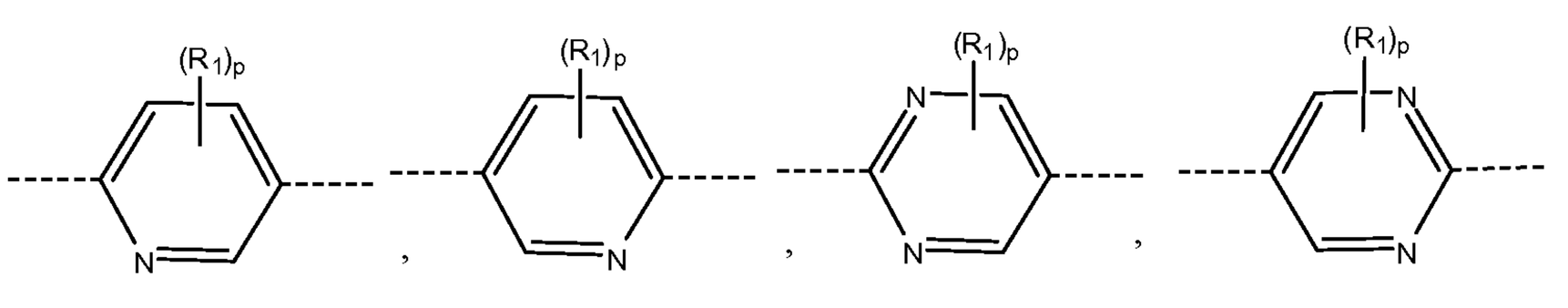


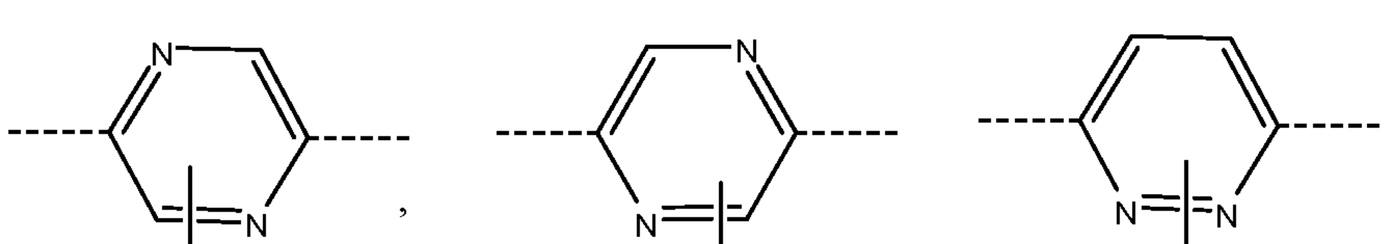


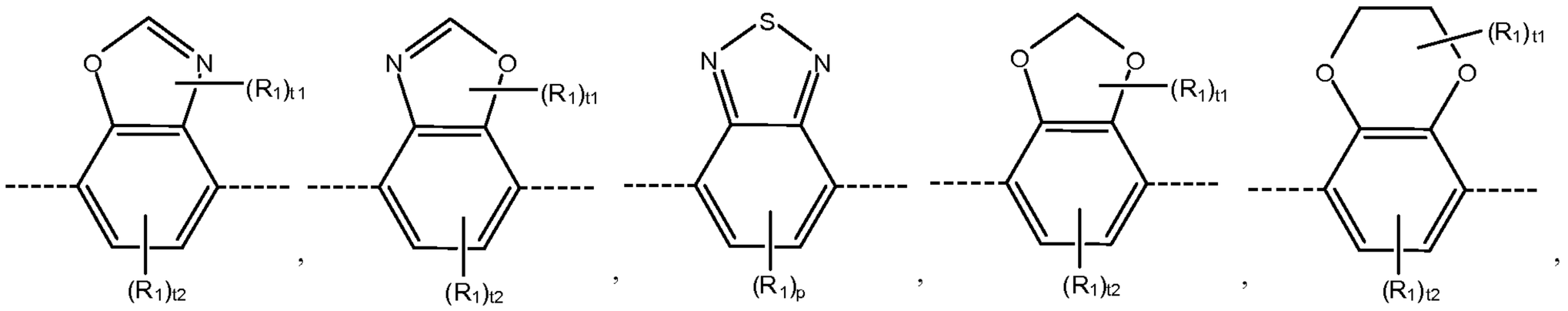


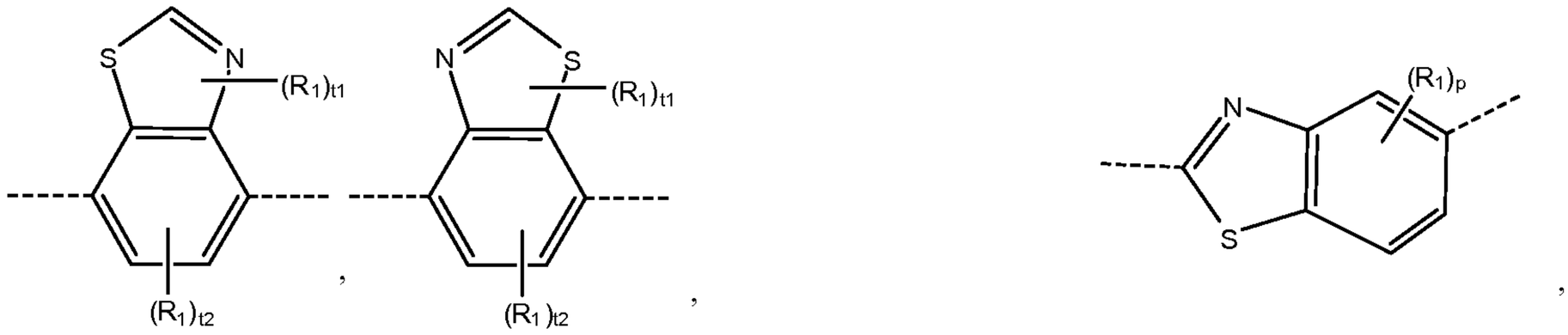


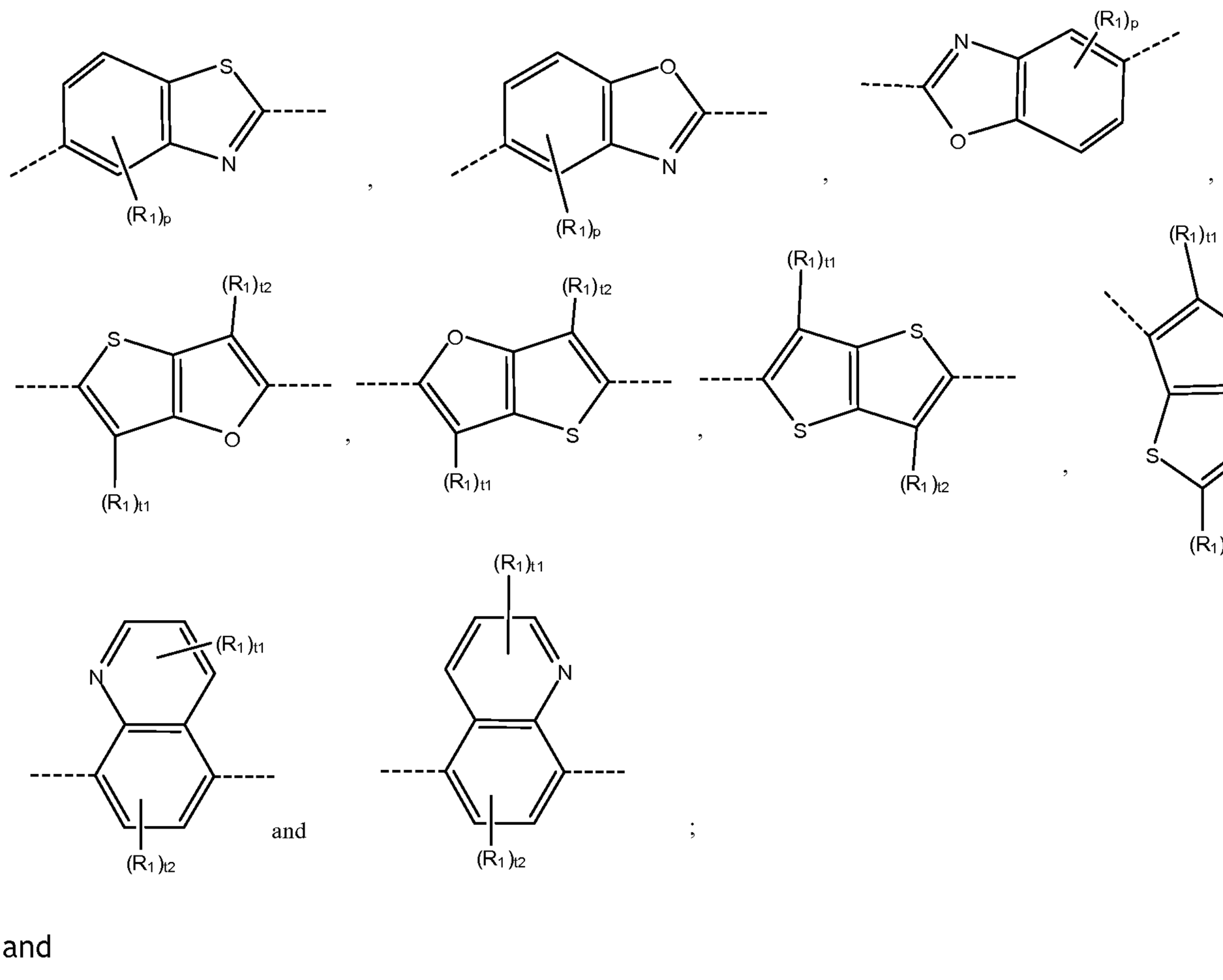




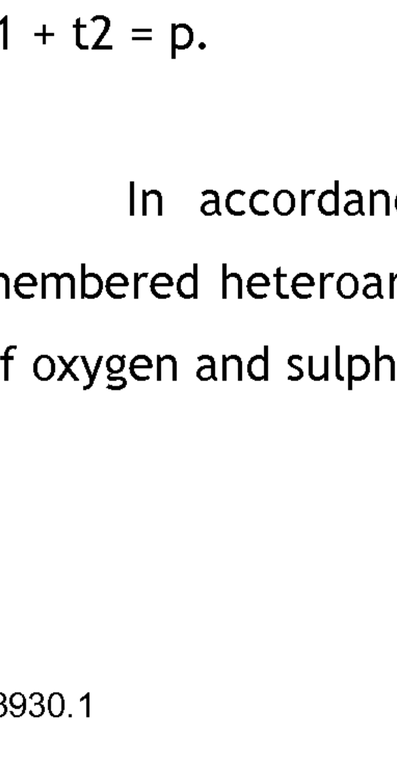


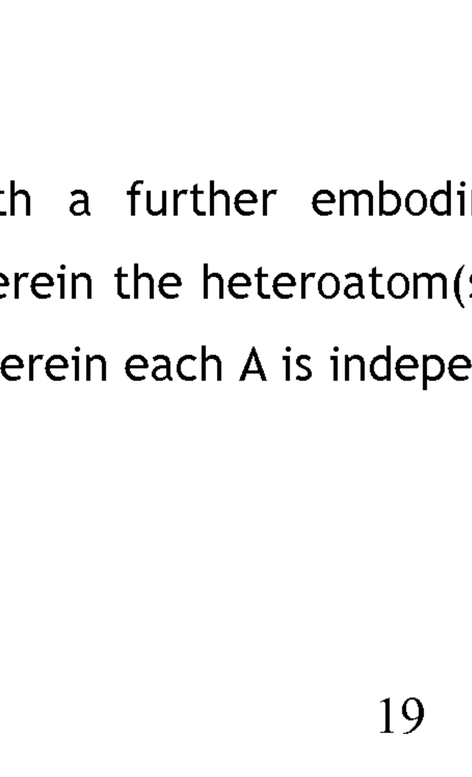






and





;

and

t1 + t2 = p.

In accordance with a further embodiment, each A is independently a 5-12 membered heteroaryl wherein the heteroatom(s) are selected from the group consisting of oxygen and sulphur; wherein each A is independently substituted with $(R_1)_p$.

In accordance with a further embodiment, A is independently piperazinyl, piperadinyl, thienyl, furanyl, pyrrolyl, pyrazolyl, imidazolyl, thiazolyl, oxazolyl, thiadiazolyl, pyrrolidinyl, pyridyl, pyrimidinyl, pyrazinyl, pyridazinyl, benzoxazolyl, benzodioxolyl, benzothiazolyl, benzothiadiazolyl, dihydrobenzodioxinyl, thienofuranyl, thienothienyl, quinolinyl, or triazolyl.

According to a further embodiment, A is phenyl, thiophene, pyridine, pyrimidine, triazole, naphthalene, thieno[3,2-b]thiophene, benzo[c][1,2,5]thiadiazole, quinoline, or benzo[b]thiophene.

According to a further embodiment, A is phenyl, thiophene, thieno[3,2-b]thiophene, pyridine, pyrimidine, naphthyl, benzo[1,3]dioxole, benzooxazole, or triazole.

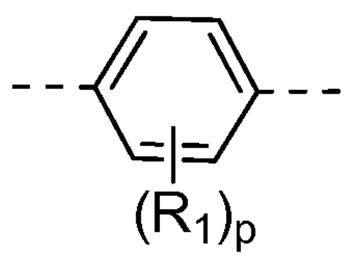
According to a further embodiment, A is phenyl, thiophene, thieno[3,2-b]thiophene, naphtyl, benzo[1,3]dioxole, or benzooxazole.

According to a further embodiment, A is phenyl, thiophene, pyridine, pyrimidine, or triazole.

According to a further embodiment, A is phenyl or thieno[3,2-b]thiophene.

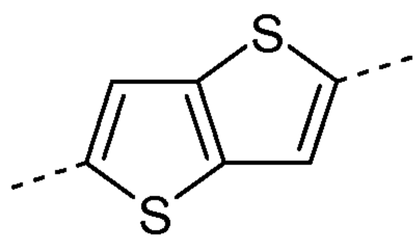
According to a further embodiment, A is phenyl or thiophene.

In accordance with a further embodiment, A is:

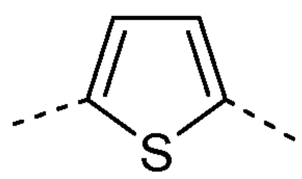


.

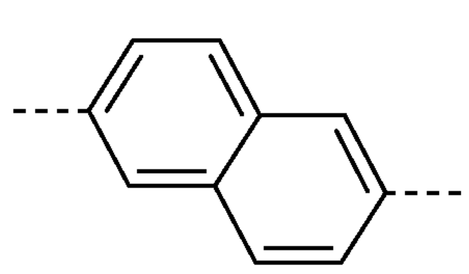
According to a further embodiment, A is



According to a further embodiment, A is

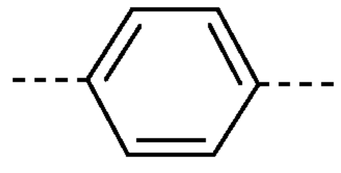


According to a further embodiment, A is



.

According to a further embodiment, A is



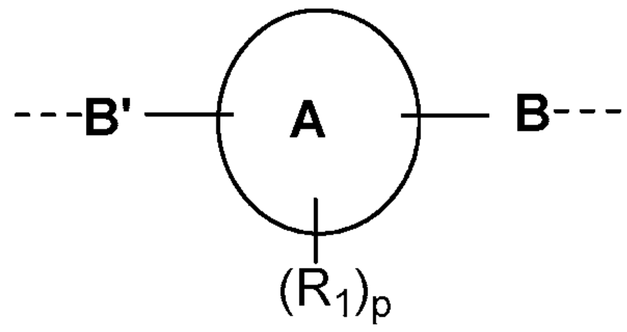
.

According to a further embodiment, A in formula (I), (II), (III), (IV) or (V) is a bond.

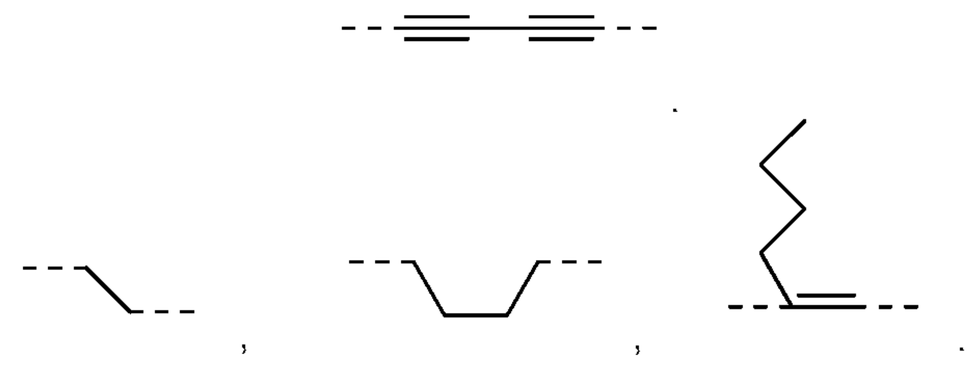
According to a further embodiment, B and B' in formula (IA), (IIA), (IIIA), (IIIB), (IVA), or (VA) are independently absent, C_{1-6} alkyl or C_{2-6} alkynyl.

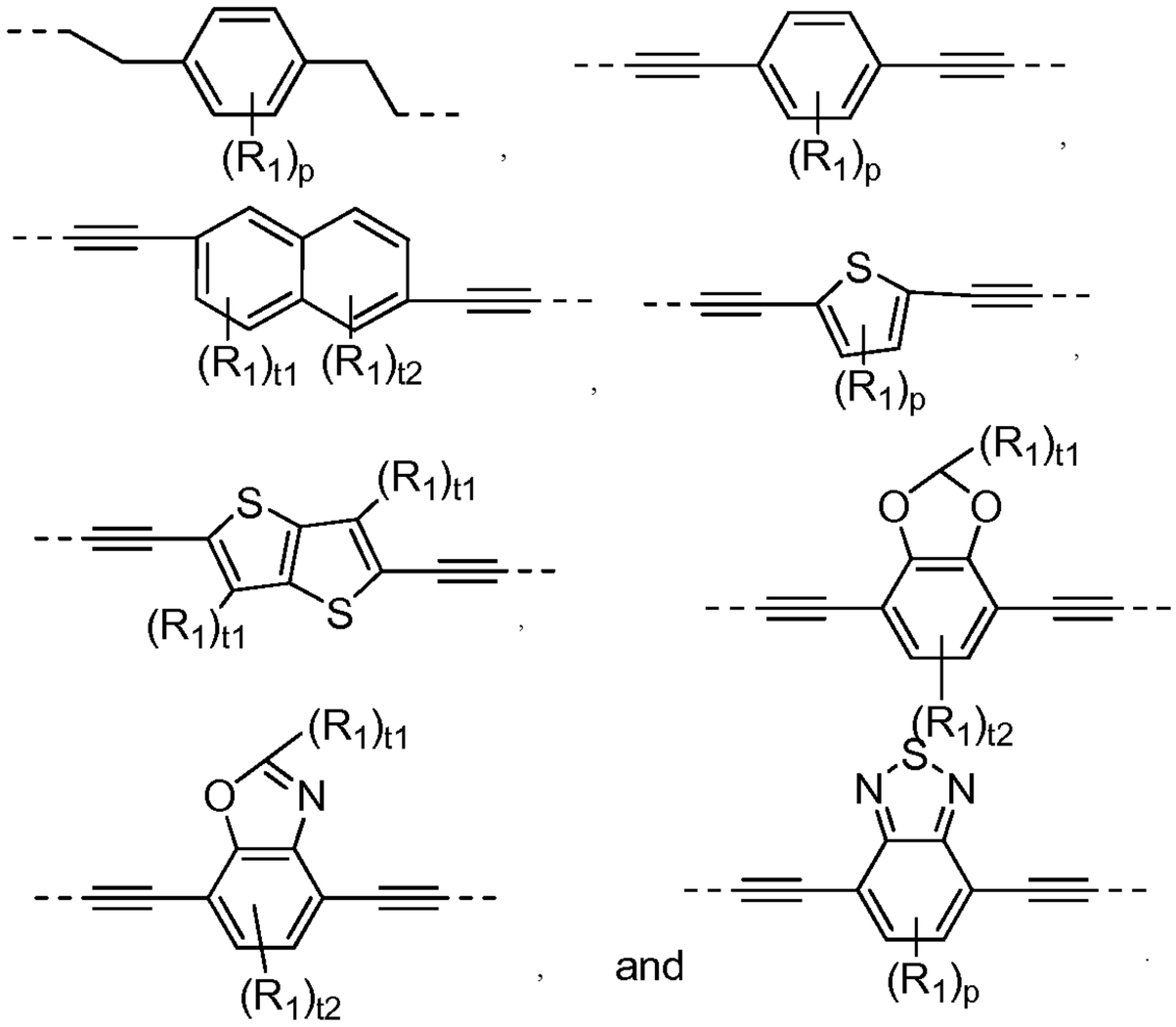
According to a further embodiment, B and B' in formula (IA), (IIA), (IIIA), (IIIB), (IVA), or (VA) are independently absent, $-(CH_2)_2-$ or $-(C\equiv C)-$.

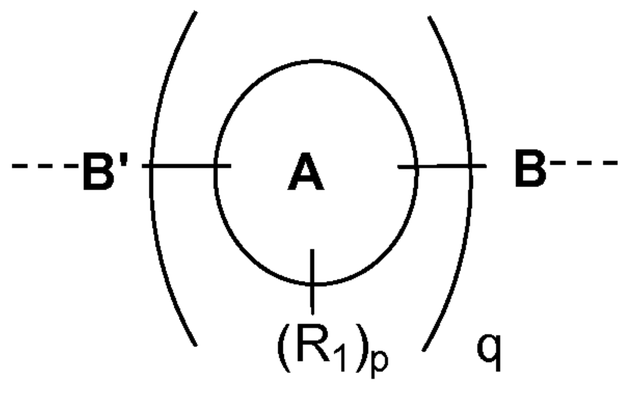
According to a further embodiment, B and B' in formula (IA), (IIA), (IIIA), (IIIB), (IVA), or (VA) are independently absent or $-(C\equiv C)-$.

According to a further embodiment, 

in formula (I), (II), (III), (IV) or (V) is selected from the group consisting of:

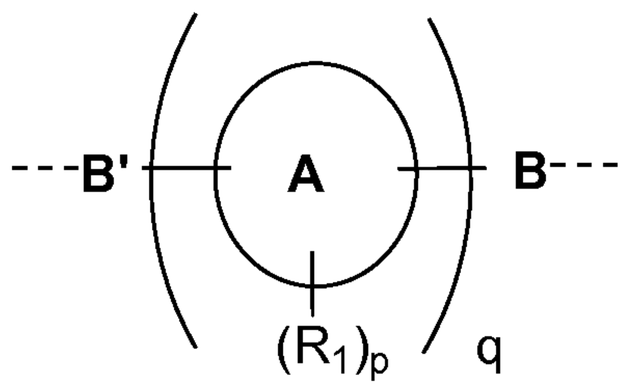




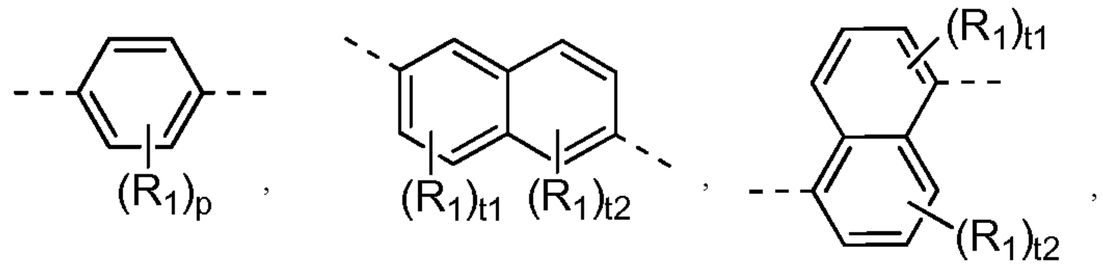


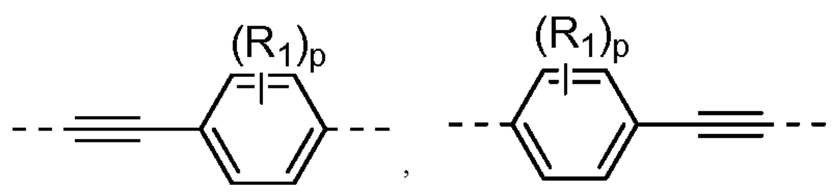
According to a further embodiment, in formula (IA), (IIA), (IIIA), (IIIB), (IVA), or (VA) is selected from the group consisting of:

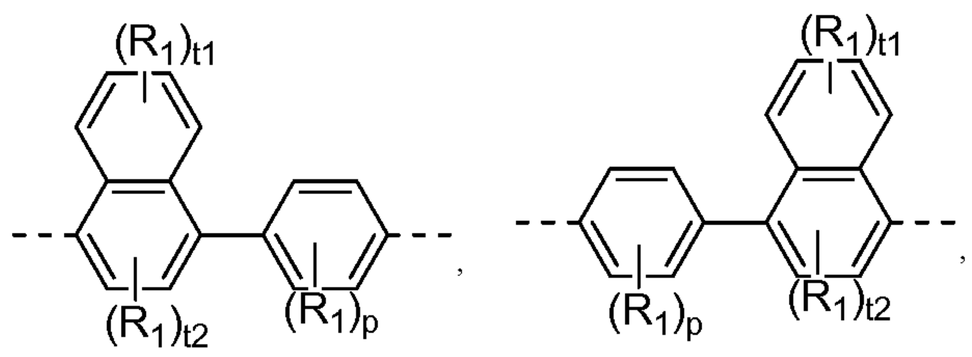


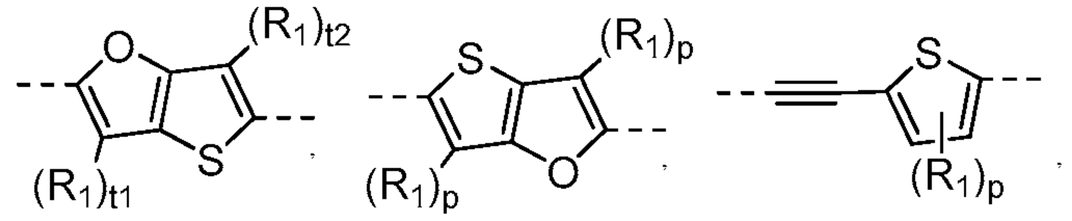
According to a further embodiment, 

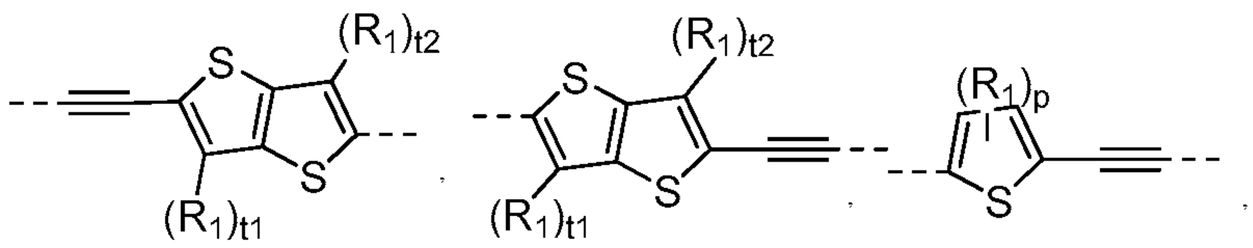
in formula (IA), (IIA), (IIIA), (IIIB), (IVA), or (VA) is selected from the group consisting of:

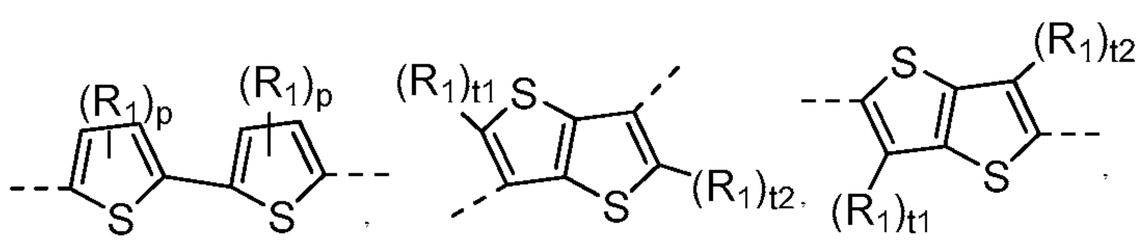


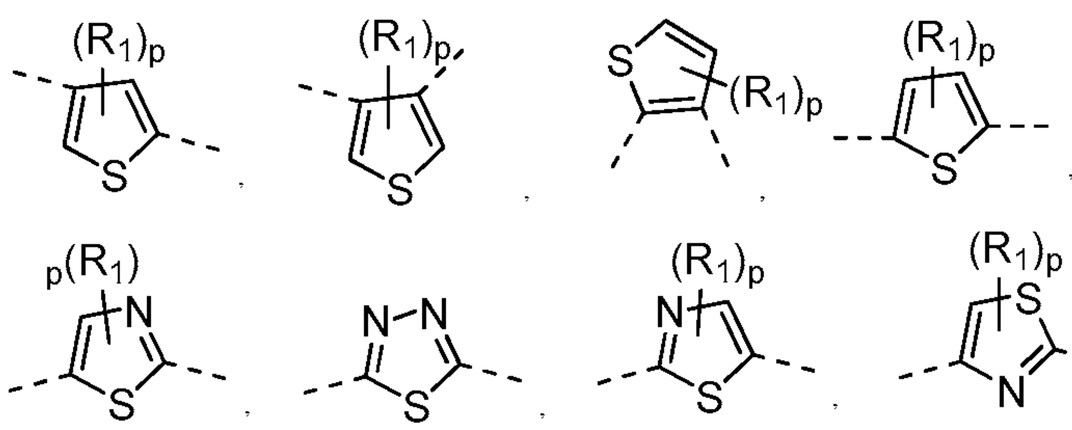


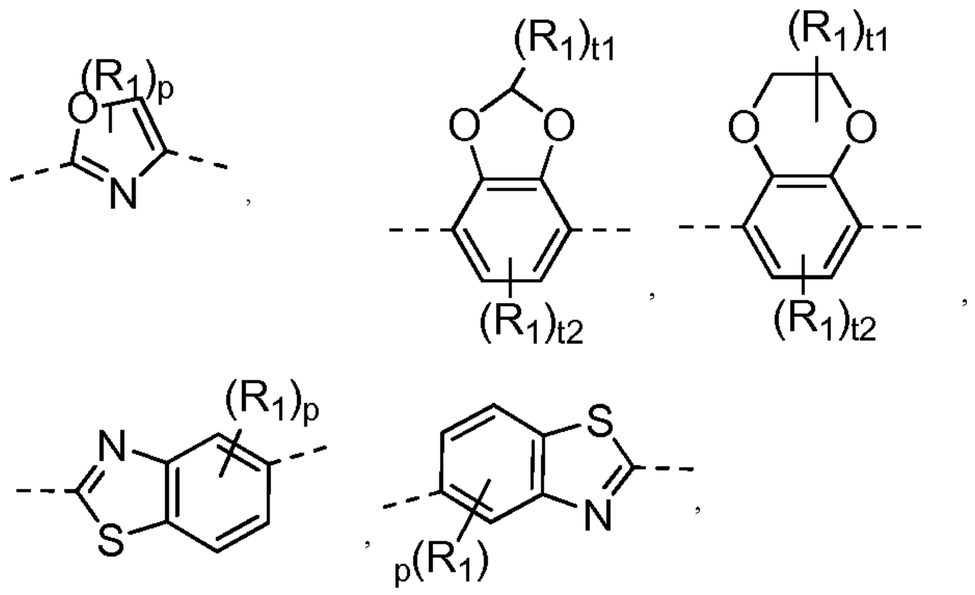


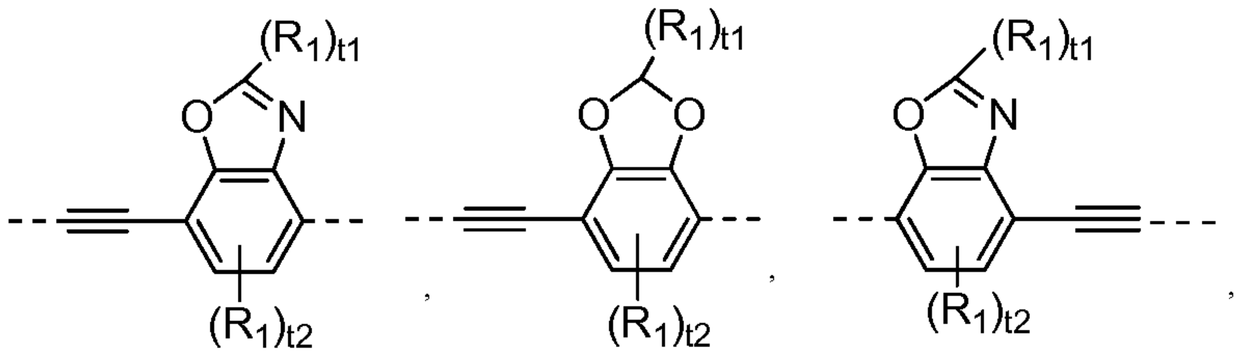


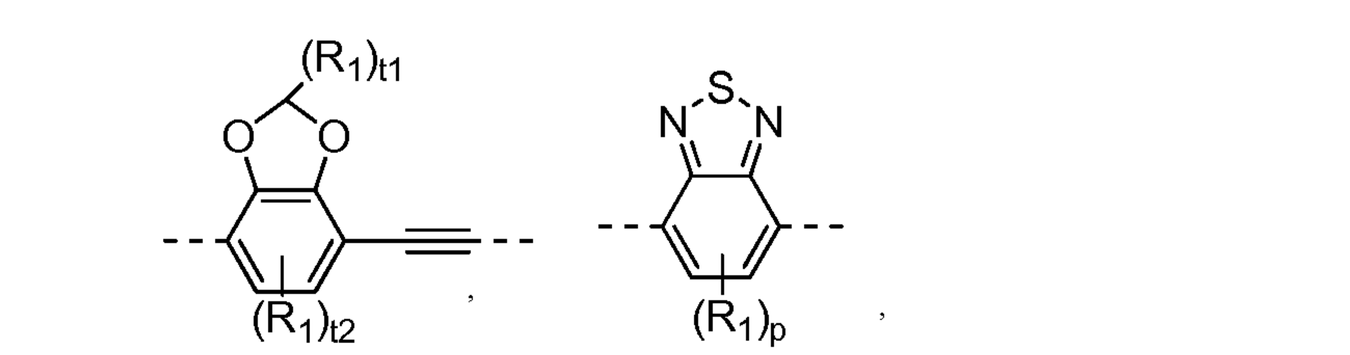


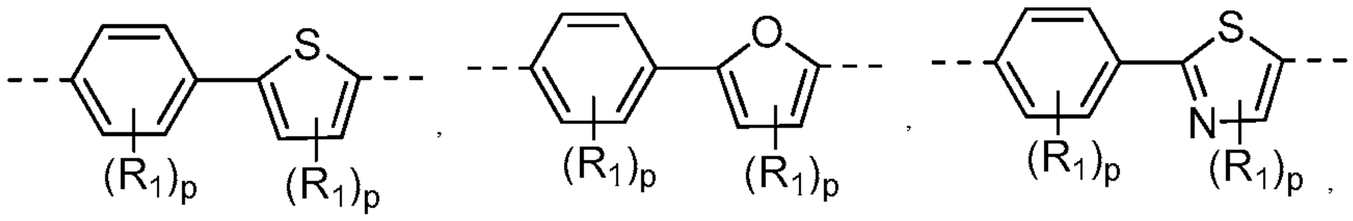




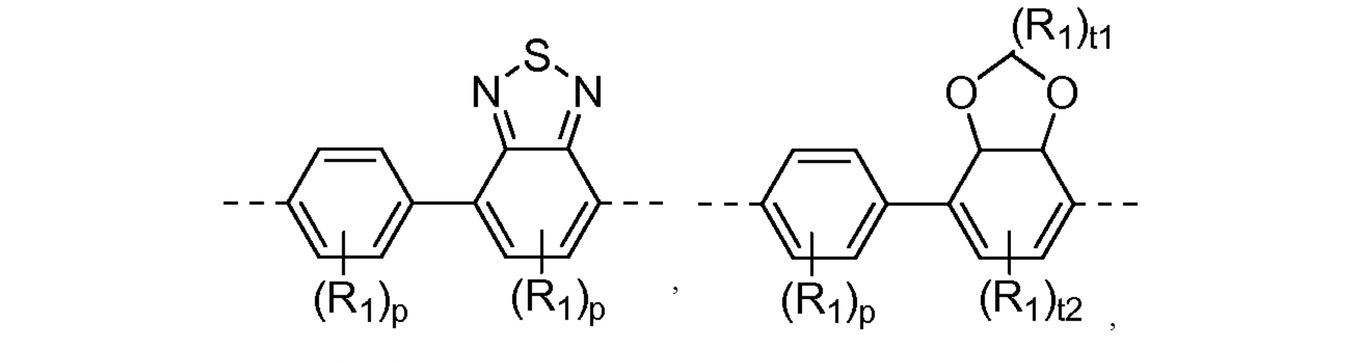


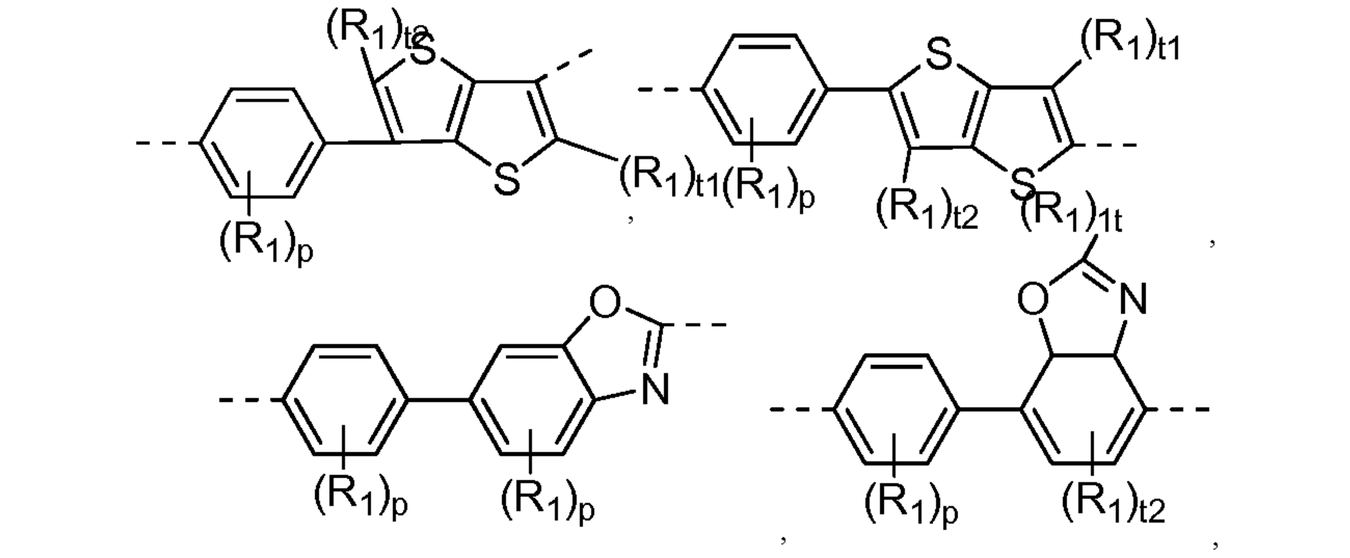


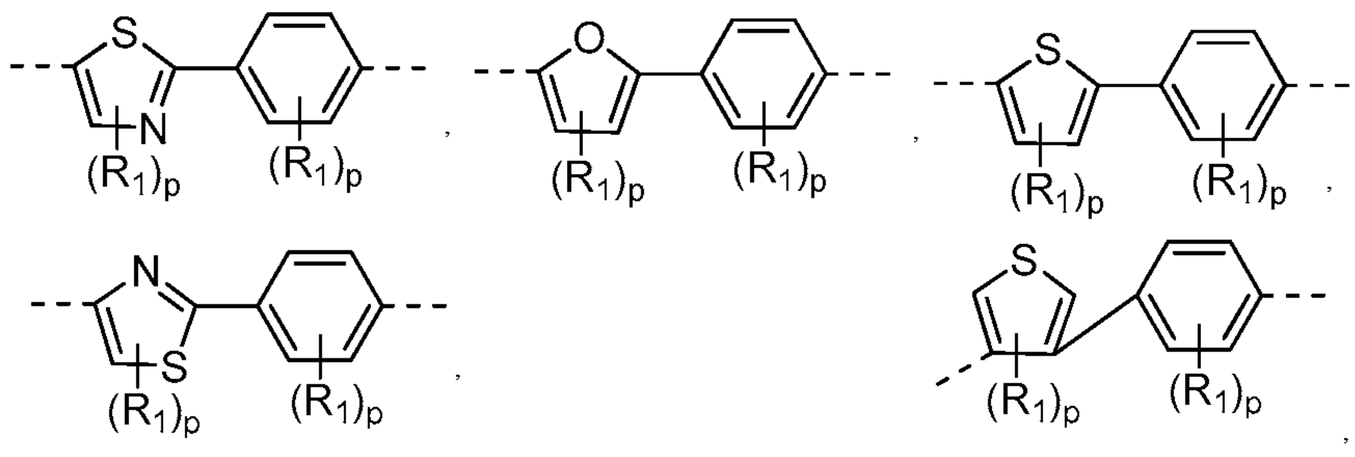


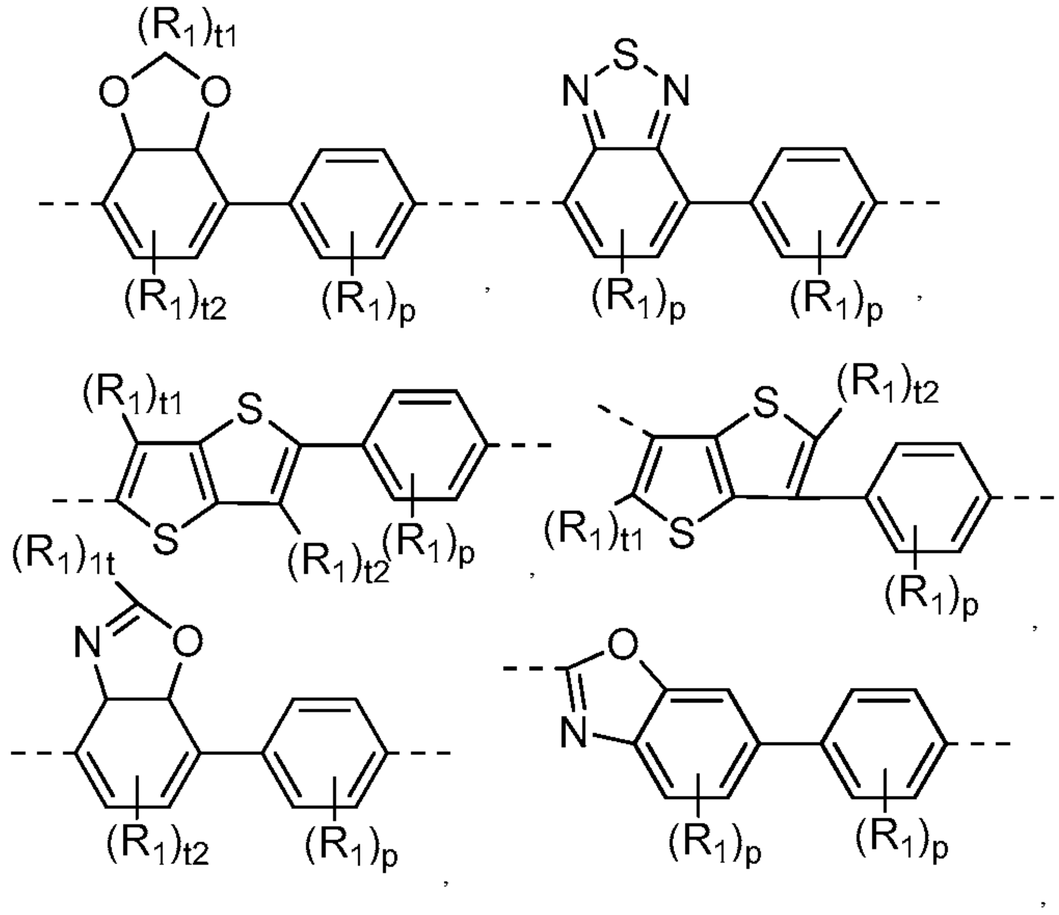


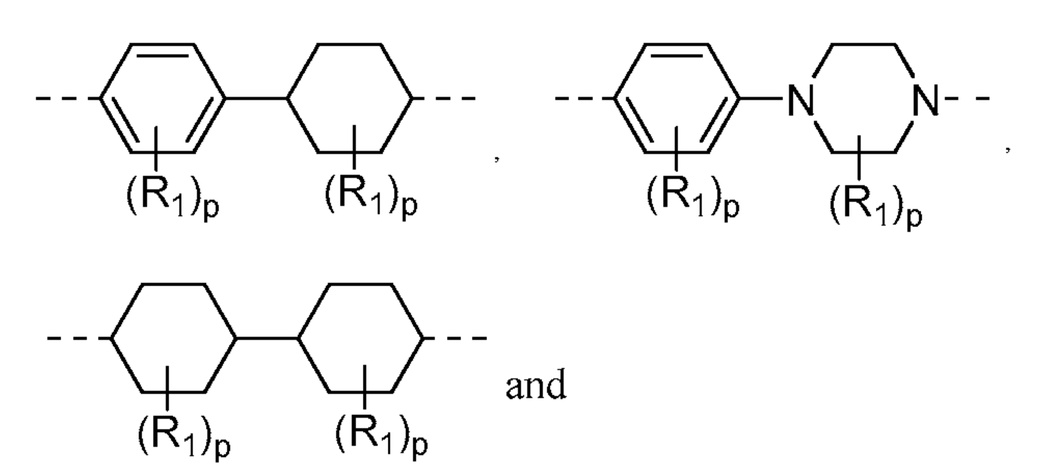




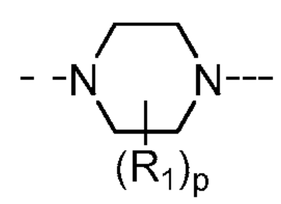








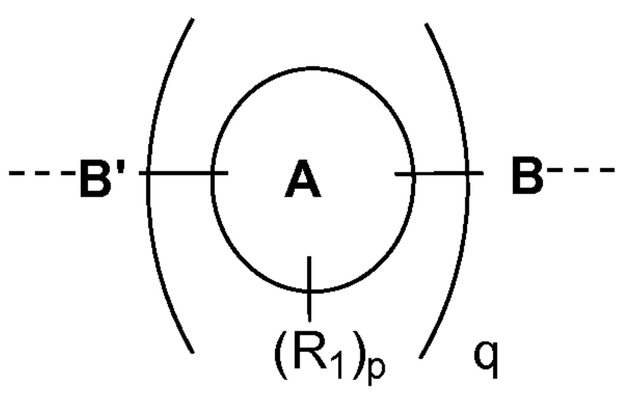
and

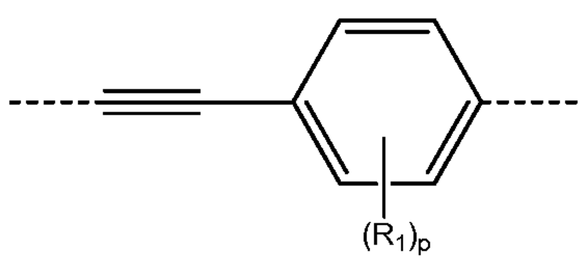
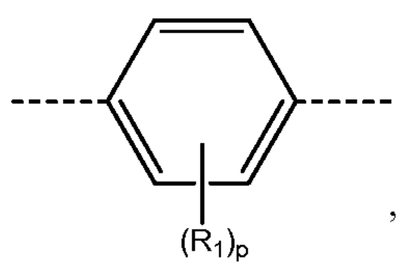
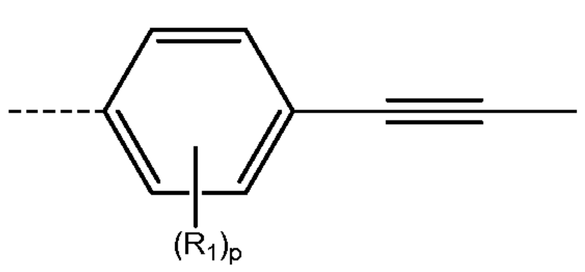
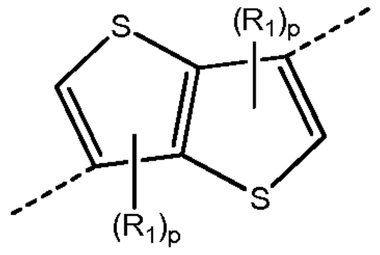
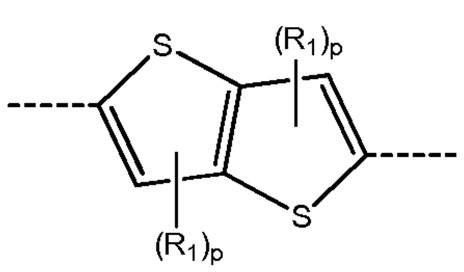
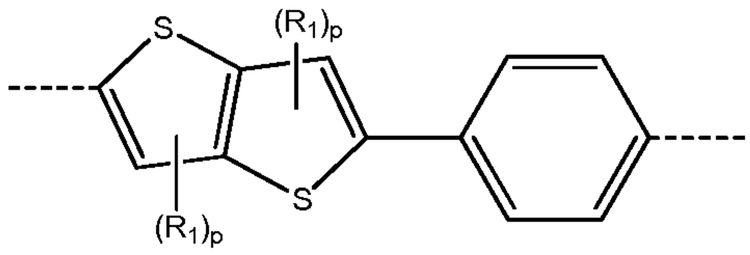
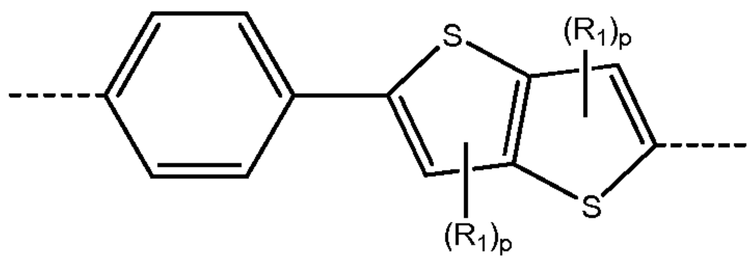
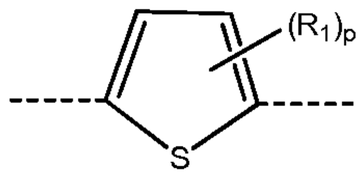


;

and

t1 + t2 = p.

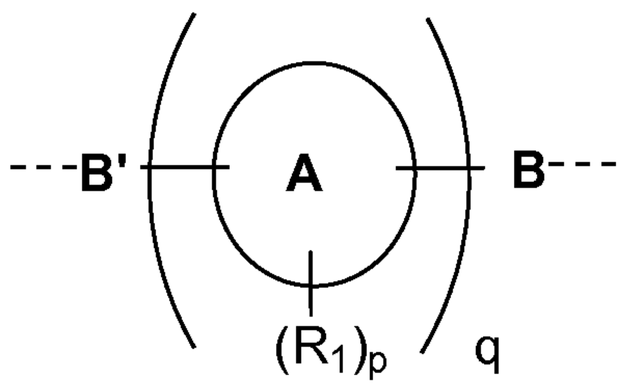
According to a further embodiment,  in formula (IA), (IIA), (IIIA), (IIIB), (IVA), or (VA) is selected from the group consisting of:

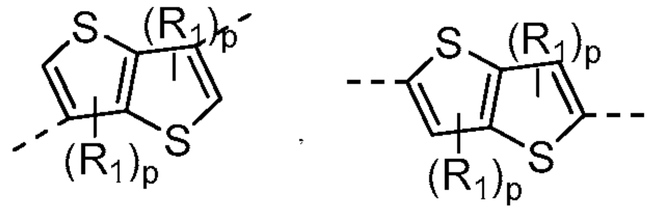







and

;

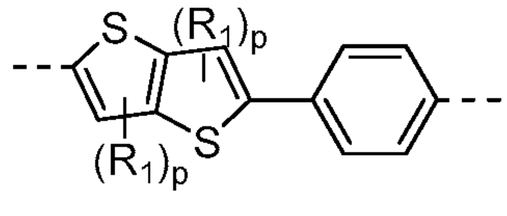
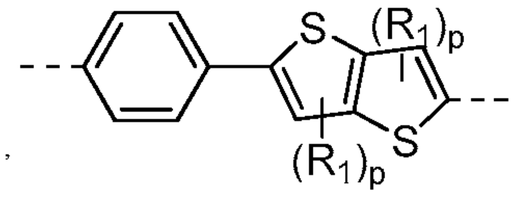
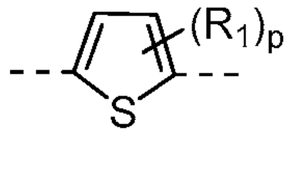
an

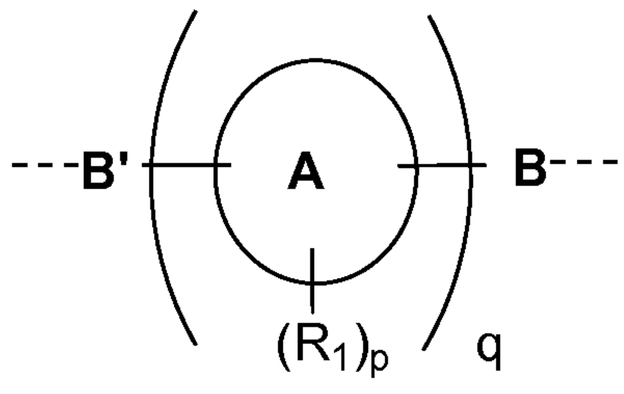
d

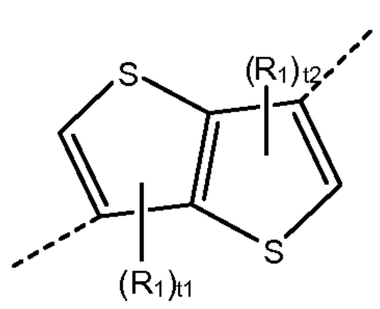
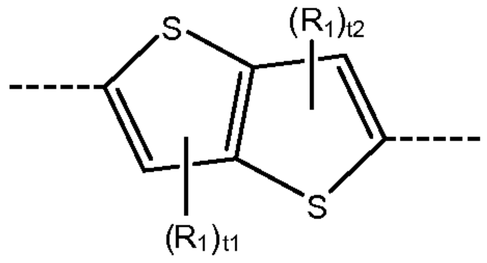
t1 + t2 = p.

According to a further embodiment,  in formula (IA), (IIA), (IIIA), (IIIB), (IVA), or (VA) is selected from the group consisting of:

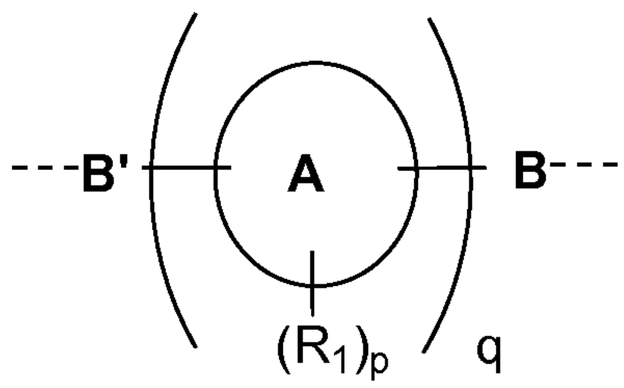


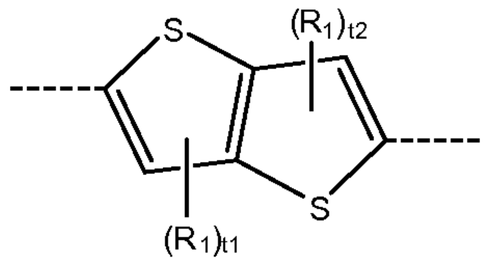


and

;

According to a further embodiment,  in formula (IA), (IIA), (IIIA), (IIIB), (IVA), or (VA) is selected from the group consisting of:

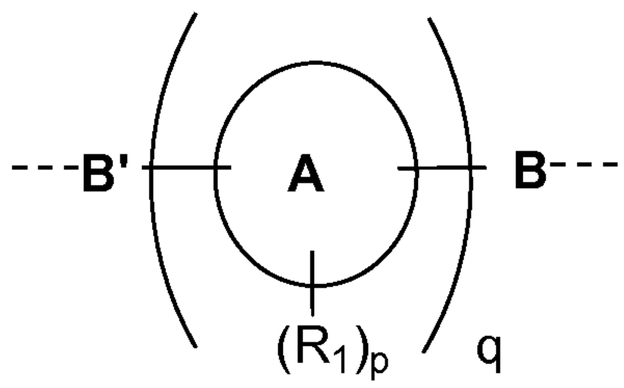
 and  ; and

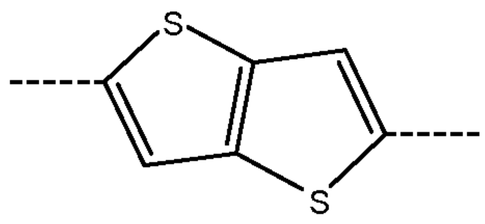
t1 + t2 = p.

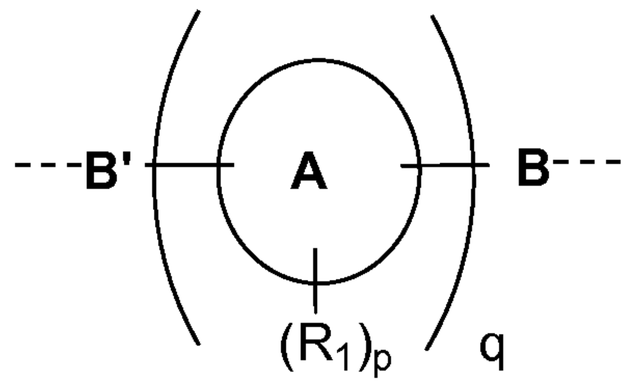
According to a further embodiment,  in formula (IA), (IIA), (IIIA), (IIIB), (IVA), or (VA) is:

 ; and

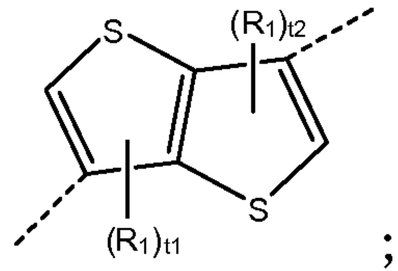
t1 + t2 = p.

According to a further embodiment,  in formula (IA), (IIA), (IIIA), (IIIB), (IVA), or (VA) is:

 .

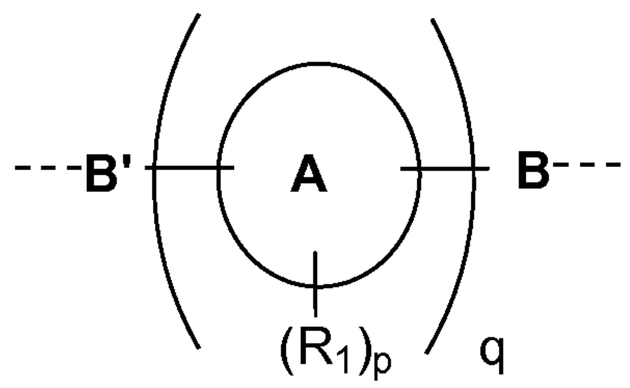
According to a further embodiment, 

in formula (IA), (IIA), (IIIA), (IIIB), (IVA), or (VA) is:

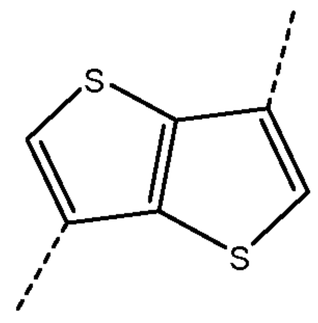


; and

t1 + t2 = p.

According to a further embodiment, 

in formula (IA), (IIA), (IIIA), (IIIB), (IVA), or (VA) is:



.

According to a further embodiment, B and B' are each independently C_{2-6} alkynyl or C_{1-6} alkyl.

According to a further embodiment, B and B' are each independently -(C≡C)- or -$(CH_2)_2$-.

According to a further embodiment, B and B' are each -$(CH_2)_2$-.

According to a further embodiment, B and B' are each -(C≡C)-.

According to a further embodiment, m or n is 2.

According to a further embodiment, m or n is 1.

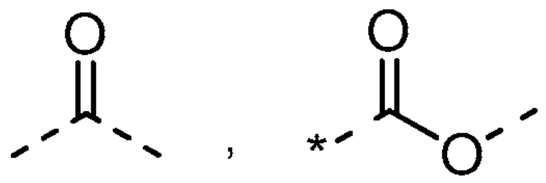
According to a further embodiment, m and n are 1.

According to a further embodiment, one of m or n is 1 and the other of m and n are independently 1 or 2.

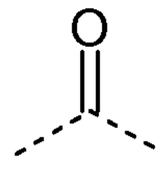
According to a further embodiment, p is 2.

According to a further embodiment, p is 1.

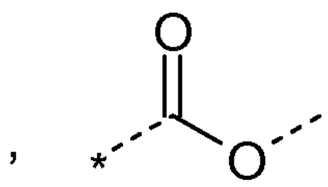
According to a further embodiment, X and Y are


, or a bond.

According to a further embodiment, X and Y are each

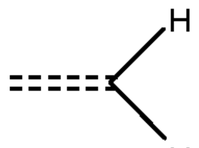
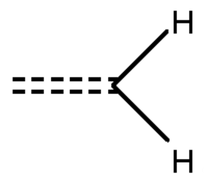

.

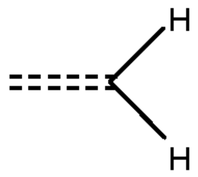
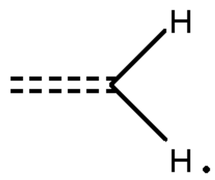
According to a further embodiment, X and Y are each

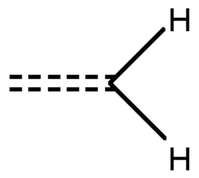
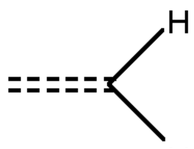

,

wherein the bond marked with an asterisk (*) indicates the attachment to the nitrogen.

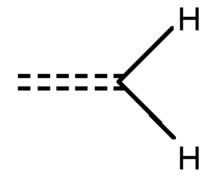
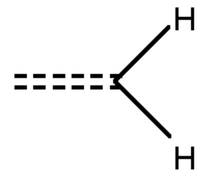
According to a further embodiment, R_4 and R_4' in formula (I), (IA), (II), (IIA), or (IIIB) are each independently halogen, $-NR_aR_b$, $-C(O)NR_aR_b$, $-(CH_2)_{1-6}OH$, C_{1-6} alkyl, C_{1-6} halogenated alkyl, hydroxyl, C_{6-14} aryl, or C_{1-6} alkoxy; wherein two occurrence of R_4 can be taken together with the atoms to which they are attached to form a C_{1-6} alkenyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{10}, a 3-7 cycloalkyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{11} or a 4-7 membered heterocycle which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{12}; wherein two occurrence of R_4' can be taken together with the atoms to which they are attached to form a C_{1-6} alkenyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{10}, a 3-7 cycloalkyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{11} or a 4-7 membered heterocycle which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{12}.

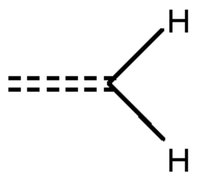
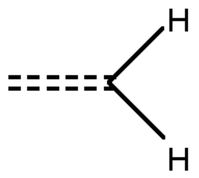
According to a further embodiment, R_4 and R_4' in formula (I), (IA), (II), or (IIA) are each independently halogen, methyl, ethyl, isopropyl, di-fluoromethyl, di-fluoroethyl, trifluoromethyl, tri-fluoroethyl, -CH_2OH, -NR_aN_b, *t*-butoxy-, or hydroxyl; or two R_4 groups together with the atoms to which they are attached form fused cyclopropyl, spiro cyclopropyl or , two R_4' groups together with the atoms to which they are attached form fused cyclopropyl, spiro cyclopropyl or .

According to a further embodiment, R_4 and R_4' in formula (I), (IA), (II), (IIA), or (IIIB) are each independently halogen, methyl, ethyl, isopropyl, di-fluoromethyl, di-fluoroethyl, trifluoromethyl, tri-fluoroethyl, -CH_2OH, -NR_aN_b, *t*-butoxy-, or hydroxyl; or two R_4 groups together with the atoms to which they are attached form spiro cyclopropyl or , two R_4' groups together with the atoms to which they are attached form spiro cyclopropyl or .

According to a further embodiment, R_4 and R_4' in formula (I), (IA), (II), (IIA), or (IIIB) are each independently methyl, ethyl, isopropyl, di-fluoromethyl, di-fluoroethyl, trifluoromethyl, tri-fluoroethyl, -CH_2OH, -NR_aN_b or *t*-butoxy-; or two R_4 groups together with the atoms to which they are attached form spiro cyclopropyl or , two R_4' groups together with the atoms to which they are attached form spiro cyclopropyl or .

According to a further embodiment, R_4 and R_4' in formula (I), (IA), (II), (IIA), (IIIA), (IIIB), (IVA), or (VA) are each independently methyl, ethyl, isopropyl, di-fluoromethyl, di-fluoroethyl, trifluoromethyl, tri-fluoroethyl, -CH_2OH, -NR_aN_b or *t*-butoxy-; or two R_4

groups together with the atoms to which they are attached form , or two R_4' groups together with the atoms to which they are attached form .

According to a further embodiment, in formula (I), (IA), (II), (IIA), (IIIA), (IIIB), (IVA), or (VA) two R_4 groups together with the atoms to which they are attached form , and two R_4' groups together with the atoms to which they are attached form .

According to a further embodiment, R_4 and R_4' in formula (I), (IA), (II), or (IIA) are each independently methyl, ethyl, methoxy, di-fluoromethyl, trifluoromethyl, or two R_4 groups together with the atoms to which they are attached form fused cyclopropyl or spiro cyclopropyl or two R_4' groups together with the atoms to which they are attached form fused cyclopropyl or spiro cyclopropyl.

According to a further embodiment, R_4 and R_4' in formula (I), (IA), (II), (IIA), or (IIIB) are each independently methyl, ethyl, methoxy, di-fluoromethyl, trifluoromethyl, or two R_4 groups together with the atoms to which they are attached form spiro cyclopropyl or two R_4' groups together with the atoms to which they are attached form spiro cyclopropyl.

According to a further embodiment, R_4 and R_4' are each independently H, halogen, $C_{1\text{-}6}$ alkyl, hydroxyl, phenyl, or $C_{1\text{-}4}$ alkoxy.

According to a further embodiment, R_4 and R_4' are each independently -NR_aR_b, -$C(O)NR_aR_b$, -$(CH_2)_{1\text{-}6}OH$, $C_{1\text{-}6}$ alkyl, $C_{1\text{-}6}$ halogenated alkyl, $C_{6\text{-}14}$ aryl, or $C_{1\text{-}6}$ alkoxy.

According to a further embodiment, R_4 and R_4' are each independently halogen, methyl, ethyl, isopropyl, di-fluoromethyl, di-fluoroethyl, trifluoromethyl, tri-fluoroethyl, -CH_2OH, -NR_aN_b, *t*-butoxy-, or hydroxyl.

According to a further embodiment, R_4 and R_4' are each independently halogen, methyl, ethyl, isopropyl, di-fluoromethyl, di-fluoroethyl, trifluoromethyl, tri-fluoroethyl, -CH_2OH, *t*-butoxy-, or hydroxyl.

According to a further embodiment, R_4 and R_4' are each independently methyl, ethyl, isopropyl, di-fluoromethyl, di-fluoroethyl, trifluoromethyl, tri-fluoroethyl, -CH_2OH, -NR_aN_b, or *t*-butoxy.

According to a further embodiment, R_4 and R_4' are each independently methyl, ethyl, isopropyl, di-fluoromethyl, di-fluoroethyl, trifluoromethyl, tri-fluoroethyl, or -CH_2OH.

According to a further embodiment, R_4 and R_4' are each independently methyl, ethyl, methoxy, di-fluoromethyl, or trifluoromethyl.

According to a further embodiment, R_4 and R_4' are each independently H, halogen, methyl, ethyl, *t*-butoxy-, or hydroxyl.

According to a further embodiment, R_4 and R_4' are each H.

According to a further embodiment, R_4 and R_4' are each fluoro.

According to a further embodiment, R_4 and R_4' are $C_{1\text{-}6}$ alkyl.

According to a further embodiment, R_4 and R_4' are each $C_{1\text{-}6}$ haloalkyl.

According to a further embodiment, R_4 and R_4' are methyl or ethyl.

According to a further embodiment, R_4 and R_4' are each methyl.

According to a further embodiment, R_4 and R_4' are each ethyl.

According to a further embodiment, R_4 and R_4' are each methoxy.

According to a further embodiment, R_4 and R_4' are each independently halogen, $C_{1\text{-}6}$ alkyl, or $C_{1\text{-}6}$ alkoxy.

According to a further embodiment, one of R_4 and R_4' is hydrogen and the other of R_4 and R_4' is C_{1-6} alkyl.

According to a further embodiment, R_3 and R_3' are H or methyl.

According to a further embodiment, R_3 and R_3' are each H.

According to a further embodiment, R_3 and R_3' are methyl.

According to a further embodiment, R_1 is H, halogen, $-OR_a$, $-NR_aR_b$, $-C(=O)OR_a$, $-C(O)NR_aR_b$, $-C(=O)OH$, $-C(=O)R_a$, $-C(=NOR_c)R_a$, $-C(=NR_c)NR_aR_b$, $-NR_dC(=O)NR_aR_b$, $-NR_bC(=O)R_a$, $-NR_dC(=NR_c)NR_aR_b$, $-NR_bC(=O)OR_a$, $-OC(=O)NR_aR_b$, $-OC(=O)R_a$, $-OC(=O)OR_a$, hydroxyl, nitro, azido, cyano, $-S(O)_{0-3}R_a$, $-SO_2NR_aR_b$, $-NR_bSO_2R_a$, $-NR_bSO_2NR_aR_b$, $-P(=O)OR_aOR_b$, C_{1-6} alkyl, C_{2-6} alkenyl, C_{2-6} alkynyl, or C_{1-6} halogenated alkyl or any two occurrences of R_1 can be taken together with the atoms to which they are attached to form a 5-7 cycloalkyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{10} or a 5-7 membered heterocycle which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{12}.

According to a further embodiment, R_1 is H, halogen, $-OR_a$, $-NR_aR_b$, $-C(=O)OR_a$, $-C(O)NR_aR_b$, $-C(=O)OH$, $-NR_bC(=O)R_a$, -hydroxyl, nitro, cyano, $-S(O)_{0-3}R_a$, C_{1-6} alkyl, C_{2-6} alkenyl, C_{2-6} alkynyl, or C_{1-6} halogenated alkyl.

According to a further embodiment, R_1 is halogen, C_{1-3} alkyl, hydroxyl, cyano, or C_{1-3} alkoxy, or methoxycarbonyl.

According to a further embodiment, R_1 is halogen, C_{1-4} alkyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{10}, $-C(=O)OR_a$, $-C(O)NR_aR_b$, hydroxyl, cyano, or C_{1-3} alkoxy.

According to a further embodiment, R_1 is chloro, fluoro, bromo, methyl, ethyl, propyl, butyl, $-CH_2OH$, difluoromethyl, trifluoromethyl, hydroxyl, cyano, methoxy, or methoxycarbonyl.

According to a further embodiment, R_1 is chloro, fluoro, methyl, hydroxyl, cyano, trifluoromethyl, methoxy, or methoxycarbonyl.

According to a further embodiment, R_1 is halogen, C_{1-3} alkyl, hydroxyl, cyano, or C_{1-3} alkoxy.

According to a further embodiment, R_1 is chloro, fluoro, methyl, hydroxyl, cyano, or methoxy.

According to a further embodiment, R_1 is methyl

According to a further embodiment, R_1 is H.

According to a further embodiment, R_2 and R_2' are each independently H, halogen, C_{1-6} alkyl, $-(CH_2)_{1-3}OH$, $-OR_a$, $-C(=O)OR_a$, $-C(O)NR_aR_b$, $-C(=O)OH$, C_{6-12} aryl, or 5-12 membered heteroaryl, wherein R_a, R_b, R_c, and R_d are each independently H, C_{1-12} alkyl, C_{6-12} aryl, C_{7-16} aralkyl, 5-12 membered heteroaryl, 6-18 membered heteroaralkyl, 3-12 membered heterocycle, or 4-18 membered heterocycle-alkyl.

According to a further embodiment, R_2 and R_2' are each independently H, halogen, C_{1-6} alkyl, $-(CH_2)_{1-3}OH$, $-OR_a$, $-C(=O)OR_a$, $-C(O)NR_aR_b$, $-C(=O)OH$, phenyl, or 5-6 membered heteroaryl, wherein R_a, R_b, R_c, and R_d are each independently H, C_{1-12} alkyl, C_{6-12} aryl, C_{7-16} aralkyl, 5-12 membered heteroaryl, 6-18 membered heteroaralkyl, 3-12 membered heterocycle, or 4-18 membered heterocycle-alkyl.

According to a further embodiment, R_2 and R_2' are each independently H, iodo, methyl, hydroxymethyl, trifluoromethyl, or thienothienyl.

According to a further embodiment, R_2' is independently methyl, trifluoromethyl, iodo, CH_2OH, or $NHC(O)CH_3$.

According to a further embodiment, R_2 and R_2' are each methyl.

According to a further embodiment, R_2 and R_2' are each iodo.

According to a further embodiment, s is 0.

According to a further embodiment, u is 0.

According to a further embodiment, R_2 and R_2' are each H.

According to a further embodiment, R_6 is H or C_{1-3} alkyl.

According to a further embodiment, R_5 and R_5' are each independently C_{1-8} alkyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{10}, C_{2-8} alkenyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{10}, C_{2-8} alkynyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{10}, phenyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{11}, C_{7-8} aralkyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{11}, 5-6 membered heteroaryl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{11}, 6-8 membered heteroaralkyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{11}, 3-6 membered heterocycle which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{12}, or 4-8 membered heterocycle-alkyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{12}.

According to a further embodiment, R_5 and R_5' are each independently C_{1-6} alkyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{10}, C_{2-6} alkenyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{10}, C_{2-6} alkynyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{10}, phenyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{11}, benzyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{11}, 5-6 membered heteroaryl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{11}, 6-7 membered heteroaralkyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{11}, 5-6 membered heterocycle which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{12}, or 6-7 membered heterocycle-alkyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{12}.

According to a further embodiment, R_5 and R_5' are each independently C_{1-6} alkyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{10}, C_{2-6} alkenyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{10}, or C_{2-6} alkynyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{10}.

According to a further embodiment, R_5 and R_5' are each independently C_{1-12} alkyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{10}.

According to a further embodiment, R_5 and R_5' are each independently methyl, ethyl, propyl, isopropyl, butyl, *sec*-butyl, *tert*-butyl, pentyl, 2-methylbutane, 3-

methylbutane, cyclopropyl, cyclobutyl, cyclopentyl, cyclohexyl, or cyclohexyl(CH_2)-, which in each case is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{10}.

According to a further embodiment, R_5 and R_5' are each independently methyl, ethyl, propyl, isopropyl, butyl, *sec*-butyl, *tert*-butyl, pentyl, 2-methylbutane, 3-methylbutane, cyclopropyl, cyclobutyl, cyclopentyl, cyclohexyl, or cyclohexyl(CH_2)-.

According to a further embodiment, R_5 and R_5' are each independently isopropyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{10}.

According to a further embodiment, R_5 and R_5' are each independently isopropyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by $-OCH_3$.

According to a further embodiment, R_5 and R_5' are each isopropyl.

According to a further embodiment, R_5 and R_5' are each H or *tert*-butyl.

According to a further embodiment, R_5 and R_5' are each independently phenyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{11}.

According to a further embodiment, R_5 and R_5' are each independently benzyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{11}.

According to a further embodiment, R^{10} is halogen, $-OR_a$, oxo, $-NR_aR_b$, $=NO-R_c$, $-C(=O)OR_a$, $-C(O)NR_aR_b$, $-C(=O)OH$, $-C(=O)R_a$, $-C(=NOR_c)R_a$, $-C(=NR_c)NR_aR_b$, $-NR_dC(=O)NR_aR_b$, $-NR_bC(=O)R_a$, $-NR_dC(=NR_c)NR_aR_b$, $-NR_bC(=O)OR_a$, $-OC(=O)NR_aR_b$, $-OC(=O)R_a$, $-OC(=O)OR_a$, hydroxyl, nitro, azido, cyano, $-S(O)_{0-3}R_a$, $-SO_2NR_aR_b$, $-NR_bSO_2R_a$, or $-NR_bSO_2NR_aR_b$, wherein R_a -R_d are each independently H, C_{1-12} alkyl, C_{2-12} alkenyl, C_{2-12} alkynyl, C_{6-12} aryl, C_{7-16} aralkyl, 5-12 membered heteroaryl, 6-18 membered heteroaralkyl, 3-12 membered heterocycle, or 4-18 membered heterocycle-alkyl.

According to a further embodiment, R^{10} is $-NR_aR_b$, $-NR_dC(=O)NR_aR_b$, $-NR_bC(=O)R_a$, $-NR_dC(=NR_c)NR_aR_b$, $-NR_bC(=O)OR_a$, $-NR_bSO_2R_a$, or $-NR_bSO_2NR_aR_b$, wherein R_a, R_b, R_c, and R_d are each independently H, C_{1-12} alkyl, C_{2-12} alkenyl, C_{2-12} alkynyl, C_{6-12} aryl, C_{7-16} aralkyl, 5-12 membered heteroaryl, 6-18 membered heteroaralkyl, 3-12 membered heterocycle, or 4-18 membered heterocycle-alkyl.

According to a further embodiment, R^{10} is $-NR_aR_b$, $-NR_dC(=O)NR_aR_b$, $-NR_bC(=O)R_a$, $-NR_bC(=O)OR_a$, or $-NR_bSO_2R_a$, wherein R_a,R_b, and R_d are each independently H, C_{1-12} alkyl, C_{2-12} alkenyl, C_{2-12} alkynyl, C_{6-12} aryl, C_{7-16} aralkyl, 5-12 membered heteroaryl, 6-18 membered heteroaralkyl, 3-12 membered heterocycle, or 4-18 membered heterocycle-alkyl.

According to a further embodiment, R^{10} is $-NR_aR_b$ or $-NR_dC(=O)NR_aR_b$, wherein R_a and R_b are each independently H, C_{1-12} alkyl, C_{2-12} alkenyl, C_{2-12} alkynyl, C_{6-12} aryl, C_{7-16} aralkyl, 5-12 membered heteroaryl, 6-18 membered heteroaralkyl, 3-12 membered heterocycle, or 4-18 membered heterocycle-alkyl.

According to a further embodiment, R^{10} is $-NR_dC(=O)NR_aR_b$, wherein R_a,R_b, are each independently H, C_{1-12} alkyl, C_{2-12} alkenyl, C_{2-12} alkynyl, C_{6-12} aryl, C_{7-16} aralkyl, 5-12 membered heteroaryl, 6-18 membered heteroaralkyl, 3-12 membered heterocycle, or 4-18 membered heterocycle-alkyl.

According to a further embodiment, R^{10} is halogen, $-OR_a$, oxo, $-C(=O)OR_a$, $-C(O)NR_aR_b$, $-C(=O)OH$, $-C(=O)R_a$, $-OC(=O)NR_aR_b$, $-OC(=O)R_a$, $-OC(=O)OR_a$, hydroxyl, cyano, wherein R_a-R_b are each independently H, C_{1-12} alkyl, C_{2-12} alkenyl, C_{2-12} alkynyl, C_{6-12} aryl, C_{7-16} aralkyl, 5-12 membered heteroaryl, 6-18 membered heteroaralkyl, 3-12 membered heterocycle, or 4-18 membered heterocycle-alkyl.

According to a further embodiment, R^{10} is halogen, $-OR_a$, oxo, $-C(=O)OR_a$, $-C(O)NR_aR_b$, $-C(=O)OH$, $-OC(=O)NR_aR_b$, hydroxyl, or cyano, wherein R_a-R_b are each independently H, C_{1-12} alkyl, C_{2-12} alkenyl, C_{2-12} alkynyl, C_{6-12} aryl, C_{7-16} aralkyl, 5-12 membered heteroaryl, 6-18 membered heteroaralkyl, 3-12 membered heterocycle, or 4-18 membered heterocycle-alkyl.

According to a further embodiment, R^{10} is halogen, C_{1-6} alkoxy, hydroxyl, or NH_2.

According to a further embodiment, R^{10} is halogen, hydroxyl, or NH_2.

According to a further embodiment, R^{10} is halogen.

According to a further embodiment, R^{11} is halogen, $-OR_a$, $-NR_aR_b$, $-C(=O)OR_a$, $-C(O)NR_aR_b$, $-C(=O)OH$, $-C(=O)R_a$, $-C(=NOR_c)R_a$, $-C(=NR_c)NR_aR_b$, $-NR_dC(=O)NR_aR_b$, $-NR_bC(=O)R_a$, $-NR_dC(=NR_c)NR_aR_b$, $-NR_bC(=O)OR_a$, $-OC(=O)NR_aR_b$, $-OC(=O)R_a$, $-OC(=O)OR_a$, hydroxyl, nitro, azido, cyano, $-S(O)_{0-3}R_a$, $-SO_2NR_aR_b$, $-NR_bSO_2R_a$, or $-NR_bSO_2NR_aR_b$, C_{1-12} alkyl, C_{2-12} alkenyl, C_{2-12} alkynyl, C_{6-12} aryl, C_{7-16} aralkyl, 5-12 membered heteroaryl, 6-18 membered heteroaralkyl, 3-12 membered heterocycle, or 4-18 membered heterocycle-alkyl, wherein R_a, R_b, R_c, and R_d are each independently H, C_{1-12} alkyl, C_{2-12} alkenyl, C_{2-12} alkynyl, C_{6-12} aryl, C_{7-16} aralkyl, 5-12 membered heteroaryl, 6-18 membered heteroaralkyl, 3-12 membered heterocycle, or 4-18 membered heterocycle-alkyl.

According to a further embodiment, R^{11} is halogen, $-OR_a$, $-NR_aR_b$, $-C(=O)OR_a$, $-C(O)NR_aR_b$, $-C(=O)OH$, $-C(=O)R_a$, $-NR_dC(=O)NR_aR_b$, $-NR_bC(=O)R_a$, $-NR_bC(=O)OR_a$, $-OC(=O)NR_aR_b$, $-OC(=O)R_a$, $-OC(=O)OR_a$, hydroxyl, cyano, $-SO_2NR_aR_b$, $-NR_bSO_2R_a$, C_{1-6} alkyl, C_{2-6} alkenyl, C_{2-6} alkynyl, phenyl, C_{7-8} aralkyl, 5-6 membered heteroaryl, 6-8 membered heteroaralkyl, 5-6 membered heterocycle, or 6-8 membered heterocycle-alkyl, wherein R_a, R_b, and R_d are each independently are each independently H, C_{1-12} alkyl, C_{2-12} alkenyl, C_{2-12} alkynyl, C_{6-12} aryl, C_{7-16} aralkyl, 5-12 membered heteroaryl, 6-18 membered heteroaralkyl, 3-12 membered heterocycle, or 4-18 membered heterocycle-alkyl.

According to a further embodiment, R^{11} is halogen, $-OR_a$, $-NR_aR_b$, $-C(O)NR_aR_b$, $-C(=O)OH$, $-C(=O)R_a$, $-NR_dC(=O)NR_aR_b$, $-NR_bC(=O)R_a$, $-NR_bC(=O)OR_a$, $-OC(=O)NR_aR_b$, hydroxyl, cyano, C_{1-6} alkyl, C_{2-6} alkenyl, C_{2-6} alkynyl, phenyl, C_{7-8} aralkyl, 5-6 membered heteroaryl, 6-8 membered heteroaralkyl, 5-6 membered heterocycle, or 6-8 membered heterocycle-alkyl, wherein R_a, R_b, and R_d are each independently H, C_{1-12} alkyl, C_{2-12} alkenyl, C_{2-12} alkynyl, C_{6-12} aryl, C_{7-16} aralkyl, 5-12 membered heteroaryl, 6-18 membered heteroaralkyl, 3-12 membered heterocycle, or 4-18 membered heterocycle-alkyl.

According to a further embodiment, R^{11} is halogen, $-OR_a$, $-NR_aR_b$, hydroxyl, cyano, or C_{1-6} alkyl, wherein R_a-R_b are each independently H, C_{1-12} alkyl, C_{2-12} alkenyl, C_{2-12} alkynyl, C_{6-12} aryl, C_{7-16} aralkyl, 5-12 membered heteroaryl, 6-18 membered heteroaralkyl, 3-12 membered heterocycle, or 4-18 membered heterocycle-alkyl.

According to a further embodiment, R^{11} is halogen, hydroxyl, cyano, or NH_2.

According to a further embodiment, R^{11} is halogen.

According to a further embodiment, R^{12} is halogen, $-OR_a$, oxo, $-NR_aR_b$, $=NO-R_c$, $-C(=O)OR_a$, $-C(O)NR_aR_b$, $-C(=O)OH$, $-C(=O)R_a$, $-C(=NOR_c)R_a$, $-C(=NR_c)NR_aR_b$, $-NR_dC(=O)NR_aR_b$, $-NR_bC(=O)R_a$, $-NR_dC(=NR_c)NR_aR_b$, $-NR_bC(=O)OR_a$, $-OC(=O)NR_aR_b$, $-OC(=O)R_a$, $-OC(=O)OR_a$, hydroxyl, nitro, azido, cyano, $-S(O)_{0-3}R_a$, $-SO_2NR_aR_b$, $-NR_bSO_2R_a$, $-NR_bSO_2NR_aR_b$, C_{1-12} alkyl, C_{2-12} alkenyl, C_{2-12} alkynyl, C_{6-12} aryl, C_{7-16} aralkyl, 5-12 membered heteroaryl, 6-18 membered heteroaralkyl, 3-12 membered heterocycle, or 4-18 membered heterocycle-alkyl, wherein R_a, R_b, R_c, and R_d are each independently H, C_{1-12} alkyl, C_{2-12} alkenyl, C_{2-12} alkynyl, C_{6-12} aryl, C_{7-16} aralkyl, 5-12 membered heteroaryl, 6-18 membered heteroaralkyl, 3-12 membered heterocycle, or 4-18 membered heterocycle-alkyl.

According to a further embodiment, R^{12} is halogen, $-OR_a$, oxo, $-NR_aR_b$, $-C(=O)OR_a$, $-C(O)NR_aR_b$, $-C(=O)OH$, $-C(=O)R_a$, $-NR_dC(=O)NR_aR_b$, $-NR_bC(=O)R_a$, $-NR_bC(=O)OR_a$, $-OC(=O)NR_aR_b$, $-OC(=O)R_a$, $-OC(=O)OR_a$, hydroxyl, cyano, $-SO_2NR_aR_b$, $-NR_bSO_2R_a$, C_{1-6} alkyl, C_{2-6} alkenyl, C_{2-6} alkynyl, phenyl, C_{7-8} aralkyl, 5-6 membered heteroaryl, 6-8 membered heteroaralkyl, 5-6 membered heterocycle, or 6-8 membered heterocycle-alkyl, wherein R_a, R_b, and R_d are each independently H, C_{1-12} alkyl, C_{2-12} alkenyl, C_{2-12} alkynyl, C_{6-12} aryl, C_{7-16} aralkyl, 5-12 membered heteroaryl, 6-18 membered heteroaralkyl, 3-12 membered heterocycle, or 4-18 membered heterocycle-alkyl.

According to a further embodiment, R^{12} is halogen, $-OR_a$, oxo, $-NR_aR_b$, $-C(O)NR_aR_b$, $-C(=O)OH$, $-C(=O)R_a$, $-NR_dC(=O)NR_aR_b$, $-NR_bC(=O)R_a$, $-NR_bC(=O)OR_a$, $-OC(=O)NR_aR_b$, hydroxyl, cyano, C_{1-6} alkyl, C_{2-6} alkenyl, C_{2-6} alkynyl, phenyl, C_{7-8} aralkyl, 5-6 membered heteroaryl, 6-8 membered heteroaralkyl, 5-6 membered heterocycle, or 6-8 membered heterocycle-alkyl, wherein R_a, R_b, and R_d are each independently H, C_{1-12} alkyl, C_{2-12} alkenyl, C_{2-12} alkynyl, C_{6-12} aryl, C_{7-16} aralkyl, 5-12 membered heteroaryl, 6-18 membered heteroaralkyl, 3-12 membered heterocycle, or 4-18 membered heterocycle-alkyl.

According to a further embodiment, R^{12} is halogen, $-OR_a$, oxo, $-NR_aR_b$, hydroxyl, cyano, or C_{1-6} alkyl, wherein R_a-R_b are each independently H, C_{1-12} alkyl, C_{2-12} alkenyl, C_{2-12} alkynyl, C_{6-12} aryl, C_{7-16} aralkyl, 5-12 membered heteroaryl, 6-18 membered heteroaralkyl, 3-12 membered heterocycle, or 4-18 membered heterocycle-alkyl.

According to a further embodiment, R^{12} is halogen.

According to a further embodiment, R_a, R_b, R_c, and R_d are each independently H, C_{1-6} alkyl, C_{2-6} alkenyl, C_{2-6} alkynyl, phenyl, C_{7-8} aralkyl, 5-6 membered heteroaryl, 6-8

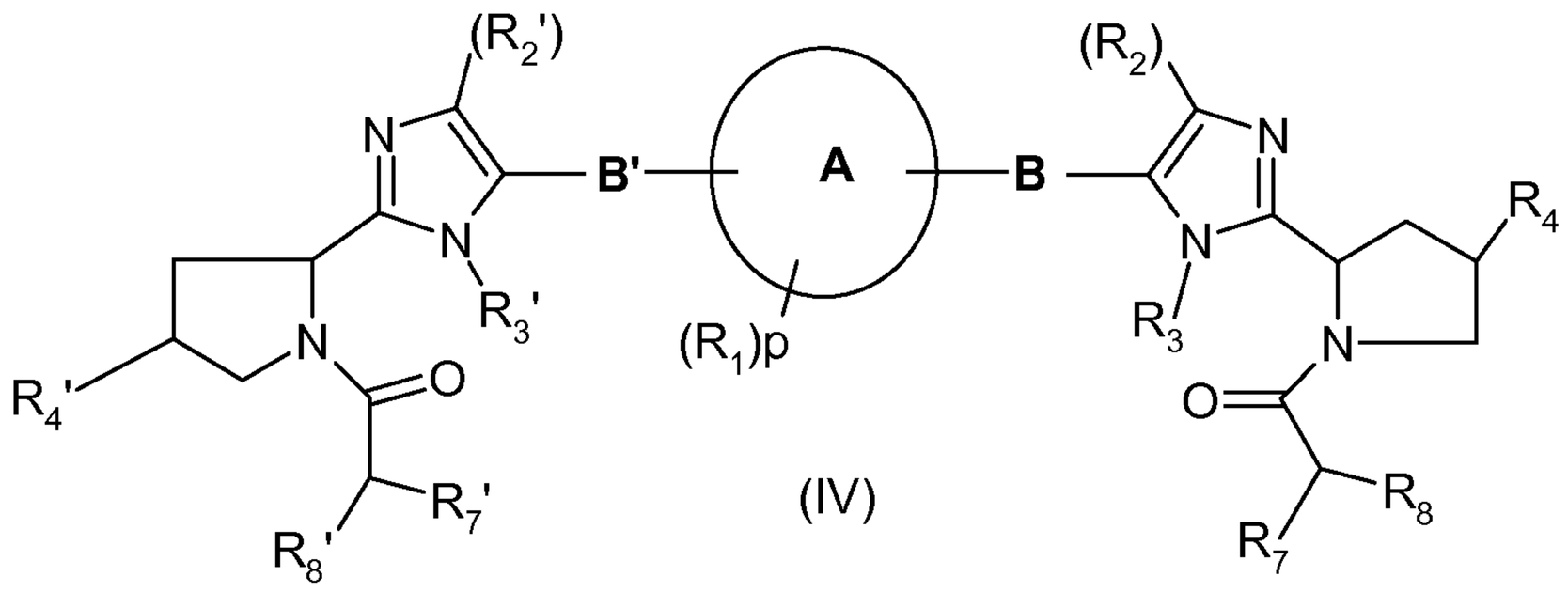
membered heteroaralkyl, 5-6 membered heterocycle, or 6-8 membered heterocycle-alkyl.

According to a further embodiment, R_a and R_c are each independently H, C_{1-6} alkyl, C_{2-6} alkenyl, C_{2-6} alkynyl, phenyl, C_{7-8} aralkyl, 5-6 membered heteroaryl, 6-8 membered heteroaralkyl, 5-6 membered heterocycle, or 6-8 membered heterocycle-alkyl, and R_b, and R_d are each independently H or C_{1-3} alkyl.

According to a further embodiment, R_a and R_c are each independently H, C_{1-6} alkyl, C_{2-6} alkenyl, C_{2-6} alkynyl, phenyl, benzyl, 5-6 membered heteroaryl, 6-8 membered heteroaralkyl, 5-6 membered heterocycle, or 6-8 membered heterocycle-alkyl, and R_b, and R_d are each independently H or C_{1-3} alkyl.

According to a further embodiment, R_a, R_b, R_c, and R_d are each independently H or C_{1-3} alkyl.

In accordance with a further embodiment, the compounds of the present invention are represented by formula (IV):



or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof,

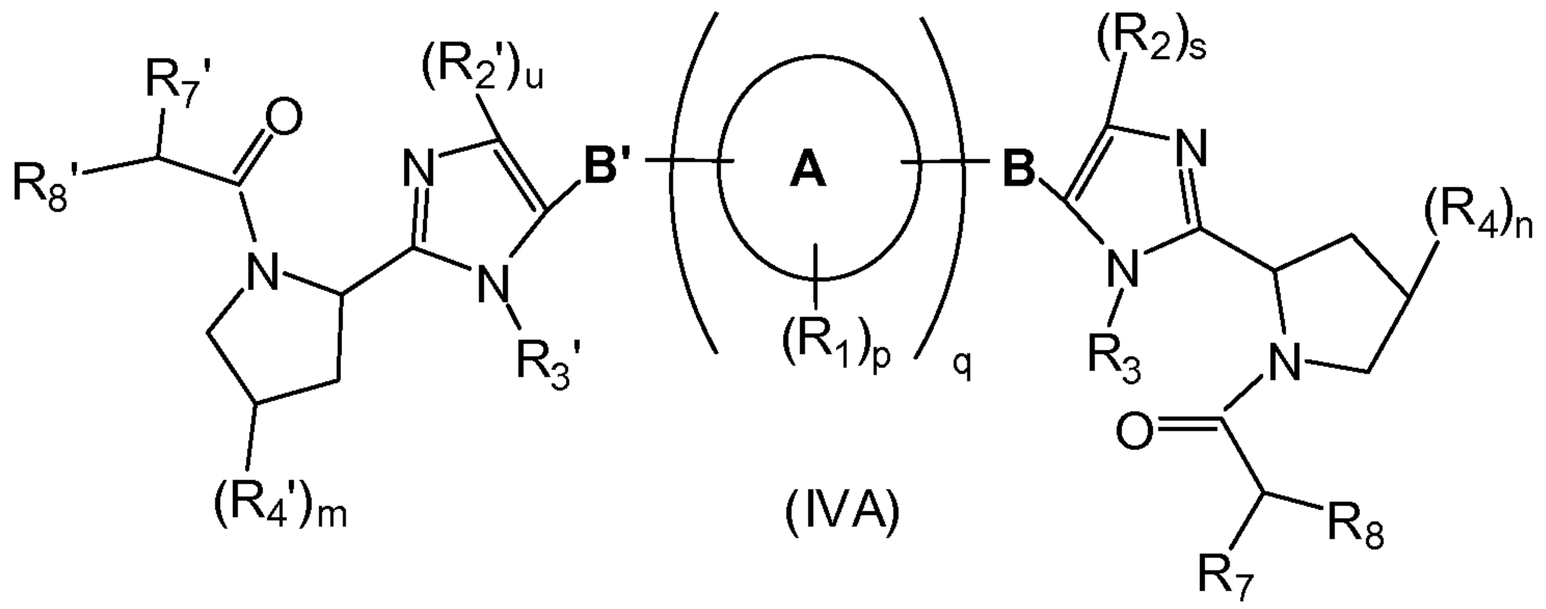
wherein A, B, B', R_1, p, R_2, $R_{2'}$, R_3, $R_{3'}$, R_4, and $R_{4'}$ are as defined for formula (I), and

R_7 and R_7' are each independently C_{1-8} alkyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{10}, C_{2-8} alkenyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{10}, C_{2-8} alkynyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{10}, phenyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{11}, benzyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{11}, 5-6 membered heteroaryl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{11}, 6-7

membered heteroaralkyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{11}, 3-6 membered heterocycle which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{12}, or 4-7 membered heterocycle-alkyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{12}; and

R_8 and R_8' are each independently $-NR_aR_b$, $-NR_dC(=O)NR_aR_b$, $-NR_bC(=O)R_a$, $-NR_dC(=NR_c)NR_aR_b$, $-NR_bC(=O)OR_a$, $-NR_bSO_2R_a$, $-NR_bSO_2NR_aR_b$, wherein R_a, R_b, R_c, and R_d are each independently H, C_{1-12} alkyl, C_{2-12} alkenyl, C_{2-12} alkynyl, C_{6-12} aryl, C_{7-16} aralkyl, 5-12 membered heteroaryl, 6-18 membered heteroaralkyl, 3-12 membered heterocycle, or 4-18 membered heterocycle-alkyl.

In accordance with a further embodiment, the compounds of the present invention are represented by formula (IVA):



(IVA)

or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof,

wherein q, u, s, A, B, B', R^1, p, R_2, $R_{2'}$, R_3, $R_{3'}$, R_4, $R_{4'}$, m, and n, are as defined for formula (IIIA)

R_7 and R_7' are each independently C_{1-8} alkyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{10}, C_{2-8} alkenyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{10}, C_{2-8} alkynyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{10}, phenyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{11}, benzyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{11}, 5-6 membered heteroaryl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{11}, 6-7 membered heteroaralkyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{11}, 3-6 membered heterocycle which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{12}, or 4-7 membered heterocycle-alkyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{12};

R_8 and R_8' are each independently -NR_aR_b, -$NR_dC(=O)NR_aR_b$, -$NR_bC(=O)R_a$, -$NR_dC(=NR_c)NR_aR_b$, -$NR_bC(=O)OR_a$, -$NR_bSO_2R_a$, or -$NR_bSO_2NR_aR_b$, wherein R_a, R_b, R_c, and R_d are each independently H, C_{1-12} alkyl, C_{2-12} alkenyl, C_{2-12} alkynyl, C_{6-12} aryl, C_{7-16} aralkyl, 5-12 membered heteroaryl, 6-18 membered heteroaralkyl, 3-12 membered heterocycle, or 4-18 membered heterocycle-alkyl; and

m and n combined are 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4.

According to a further embodiment, R_8 and R_8' are each independently -NR_aR_b, -$NR_bC(=O)R_a$, or -$NR_bC(=O)OR_a$, wherein R_a-R_b are each independently H, C_{1-6} alkyl, phenyl, benzyl, 5-6 membered heteroaryl, 6-8 membered heteroaralkyl, 5-6 membered heterocycle, or 6-8 membered heterocycle-alkyl.

According to a further embodiment, R_8 and R_8' are each independently -NR_aR_b or -$NR_bC(=O)OR_a$, wherein R_a-R_b are each independently H, C_{1-6} alkyl, phenyl, benzyl, 5-6 membered heteroaryl, 6-8 membered heteroaralkyl, 5-6 membered heterocycle, or 6-8 membered heterocycle-alkyl.

According to a further embodiment, R_8 and R_8' are each independently -$NR_bC(=O)OR_a$, wherein R_a-R_b are each independently H, C_{1-6} alkyl, phenyl, tetrahydrofuran, or benzyl.

According to a further embodiment, R_8 and R_8' are each independently -$NR_bC(=O)OR_a$, wherein R_a is C_{1-6} alkyl and R_b is H or methyl.

According to a further embodiment, R_8 and R_8' are each independently -$NR_bC(=O)OR_a$, wherein R_a is C_{1-6} alkyl and R_b is H.

According to a further embodiment, R_8 and R_8' are each independently -$NR_bC(=O)OR_a$, wherein R_a is methyl and R_b is H.

According to a further embodiment, R_7 and R_7' are each independently C_{1-8} alkyl, C_{2-8} alkenyl, C_{2-8} alkynyl, phenyl, benzyl, 5-6 membered heteroaryl, 6-7 membered heteroaralkyl, 3-6 membered heterocycle, or 4-7 membered heterocycle-alkyl;

According to a further embodiment, R_7 and R_7' are each independently phenyl.

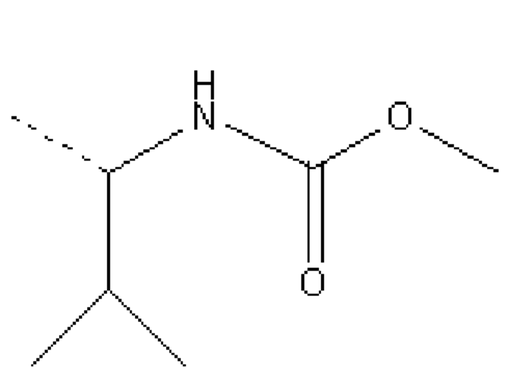
According to a further embodiment, R_7 and R_7' are each independently C_{1-6} alkyl.

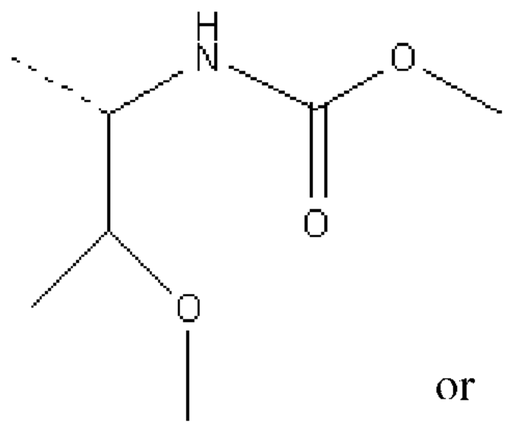
According to a further embodiment, R_7 and R_7' are each independently C_{1-6} alkyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{10}.

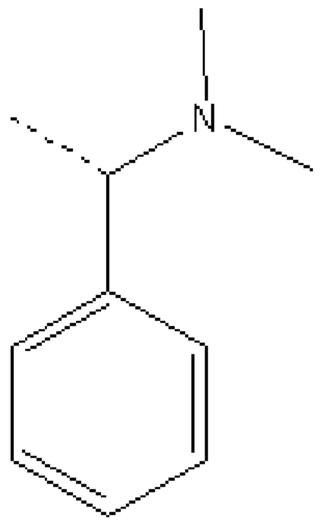
According to a further embodiment, R_7 and R_7' are each independently methyl, ethyl, propyl, isopropyl, methoxyisopropyl, butyl, *sec*-butyl, *tert*-butyl, pentyl, 2-methylbutane, 3-methylbutane, cyclopropyl, cyclobutyl, cyclopentyl, or cyclohexyl.

According to a further embodiment, R_7 and R_7' are each independently methyl, ethyl, propyl, isopropyl, butyl, *sec*-butyl, *tert*-butyl, pentyl, 2-methylbutane, 3-methylbutane, cyclopropyl, cyclobutyl, cyclopentyl, or cyclohexyl.

According to a further embodiment, R_7 and R_8 or $R_{7'}$ and $R_{8'}$ together with the carbon to which they are attached are each independently:



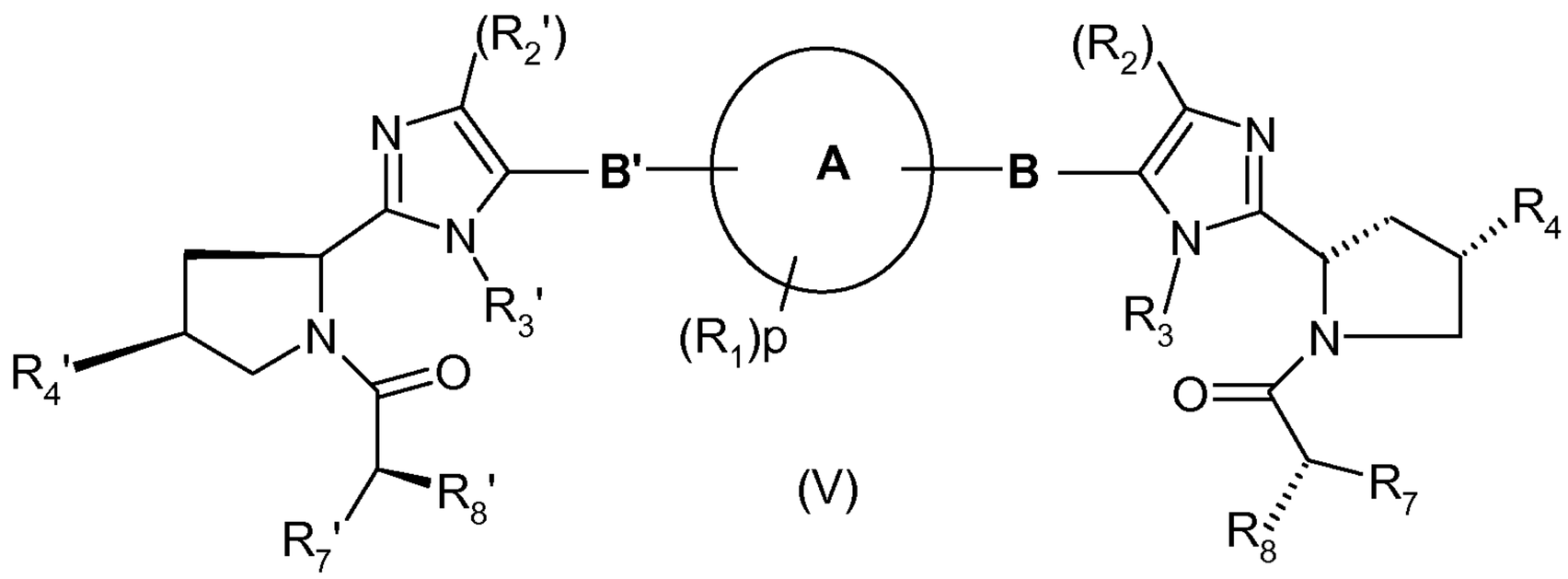
,


or


.

According to a further embodiment, R_7 and R_7' are each isopropyl.

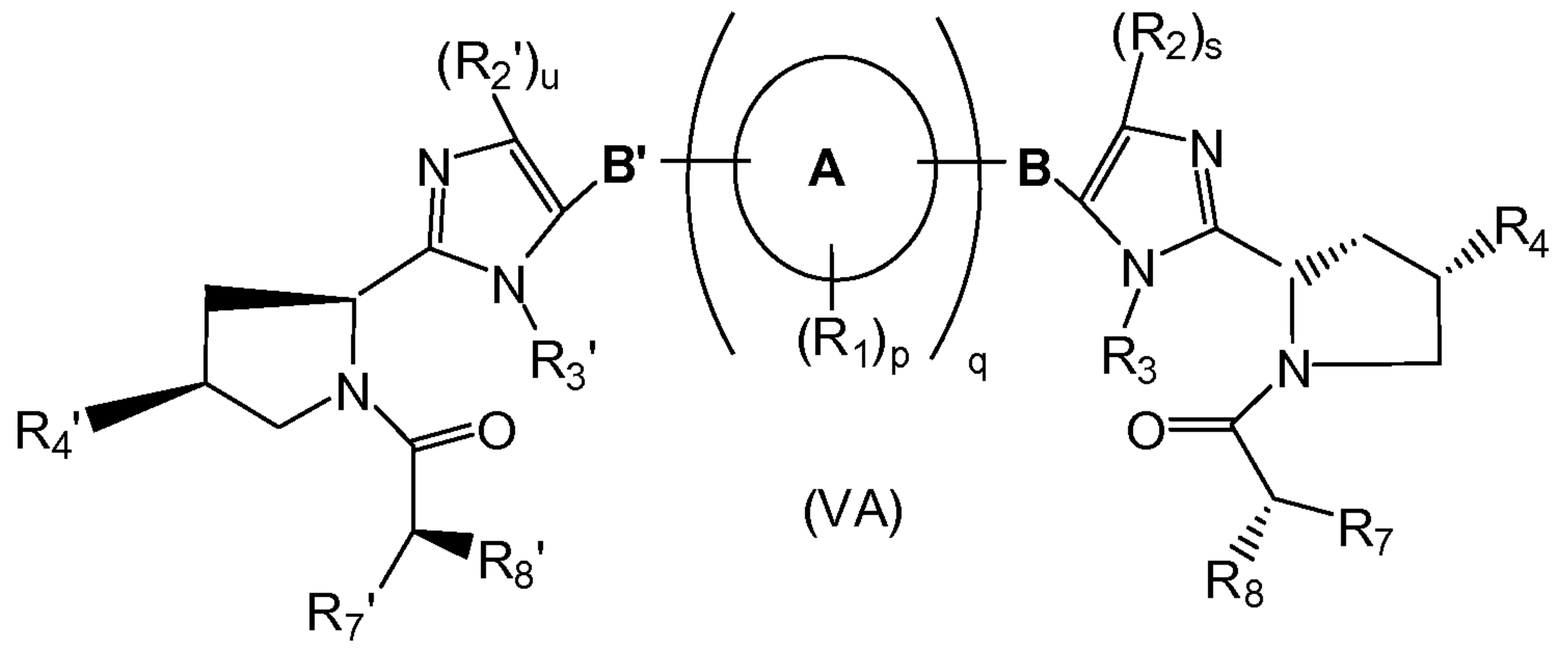
In accordance with a further embodiment, the compounds of the present invention are represented by formula (V):



(V)

or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, wherein each of A, B, B', R^1, p, R_2, $R_{2'}$, R_3, $R_{3'}$, R_4, $R_{4'}$, R_7, $R_{7'}$, R_8, and $R_{8'}$, are as defined for formula (I).

In accordance with a further embodiment, the compounds of the present invention are represented by formula (VA):



(VA)

or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, wherein each of q, u, s, A, B, B', R^1, p, R_2, $R_{2'}$, R_3, $R_{3'}$, R_4, $R_{4'}$, R_7, $R_{7'}$, R_8, and $R_{8'}$, are as defined for formula (IIIA).

According to a further embodiment, as valency allows in B, B', R_a, R_b, R_c, and R_d, R_1, R_2, R_2', R_3, R_3', R_4, R_4', R^{10}, R^{11} and R^{12} each of alkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl, alkoxy, aryl, aralkyl, heteroaryl, heteroaralkyl, heterocycle, or heterocycle-alkyl is independently unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by halogen, $-OR_{a'}$ $-NR_{a'}R_{b'}$, $C(=O)OR_{a'}$, $-C(O)NR_{a'}R_{b'}$, $-C(=O)OH$, hydroxyl, nitro, azido, or cyano, wherein $R_{a'}$, $R_{b'}$, $R_{c'}$, and $R_{d'}$ are each independently H, C_{1-12} alkyl.

According to a further embodiment, as valency allows in B, B', R_a, R_b, R_c, and R_d, R_1, R_2, R_2', R_3, R_3', R_4, R_4', R^{10}, R^{11} and R^{12} each of alkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl, alkoxy, aryl, aralkyl, heteroaryl, heteroaralkyl, heterocycle, or heterocycle-alkyl is independently unsubstituted or substituted one time by halogen.

According to a further embodiment, as valency allows in B, B', R_a, R_b, R_c, and R_d, R_1, R_2, R_2', R_3, R_3', R_4, R_4', R^{10}, R^{11} and R^{12} each of alkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl, alkoxy, aryl, aralkyl, heteroaryl, heteroaralkyl, heterocycle, or heterocycle-alkyl is independently unsubstituted or substituted one time by fluoro.

In accordance with the present invention, the compounds are selected from compounds as defined in the formulas wherein:

A is C_{6-14} aryl, 5-12 membered heteroaryl, or a bond;

B and B' are each independently -(C≡C)- or -$(CH_2)_2$-;

R_1 is H, halogen, -OR_a, -NR_aR_b, -$C(=O)OR_a$, -$C(O)NR_aR_b$, -C(=O)OH, -$NR_bC(=O)R_a$, hydroxyl, nitro, cyano, -$S(O)_{0-3}R_a$, - C_{1-6} alkyl, C_{2-6} alkenyl, C_{2-6} alkynyl, or C_{1-6} halogenated alkyl;

R_2 and R_2' are each independently H, methyl, or iodo;

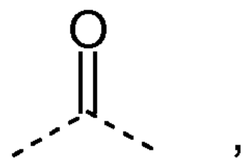
m and n are each independently 0, 1 or 2;

p is 0, 1 or 2;

R_3 and R_3' are H;

R_4 and R_4' are each independently H, halogen, C_{1-6} alkyl, hydroxyl, phenyl, or C_{1-4} alkoxy;

X and Y are



,

R_5 and R_5' are each independently C_{1-12} alkyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{10}.

In accordance with the present invention, the compounds are selected from compounds as defined in the formulas wherein:

A is C_{6-14} aryl, 5-12 membered heteroaryl, or a bond;

B and B' are each independently -(C≡C)- or -$(CH_2)_2$-;

R_1 is H or methyl;

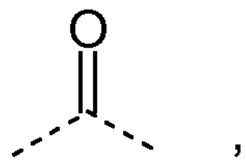
R_2 and R_2' are each independently H, methyl or iodo;

m and n are each independently 0, 1 or 2;

p is 0, 1 or 2;

R_3 and R_3' are H;

R_4 and R_4' are each independently H, halogen, C_{1-6} alkyl, hydroxyl, phenyl, or C_{1-4} alkoxy;
X and Y are



,

R_5 and R_5' are each independently C_{1-12} alkyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{10}.

In accordance with the present invention, the compounds are selected from compounds as defined in the formulas wherein:

A is phenyl, thiophene, thieno[3,2-b]thiophene, pyridine, pyrimidine, naphthyl, benzo[1,3]dioxole, benzooxazole, or triazole;

B and B' are each independently -(C≡C)- or -$(CH_2)_2$-;

R_1 is H or methyl;

R_2 and R_2' are each independently H, methyl or iodo;

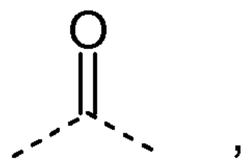
m and n are each independently 0, 1 or 2;

p is 0, 1 or 2;

R_3 and R_3' are H;

R_4 and R_4' are each independently H, halogen, C_{1-6} alkyl, hydroxyl, phenyl, or C_{1-4} alkoxy;

X and Y are



,

R_5 and R_5' are each independently C_{1-12} alkyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{10}.

In accordance with the present invention, the compounds are selected from compounds as defined in the formulas wherein:

A is phenyl, thiophene, thieno[3,2-b]thiophene, naphthyl, benzo[1,3]dioxole, or benzooxazole;

B and B' are each independently -(C≡C)- or -$(CH_2)_2$-;

R_1 is H, halogen, -OR_a, -NR_aR_b, -C(=O)OR_a, -C(O)NR_aR_b, -C(=O)OH, -$NR_bC(=O)R_a$, hydroxyl, nitro, cyano, -$S(O)_{0-3}R_a$, - C_{1-6} alkyl, C_{2-6} alkenyl, C_{2-6} alkynyl, or C_{1-6} halogenated alkyl;

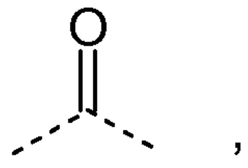
R_2 and R_2' are each independently H, methyl or iodo;

m and n are each independently 0, 1 or 2;

p is 0, 1 or 2;

R_3 and R_3' are H;

R_4 and R_4' are each independently H, halogen, C_{1-6} alkyl, hydroxyl, phenyl, or C_{1-4} alkoxy;

X and Y are each ,

R_5 and R_5' are each independently C_{1-12} alkyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{10};

R_7 and R_7' are each independently C_{1-8} alkyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{10}, C_{2-8} alkenyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{10}, C_{2-8} alkynyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{10}, phenyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{11}, benzyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{11}, 5-6 membered heteroaryl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{11}, 6-7 membered heteroaralkyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{11}, 3-6 membered heterocycle which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{12}, or 4-7 membered heterocycle-alkyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{12}; and

R_8 and R_8' are each independently $-NR_aR_b$, $-NR_dC(=O)NR_aR_b$, $-NR_bC(=O)R_a$, $-NR_dC(=NR_c)NR_aR_b$, $-NR_bC(=O)OR_a$, $-NR_bSO_2R_a$, $-NR_bSO_2NR_aR_b$, wherein R_a, R_b, R_c, and R_d are each independently H, C_{1-12} alkyl, C_{2-12} alkenyl, C_{2-12} alkynyl, C_{6-12} aryl, C_{7-16} aralkyl, 5-12 membered heteroaryl, 6-18 membered heteroaralkyl, 3-12 membered heterocycle, or 4-18 membered heterocycle-alkyl.

In some embodiments, the compounds of this invention are represented in Table 1A. In some embodiments, the compounds of this invention are represented in Table 1B. In certain embodiments, the variables used herein are as defined in the specific embodiments as shown in the tables below.

In one embodiment in the compounds of the present invention R_1 is halogen, $-OR_a$, $-NR_aR_b$, $-C(=O)OR_a$, $-C(O)NR_aR_b$, $-C(=O)OH$, $-C(=O)R_a$, $-C(=NOR_c)R_a$, $-C(=NR_c)NR_aR_b$, $-NR_dC(=O)NR_aR_b$, $-NR_bC(=O)R_a$, $-NR_dC(=NR_c)NR_aR_b$, $-NR_bC(=O)OR_a$, $-OC(=O)NR_aR_b$, $-OC(=O)R_a$, $-OC(=O)OR_a$, hydroxyl, nitro, azido, cyano, $-S(O)_{0-3}R_a$, $-SO_2NR_aR_b$, $-NR_bSO_2R_a$, $-NR_bSO_2NR_aR_b$, $-P(=O)OR_aOR_b$, C_{1-6} alkyl which is unsubstituted or substituted

one or more times by R^{10}, C_{2-6} alkenyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{10}, C_{2-6} alkynyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{10};

In one embodiment in the compounds of the present invention, herein as valency allows in B, B', R_a, R_b, R_c, and R_d, R_1, R_2, R_2', R_3, R_3', R_4, R_4', R^{10}, R^{11} and R^{12} each of alkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl, alkoxy, aryl, aralkyl, heteroaryl, heteroaralkyl, heterocycle, or heterocycle-alkyl is independently unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by halogen, $-OR_{a'}$, oxo, $-NR_{a'}R_{b'}$, $=NO-R_{c'}$, $-C(=O)OR_{a'}$, $-C(O)NR_{a'}R_{b'}$, $-C(=O)OH$, $-C(=O)R_{a'}$, $-C(=NOR_{c'})R_{a'}$, $-C(=NR_{c'})NR_{a'}R_{b'}$, $-NR_{d'}C(=O)NR_{a'}R_{b'}$, $-NR_{b'}C(=O)R_{a'}$, $-NR_{d'}C(=NR_{c'})NR_{a'}R_{b'}$, $-NR_{b'}C(=O)OR_{a'}$, $-OC(=O)NR_{a'}R_{b'}$, $-OC(=O)R_{a'}$, $-OC(=O)OR_{a'}$, hydroxyl, nitro, azido, cyano, $-S(O)_{0-3}R_{a'}$, $-SO_2NR_{a'}R_{b'}$, $-NR_{b'}SO_2R_{a'}$; wherein $R_{a'}$-$R_{d'}$ are each independently H, C_{1-12} alkyl.

In one embodiment in the compounds of the present invention p is 0, 1 or 2.

In one embodiment in the compounds of the present invention p is 0 or 1.

In one embodiment in the compounds of the present invention p is 0.

In one embodiment in the compounds of the present invention p is 2.

In one embodiment in the compounds of the present invention R_4 and R_4' are H.

In one embodiment in the compounds of the present invention R_1 is halogen, C_{1-3} alkyl, hydroxyl, cyano, or C_{1-3} alkoxy.

In one embodiment in the compounds of the present invention R_1 is chloro, fluoro, methyl, hydroxyl, cyano, or methoxy.

In one embodiment in the compounds of the present invention n R_1 is H.

In one embodiment R^{10} is halogen, $-OR_a$, oxo, $-C(=O)OR_a$, $-C(O)NR_aR_b$, $-C(=O)OH$, $-C(=O)R_a$, $-OC(=O)NR_aR_b$, $-OC(=O)R_a$, $-OC(=O)OR_a$, hydroxyl, cyano, wherein R_a-R_b are each independently H, C_{1-12} alkyl, C_{2-12} alkenyl, C_{2-12} alkynyl, C_{6-12} aryl, C_{7-16} aralkyl, 5-12 membered heteroaryl, 6-18 membered heteroaralkyl, 3-12 membered heterocycle, or 4-18 membered heterocycle-alkyl.

In one embodiment in the compounds of the present invention R^{11} is halogen, $-OR_a$, $-NR_aR_b$, $-C(=O)OR_a$, $-C(O)NR_aR_b$, $-C(=O)OH$, $-C(=O)R_a$, $-C(=NOR_c)R_a$, $--C(=NR_c)NR_aR_b$, $-NR_dC(=O)NR_aR_b$, $-NR_bC(=O)R_a$, $-NR_dC(=NR_c)NR_aR_b$, $-NR_bC(=O)OR_a$, $-OC(=O)NR_aR_b$, $-OC(=O)R_a$, $-OC(=O)OR_a$, hydroxyl, nitro, azido, cyano, $-S(O)_{0-3}R_a$, $-SO_2NR_aR_b$, $-NR_bSO_2R_a$, or $-NR_bSO_2NR_aR_b$, C_{1-12} alkyl, C_{2-12} alkenyl, C_{2-12} alkynyl, C_{6-12} aryl, C_{7-16} aralkyl, 5-12 membered heteroaryl, 6-18 membered heteroaralkyl, 3-12 membered heterocycle, or 4-18 membered heterocycle-alkyl, wherein R_a, R_b, R_c, and R_d are each independently H, C_{1-12} alkyl, C_{2-12} alkenyl, C_{2-12} alkynyl, C_{6-12} aryl, C_{7-16} aralkyl, 5-12 membered heteroaryl, 6-18 membered heteroaralkyl, 3-12 membered heterocycle, or 4-18 membered heterocycle-alkyl.

In one embodiment in the compounds of the present invention R^{11} is halogen, -OR_a, -NR_aR_b, -C(=O)OR_a, -C(O)NR_aR_b, -C(=O)OH, -C(=O)R_a, -$NR_dC(=O)NR_aR_b$, -$NR_bC(=O)R_a$, -$NR_bC(=O)OR_a$, -OC(=O)NR_aR_b, -OC(=O)R_a, -OC(=O)OR_a, hydroxyl, cyano, -$SO_2NR_aR_b$, -$NR_bSO_2R_a$, C_{1-6} alkyl, C_{2-6} alkenyl, C_{2-6} alkynyl, phenyl, C_{7-8} aralkyl, 5-6 membered heteroaryl, 6-8 membered heteroaralkyl, 5-6 membered heterocycle, or 6-8 membered heterocycle-alkyl, wherein R_a,R_b, and R_d are each independently are each independently H, C_{1-12} alkyl, C_{2-12} alkenyl, C_{2-12} alkynyl, C_{6-12} aryl, C_{7-16} aralkyl, 5-12 membered heteroaryl, 6-18 membered heteroaralkyl, 3-12 membered heterocycle, or 4-18 membered heterocycle-alkyl.

In one embodiment in the compounds of the present invention R^{11} is halogen, -OR_a, -NR_aR_b, -C(O)NR_aR_b, -C(=O)OH, -C(=O)R_a, -$NR_dC(=O)NR_aR_b$, -$NR_bC(=O)R_a$, -$NR_bC(=O)OR_a$, -OC(=O)NR_aR_b, hydroxyl, cyano, C_{1-6} alkyl, C_{2-6} alkenyl, C_{2-6} alkynyl, phenyl, C_{7-8} aralkyl, 5-6 membered heteroaryl, 6-8 membered heteroaralkyl, 5-6 membered heterocycle, or 6-8 membered heterocycle-alkyl, wherein R_a,R_b, and R_d are each independently H, C_{1-12} alkyl, C_{2-12} alkenyl, C_{2-12} alkynyl, C_{6-12} aryl, C_{7-16} aralkyl, 5-12 membered heteroaryl, 6-18 membered heteroaralkyl, 3-12 membered heterocycle, or 4-18 membered heterocycle-alkyl.

In one embodiment in the compounds of the present invention R^{11} is halogen, -OR_a, -NR_aR_b, hydroxyl, cyano, C_{1-6} alkyl, wherein R_a-R_b are each independently H, C_{1-12} alkyl, C_{2-12} alkenyl, C_{2-12} alkynyl, C_{6-12} aryl, C_{7-16} aralkyl, 5-12 membered heteroaryl, 6-18 membered heteroaralkyl, 3-12 membered heterocycle, or 4-18 membered heterocycle-alkyl.

In one embodiment in the compounds of the present invention R^{12} is halogen, -OR_a, oxo, -NR_aR_b, =NO-R_c , -C(=O)OR_a, -C(O)NR_aR_b, -C(=O)OH, -C(=O)R_a, -C(=NOR_c)R_a, -C(=NR_c)NR_aR_b, -$NR_dC(=O)NR_aR_b$, -$NR_bC(=O)R_a$, -$NR_dC(=NR_c)NR_aR_b$, -$NR_bC(=O)OR_a$, -OC(=O)NR_aR_b, -OC(=O)R_a, -OC(=O)OR_a, hydroxyl, nitro, azido, cyano, -$S(O)_{0-3}R_a$, -$SO_2NR_aR_b$, -$NR_bSO_2R_a$, -$NR_bSO_2NR_aR_b$, C_{1-12} alkyl, C_{2-12} alkenyl, C_{2-12} alkynyl, C_{6-12} aryl, C_{7-16} aralkyl, 5-12 membered heteroaryl, 6-18 membered heteroaralkyl, 3-12 membered heterocycle, or 4-18 membered heterocycle-alkyl, wherein R_a, R_b, R_c, and R_d are each independently H, C_{1-12} alkyl, C_{2-12} alkenyl, C_{2-12} alkynyl, C_{6-12} aryl, C_{7-16} aralkyl, 5-12 membered heteroaryl, 6-18 membered heteroaralkyl, 3-12 membered heterocycle, or 4-18 membered heterocycle-alkyl.

In one embodiment in the compounds of the present invention R^{12} is halogen, -OR_a, oxo, -NR_aR_b, -C(=O)OR_a, -C(O)NR_aR_b, -C(=O)OH, -C(=O)R_a, -$NR_dC(=O)NR_aR_b$, -$NR_bC(=O)R_a$, -$NR_bC(=O)OR_a$, -OC(=O)NR_aR_b, -OC(=O)R_a, -OC(=O)OR_a, hydroxyl, cyano, -$SO_2NR_aR_b$, -$NR_bSO_2R_a$, C_{1-6} alkyl, C_{2-6} alkenyl, C_{2-6} alkynyl, phenyl, C_{7-8} aralkyl, 5-6

membered heteroaryl, 6-8 membered heteroaralkyl, 5-6 membered heterocycle, or 6-8 membered heterocycle-alkyl, wherein R_a,R_b, and R_d are each independently H, C_{1-12} alkyl, C_{2-12} alkenyl, C_{2-12} alkynyl, C_{6-12} aryl, C_{7-16} aralkyl, 5-12 membered heteroaryl, 6-18 membered heteroaralkyl, 3-12 membered heterocycle, or 4-18 membered heterocycle-alkyl.

In one embodiment in the compounds of the present invention R^{12} is halogen, -OR_a, oxo, -NR_aR_b, -$C(O)NR_aR_b$, -$C(=O)OH$, -$C(=O)R_a$, -$NR_dC(=O)NR_aR_b$, -$NR_bC(=O)R_a$, -$NR_bC(=O)OR_a$, -$OC(=O)NR_aR_b$, hydroxyl, cyano, C_{1-6} alkyl, C_{2-6} alkenyl, C_{2-6} alkynyl, phenyl, C_{7-8} aralkyl, 5-6 membered heteroaryl, 6-8 membered heteroaralkyl, 5-6 membered heterocycle, or 6-8 membered heterocycle-alkyl, wherein R_a,R_b, and R_d are each independently H, C_{1-12} alkyl, C_{2-12} alkenyl, C_{2-12} alkynyl, C_{6-12} aryl, C_{7-16} aralkyl, 5-12 membered heteroaryl, 6-18 membered heteroaralkyl, 3-12 membered heterocycle, or 4-18 membered heterocycle-alkyl.

In one embodiment in the compounds of the present invention R^{12} is halogen, -OR_a, oxo, -NR_aR_b, hydroxyl, cyano, C_{1-6} alkyl, wherein R_a-R_b are are each independently H, C_{1-12} alkyl, C_{2-12} alkenyl, C_{2-12} alkynyl, C_{6-12} aryl, C_{7-16} aralkyl, 5-12 membered heteroaryl, 6-18 membered heteroaralkyl, 3-12 membered heterocycle, or 4-18 membered heterocycle-alkyl.

In one embodiment in the compounds of the present invention wherein as valency allows in B, B', R_a, R_b, R_c, and R_d, R_1, R_2, R_2', R_3, R_3', R_4, R_4', R^{10}, R^{11} and R^{12} each of alkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl, alkoxy, aryl, aralkyl, heteroaryl, heteroaralkyl, heterocycle, or heterocycle-alkyl is independently unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by halogen, -$OR_{a'}$, -$NR_{a'}R_{b'}$, $C(=O)OR_{a'}$, -$C(O)NR_{a'}R_{b'}$, -$C(=O)OH$, hydroxyl, nitro, azido, cyano,; wherein $R_{a'}$-$R_{d'}$ are each independently H, C_{1-12} alkyl.

In one embodiment in the compounds of the present invention wherein as valency allows in B, B', R_a, R_b, R_c, and R_d, R_1, R_2, R_2', R_3, R_3', R_4, R_4', R^{10}, R^{11} and R^{12} each of alkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl, alkoxy, aryl, aralkyl, heteroaryl, heteroaralkyl, heterocycle, or heterocycle-alkyl is independently unsubstituted or substituted one time by halogen.

In one embodiment in the compounds of the present invention wherein as valency allows in B, B', R_a, R_b, R_c, and R_d, R_1, R_2, R_2', R_3, R_3', R_4, R_4', R^{10}, R^{11} and R^{12} each of alkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl, alkoxy, aryl, aralkyl, heteroaryl, heteroaralkyl, heterocycle, or heterocycle-alkyl is independently unsubstituted or substituted one time by fluoro.

The use of a compound of the present invention for treating an Hepatitis C viral infection in a human. The use of a compound of the present invention further comprising administering at least one additional agent. The use of a compound of the present invention wherein said at least one additional agent is selected from viral serine protease

inhibitors, viral polymerase inhibitors, viral helicase inhibitors, immunomudulating agents, antioxidant agents, antibacterial agents, therapeutic vaccines, hepatoprotectant agents, antisense agents, inhibitors of HCV NS2/3 protease and inhibitors of internal ribosome entry site (IRES).

The use of a compound of the present invention, wherein said at least one additional agent is selected from ribavirin and interferon-α.

The use of a compound of the present invention for the manufacture of a medicament.

A pharmaceutical formulation comprising at least one compound of the present invention and at least one pharmaceutically acceptable carrier or excipient.

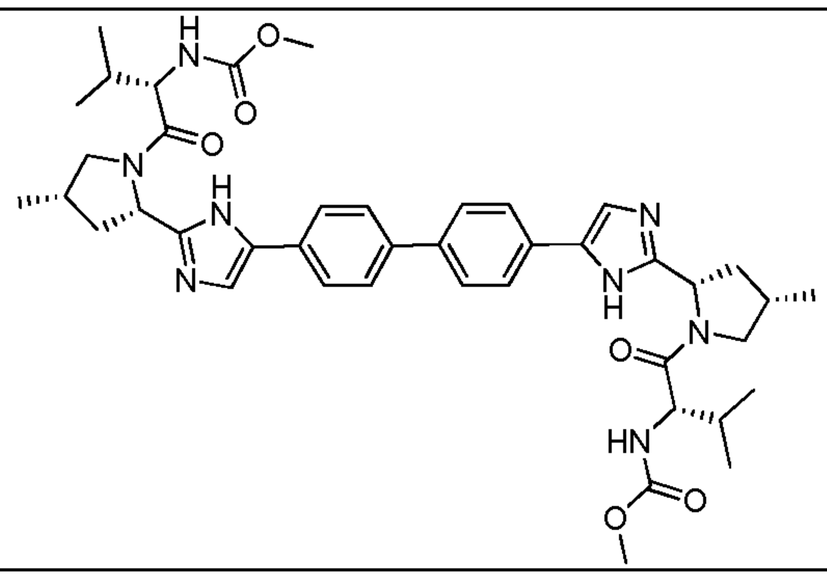
The use of a compound of the present invention for treating an Hepatitis C viral infection in a human. The use of a compound of the present invention further comprising administering at least one additional agent. The use of a compound of the present invention wherein said at least one additional agent is selected from viral serine protease inhibitors, viral polymerase inhibitors, viral helicase inhibitors, immunomudulating agents, antioxidant agents, antibacterial agents, therapeutic vaccines, hepatoprotectant agents, antisense agents, inhibitors of HCV NS2/3 protease and inhibitors of internal ribosome entry site (IRES). The use of a compound of the present invention wherein said at least one additional agent is selected from ribavirin and interferon-α.

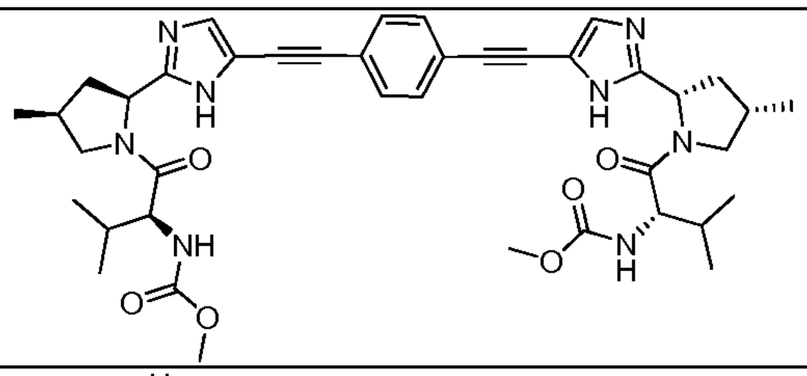
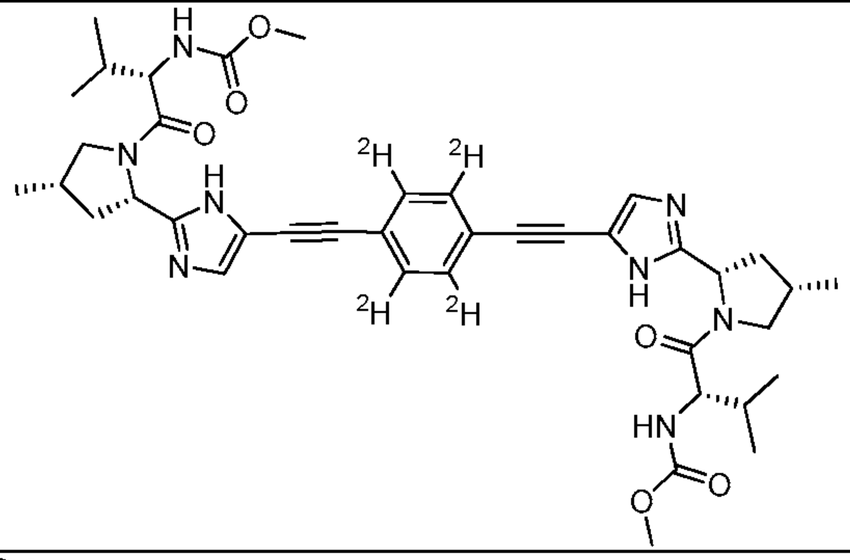
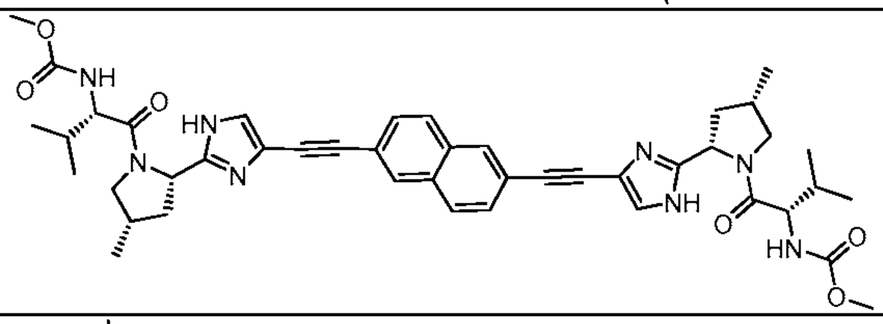
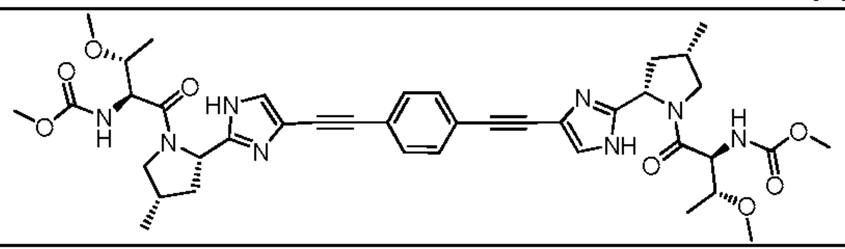
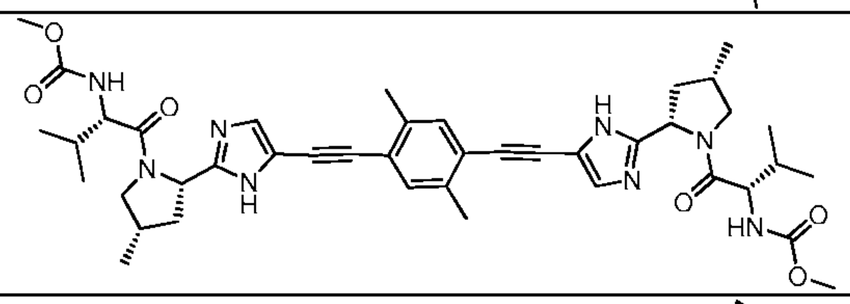
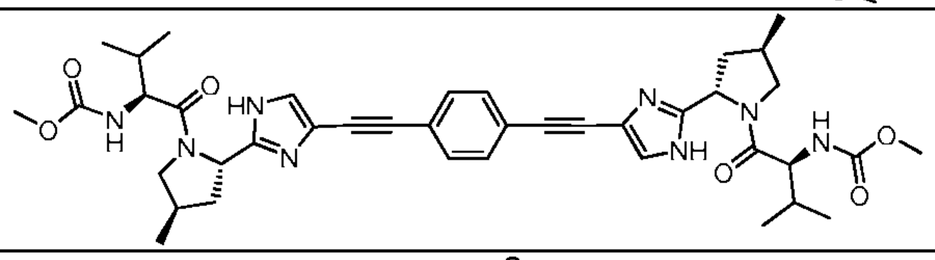
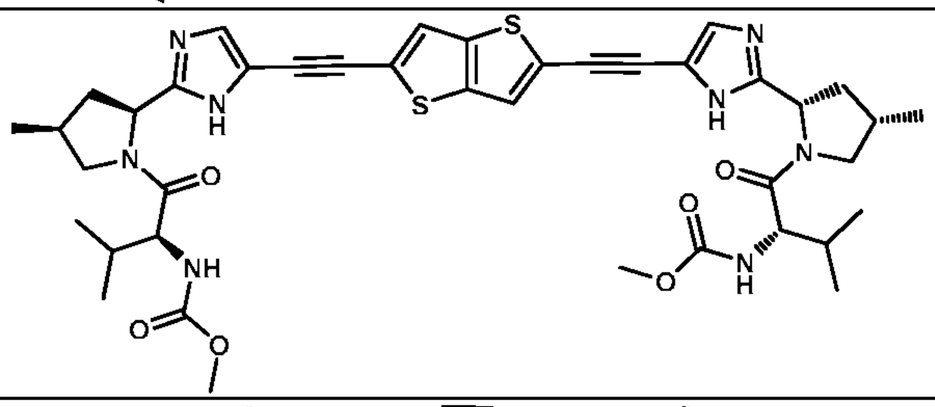
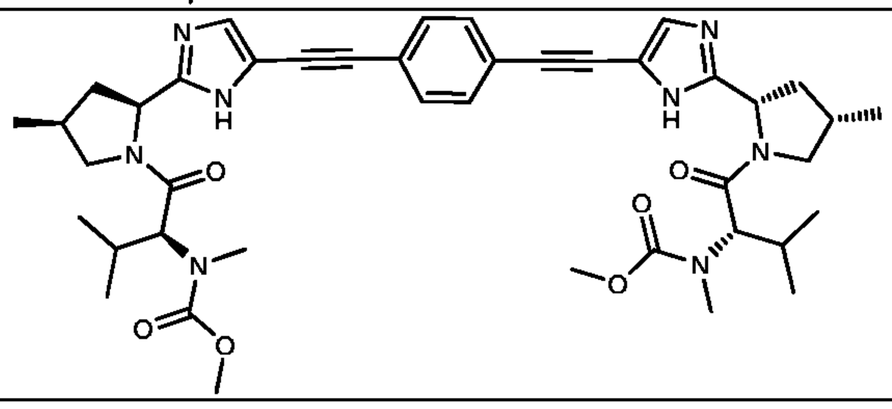
The use of a compound of the present invention for the manufacture of a medicament.

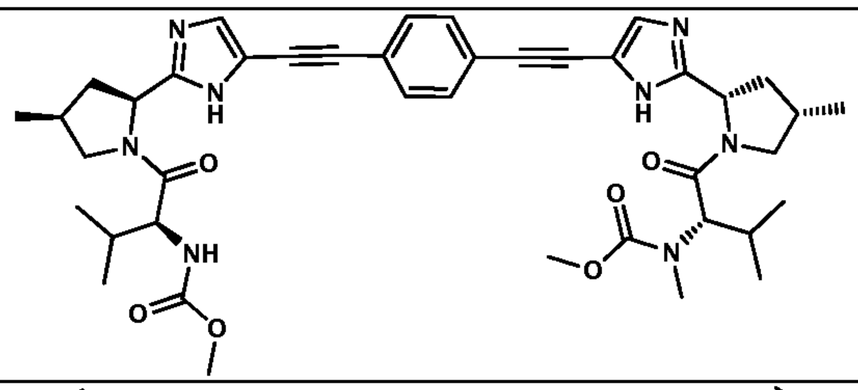
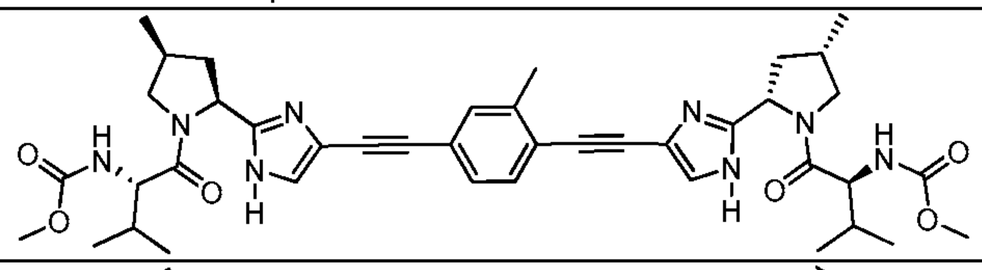
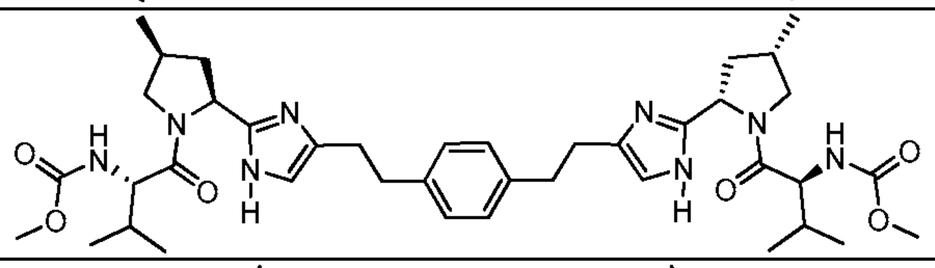
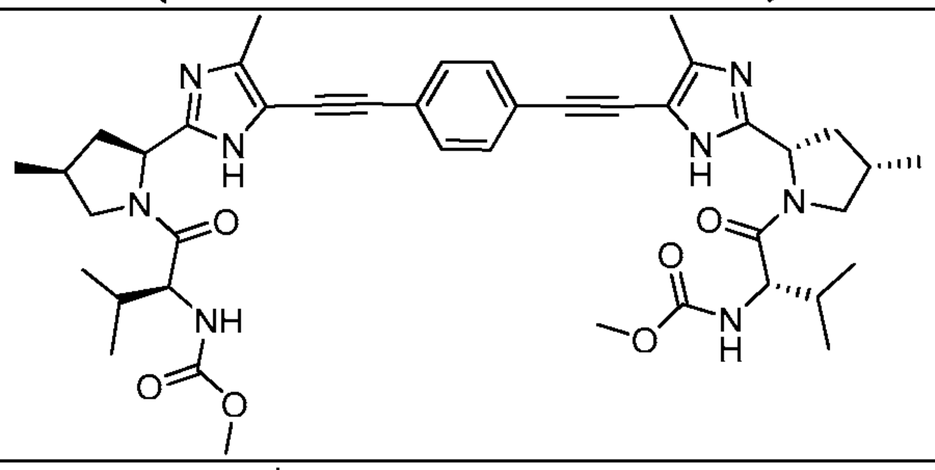
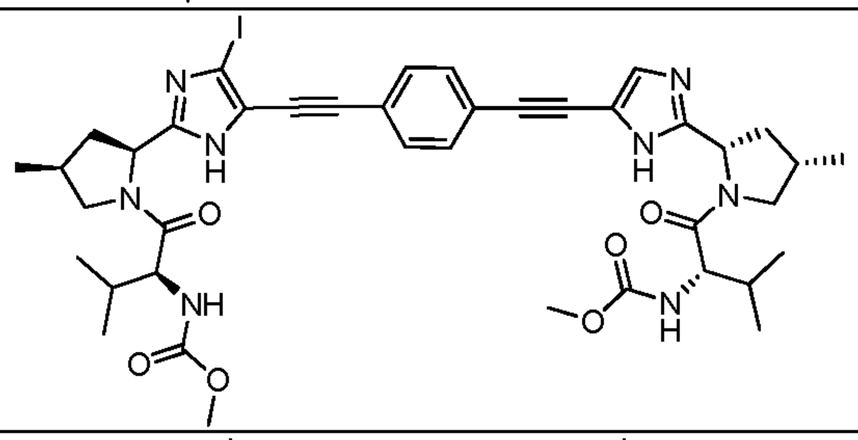
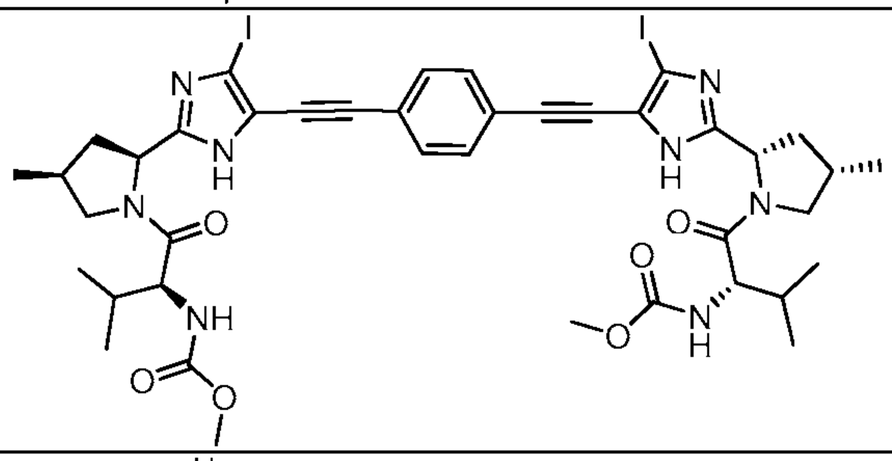
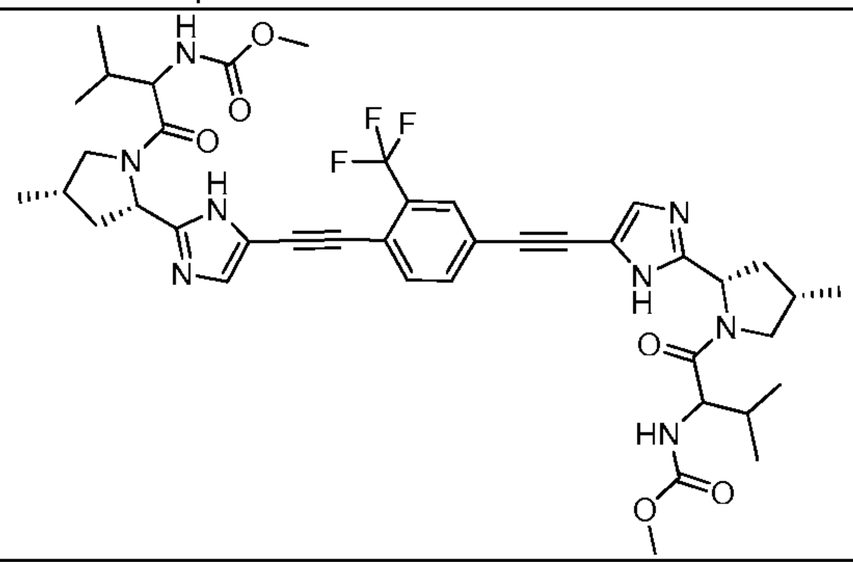
A pharmaceutical formulation comprising at least one compound of the present invention and at least one pharmaceutically acceptable carrier or excipient.

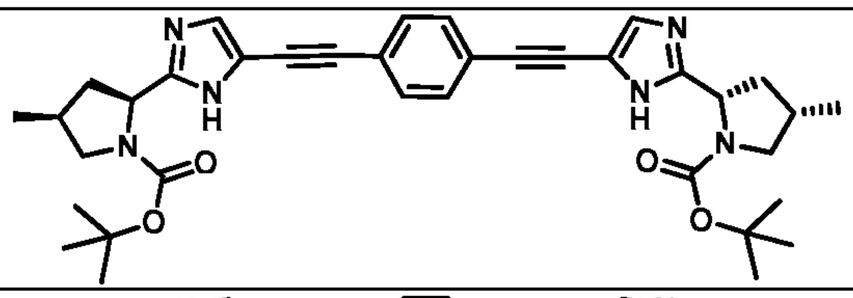
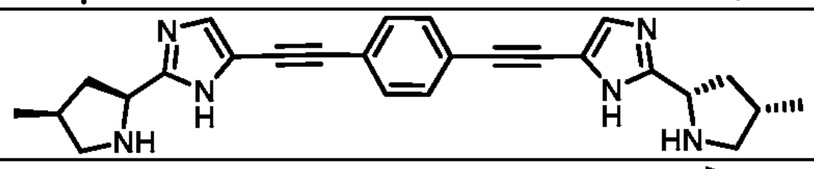
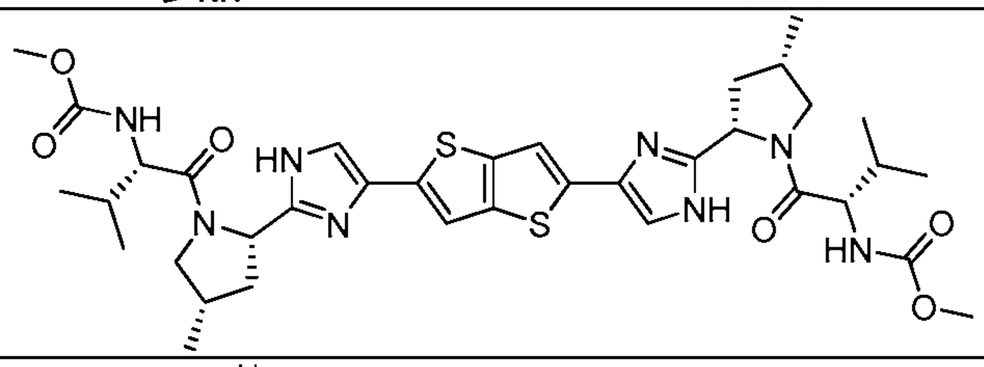
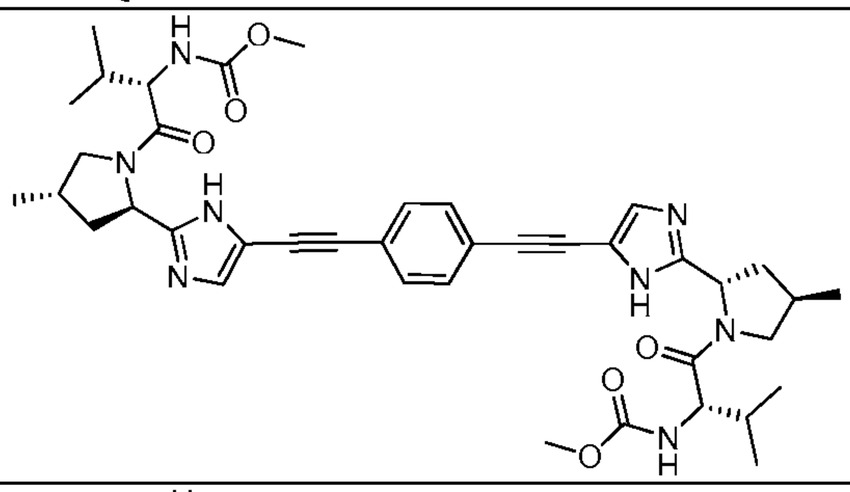
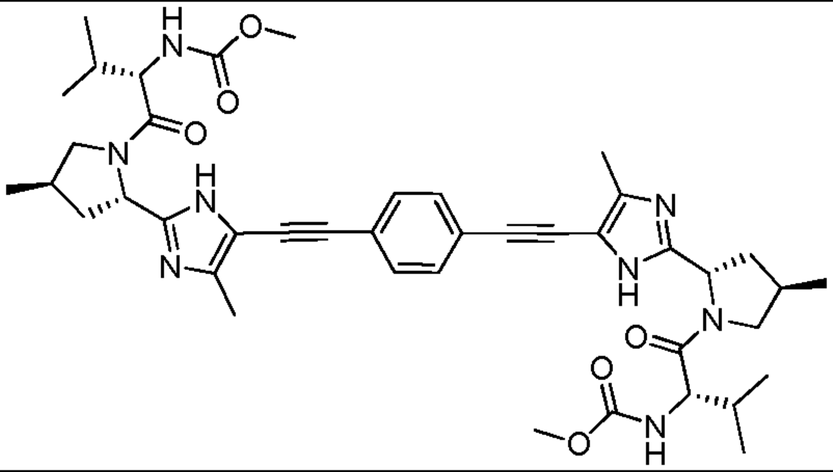
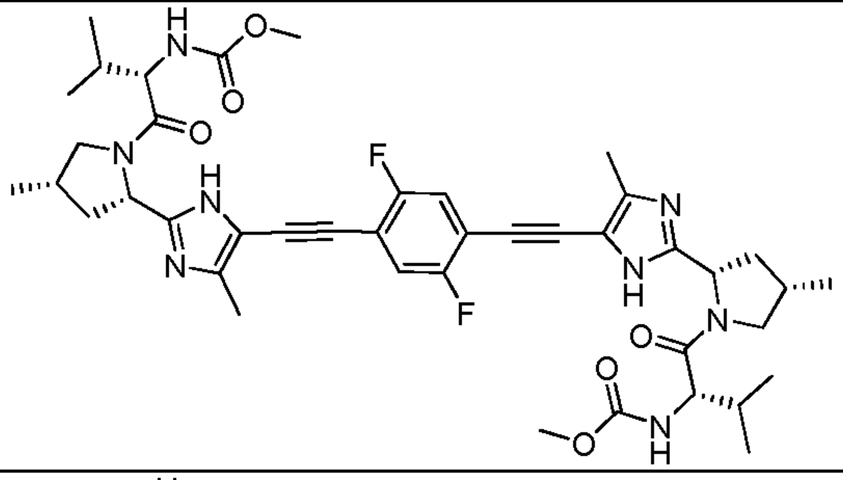
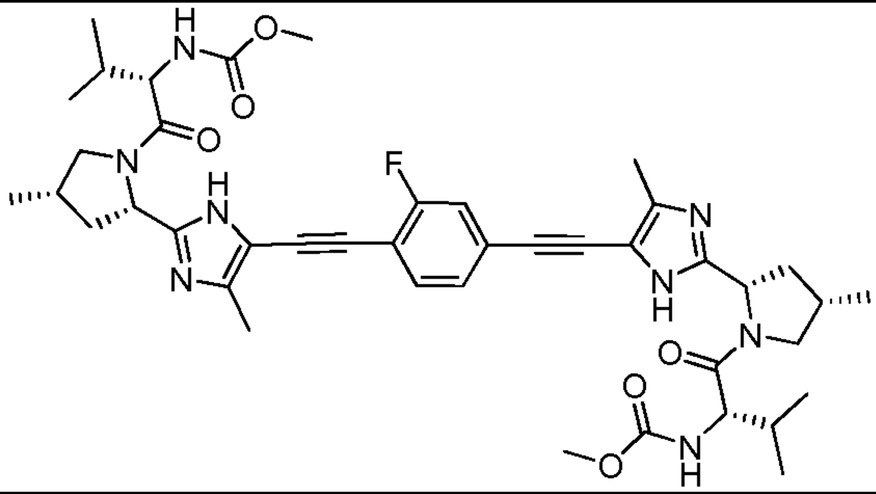
According to an aspect of the invention, the compounds of the invention are selected from Table 1A:

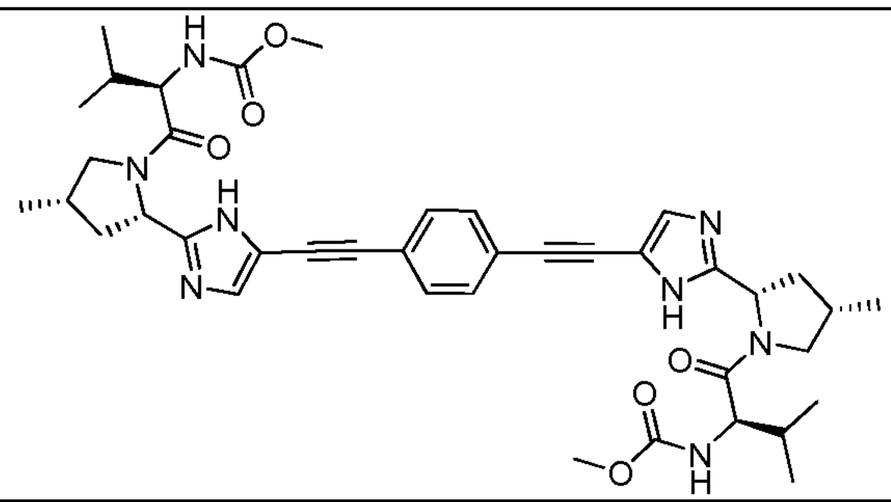
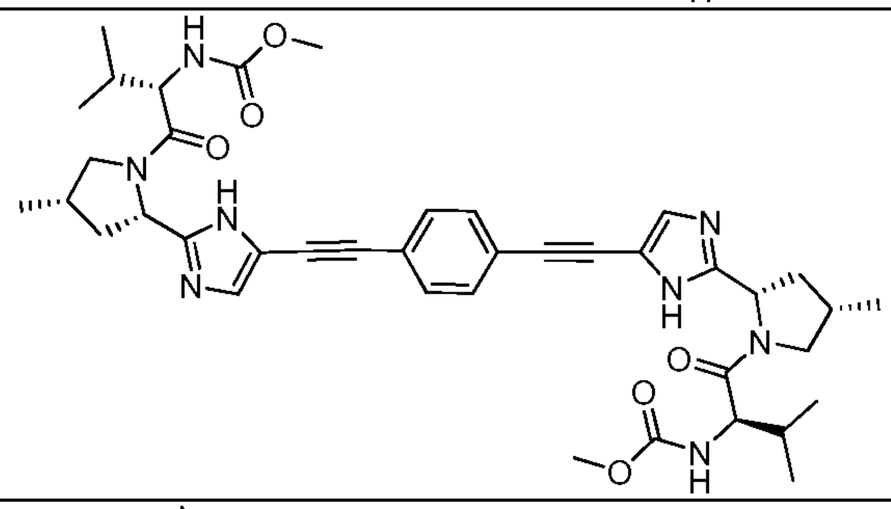
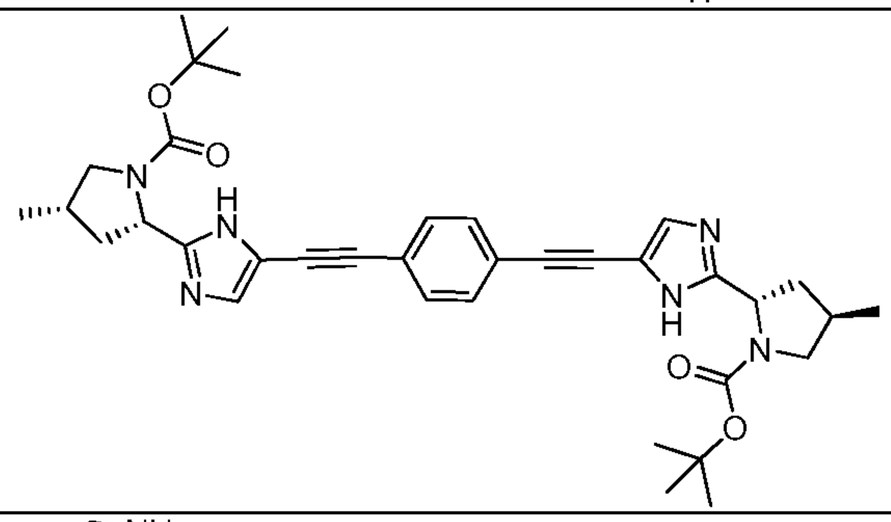
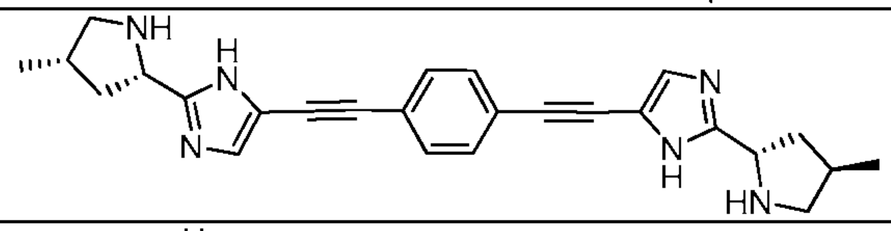
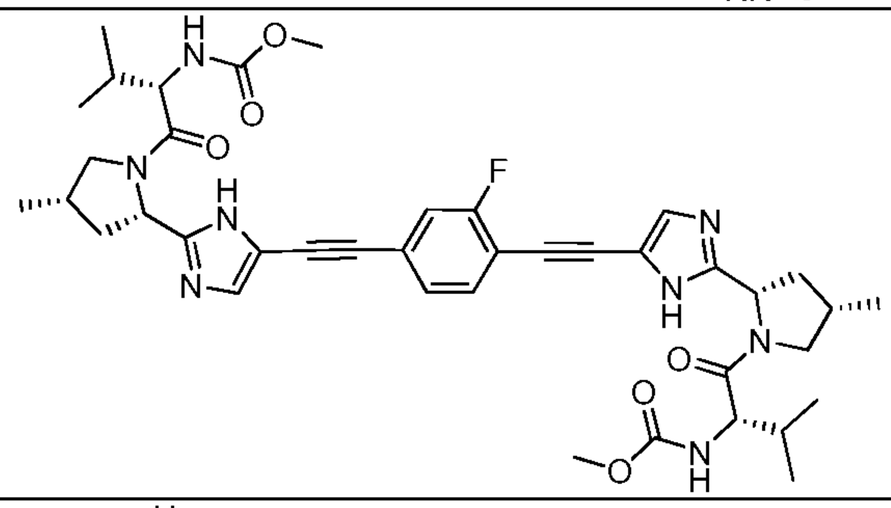
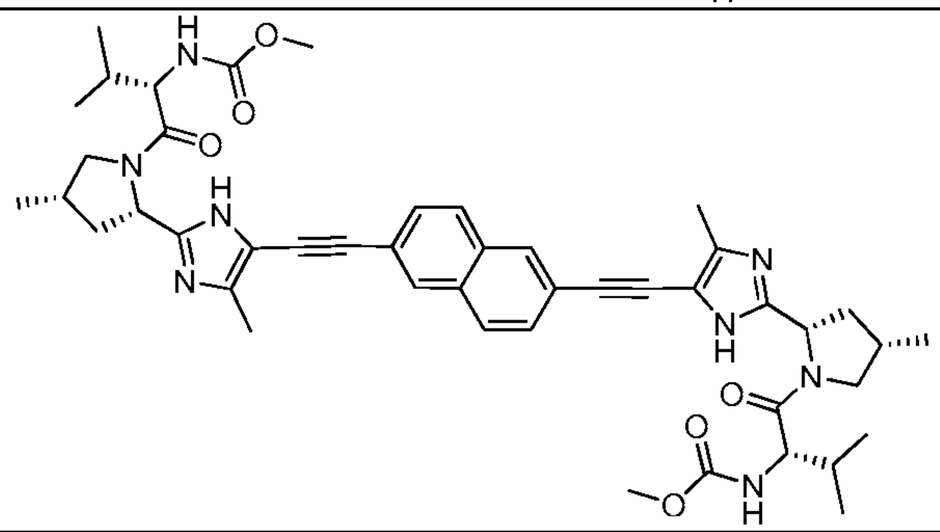
Table 1A

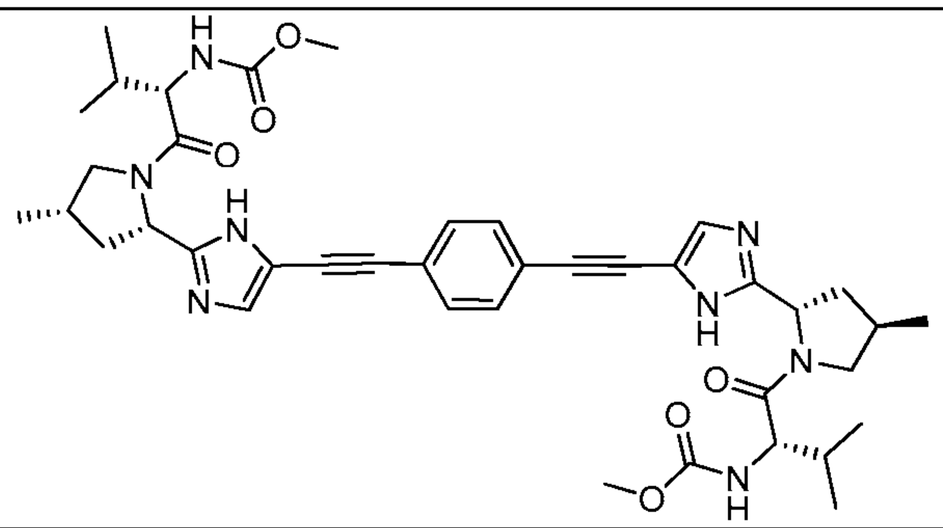
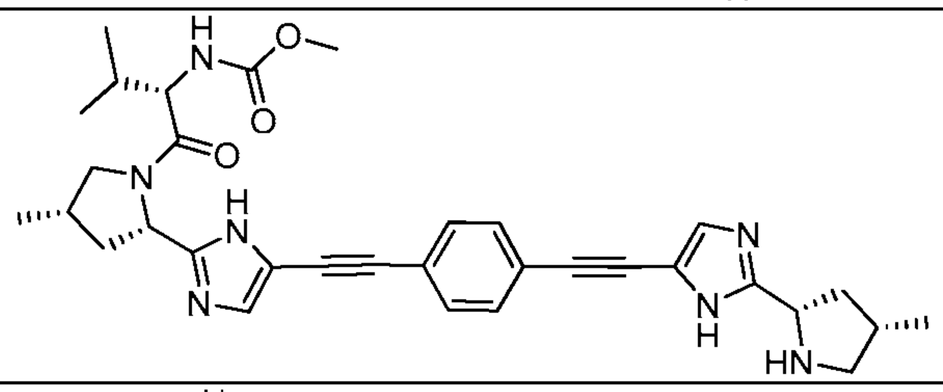
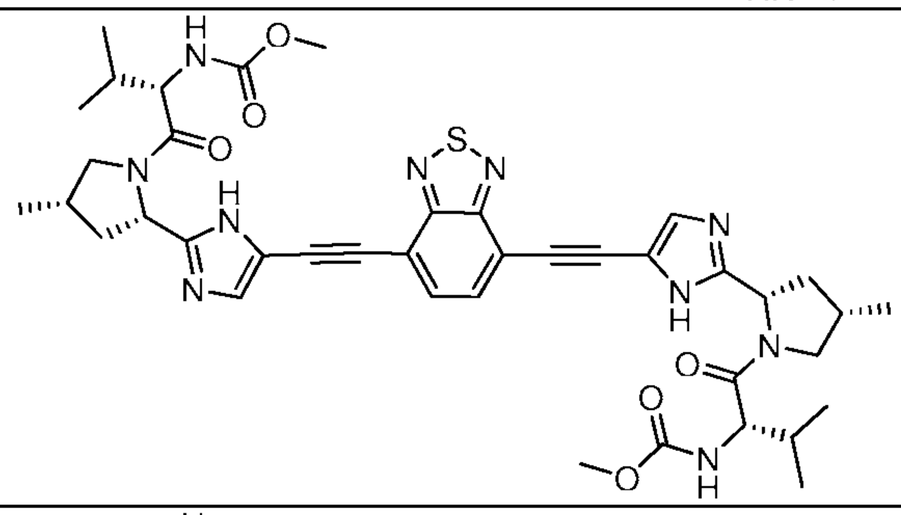
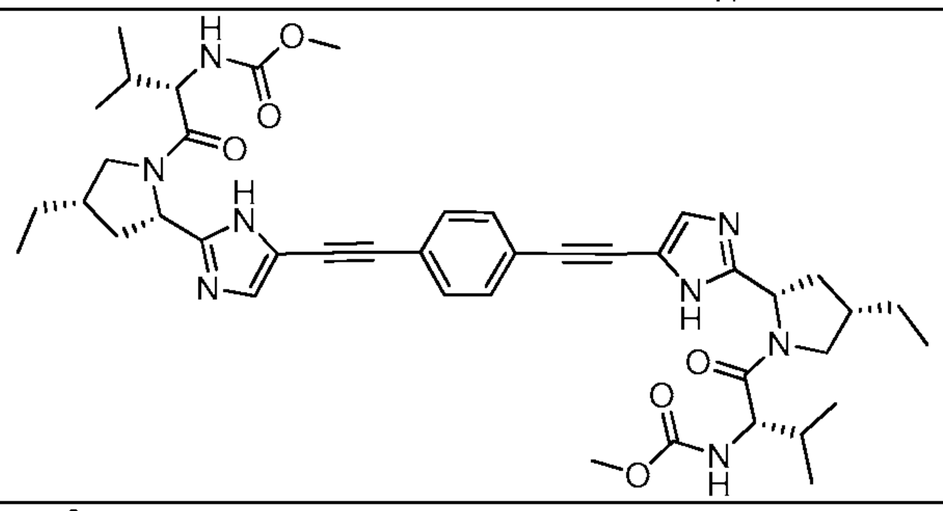
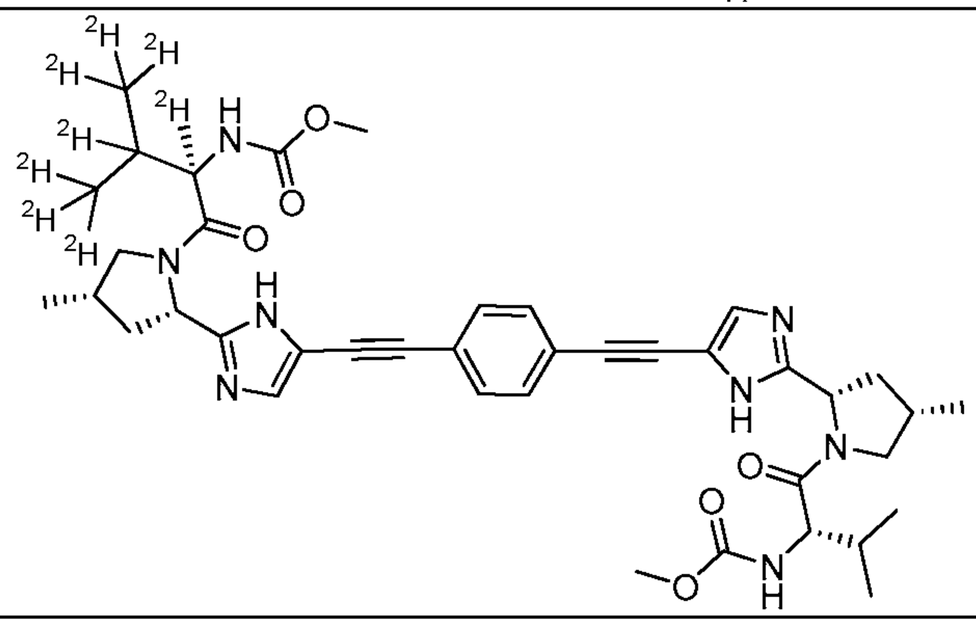
No.	Structure
1	

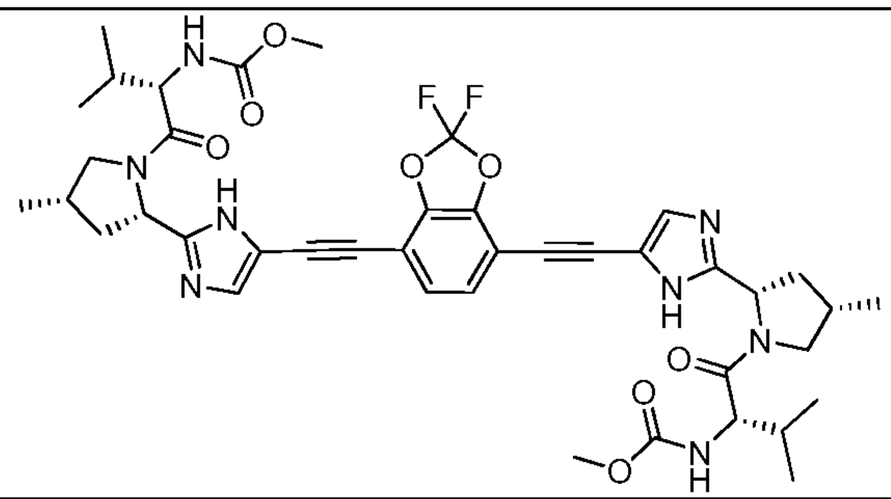
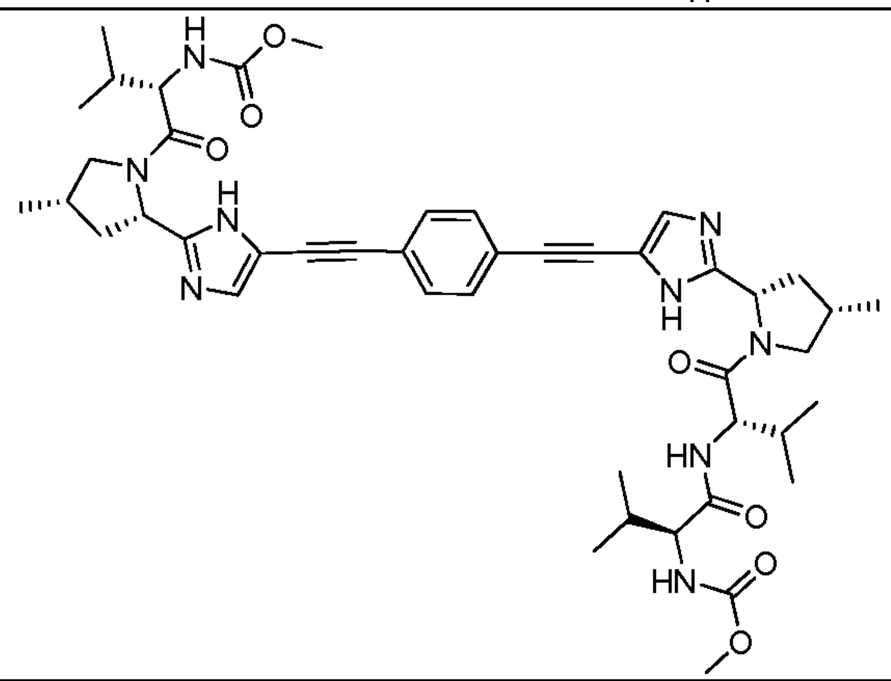
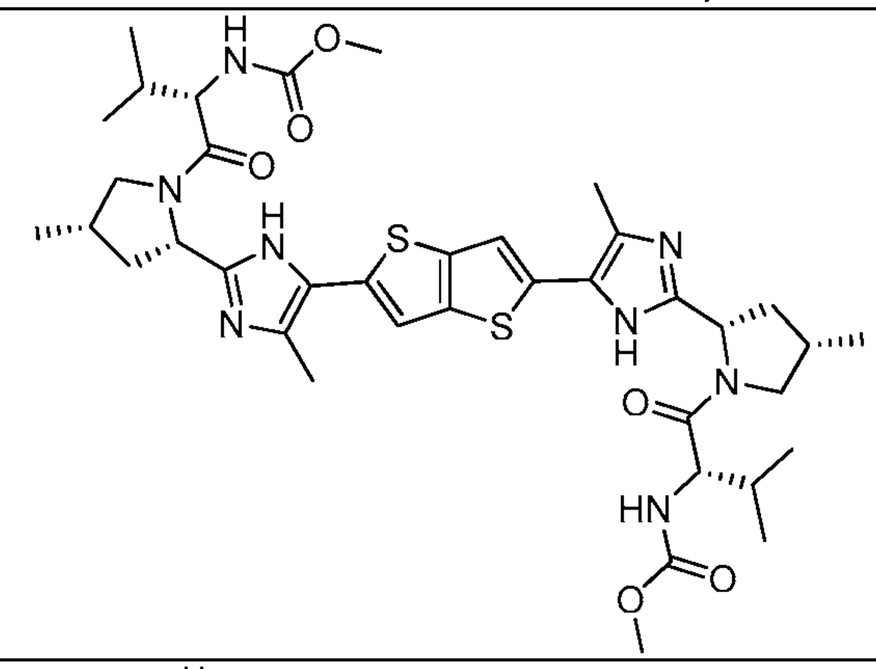
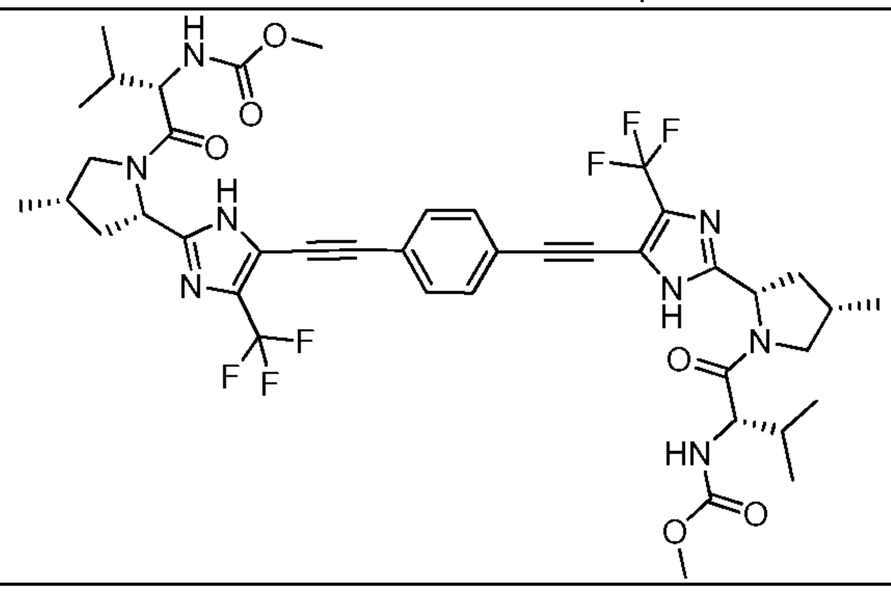
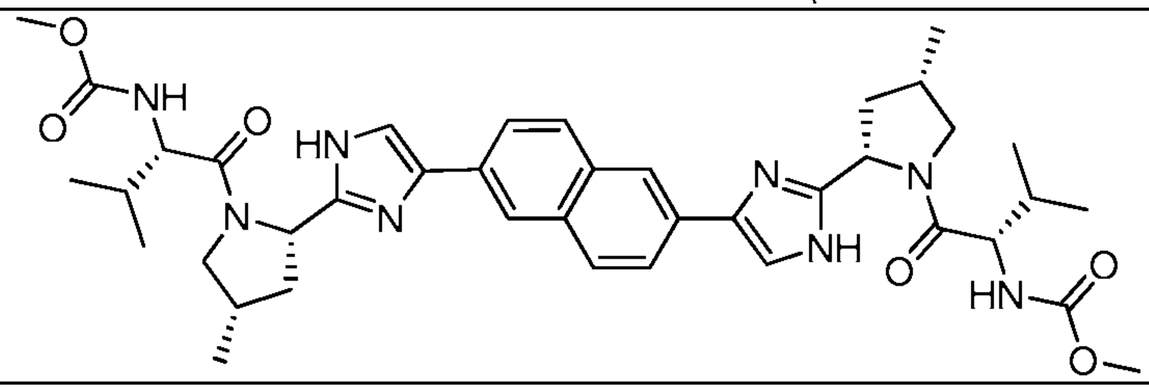
No.	Structure
4	
5	
6	
7	
8	
9	
10	
11	

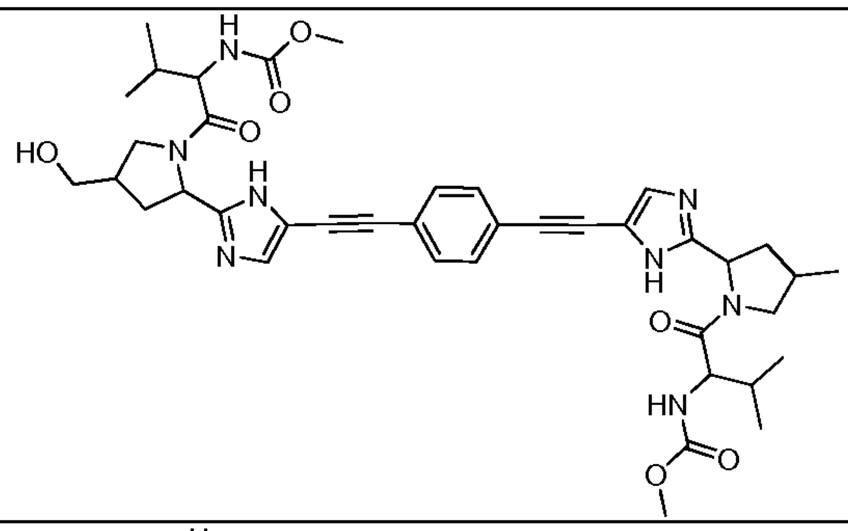
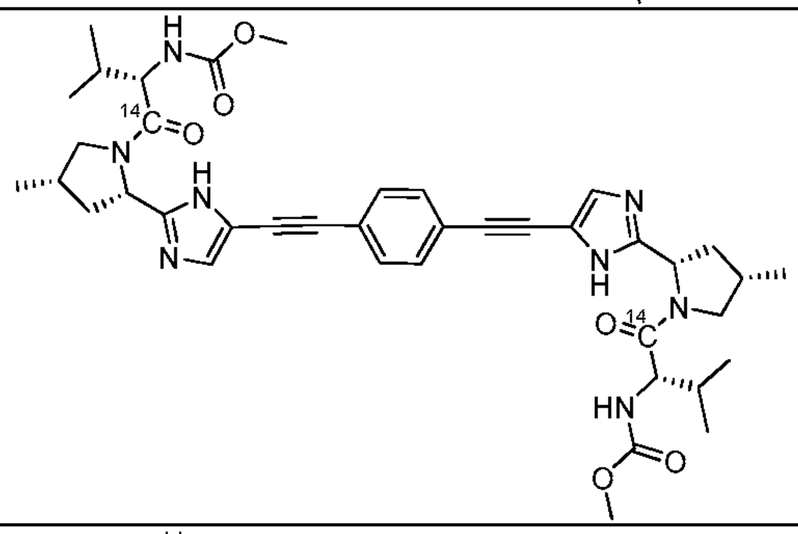
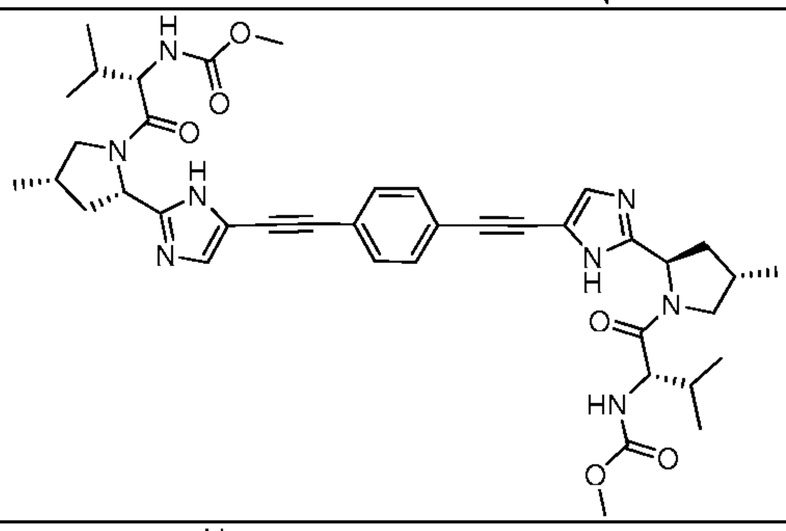
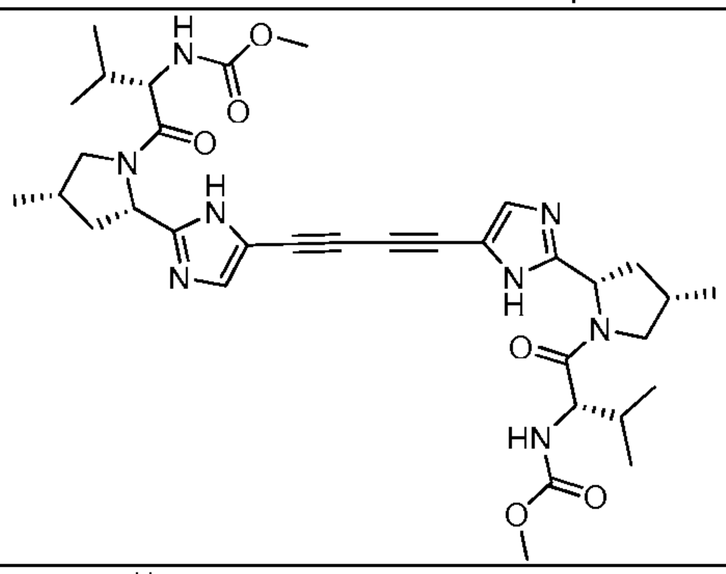
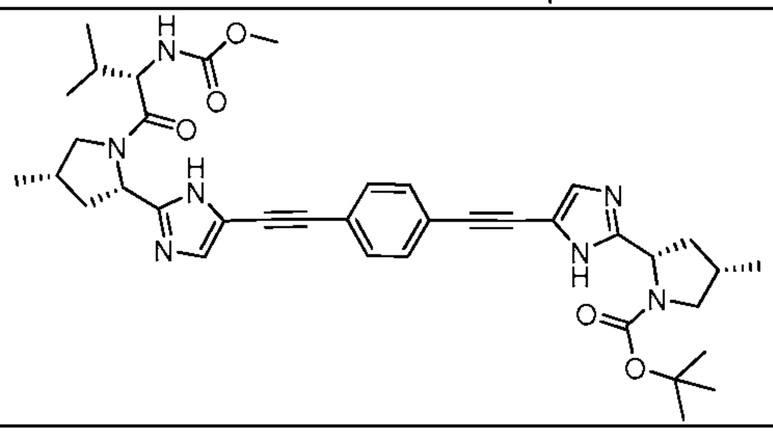
No.	Structure
12	
16	
17	
18	
20	
21	
22	

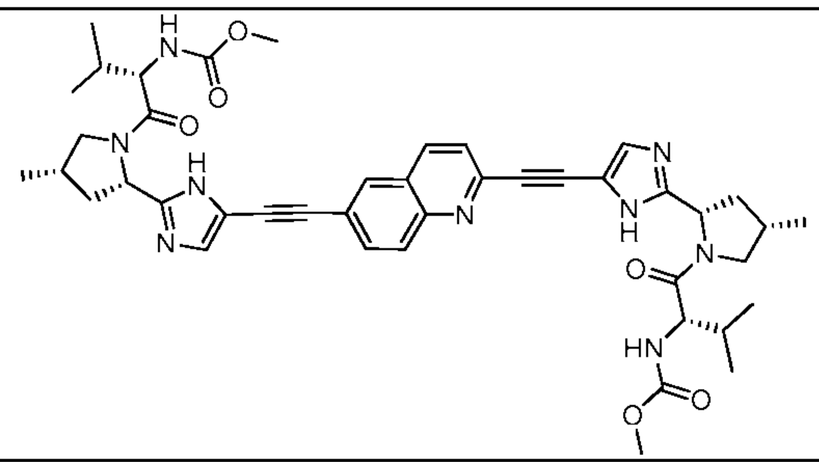
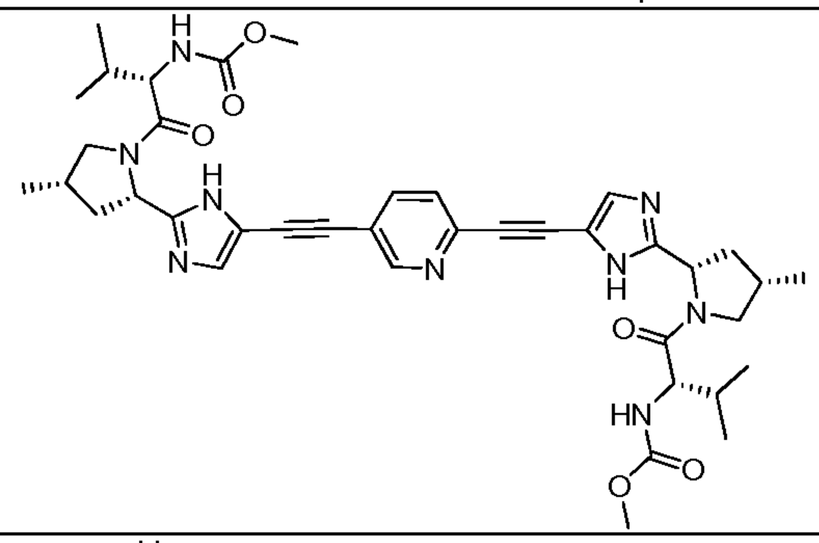
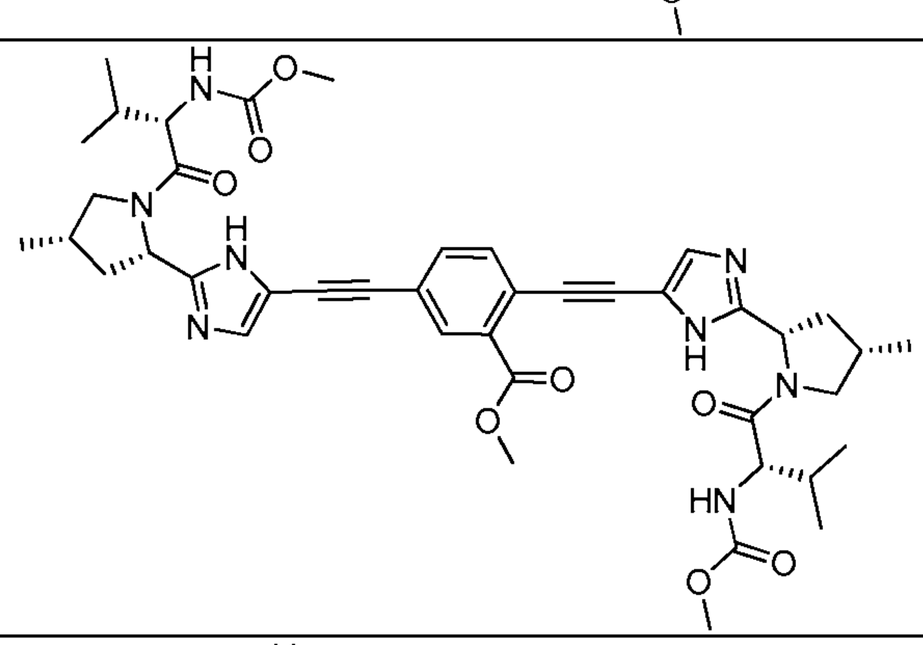
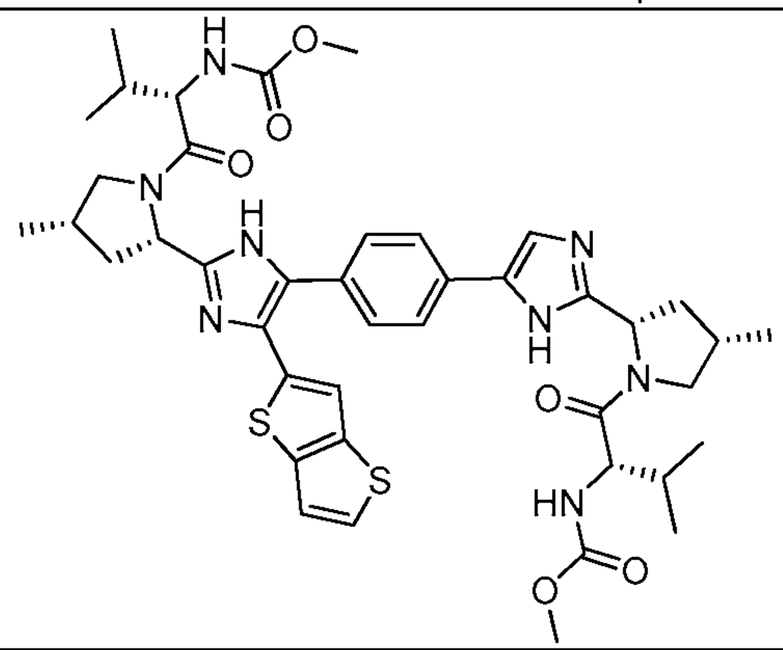
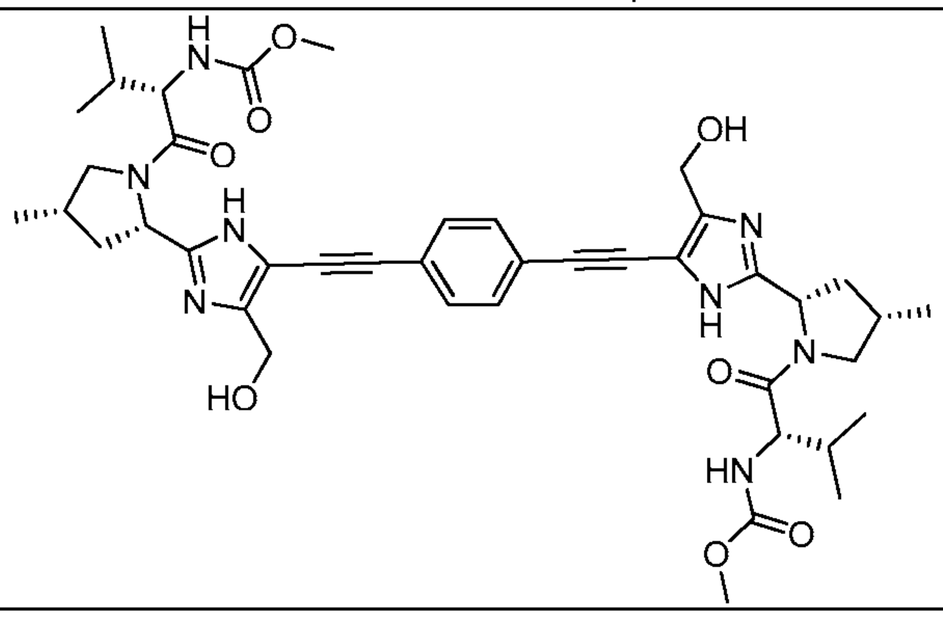
No.	Structure
23	
24	
26	
27	
28	
29	
31	

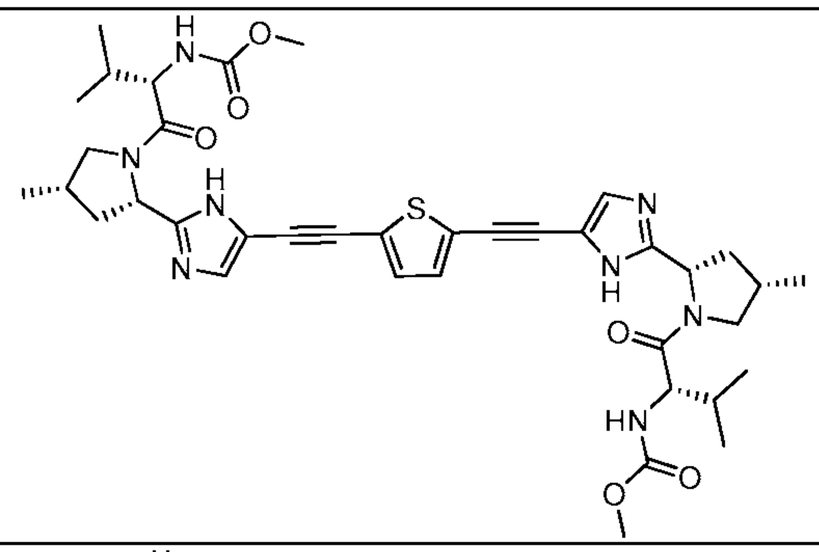
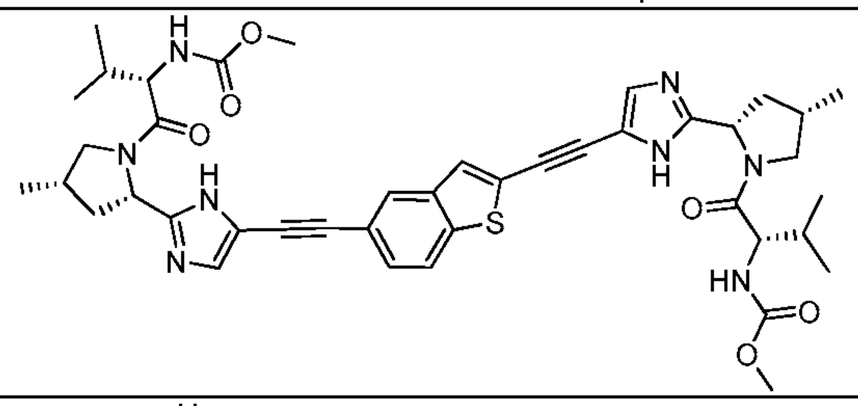
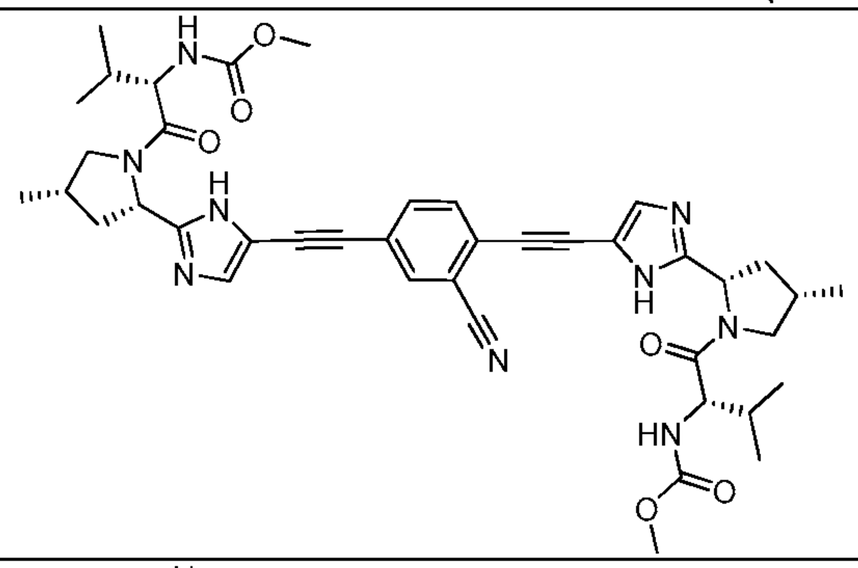
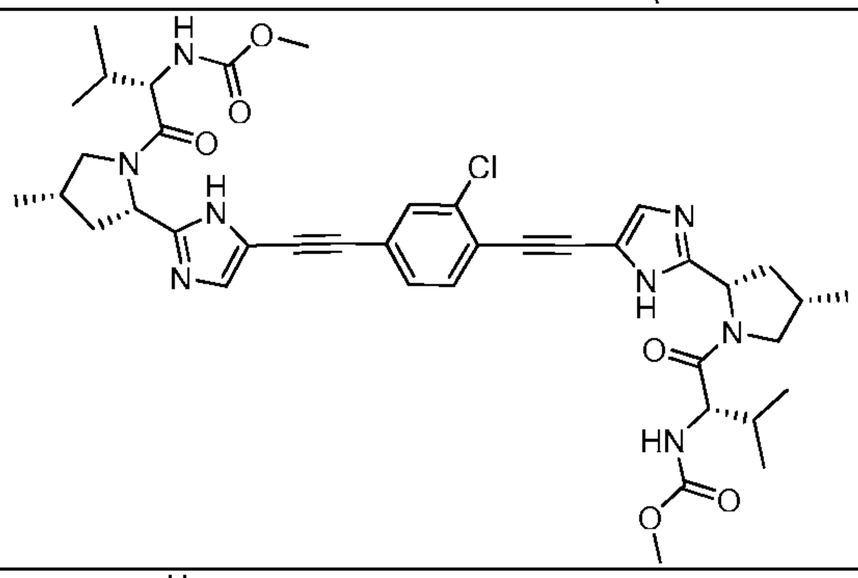
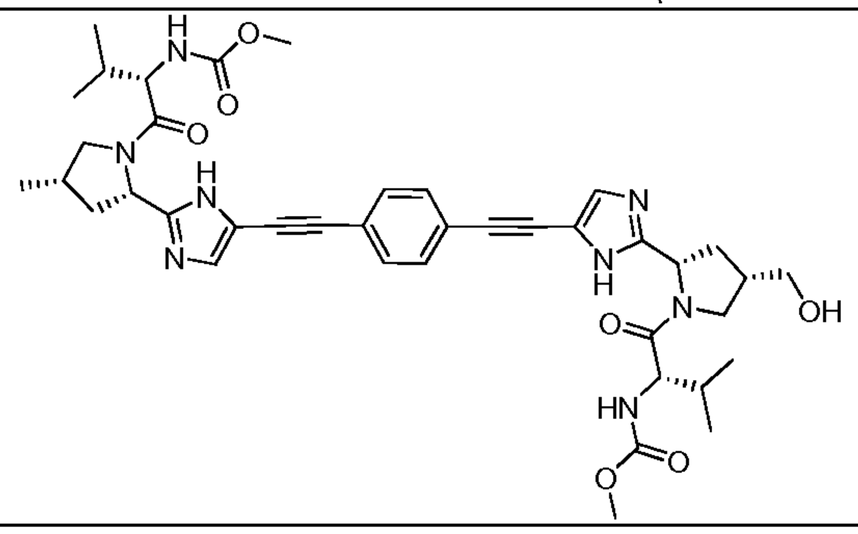
No.	Structure
32	
33	
34	
35	
36	
37	

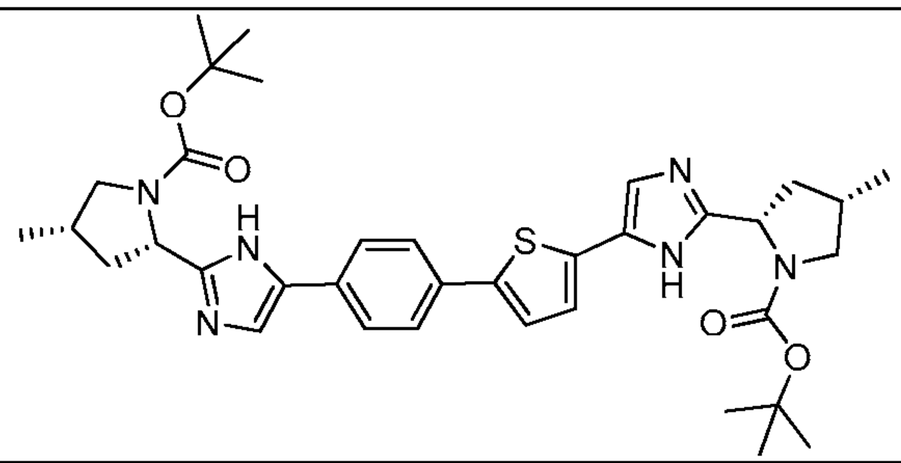
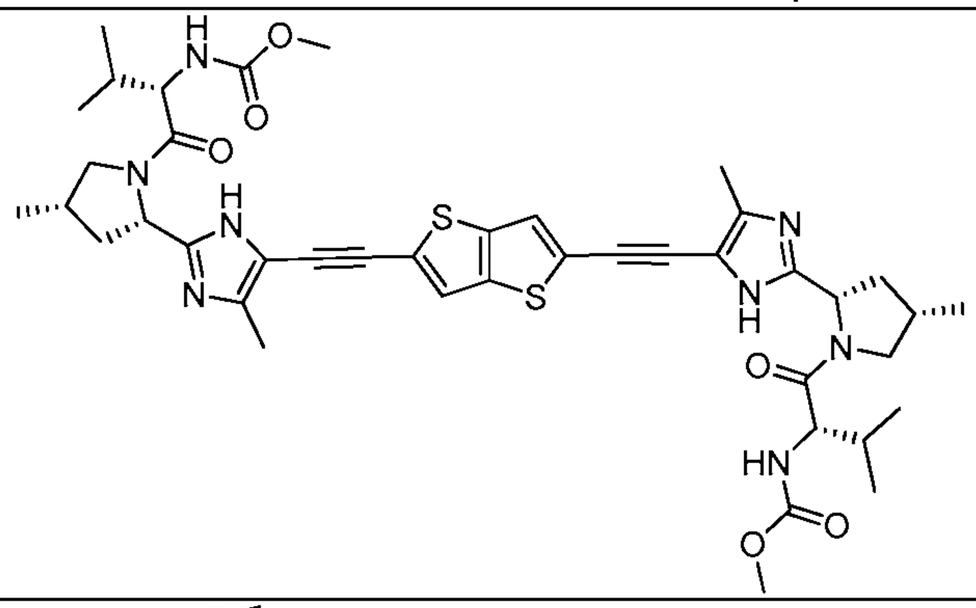
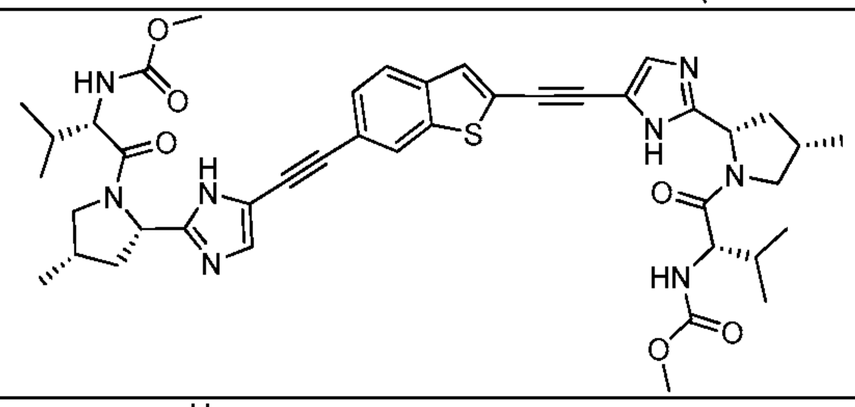
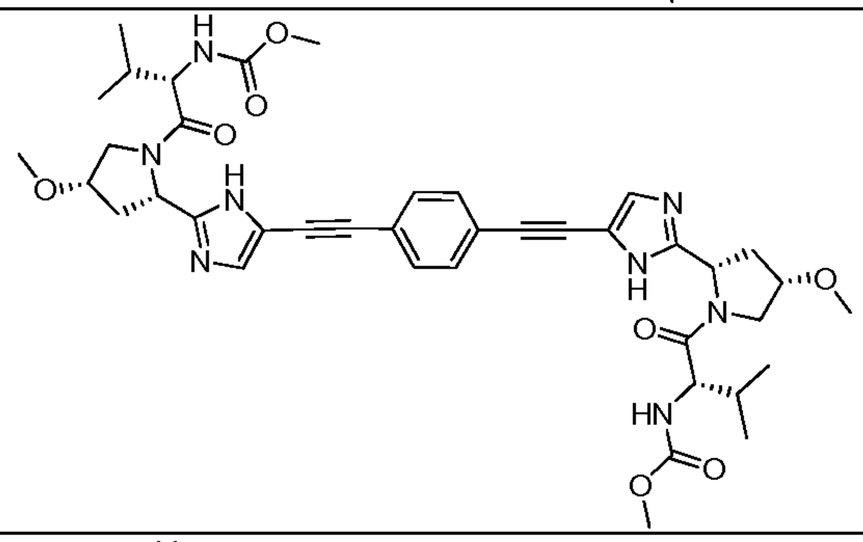
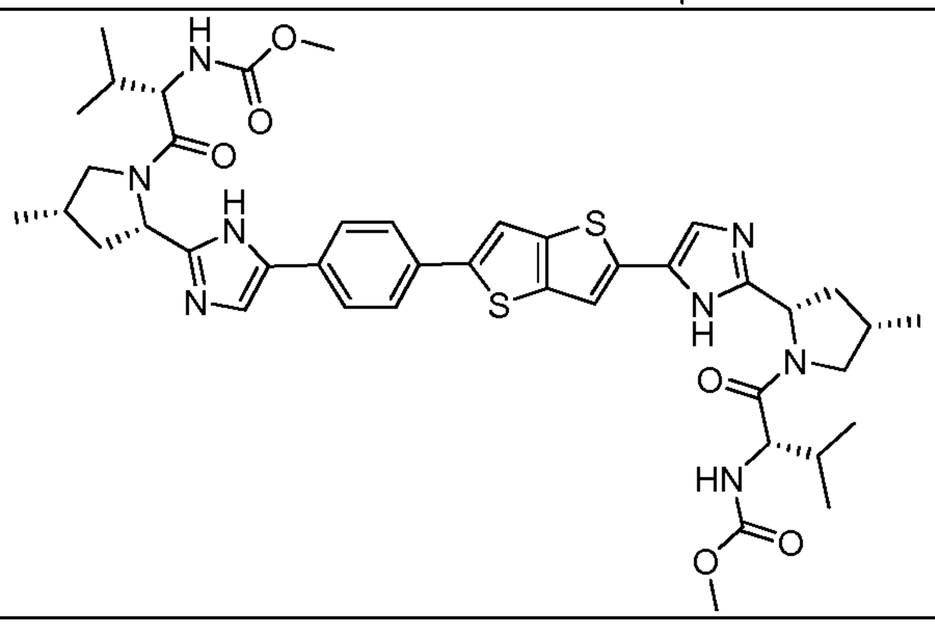
No.	Structure
38	
39	
40	
41	
44	

No.	Structure
45	
46	
47	
48	
49	

No.	Structure
50	
51	
52	
53	
54	

No.	Structure
55	
56	
57	
58	
59	

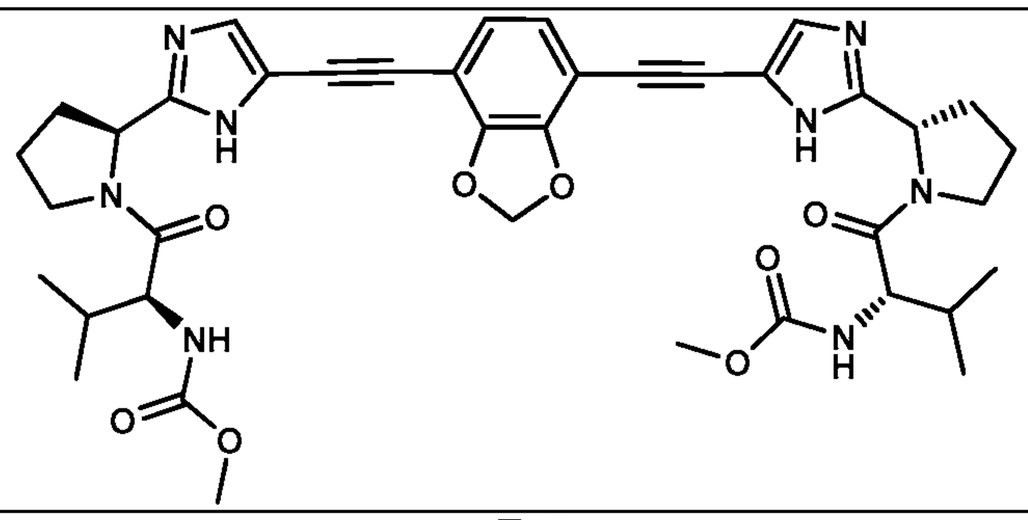
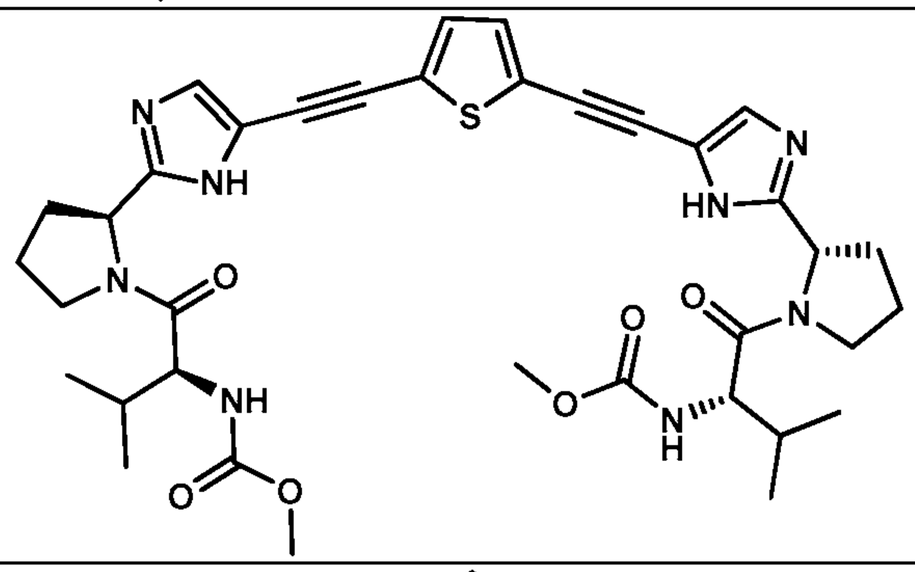
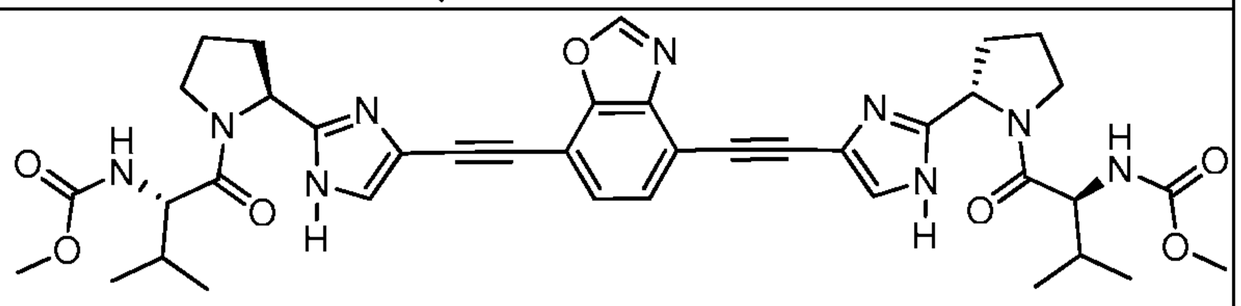
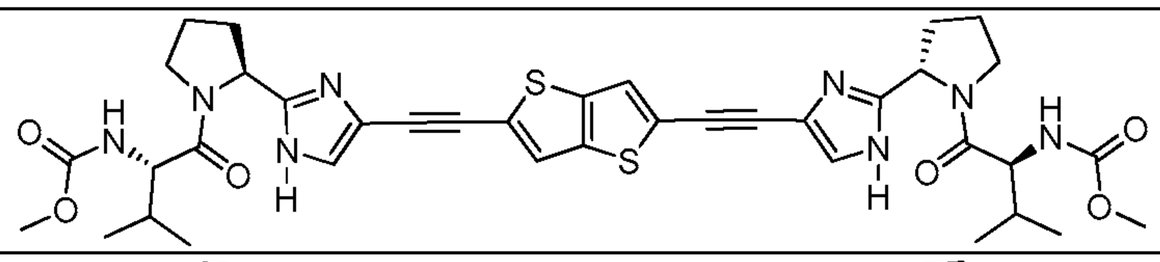
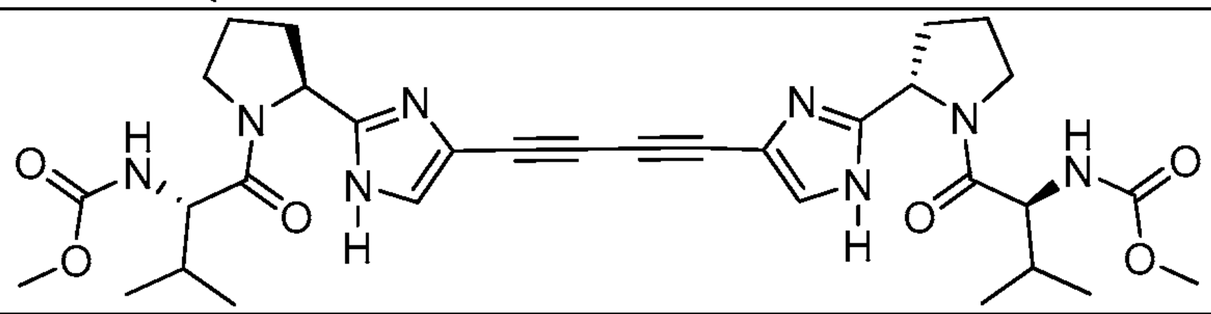
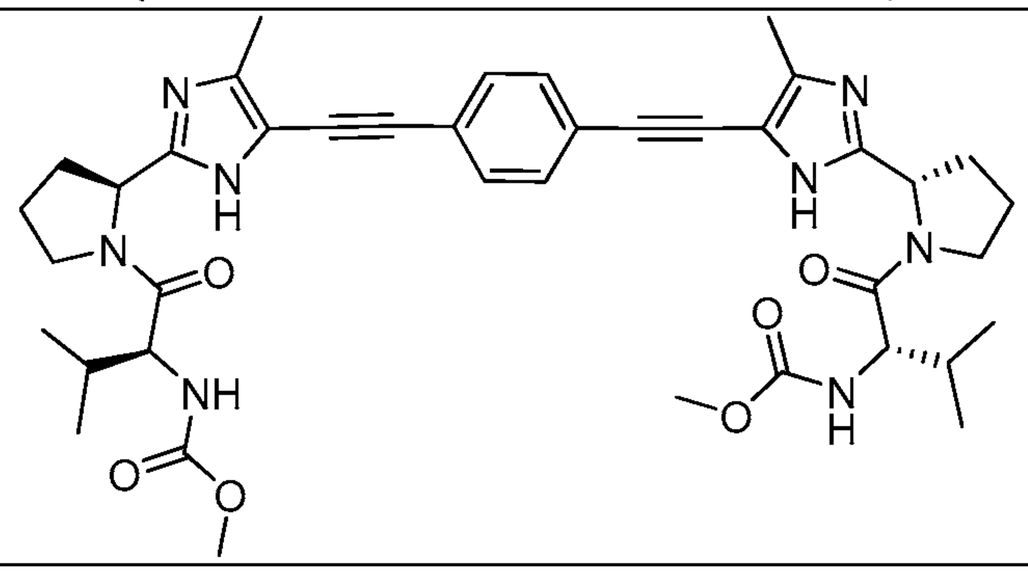
No.	Structure
60	
61	
62	
63	
64	

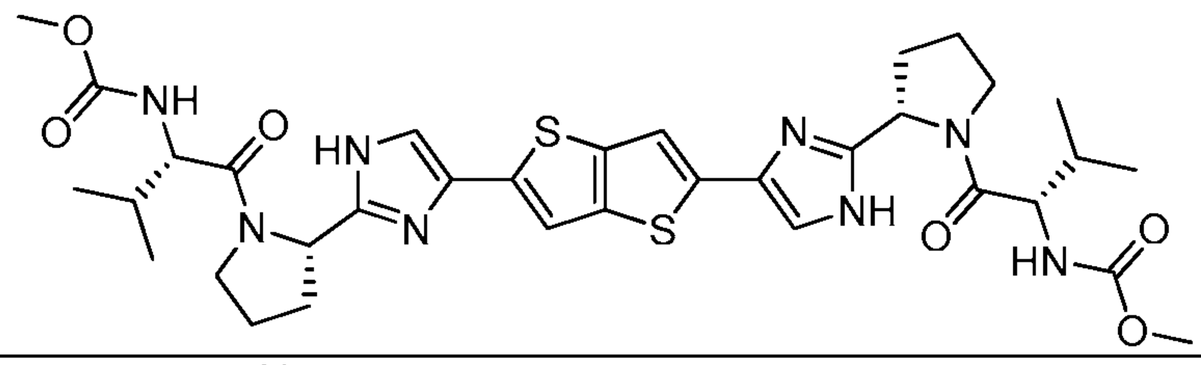
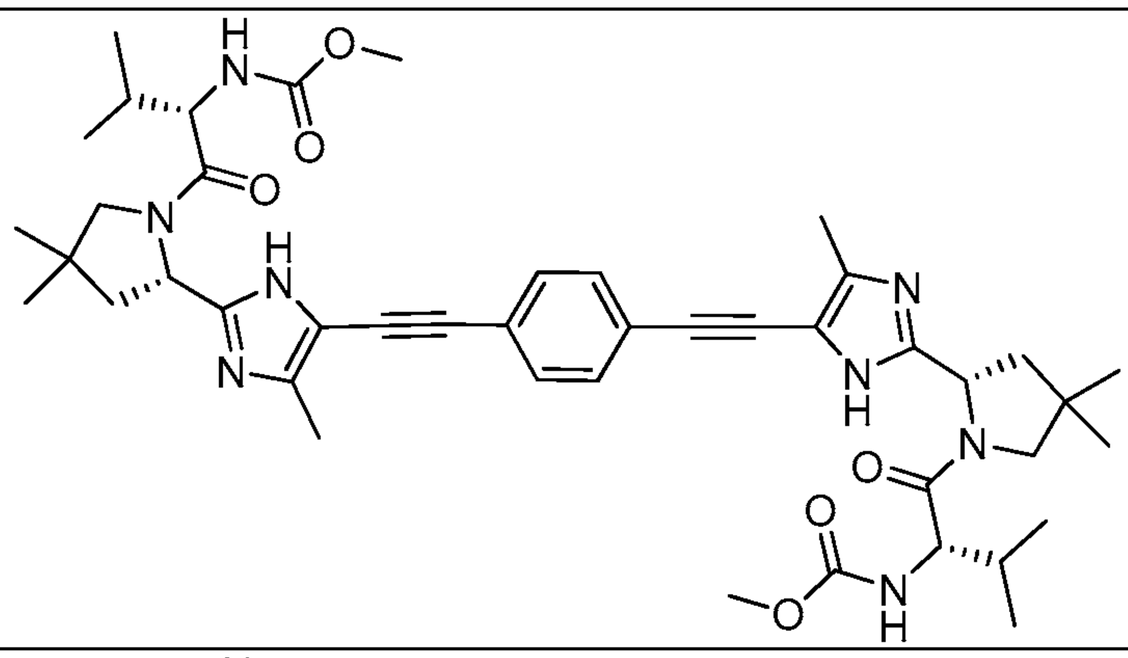
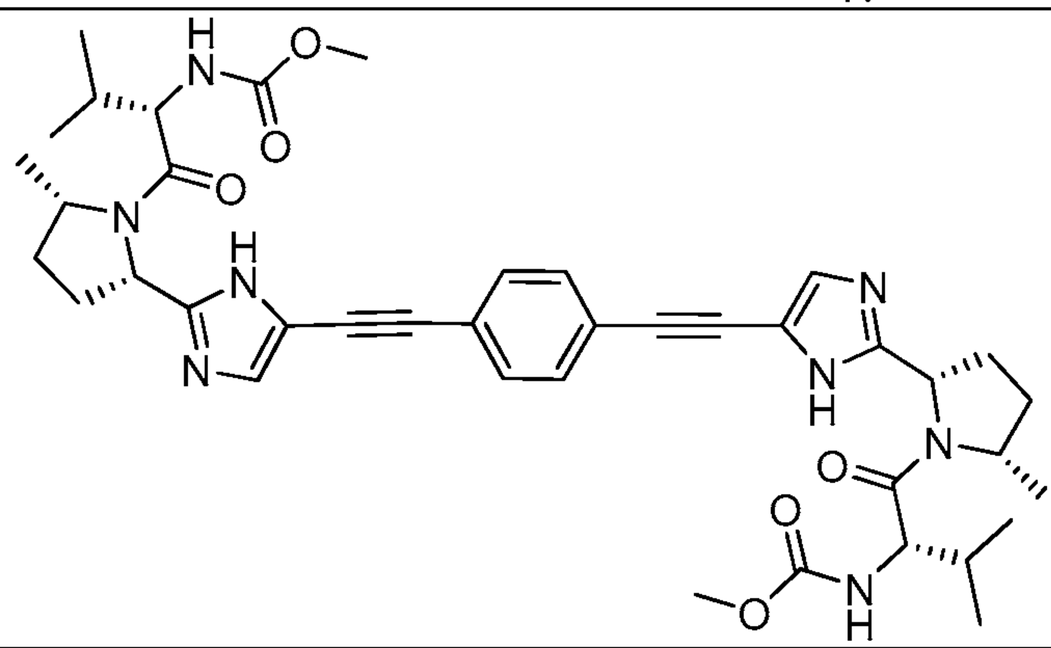
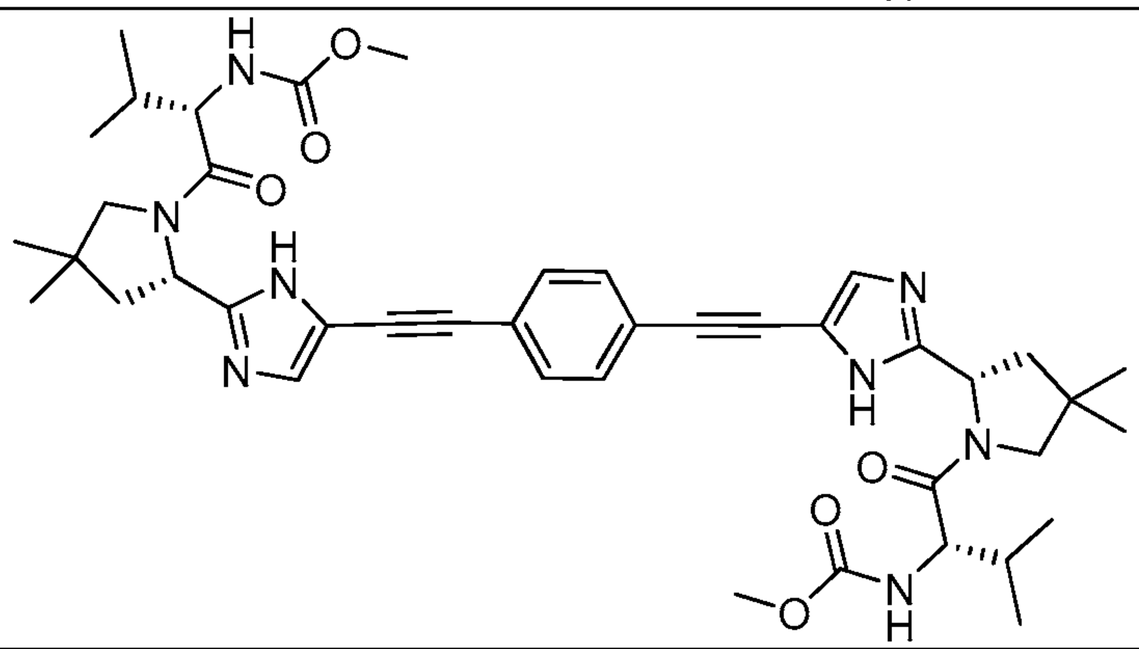
No.	Structure
65	
66	
67	
68	
69	

or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

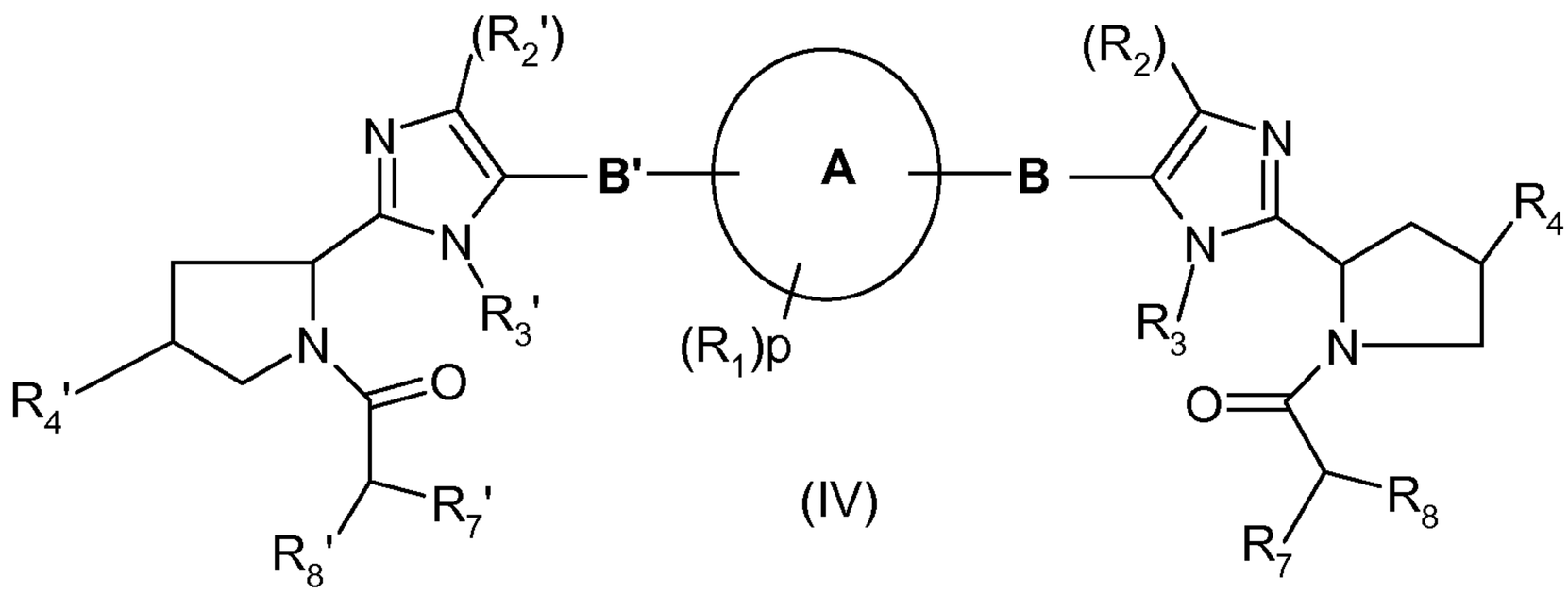
According to another aspect of the invention, the compounds of the invention are selected from Table 1B:

Table 1B

No.	Structure
2	
3	
13	
14	
15	
19	

No.	Structure
25	
30	
42	
43	

In one embodiment, the present invention provides a method for preparing a compound of formula (IV):

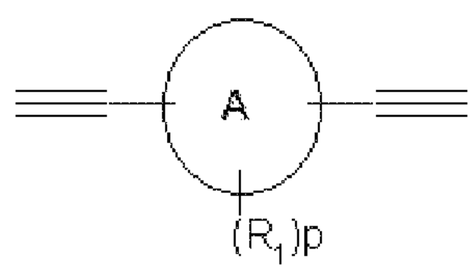


(IV)

or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, wherein each of A, B, B', R^1, p, R_2, $R_{2'}$, R_3, $R_{3'}$, R_4, $R_{4'}$, R_7, $R_{7'}$, R_8, and $R_{8'}$, are as defined herein,

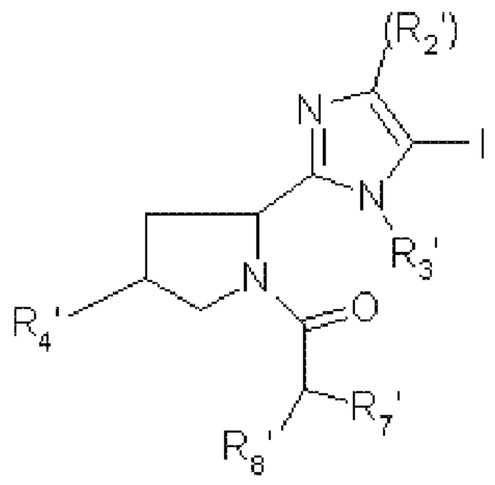
wherein said method comprises the steps of:

a) contacting a compound of formula (XXX):

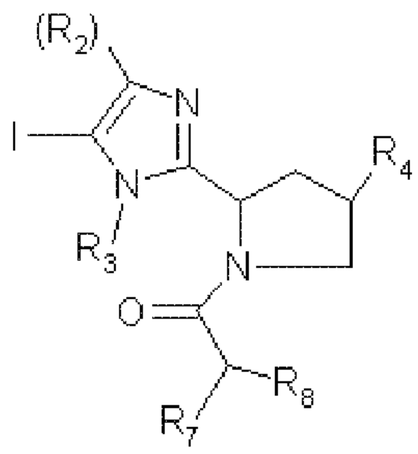


(XXX)

under coupling conditions with a compound of formula (XXXI) and a compound of formula (XXXII); and



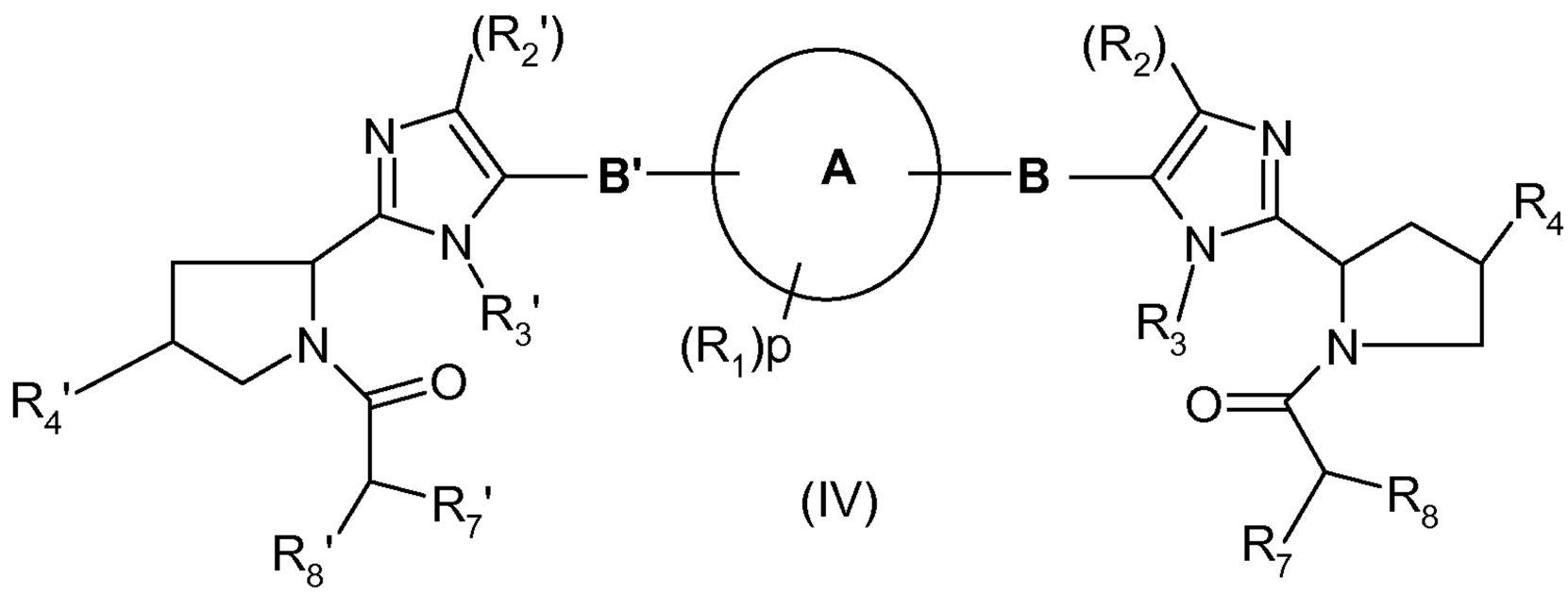
(XXXI)



(XXXII)

b) optionally hydrogenating the alkyne groups to provide a compound of formula (IV).

In one embodiment, the present invention provides a method for preparing a compound of formula (IV):

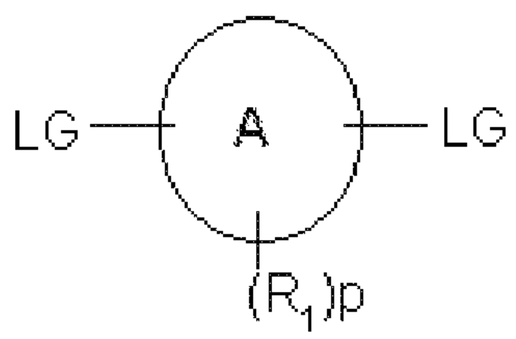


(IV)

or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, wherein each of A, B, B', R^1, p, R_2, $R_{2'}$, R_3, $R_{3'}$, R_4, $R_{4'}$, R_7, $R_{7'}$, R_8, and $R_{8'}$, are as defined herein,

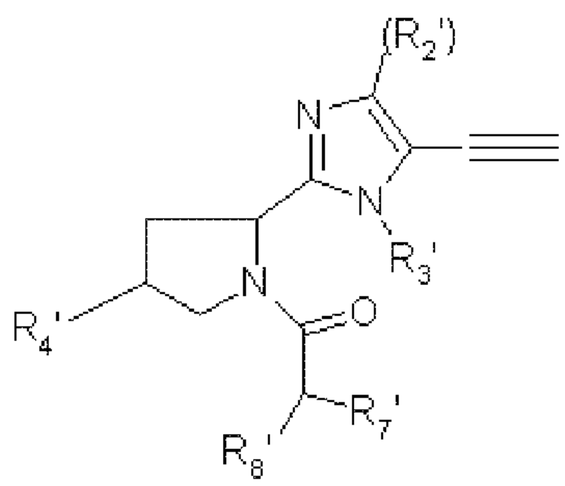
wherein said method comprises the steps of:

a) contacting a compound of formula (XXXA) where LG is a leaving group, such as halo:

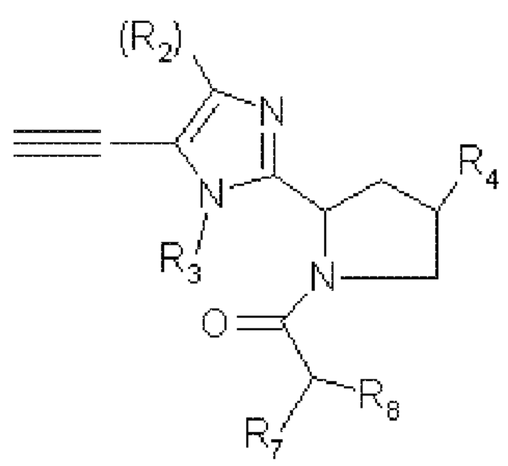


(XXXA)

under coupling conditions with a compound of formula (XXXIA) and a compound of formula (XXXIIA); and



(XXXIA)

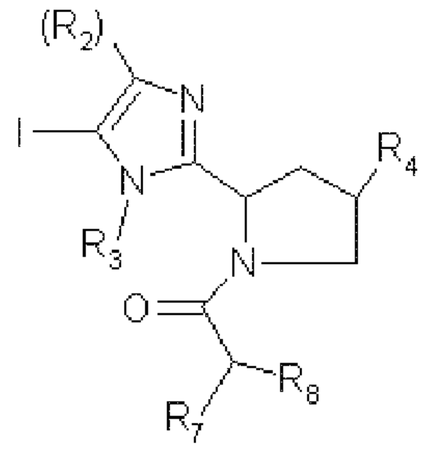


(XXXIIA)

b) optionally hydrogenating the alkyne groups to provide a compound of formula (IV).

In one embodiment, the coupling conditions comprise bis(triphenylphosphine) palladiumchloride, copper iodide, and triethylamine.

In one embodiment, the present invention provides a method for preparing a compound of formula (XXXII):

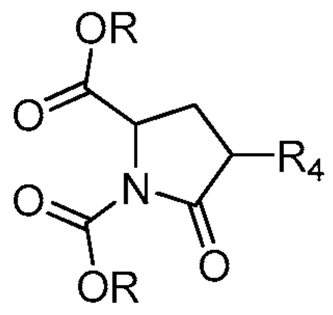


(XXXII)

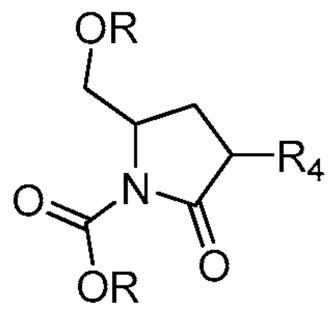
wherein each of R_2, R_3, R_4, R_7, and R_8, are as defined herein,

wherein said method comprises the steps of:

a) reducing a compound of formula (XXVI) to provide a compound of formula (XXVII), where each R is each independently an alkyl group:

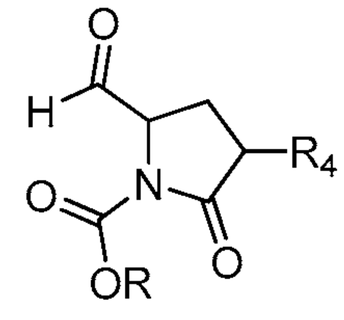


(XXVI)



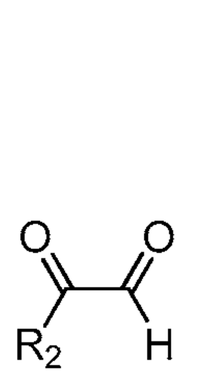
(XXVII)

g) oxidizing a compound of formula (XXVII) to provide a compound of formula (XVI):

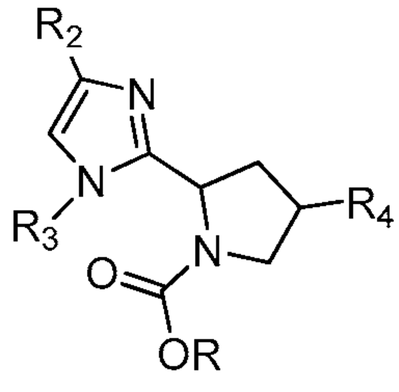


(XVI)

h) contacting a compound of formula (XVI) with a compound of formula (XVII) and optionally a compound of formula R_3-LG, where LG is a leaving group, under reaction conditions sufficient to provide a compound of formula (XV):

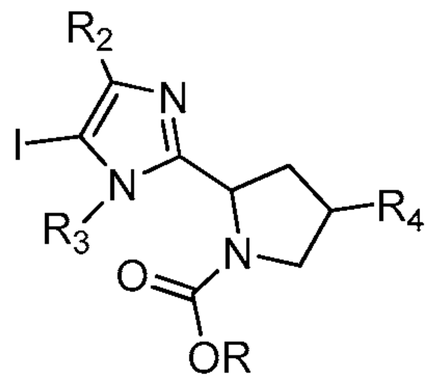


(XVII)



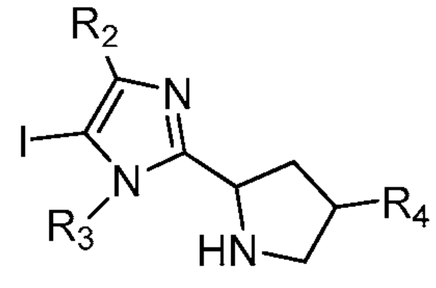
(XV)

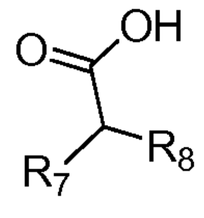
e) halogenating a compound of formula (XV) under reaction conditions sufficient to provide a compound of formula (XIII):



(XIII)

f) reacting a compound of formula (XIII) under deprotection conditions to provide a compound of formula (XI); and:


(XI)

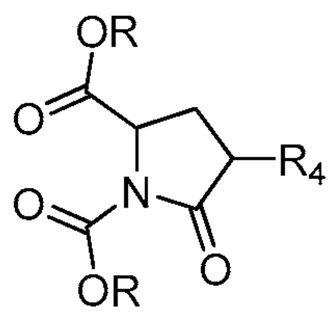

(XII)

g) contacting a compound of formula (XI) under coupling conditions with a compound of formula (XII) to provide a compound of formula (XXXII):

to provide a compound of formula (XXXII).

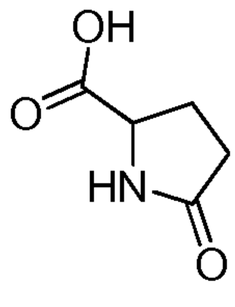
In one embodiment, the oxidizing of step g) comprises 2,2,6,6-tetramethyl-piperidin-1-oxyl (TEMPO).

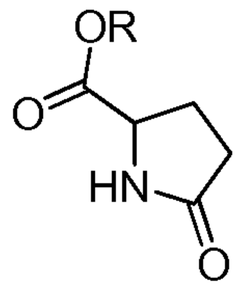
In one embodiment, the present invention provides a method for preparing a compound of formula (XXVI):


(XXVI)

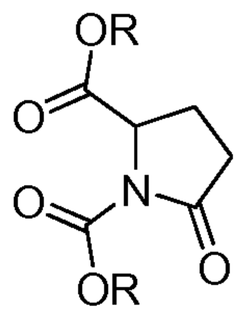
wherein R_4 is as defined herein, and each R is each independently an alkyl group, wherein said method comprises the steps of:

a) contacting a compound of formula (XXI) under reaction conditions sufficient to provide a compound of formula (XXII):

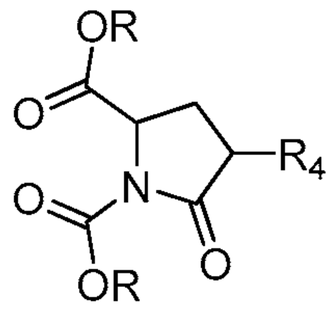

(XXI)


(XXII)

b) contacting a compound of formula (XXII) under reaction conditions sufficient to provide a compound of formula (XXIII), and:


(XXIII)

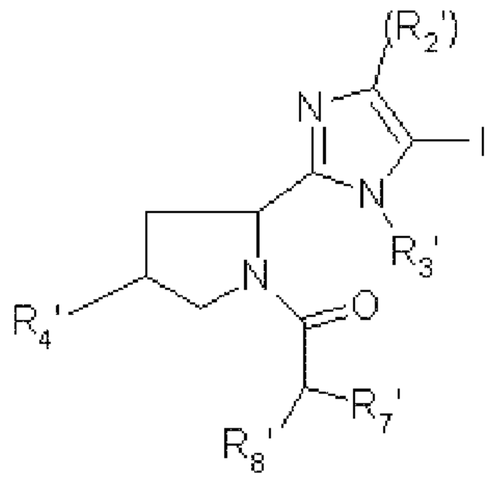
c) contacting a compound of formula (XXIII) under reaction conditions sufficient to provide a compound of formula (XXVI):



(XXVI)

to provide a compound of formula (XXVI).

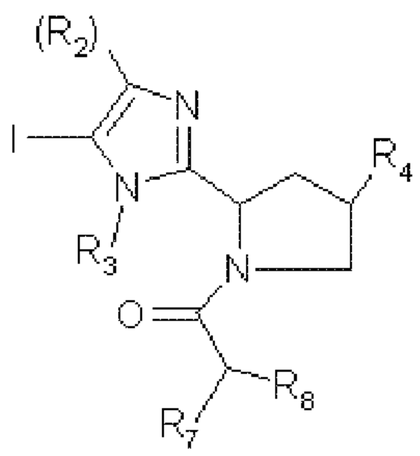
In one embodiment, the present invention provides a method for preparing a compound of formula (XXXI):



(XXXI)

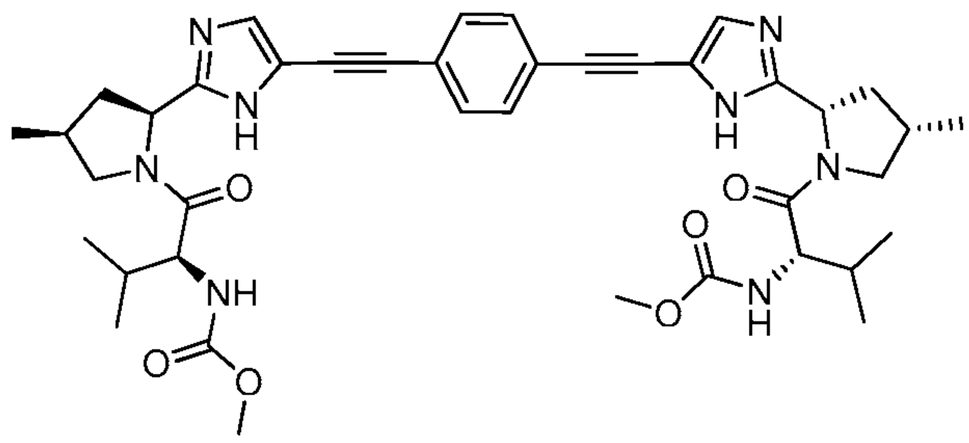
each of $R_{2'}$, $R_{3'}$, $R_{4'}$, $R_{7'}$, and $R_{8'}$, are as defined herein,

wherein said method comprises the steps as disclosed for preparing a compound of formula (XXXII), wherein each of $R_{2'}$, $R_{3'}$, $R_{4'}$, $R_{7'}$, and $R_{8'}$, are as defined for R_2, R_3, R_4, R_7, and R_8, respectively



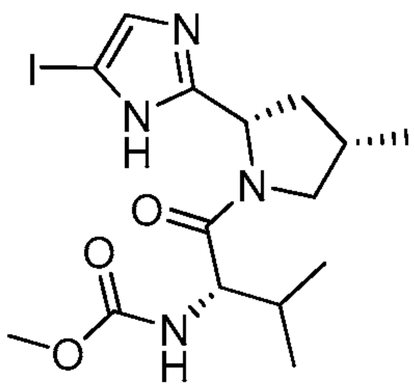
(XXXII).

In one embodiment, the present invention provides a method for preparing ((S)-1-{(2S,4S)-2-[5-(4-{2-[(2S,4S)-1-((S)-2-Methoxycarbonylamino-3-methyl-butyryl)-4-methyl-pyrrolidin-2-yl]-3H-imidazol-4-ylethynyl}-phenylethynyl)-1H-imidazol-2-yl]-4-methyl-pyrrolidine-1-carbonyl}-2-methylpropyl)-carbamic acid methyl ester:

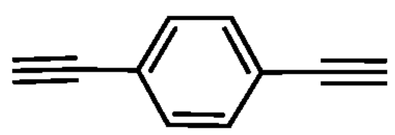


wherein said method comprises:

contacting a compound of formula (X) under coupling conditions with a compound of formula (XXX):



(X)

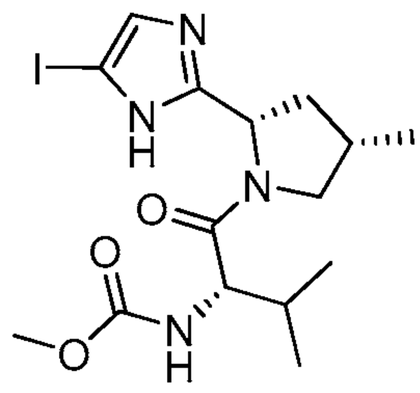


(XXX)

to provide ((S)-1-{(2S,4S)-2-[5-(4-{2-[(2S,4S)-1-((S)-2-Methoxycarbonylamino-3-methyl-butyryl)-4-methyl-pyrrolidin-2-yl]-3H-imidazol-4-ylethynyl}-phenylethynyl)-1H-imidazol-2-yl]-4-methyl-pyrrolidine-1-carbonyl}-2-methylpropyl)-carbamic acid methyl ester.

In one embodiment, the coupling conditions comprise bis(triphenylphosphine) palladiumchloride, copper iodide, and triethylamine.

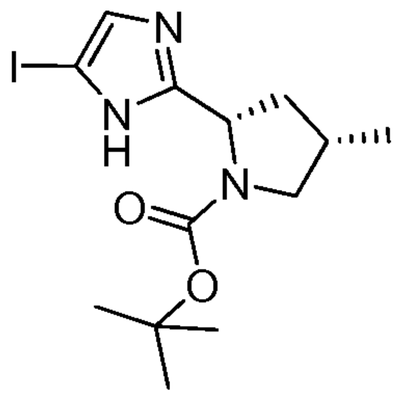
In one embodiment, the present invention provides a method for preparing a compound of formula (X):



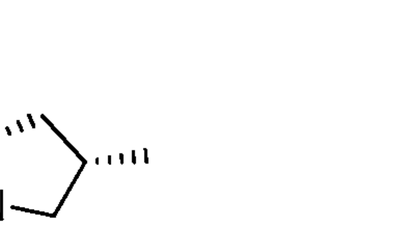
(X)

wherein said method comprises

a) reacting a compound of formula (XIII) under deprotection conditions to provide a compound of formula (XI); and:

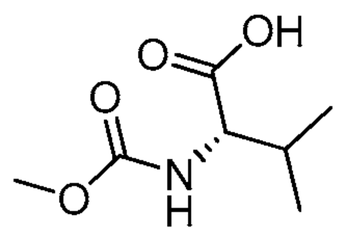


(XIII)



(XI)

b) contacting a compound of formula (XI) under coupling conditions with a compound of formula (XII):



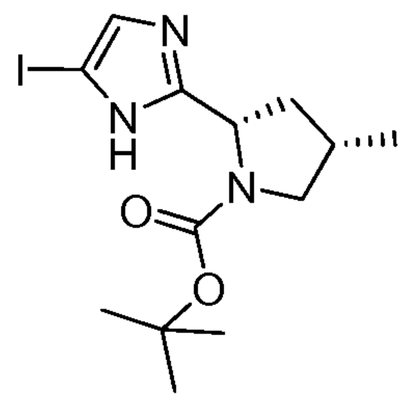
(XII)

to provide a compound of formula (X).

In one embodiment, the coupling conditions of step b) comprise first contacting a compound of formula (XII) with O-(7-azabenzotriazol-1-yl)-N,N,N',N'-tetramethyluronium hexafluorophosphate (HATU) and diisopropypyethylamine (DIPEA).

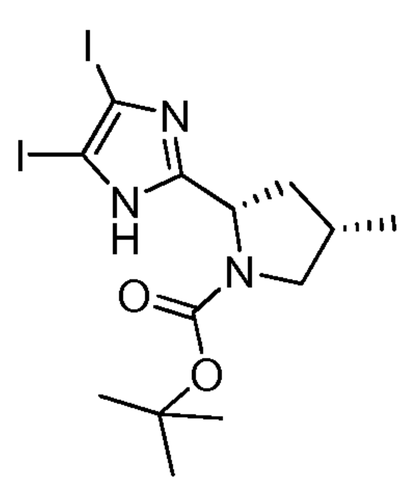
In one embodiment, the deprotection conditions of step a) comprise a mineral acid.

In one embodiment, the present invention provides a method for preparing a compound of formula (XIII):



(XIII)

wherein said method comprises reacting a compound of formula (XIV):



(XIV)

under reaction conditions sufficient to provide a compound of formula (XIII).

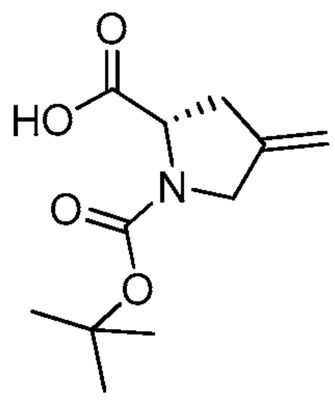
In one embodiment, the reaction conditions comprise methyl magnesium bromide.

In one embodiment, the present invention provides a method for preparing a compound of formula (XIV) having a (2S,4S) configuration:

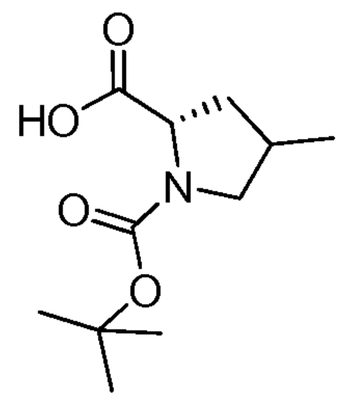
(XIV)

wherein said method comprises the steps of:

a) hydrogenating a compound of formula (XX) to provide a compound of formula (XIX):

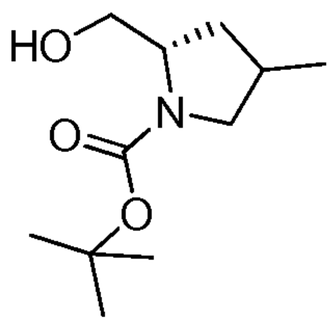


(XX)



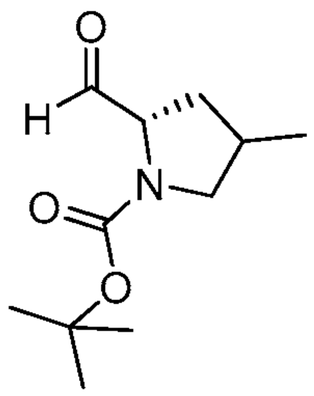
(XIX)

b) reducing a compound of formula (XIX) to provide a compound of formula (XIII):



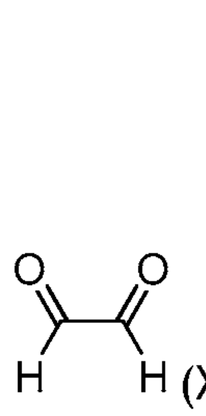
(XIII)

c) oxidizing a compound of formula (XIII) to provide a compound of formula (XVI):

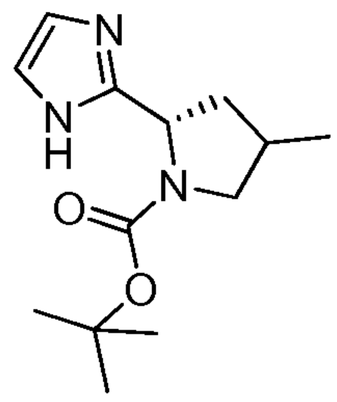


(XVI)

d) contacting a compound of formula (XVI) with a compound of formula (XVII) under reaction conditions sufficient to provide a compound of formula (XV):

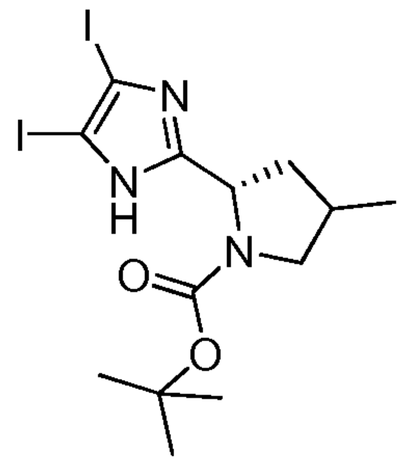


(XVII)



(XV)

e) halogenating a compound of formula (XV) under reaction conditions sufficient to provide a compound of formula (XV), and:



(XIV)

f) separating the mixture of (2S,4S) and (2S,4R) diastereomers to provide a compound of formula (XIV) having a (2S,4S) configuration.

In one embodiment, the separating of step f) comprises silica gel chromatography.

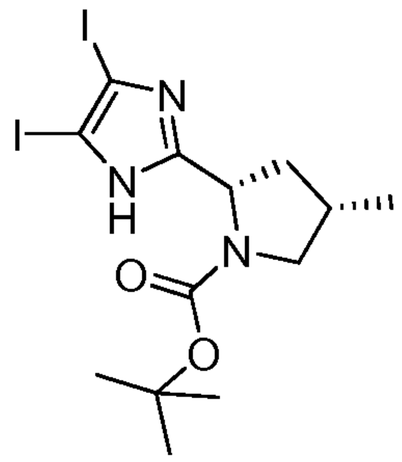
In one embodiment, the reaction conditions of step e) comprise 1-iodopyrrolidine-2,5-dione.

In one embodiment, the oxidizing of step c) comprises 2,2,6,6-tetramethyl-piperidin-1-oxyl (TEMPO).

In one embodiment, the reducing of step b) comprises borane.

In one embodiment, the hydrogenating of step a) comprises platinum oxide and hydrogen gas.

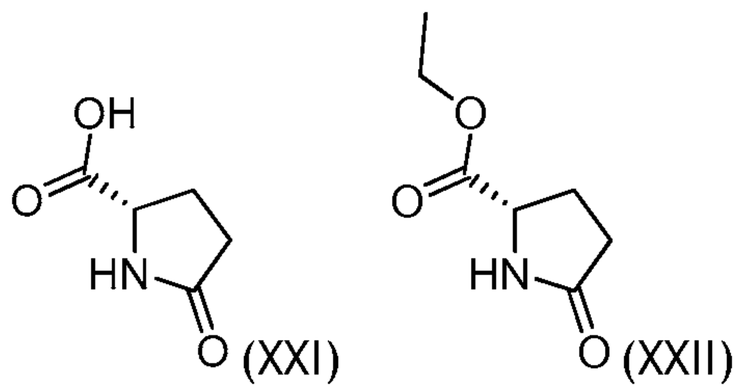
In one embodiment the present invention provides a method for preparing a compound of formula (XIV) having a (2S,4S) configuration:



(XIV)

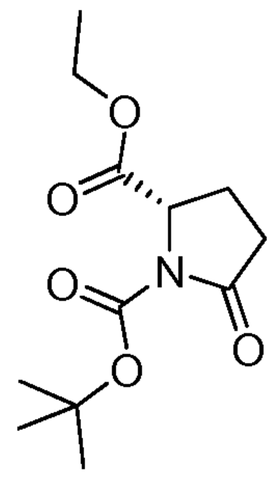
wherein said method comprises the steps of:

a) contacting a compound of formula (XXI) under reaction conditions sufficient to provide a compound of formula (XXII):



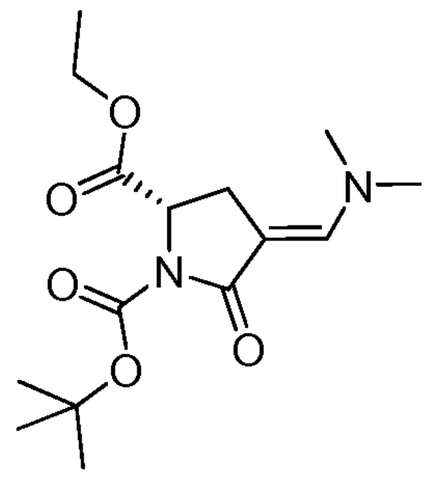
(XXI) (XXII)

b) contacting a compound of formula (XXII) under reaction conditions sufficient to provide a compound of formula (XXIII):



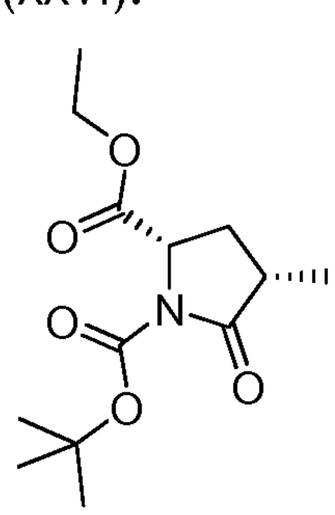
(XXIII)

c) contacting a compound of formula (XXIII) with 1-t-butoxy-N,N,N',N'-tetramethylmethanediamine under reaction conditions sufficient to provide a compound of formula (XXIV):



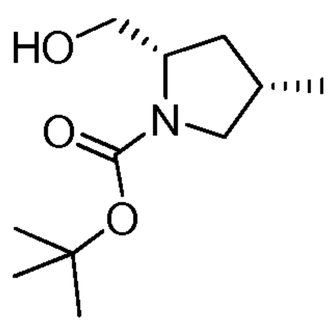
(XXIV)

d) reacting a compound of formula (XXIV) under reaction conditions sufficient to provide a compound of formula (XXVI):



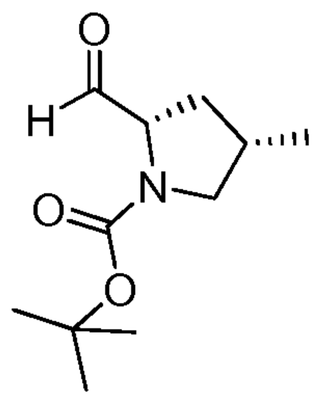
(XXVI)

e) reducing a compound of formula (XXVI) to provide a compound of formula (XXVII):



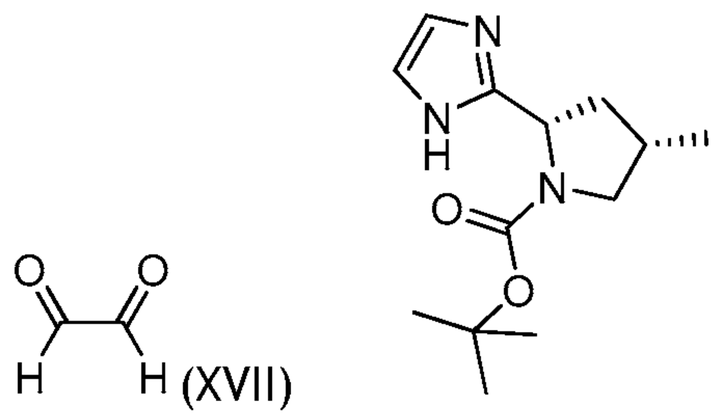
(XXVII)

f) oxidizing a compound of formula (XXVII) to provide a compound of formula (XVI):



(XVI)

g) contacting a compound of formula (XVI) with a compound of formula (XVII) under reaction conditions sufficient to provide a compound of formula (XV); and:

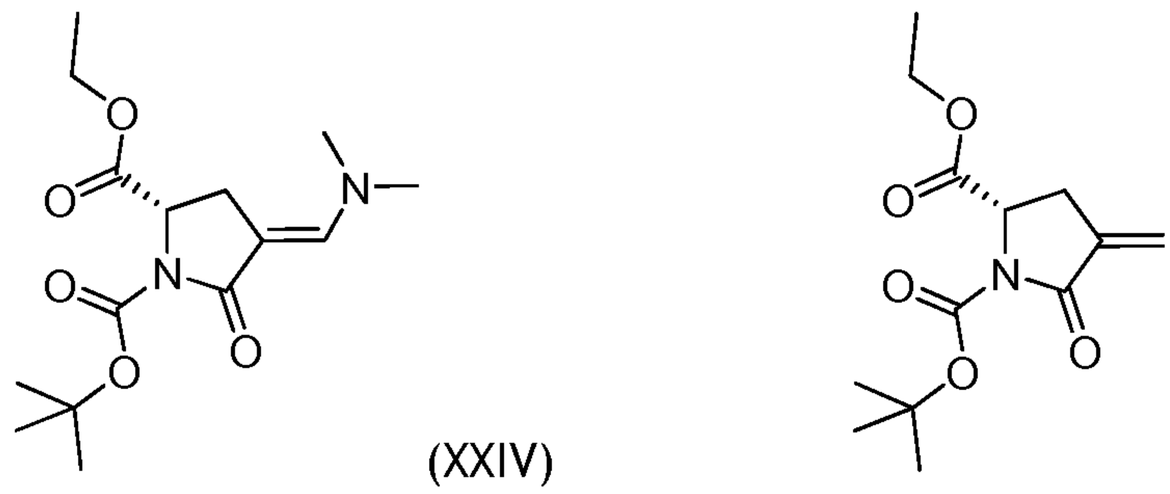


(XVII) (XV)

h) halogenating a compound of formula (XV) under reaction conditions sufficient to provide a compound of formula (XIV) having a (2S,4S) configuration.

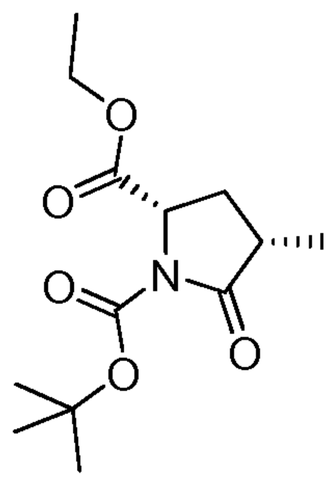
In one embodiment, the reaction conditions of step d) comprise the steps of:

a) reacting a compound of formula (XXIV) under reaction conditions sufficient to provide a compound of formula (XXV); and:



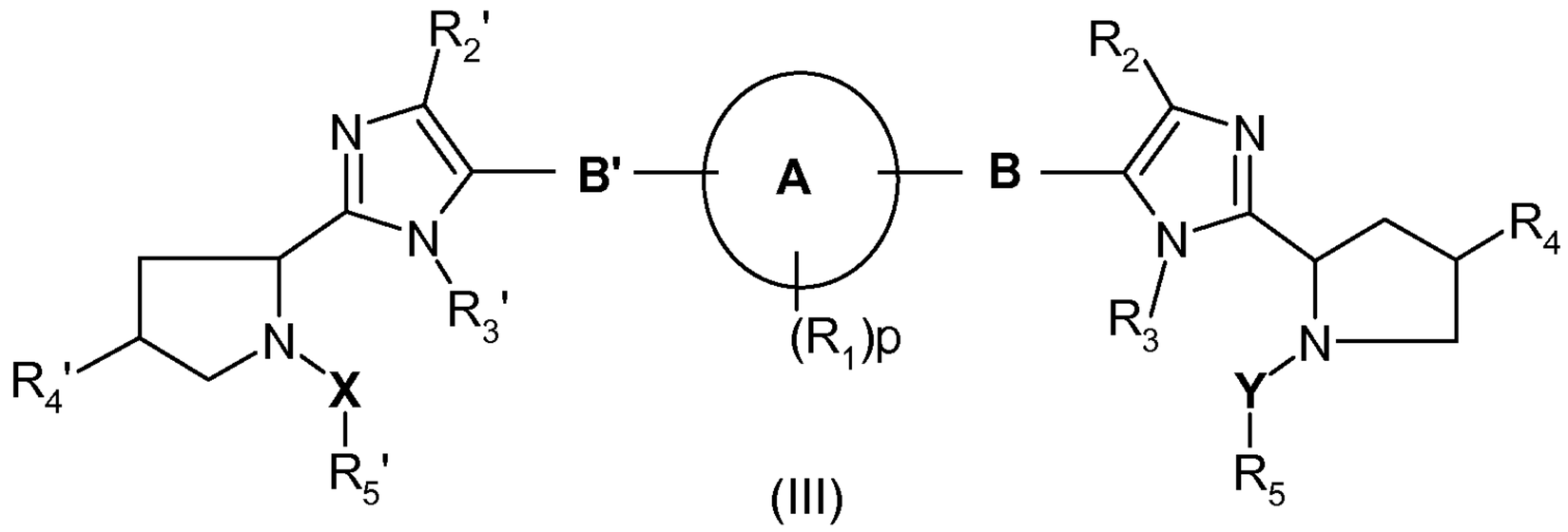
(XXIV) (XXV)

b) hydrogenating a compound of formula (XXV) to provide a compound of formula (XXVI):



(XXVI).

In one embodiment the present invention provides a method for preparing a compound of formula (III)

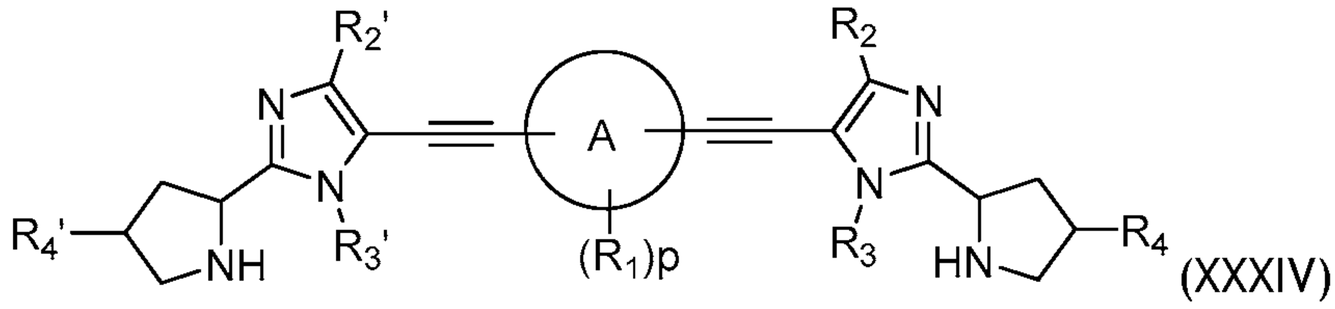


(III)

or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, wherein each of A, B, B', R^1, p, R_2, $R_{2'}$, R_3, $R_{3'}$, R_4, $R_{4'}$, R_7, $R_{7'}$, R_8, and $R_{8'}$, are as defined herein,

wherein said method comprises the steps of:

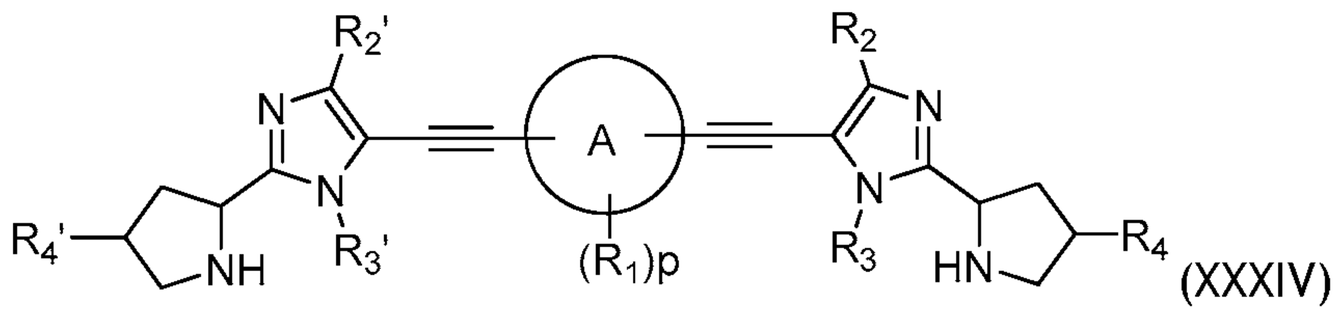
a) contacting the compound of formula (XXXIV) with a compound of formula R^5-X-OH and/or R^5-Y-OH:



(XXXIV)

under reaction conditions to provide a compound of formula (III).

In one embodiment the present invention provides a method for preparing a compound of formula (XXXIV)

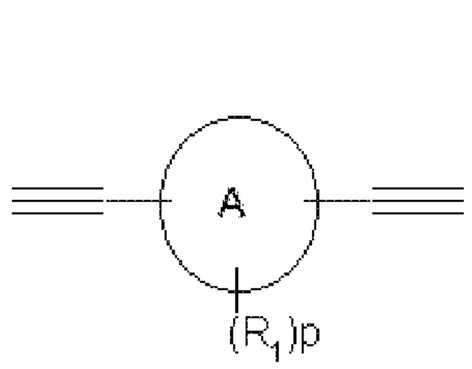


(XXXIV)

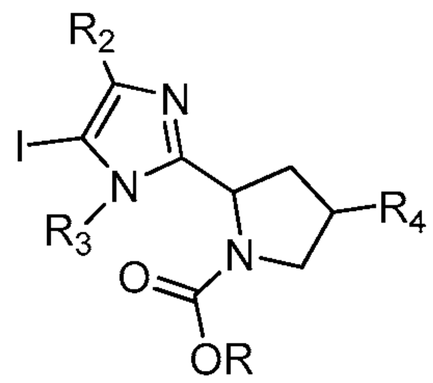
wherein each of A, B, B', R^1, p, R_2, $R_{2'}$, R_3, $R_{3'}$, R_4, $R_{4'}$, R_7, $R_{7'}$, R_8, and $R_{8'}$, are as defined herein and each of B and B', R_2 and $R_{2'}$, R_3 and $R_{3'}$, R_4 and $R_{4'}$, R_7 and $R_{7'}$, and R_8, and $R_{8'}$ are the same respectively,

wherein said method comprises the steps of:

a) contacting a compound of formula (XXX) with a compound of formula (XIII) where R is an alkyl group:

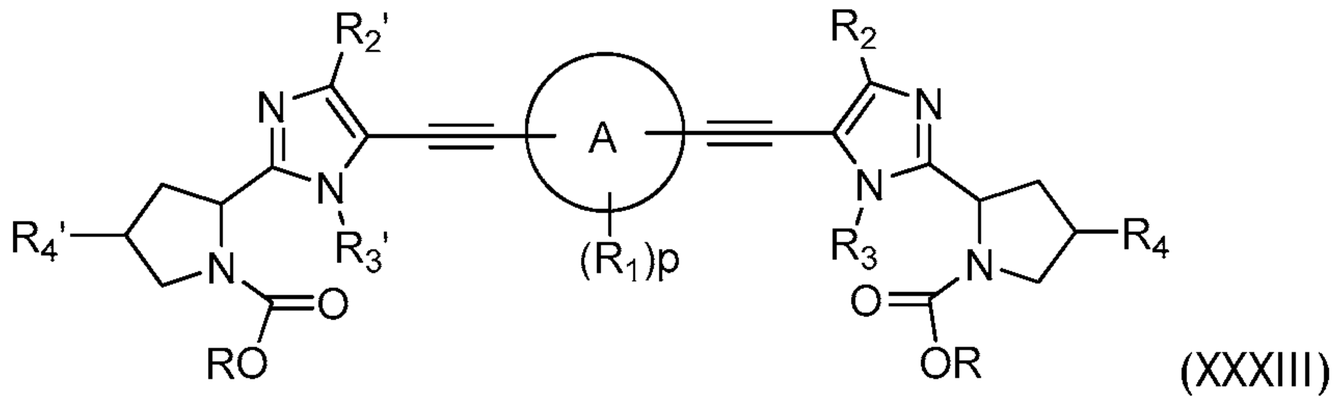


(XXX)



(XIII)

under coupling conditions to provide a compound of formula (XXXIII):

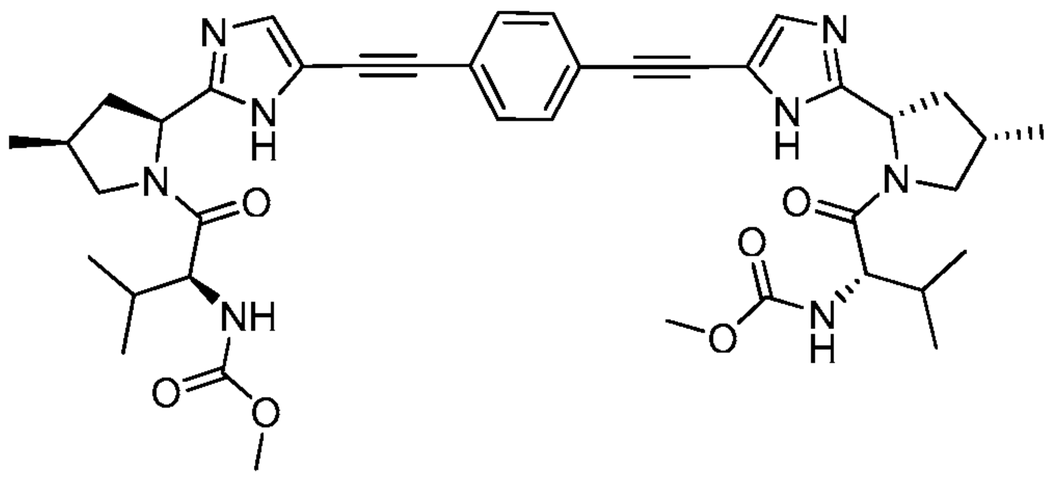


(XXXIII)

b) contacting the compound of formula (XXXIII) under conditions to provide a compound of formula (XXXIV).

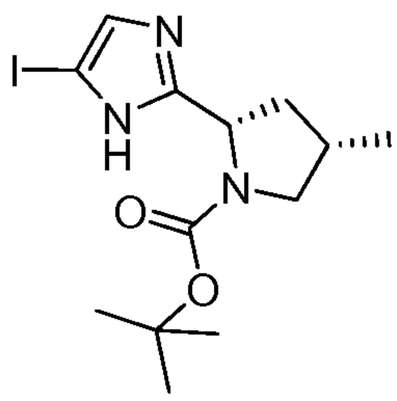
In one embodiment, the coupling conditions comprise bis(triphenylphosphine) palladiumchloride, copper iodide, and triethylamine.

In one embodiment the present invention provides a method for preparing ((S)-1-{(2S,4S)-2-[5-(4-{2-[(2S,4S)-1-((S)-2-Methoxycarbonylamino-3-methyl-butyryl)-4-methyl-pyrrolidin-2-yl]-3H-imidazol-4-ylethynyl}-phenylethynyl)-1H-imidazol-2-yl]-4-methyl-pyrrolidine-1-carbonyl}-2-methylpropyl)-carbamic acid methyl ester:

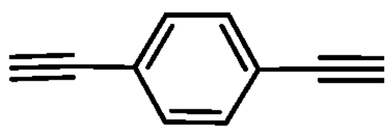


wherein said method comprises the steps of:

a) contacting a compound of formula (X) under coupling conditions with a compound of formula (XXX):

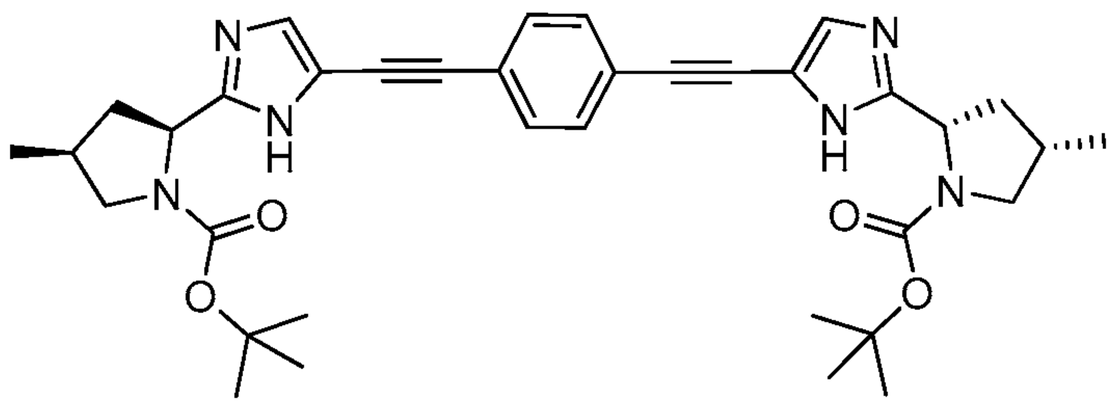


(XIII)



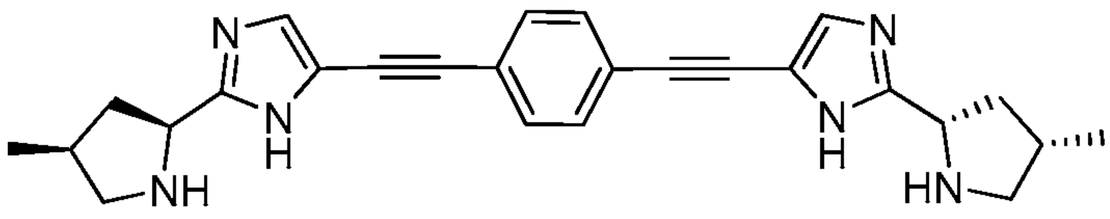
(XXX)

to provide a compound of formula (XXXV):



(XXXV)

b) contacting the compound of formula (XXXV) under conditions to provide a compound of formula (XXXVI); and



(XXXVI)

c) contacting the compound of formula (XXXVI) with N-methoxycarbonyl valine under reaction conditions to provide ((S)-1-{(2S,4S)-2-[5-(4-{2-[(2S,4S)-1-((S)-2-Methoxycarbonylamino-3-methyl-butyryl)-4-methyl-pyrrolidin-2-yl]-3H-imidazol-4-ylethynyl}-phenylethynyl)-1H-imidazol-2-yl]-4-methyl-pyrrolidine-1-carbonyl}-2-methylpropyl)-carbamic acid methyl ester.

In one embodiment the coupling conditions of step a) comprise bis(triphenylphosphine) palladiumchloride, copper iodide, and triethylamine.

In one embodiment, the present invention provides a compound according to the invention described herein for treating or preventing a Flaviviridae viral infection in a host.

In one embodiment, the present invention provides a pharmaceutical composition comprising at least one compound according to the invention described herein and at least one pharmaceutically acceptable carrier or excipient.

In one embodiment, the present invention provides a pharmaceutical composition comprising at least one compound according to the invention described herein and at least one pharmaceutically acceptable carrier or excipient, for treating or preventing a Flaviviridae viral infection in a host.

In one embodiment, the present invention provides a pharmaceutical composition comprising at least one compound according to the invention described herein ,and further comprising administering at least one additional agent chosen from viral serine protease inhibitors, viral polymerase inhibitors, viral helicase inhibitors, immunomudulating agents, antioxidant agents, antibacterial agents, therapeutic vaccines, hepatoprotectant agents, antisense agents, inhibitors of HCV NS2/3 protease and inhibitors of internal ribosome entry site (IRES).

In another embodiment, there is provided a combination comprising a least one compound according to the invention described herein and one or more additional agents.

In another embodiment, there is provided a combination comprising a least one compound according to the invention described herein and one or more additional agents

chosen from viral serine protease inhibitors, viral polymerase inhibitors, viral helicase inhibitors, immunomudulating agents, antioxidant agents, antibacterial agents, therapeutic vaccines, hepatoprotectant agents, antisense agent, inhibitors of HCV NS2/3 protease and inhibitors of internal ribosome entry site (IRES).

In one combination embodiment, the compound and additional agent are administered sequentially.

In another combination embodiment, the compound and additional agent are administered simultaneously.

The combinations referred to above may conveniently be presented for use in the form of a pharmaceutical formulation and thus pharmaceutical formulations comprising a combination as defined above together with a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier therefore comprise a further aspect of the invention.

The additional agents for the compositions and combinations include, for example, ribavirin, amantadine, merimepodib, Levovirin, Viramidine, and maxamine.

The term "viral serine protease inhibitor" as used herein means an agent that is effective to inhibit the function of the viral serine protease including HCV serine protease in a mammal. Inhibitors of HCV serine protease include, for example, those compounds described in WO 99/07733 (Boehringer Ingelheim), WO 99/07734 (Boehringer Ingelheim), WO 00/09558 (Boehringer Ingelheim), WO 00/09543 (Boehringer Ingelheim), WO 00/59929 (Boehringer Ingelheim), WO 02/060926 (BMS), WO 2006039488 (Vertex), WO 2005077969 (Vertex), WO 2005035525 (Vertex), WO 2005028502 (Vertex) WO 2005007681 (Vertex), WO 2004092162 (Vertex), WO 2004092161 (Vertex), WO 2003035060 (Vertex), of WO 03/087092 (Vertex), WO 02/18369 (Vertex), or WO98/17679 (Vertex).

Specific examples of viral serine protease inhibitors include Telaprevir (VX-950, Vertex), VX-500 (Vertex), TMC435350 (Tibotec/Medivir), MK-7009 (Merck), ITMN-191 (R7227, InterMune/Roche) and Boceprevir (SCH503034, Schering).

The term "viral polymerase inhibitors" as used herein means an agent that is effective to inhibit the function of a viral polymerase including an HCV polymerase in a

mammal. Inhibitors of HCV polymerase include non-nucleosides, for example, those compounds described in:

WO 03/010140 (Boehringer Ingelheim), WO 03/026587 (Bristol Myers Squibb); WO 02/100846 A1, WO 02/100851 A2, WO 01/85172 A1(GSK), WO 02/098424 A1 (GSK), WO 00/06529 (Merck), WO 02/06246 A1 (Merck), WO 01/47883 (Japan Tobacco), WO 03/000254 (Japan Tobacco) and EP 1 256 628 A2 (Agouron).

Furthermore other inhibitors of HCV polymerase also include nucleoside analogs, for example, those compounds described in: WO 01/90121 A2 (Idenix), WO 02/069903 A2 (Biocryst Pharmaceuticals Inc.), and WO 02/057287 A2(Merck/Isis) and WO 02/057425 A2 (Merck/Isis).

Specific examples of inhibitors of an HCV polymerase, include VCH-759 (ViroChem Pharma), VCH-916 (ViroChem Pharma), VCH-222 (ViroChem Pharma), R1626 (Roche), R7128 (Roche/Pharmasset), PF-868554 (Pfizer), MK-0608 (Merck/Isis), MK-3281 (Merck), A-837093 (Abbott), GS 9190 (Gilead), ana598 (Anadys), HCV-796 (Viropharma) and GSK625433 (GlaxoSmithKline).

The term "viral helicase inhibitors" as used herein means an agent that is effective to inhibit the function of a viral helicase including a Flaviviridae helicase in a mammal.

"Immunomodulatory agent" as used herein means those agents that are effective to enhance or potentiate the immune system response in a mammal. Immunomodulatory agents include, for example, class I interferons (such as α-, β-, δ- and Ω- interferons, τ-interferons, consensus interferons and asialo-interferons), class II interferons (such as γ-interferons) and pegylated interferons.

Specific examples of Immunomodulatory agent as used herein include IL-29 (PEG-Interferon Lambda, ZymoGenetics), Belerofon (Nautilus Biotech) injectable or oral, Oral Interferon alpha (Amarillo Biosciences), BLX-883 (Locteron, Biolex Therapeutics/Octoplus), Omega Interferon (Intarcia Therapeutics), multiferon (Viragen), Albuferon (Human Genome Sciences), consensus Interferon (Infergen, Three Rivers Pharmaceuticals), Medusa Interferon (Flamel Technologies), NOV-205 (Novelos

Therapeutics), Oglufanide disodium (Implicit Bioscience), SCV-07 (SciClone), Zadaxin® (thymalfasin, SciClone/Sigma-Tau), AB68 (XTL bio) and Civacir (NABI).

The term "class I interferon" as used herein means an interferon selected from a group of interferons that all bind to receptor type 1. This includes both naturally and synthetically produced class I interferons. Examples of class I interferons include α-, β-,δ- and Ω- interferons, τ-interferons, consensus interferons and asialo-interferons. The term "class II interferon" as used herein means an interferon selected from a group of interferons that all bind to receptor type II. Examples of class II interferons include γ-interferons.

Antisense agents include, for example, ISIS-14803.

Inhibitors of internal ribosome entry site (IRES) include ISIS-14803 (ISIS Pharmaceuticals) and those compounds described in WO 2006019831 (PTC therapeutics).

In one embodiment, the additional agent is interferon α, ribavirin, silybum marianum, interleukine-12, amantadine, ribozyme, thymosin, N-acetyl cysteine or cyclosporin.

In one embodiment, the additional agent is interferon α, or ribavirin.

In one embodiment, the additional agent is interferon α 1A, interferon α 1B, interferon α 2A, or interferon α 2B.

Interferon is available in pegylated and non pegylated forms. Pegylated interferons include PEGASYS^{tm} and Peg-intron^{tm}.

In one embodiment, the additional agent is interferon α 1A, interferon α 1B, interferon α 2A (Roferon), PEG-interferon α 2A (Pegasys), interferon α 2B (Intron A) or PEG- interferon α 2B (Peg-Intron).

In one embodiment, the additional agent is standard or pegylated interferon α (Roferon, Pegasys, Intron A, Peg-Intron) in combination with ribavirin.

In one embodiment, the additional agent is chosen from A-831 (AZD0530, Arrow Therapeutics acquired by AstraZeneca), TLR9 agonist : IMO-2125 (Idera Pharmaceuticals), PYN17 (Phynova), Vavituximab (Tarvacin, Peregrine), DEBIO-025 (DEBIO), NIM-811 (Novartis), SCY635 (Scynexis), PF-03491390 (IDN-6556, Pfizer), Suvus (formerly BIVN-401, Virostat, Bioenvision), MX-3253 (Celgosivir, Migenix), Viramidine (Taribavirin, Valeant Pharmaceuticals), Hepaconda (Giaconda), TT033 (Benitec/Tacere Bio/Pfizer), SIRNA-034 (Sirna Therapeutics aquired by Merck) and EHC-18 (Enzo Biochem), ACH-1095 (Achillion/Gilead), JKB-022 (Jenkin), CTS-1027 (Conatus), MitoQ (mitoquinone, Antipodean Pharmaceuticals), Alinia (nitazoxanide, Romark Laboratories) and Bavituximab (Peregrine Pharm).

In one embodiment, the additional agent is a therapeutic vaccine chosen from CSL123 (Chiron/CSL), IC41 (Intercell Novartis), GI 5005 (Globeimmune), TG4040 (Transgene), Chronvac C (Tripep/Inovio), GNI-103 (GENimmune), HCV/MF59 (Chiron/Novartis), PeviPRO™ (Pevion biotect).

The recommended dose of PEGASYS™ monotherapy for chronic hepatitis C is 180 mg (1.0 mL vial or 0.5 mL prefilled syringe) once weekly for 48 weeks by subcutaneous administration in the abdomen or thigh.

The recommended dose of PEGASYS™ when used in combination with ribavirin for chronic hepatitis C is 180 mg (1.0 mL vial or 0.5 mL prefilled syringe) once weekly.

The daily dose of Ribavirin is 800 mg to 1200 mg administered orally in two divided doses. The dose should be individualized to the patient depending on baseline disease characteristics (e.g., genotype), response to therapy, and tolerability of the regimen.

The recommended dose of PEG-Intron™ regimen is 1.0 mg/kg/week subcutaneously for one year. The dose should be administered on the same day of the week.

When administered in combination with ribavirin, the recommended dose of PEG-Intron is 1.5 micrograms/kg/week.

In one embodiment, viral serine protease inhibitor is a flaviviridae serine protease inhibitor.

In one embodiment, viral polymerase inhibitor is a flaviviridae polymerase inhibitor.

In one embodiment, viral helicase inhibitor is a flaviviridae helicase inhibitor.

In further embodiments:

viral serine protease inhibitor is HCV serine protease inhibitor;

viral polymerase inhibitor is HCV polymerase inhibitor;

viral helicase inhibitor is HCV helicase inhibitor.

In one embodiment, the present invention provides a method for treating or preventing a Flaviviridae viral infection in a host comprising administering to the host a therapeutically effective amount of at least one compound according to formula (I), (II), (III), or (IV).

In one embodiment, the viral infection is chosen from Flavivirus infections.

In one embodiment, the Flavivirus infection is Hepatitis C virus (HCV), bovine viral diarrhea virus (BVDV), hog cholera virus, dengue fever virus, Japanese encephalitis virus or yellow fever virus.

In one embodiment, the Flaviviridea viral infection is hepatitis C viral infection (HCV).

In one embodiment, the host is human.

In one embodiment, the present invention provides a method for treating or preventing a Flaviviridae viral infection in a host comprising administering to the host a therapeutically effective amount of at least one compound according to the invention described herein, and further comprising administering at least one additional agent.

In one embodiment, the present invention provides a method for treating or preventing a Flaviviridae viral infection in a host comprising administering to the host a therapeutically effective amount of at least one compound according to the invention

described herein, and further comprising administering at least one additional agent chosen from viral serine protease inhibitors, viral polymerase inhibitors, viral helicase inhibitors, immunomudulating agents, antioxidant agents, antibacterial agents, therapeutic vaccines, hepatoprotectant agents, antisense agents, inhibitors of HCV NS2/3 protease and inhibitors of internal ribosome entry site (IRES).

The combinations referred to above may conveniently be presented for use in the form of a pharmaceutical formulation and thus pharmaceutical formulations comprising a combination as defined above together with a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier therefore comprise a further aspect of the invention.

The individual components for use in the method of the present invention or combinations of the present invention may be administered either sequentially or simultaneously in separate or combined pharmaceutical formulations.

In one embodiment, the present invention provides the use of a compound according to the invention described herein for treating or preventing Flaviviridae viral infection in a host.

In one embodiment, the present invention provides the use of a compound according to the invention described herein and further comprising at least one additional agent chosen from viral serine protease inhibitors, viral polymerase inhibitors, viral helicase inhibitors, immunomudulating agents, antioxidant agents, antibacterial agents, therapeutic vaccines, hepatoprotectant agents, antisense agents, inhibitors of HCV NS2/3 protease and inhibitors of internal ribosome entry site (IRES).for treating or preventing Flaviviridae viral infection in a host.

In one embodiment, the present invention provides the use of a compound according to the invention described herein for the manufacture of a medicament.

In one embodiment, the present invention provides the use of a compound according to the invention described herein for the manufacture of a medicament for treating or preventing a viral Flaviviridae infection in a host.

In one embodiment, the present invention provides the use of a compound according to the invention described herein and further comprising at least one

additional agent chosen from viral serine protease inhibitors, viral polymerase inhibitors, viral helicase inhibitors, immunomudulating agents, antioxidant agents, antibacterial agents, therapeutic vaccines, hepatoprotectant agents, antisense agents, inhibitors of HCV NS2/3 protease and inhibitors of internal ribosome entry site (IRES).for the manufacture of a medicament for treating or preventing a viral Flaviviridae infection in a host.

Unless otherwise stated, structures depicted herein are also meant to include all isomeric (e.g., enantiomeric, diastereomeric, and geometric (or conformational)) forms of the structure; for example, the R and S configurations for each asymmetric center, (Z) and (E) double bond isomers, and (Z) and (E) conformational isomers. Therefore, single stereochemical isomers as well as enantiomeric, diastereomeric, and geometric (or conformational) mixtures of the present compounds are within the scope of the invention. The single optical isomer or enantiomer can be obtained by method well known in the art, such as chiral HPLC, enzymatic resolution and chiral auxiliary.

Unless otherwise stated, all tautomeric forms of the compounds of the invention are within the scope of the invention.

In one embodiment, the compounds of the present invention are provided in the form of a single stereoisomer at least 95%, at least 97% and at least 99% free of the corresponding stereoisomers.

In a further embodiment the compound of the present invention are in the form of a single stereoisomer at least 95% free of the corresponding stereoisomers.

In a further embodiment the compound of the present invention are in the form of a single stereoisomer at least 97% free of the corresponding stereoisomers.

In a further embodiment the compound of the present invention are in the form of a single stereoisomer at least 99% free of the corresponding stereoisomers.

There is also provided pharmaceutically acceptable salts of the compounds of the present invention. By the term pharmaceutically acceptable salts of compounds are meant those derived from pharmaceutically acceptable inorganic and organic acids and

bases. Examples of suitable acids include hydrochloric, hydrobromic, sulphuric, nitric, perchloric, fumaric, maleic, phosphoric, glycollic, lactic, salicylic, succinic, toleune-p-sulphonic, tartaric, acetic, trifluoroacetic, citric, methanesulphonic, formic, benzoic, malonic, naphthalene-2-sulphonic and benzenesulphonic acids. Other acids such as oxalic, while not themselves pharmaceutically acceptable, may be useful as intermediates in obtaining the compounds of the invention and their pharmaceutically acceptable acid addition salts.

Salts derived from amino acids are also included (e.g. L-arginine, L-Lysine).

Salts derived from appropriate bases include alkali metals (e.g. sodium, lithium, potassium) and alkaline earth metals (e.g. calcium, magnesium).

A reference hereinafter to a compound according to the invention includes that compound and its pharmaceutically acceptable salts.

With regards to pharmaceutically acceptable salts, see also the list of FDA approved commercially marketed salts listed in Table I of Berge et al., Pharmaceutical Salts, J. of Phar. Sci., vol. 66, no. 1, January 1977, pp. 1-19, the disclosure of which is incorporated herein by reference.

It will be appreciated by those skilled in the art that the compounds in accordance with the present invention can exist in different polymorphic forms. As known in the art, polymorphism is an ability of a compound to crystallize as more than one distinct crystalline or "polymorphic" species. A polymorph is a solid crystalline phase of a compound with at least two different arrangements or polymorphic forms of that compound molecule in the solid state. Polymorphic forms of any given compound are defined by the same chemical formula or composition and are as distinct in chemical structure as crystalline structures of two different chemical compounds.

In addition to the compounds of this invention, pharmaceutically acceptable derivatives or prodrugs, and esters, of the compounds of this invention may also be employed in compositions to treat or prevent the herein identified disorders.

It will further be appreciated by those skilled in the art that the compounds in accordance with the present invention can exist in different solvate forms, for example

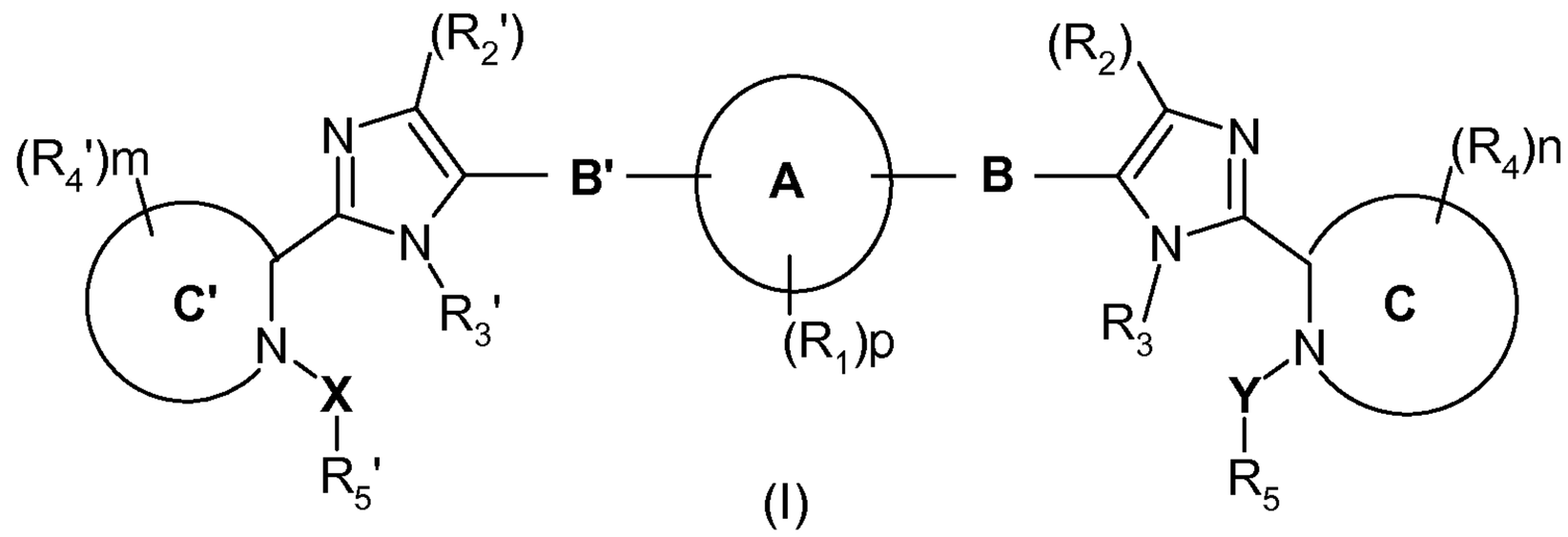
hydrates. Solvates of the compounds of the invention may also form when solvent molecules are incorporated into the crystalline lattice structure of the compound molecule during the crystallization process.

Pro-drugs

Unless otherwise defined, all technical and scientific terms used herein have the same meaning as commonly understood by one of ordinary skill in the art to which this invention belongs. All publications, patent applications, patents, and other references mentioned herein are incorporated by reference in their entirety. In case of conflict, the present specification, including definitions, will control. In addition, the materials, methods, and examples are illustrative only and not intended to be limiting.

For purposes of this invention, the chemical elements are identified in accordance with the Periodic Table of the Elements, CAS version, Handbook of Chemistry and Physics, 75th Ed. Additionally, general principles of organic chemistry are described in "Organic Chemistry", Thomas Sorrell, University Science Books, Sausalito: 1999, and "March's Advanced Organic Chemistry", 5th Ed., Ed.: Smith, M.B. and March, J., John Wiley & Sons, New York: 2001, the entire contents of which are hereby incorporated by reference.

In the formulas and drawings, a line transversing a ring and bonded to a group such as B, B', R_1, R_4 or R_4'in formula (I)



(I)

means that the group can be bonded to any carbon, or if applicable, heteroatom such as N, of that ring as valency allows.

The term "**alkyl**" represents a linear, branched or cyclic hydrocarbon moiety. The terms "**alkenyl" and "alkynyl**" represent a linear, branched or cyclic hydrocarbon moiety which has one or more double bonds or triple bonds in the chain. Examples of alkyl, alkenyl, and alkynyl groups include but are not limited to methyl, ethyl, propyl, isopropyl, butyl, isobutyl, sec-butyl, tert-butyl, pentyl, isopentyl, neopentyl, tert-pentyl, hexyl, isohexyl, neohexyl, allyl, vinyl, acetylenyl, ethylenyl, propenyl, isopropenyl, butenyl, isobutenyl, hexenyl, butadienyl, pentenyl, pentadienyl, hexenyl, heptenyl, heptadienyl, heptatrienyl, octenyl, propynyl, butynyl, pentynyl, hexynyl, cyclopropyl, cyclobutyl, cyclohexenyl, cyclohexdienyl and cyclohexyl. The terms alkyl, alkenyl, and alkynyl, also include combinations of linear and branched groups, e.g., cyclopropylmethyl, cyclohexylethyl, etc. The term alkenyl also includes C1 alkenyl where the one carbon atom is attached to the remainder of the molecule via a double bond. Where indicated the "alkyl," "alkenyl," and "alkynyl" can be optionally substituted such as in the case of haloalkyls in which one or more hydrogen atom is replaced by a halogen, e.g., an alkylhalide. Examples of haloalkyls include but are not limited to trifluoromethyl, difluoromethyl, fluoromethyl, trichloromethyl, dichloromethyl, chloromethyl, trifluoroethyl, difluoroethyl, fluoroethyl, trichloroethyl, dichloroethyl, chloroethyl, chlorofluoromethyl, chlorodifluoromethyl, dichlorofluoroethyl. Aside from halogens, where indicated, the alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl groups can also be optionally substituted by, for example, halogen, $-OR_a$, oxo, $-NR_aR_b$, $=NO-R_c$, $-C(=O)OR_a$, $-C(O)NR_aR_b$, $-C(=O)OH$, $-C(=O)R_a$, $-C(=NOR_c)R_a$, $-C(=NR_c)NR_aR_b$, $-NR_dC(=O)NR_aR_b$, $-NR_bC(=O)R_a$, $-NR_dC(=NR_c)NR_aR_b$, $-NR_bC(=O)OR_a$, $-OC(=O)NR_aR_b$, $-OC(=O)R_a$, $-OC(=O)OR_a$, hydroxyl, nitro, azido, cyano, $-S(O)_{0-3}R_a$, $-SO_2NR_aR_b$, $-NR_bSO_2R_a$, $-NR_bSO_2NR_aR_b$, or $-P(=O)OR_aOR_b$, wherein R_a, R_b, R_c, and R_d are each independently H, C_{1-12} alkyl, C_{2-12} alkenyl, C_{2-12} alkynyl, C_{6-12} aryl, C_{7-16} aralkyl, 5-12 membered heteroaryl, 6-18 membered heteroaralkyl, 3-12 membered heterocycle, or 4-18 membered heterocycle-alkyl.

The terms "**cycloalkyl", and "cycloalkenyl**" represent a cyclic hydrocarbon alkyl or alkenyl, respectively, and are meant to include monocyclic (e.g., cyclopropyl, cyclobutyl, cyclohexyl), spiro (e.g., spiro [2.3]hexanyl), fused (e.g., bicyclo[4.4.0]decanyl), and bridged (e.g., bicyclo[2.2.1]heptanyl) hydrocarbon moieties.

The terms "**alkoxy," "alkenyloxy," and "alkynyloxy**" represent an alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl moiety, respectively, which is covalently bonded to the adjacent atom ??? through an oxygen atom. Examples include but are not limited to methoxy, ethoxy, propoxy, isopropoxy, butoxy, isobutoxy, sec-butoxy, tert-butoxy,

pentyloxy, isopentyloxy, neopentyloxy, tert-pentyloxy, hexyloxy, isohexyloxy, trifluoromethoxy and neohexyloxy. Like the alkyl, alkenyl and alkynyl groups, where indicated the alkoxy, alkenyloxy, and alkynyloxy groups can be optionally substituted by, for example, halogen, $-OR_a$, oxo, $-NR_aR_b$, $=NO-R_c$, $-C(=O)OR_a$, $-C(O)NR_aR_b$, $-C(=O)OH$, $-C(=O)R_a$, $-C(=NOR_c)R_a$, $-C(=NR_c)NR_aR_b$, $-NR_dC(=O)NR_aR_b$, $-NR_bC(=O)R_a$, $-NR_dC(=NR_c)NR_aR_b$, $-NR_bC(=O)OR_a$, $-OC(=O)NR_aR_b$, $-OC(=O)R_a$, $-OC(=O)OR_a$, hydroxyl, nitro, azido, cyano, $-S(O)_{0-3}R_a$, $-SO_2NR_aR_b$, $-NR_bSO_2R_a$, $-NR_bSO_2NR_aR_b$, or $-P(=O)OR_aOR_b$, wherein R_a, R_b, R_c, and R_d are each independently H, C_{1-12} alkyl, C_{2-12} alkenyl, C_{2-12} alkynyl, C_{6-12} aryl, C_{7-16} aralkyl, 5-12 membered heteroaryl, 6-18 membered heteroaralkyl, 3-12 membered heterocycle, or 4-18 membered heterocycle-alkyl.

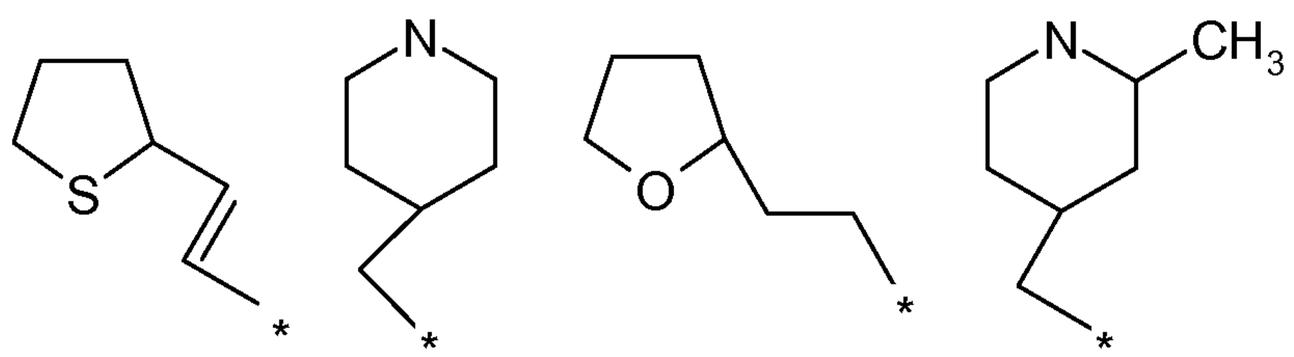
The term "**aryl**" represents a carbocyclic moiety containing at least one benzenoid-type ring (i.e., may be monocyclic or polycyclic), and which where indicated may be optionally substituted with one or more substituents. Examples include but are not limited to phenyl, tolyl, dimethylphenyl, aminophenyl, anilinyl, naphthyl, anthryl, phenanthryl or biphenyl. The aryl groups can be optionally substituted where indicated by, for example, halogen, $-OR_a$, $-NR_aR_b$, $-C(=O)OR_a$, $-C(O)NR_aR_b$, $-C(=O)OH$, $-C(=O)R_a$, $-C(=NOR_c)R_a$, $--C(=NR_c)NR_aR_b$, $-NR_dC(=O)NR_aR_b$, $-NR_bC(=O)R_a$, $-NR_dC(=NR_c)NR_aR_b$, $-NR_bC(=O)OR_a$, $-OC(=O)NR_aR_b$, $-OC(=O)R_a$, $-OC(=O)OR_a$, hydroxyl, nitro, azido, cyano, $-S(O)_{0-3}R_a$, $-SO_2NR_aR_b$, $-NR_bSO_2R_a$, $-NR_bSO_2NR_aR_b$, or $-P(=O)OR_aOR_b$, C_{1-12} alkyl, C_{2-12} alkenyl, C_{2-12} alkynyl, C_{6-12} aryl, C_{7-16} aralkyl, 5-12 membered heteroaryl, 6-18 membered heteroaralkyl, 3-12 membered heterocycle, or 4-18 membered heterocycle-alkyl, wherein R_a, R_b, R_c, and R_d are each independently H, C_{1-12} alkyl, C_{2-12} alkenyl, C_{2-12} alkynyl, C_{6-12} aryl, C_{7-16} aralkyl, 5-12 membered heteroaryl, 6-18 membered heteroaralkyl, 3-12 membered heterocycle, or 4-18 membered heterocycle-alkyl.

The term "**aralkyl**" represents an aryl group attached to the adjacent atom by an alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl. Like the aryl groups, where indicated the aralkyl groups can also be optionally substituted. Examples include but are not limited to benzyl, benzhydryl, trityl, phenethyl, 3-phenylpropyl, 2-phenylpropyl, 4-phenylbutyl and naphthylmethyl. Where indicated, the aralkyl groups can be optionally substituted one or more times by, for example, halogen, $-OR_a$, $-NR_aR_b$, $-C(=O)OR_a$, $-C(O)NR_aR_b$, $-C(=O)OH$, $-C(=O)R_a$, $-C(=NOR_c)R_a$, $--C(=NR_c)NR_aR_b$, $-NR_dC(=O)NR_aR_b$, $-NR_bC(=O)R_a$, $-NR_dC(=NR_c)NR_aR_b$, $-NR_bC(=O)OR_a$, $-OC(=O)NR_aR_b$, $-$

$OC(=O)R_a$, $-OC(=O)OR_a$, hydroxyl, nitro, azido, cyano, $-S(O)_{0-3}R_a$, $-SO_2NR_aR_b$, $-NR_bSO_2R_a$, $-NR_bSO_2NR_aR_b$, or $-P(=O)OR_aOR_b$, C_{1-12} alkyl, C_{2-12} alkenyl, C_{2-12} alkynyl, C_{6-12} aryl, C_{7-16} aralkyl, 5-12 membered heteroaryl, 6-18 membered heteroaralkyl, 3-12 membered heterocycle, or 4-18 membered heterocycle-alkyl, wherein R_a, R_b, R_c, and R_d are each independently H, C_{1-12} alkyl, C_{2-12} alkenyl, C_{2-12} alkynyl, C_{6-12} aryl, C_{7-16} aralkyl, 5-12 membered heteroaryl, 6-18 membered heteroaralkyl, 3-12 membered heterocycle, or 4-18 membered heterocycle-alkyl.

The term "**heterocycle**" represents a non aromatic, saturated or partially saturated cyclic moiety wherein said cyclic moiety is interrupted by at least one heteroatom selected from oxygen (O), sulfur (S) or nitrogen (N). Heterocycles may be monocyclic or polycyclic rings. Examples include but are not limited to azetidinyl, dioxolanyl, morpholinyl, morpholino, oxetanyl, piperazinyl, piperidyl, piperidinyl, cyclopentapyrazolyl, cyclopentaoxazinyl, cyclopentafuranyl, tetrahydrofuranyl, thiazolinyl, oxazolinyl, pyranyl, aziridinyl, azepinyl, dioxazepinyl, diazepinyl, oxyranyl, oxazinyl, pyrrolidinyl, thiopyranyl, thiolanyl, pyrazolidinyl, dioxanyl, and imidazolidinyl. Where indicated, the heterocyclic groups can be optionally substituted one or more times by, for example, halogen, $-OR_a$, oxo, $-NR_aR_b$, $=NO-R_c$, $-C(=O)OR_a$, $-C(O)NR_aR_b$, $-C(=O)OH$, $-C(=O)R_a$, $-C(=NOR_c)R_a$, $-C(=NR_c)NR_aR_b$, $-NR_dC(=O)NR_aR_b$, $-NR_bC(=O)R_a$, $-NR_dC(=NR_c)NR_aR_b$, $-NR_bC(=O)OR_a$, $-OC(=O)NR_aR_b$, $-OC(=O)R_a$, $-OC(=O)OR_a$, hydroxyl, nitro, azido, cyano, $-S(O)_{0-3}R_a$, $-SO_2NR_aR_b$, $-NR_bSO_2R_a$, $-NR_bSO_2NR_aR_b$, or $-P(=O)OR_aOR_b$, C_{1-12} alkyl, C_{2-12} alkenyl, C_{2-12} alkynyl, C_{6-12} aryl, C_{7-16} aralkyl, 5-12 membered heteroaryl, 6-18 membered heteroaralkyl, 3-12 membered heterocycle, or 4-18 membered heterocycle-alkyl, wherein R_a, R_b, R_c, and R_d are each independently H, C_{1-12} alkyl, C_{2-12} alkenyl, C_{2-12} alkynyl, C_{6-12} aryl, C_{7-16} aralkyl, 5-12 membered heteroaryl, 6-18 membered heteroaralkyl, 3-12 membered heterocycle, or 4-18 membered heterocycle-alkyl.

The term "heterocycle-alkyl" represents a heterocycle group attached to the adjacent atom by an alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl group. It is understood that in, for example, a 4-18 member heterocycle-alkyl moiety, the 4-18 member represent the total of the ring atoms present in the heterocycle moiety and the carbon atoms present in the alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl group. For example, the following groups are encompassed by a 7 member heterocycle-alkyl (* represents the attachment point):

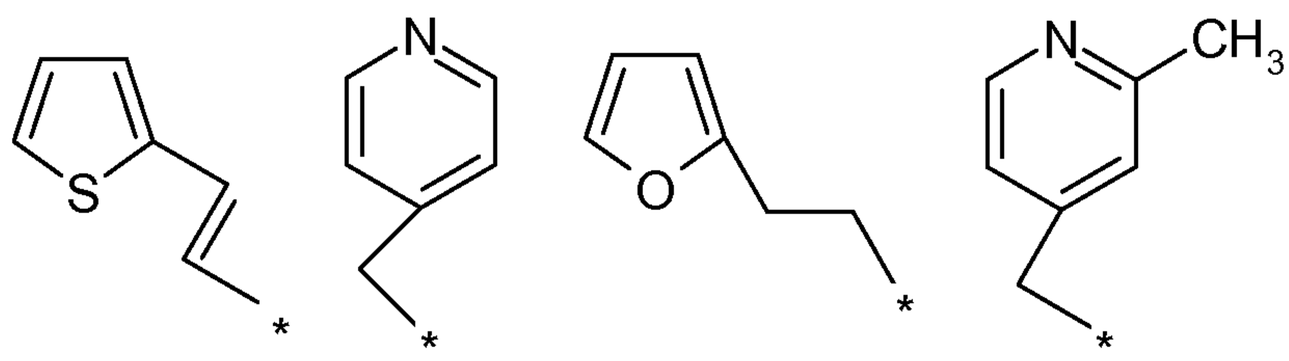


Where indicated the heterocycle-alkyl groups can be optionally substituted one or more times by, for example, halogen, $-OR_a$, oxo, $-NR_aR_b$, $=NO-R_c$, $-C(=O)OR_a$, $-C(O)NR_aR_b$, $-C(=O)OH$, $-C(=O)R_a$, $-C(=NOR_c)R_a$, $-C(=NR_c)NR_aR_b$, $-NR_dC(=O)NR_aR_b$, $-NR_bC(=O)R_a$, $-NR_dC(=NR_c)NR_aR_b$, $-NR_bC(=O)OR_a$, $-OC(=O)NR_aR_b$, $-OC(=O)R_a$, $-OC(=O)OR_a$, hydroxyl, nitro, azido, cyano, $-S(O)_{0-3}R_a$, $-SO_2NR_aR_b$, $-NR_bSO_2R_a$, $-NR_bSO_2NR_aR_b$, or $-P(=O)OR_aOR_b$, C_{1-12} alkyl, C_{2-12} alkenyl, C_{2-12} alkynyl, C_{6-12} aryl, C_{7-16} aralkyl, 5-12 membered heteroaryl, 6-18 membered heteroaralkyl, 3-12 membered heterocycle, or 4-18 membered heterocycle-alkyl, wherein R_a, R_b, R_c, and R_d are each independently H, C_{1-12} alkyl, C_{2-12} alkenyl, C_{2-12} alkynyl, C_{6-12} aryl, C_{7-16} aralkyl, 5-12 membered heteroaryl, 6-18 membered heteroaralkyl, 3-12 membered heterocycle, or 4-18 membered heterocycle-alkyl.

The term "**heteroaryl**" represents an aromatic cyclic moiety wherein said cyclic moiety is interrupted by at least one heteroatom selected from oxygen (O), sulfur (S) or nitrogen (N). Heteroaryls may be monocyclic or polycyclic rings wherein at least one ring in the polycyclic ring system is aromatic and at least one ring (not necessarily the same ring contains a heteroatom. Examples include but are not limited to dithiadiazinyl, furanyl, isooxazolyl, isothiazolyl, imidazolyl, oxadiazolyl, oxazolyl, pyrazinyl, pyridazinyl, pyrimidinyl, pyridyl, pyrazolyl, pyrrolyl, thiatriazolyl, tetrazolyl, thiadiazolyl, triazolyl, thiazolyl, thienyl, tetrazinyl, thiadiazinyl, triazinyl, thiazinyl, furoisoxazolyl, imidazothiazolyl, thienoisothiazolyl, thienothiazolyl, imidazopyrazolyl, pyrrolopyrrolyl, thienothienyl, thiadiazolopyrimidinyl, thiazolothiazinyl, thiazolopyrimidinyl, thiazolopyridinyl, oxazolopyrimidinyl, oxazolopyridyl, benzoxazolyl, benzisothiazolyl, benzothiazolyl, benzodioxolyl, dihydrobenzodioxinyl, benzothiadiazolyl, thienofuranyl, imidazopyrazinyl, purinyl, pyrazolopyrimidinyl, imidazopyridinyl, benzimidazolyl, indazolyl, benzoxathiolyl, benzodioxolyl, benzodithiolyl, indolizinyl, indolinyl, isoindolinyl, furopyrimidinyl, furopyridyl, benzofuranyl, isobenzofuranyl, thienopyrimidinyl, thienopyridyl, benzothienyl, benzoxazinyl, benzothiazinyl, quinazolinyl, naphthyridinyl, quinolinyl, isoquinolinyl, benzopyranyl,

pyridopyridazinyl, chromen, benzodiazinyl. Where indicated the heteroaryl groups can be optionally substituted one or more times by, for example, halogen, $-OR_a$, $-NR_aR_b$, $-C(=O)OR_a$, $-C(O)NR_aR_b$, $-C(=O)OH$, $-C(=O)R_a$, $-C(=NOR_c)R_a$, $-C(=NR_c)NR_aR_b$, $-NR_dC(=O)NR_aR_b$, $-NR_bC(=O)R_a$, $-NR_dC(=NR_c)NR_aR_b$, $-NR_bC(=O)OR_a$, $-OC(=O)NR_aR_b$, $-OC(=O)R_a$, $-OC(=O)OR_a$, hydroxyl, nitro, azido, cyano, $-S(O)_{0-3}R_a$, $-SO_2NR_aR_b$, $-NR_bSO_2R_a$, $-NR_bSO_2NR_aR_b$, or $-P(=O)OR_aOR_b$, C_{1-12} alkyl, C_{2-12} alkenyl, C_{2-12} alkynyl, C_{6-12} aryl, C_{7-16} aralkyl, 5-12 membered heteroaryl, 6-18 membered heteroaralkyl, 3-12 membered heterocycle, or 4-18 membered heterocycle-alkyl, wherein R_a, R_b, R_c, and R_d are each independently H, C_{1-12} alkyl, C_{2-12} alkenyl, C_{2-12} alkynyl, C_{6-12} aryl, C_{7-16} aralkyl, 5-12 membered heteroaryl, 6-18 membered heteroaralkyl, 3-12 membered heterocycle, or 4-18 membered heterocycle-alkyl. It is to be understood that terms such as "thienothienyl" encompasses all connectivites, including but not limited to, thieno[3,2-b]thiophene.

The term "**heteroaralkyl**" represents an optionally substituted heteroaryl group attached to the adjacent atom by an alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl group. Where indicated the heteroaralkyl groups can be optionally substituted one or more times by, for example, halogen, $-OR_a$, $-NR_aR_b$, $-C(=O)OR_a$, $-C(O)NR_aR_b$, $-C(=O)OH$, $-C(=O)R_a$, $-C(=NOR_c)R_a$, $-C(=NR_c)NR_aR_b$, $-NR_dC(=O)NR_aR_b$, $-NR_bC(=O)R_a$, $-NR_dC(=NR_c)NR_aR_b$, $-NR_bC(=O)OR_a$, $-OC(=O)NR_aR_b$, $-OC(=O)R_a$, $-OC(=O)OR_a$, hydroxyl, nitro, azido, cyano, $-S(O)_{0-3}R_a$, $-SO_2NR_aR_b$, $-NR_bSO_2R_a$, $-NR_bSO_2NR_aR_b$, or $-P(=O)OR_aOR_b$, C_{1-12} alkyl, C_{2-12} alkenyl, C_{2-12} alkynyl, C_{6-12} aryl, C_{7-16} aralkyl, 5-12 membered heteroaryl, 6-18 membered heteroaralkyl, 3-12 membered heterocycle, or 4-18 membered heterocycle-alkyl, wherein R_a, R_b, R_c, and R_d are each independently H, C_{1-12} alkyl, C_{2-12} alkenyl, C_{2-12} alkynyl, C_{6-12} aryl, C_{7-16} aralkyl, 5-12 membered heteroaryl, 6-18 membered heteroaralkyl, 3-12 membered heterocycle, or 4-18 membered heterocycle-alkyl. It is understood that in, for example, a 6-18 member heteroaralkyl moiety, the 6-18 member represents the total of the ring atoms present in the heterocycle moiety and the carbon atoms in the alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl groups. For example, the following groups are encompassed by a 7 member heteroaralkyl (* represents the attachment point):

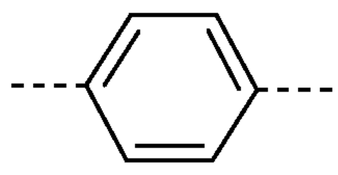


"**Halogen atom** or **halo**" is specifically a fluorine atom, chlorine atom, bromine atom or iodine atom.

The term "**oxo**" represents =O.

A **dash** ("-") that is not between two letters or symbols is used to indicate a point of attachement for a substitutent. For example, -$CONR_dR_e$ is attached through the carbon of the amide.

A **dash line** ("-----") is used to indicate the point of attachment for the group. For example, A is attached through the carbon at position 1 and 4 in the following representation:



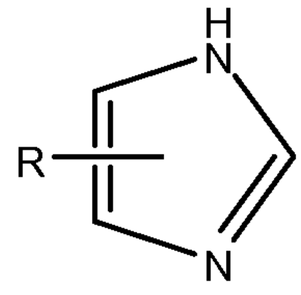
When there is a **sulfur atom** present, the sulfur atom can be at different oxidation levels, i.e., S, SO, or SO_2. All such oxidation levels are within the scope of the present invention.

The term "**independently**" means that a substituent can be the same or a different definition for each item.

In general, the term "substituted," whether preceded by the term "optionally" or not, refers to the replacement of hydrogen radicals on a carbon or nitrogen atom in a given structure with the radical of a specified substituent. Specific substituents are described above in the definitions and below in the description of compounds and examples thereof. Unless otherwise indicated, an optionally substituted group can have a substituent at each substitutable position of the group, and when more than one position in any given structure can be substituted with more than one substituent selected from a specified group, the substituent can be either the same or different at every position. For example, the language, "which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{10}" means that when the group is substituted with more than one R^{10} group, the R^{10} groups can be different from each other. A ring substituent, such as a

heterocycle, can be bound to another ring, such as a cycloalkyl, to form a spiro-bicyclic ring system, e.g., both rings share one common atom.

As one of ordinary skill in the art will recognize, combinations of substituents envisioned by this invention are those combinations that result in the formation of stable or chemically feasible compounds. The term "stable", as used herein, refers to compounds that are not substantially altered when subjected to conditions to allow for their production, detection, and preferably their recovery, purification, and use for one or more of the purposes disclosed herein. In some embodiments, a stable compound or chemically feasible compound is one that is not substantially altered when kept at a temperature of 40°C or less, in the absence of moisture or other chemically reactive conditions, for at least a week. When two alkoxy groups are bound to the same atom or adjacent atoms, the two alkoxy groups can form a ring together with the atom(s) to which they are bound.

In certain embodiment, a compound represented by: 

also includes where the R group replaces the H on the nitrogen atom.

Additionally, unless otherwise stated, structures depicted herein are also meant to include compounds that differ only in the presence of one or more isotopically enriched atoms. For example, compounds of this invention, wherein one or more hydrogen atoms are replaced deuterium or tritium, or one or more carbon atoms are replaced by a ^{13}C- or ^{14}C-enriched carbon are within the scope of this invention. Such compounds are useful, for example, as analytical tools, probes in biological assays, or antiviral compounds with improved therapeutic profile.

The terms “host” or “patient” mean human male or female, for example child, adolescent or adult.

It will be appreciated that the amount of a compound of the invention required for use in treatment will vary not only with the particular compound selected but also with the route of administration, the nature of the condition for which treatment is required and the age and condition of the patient and will be ultimately at the discretion of the attendant physician or veterinarian. In general however a suitable dose will be in the range of from about 0.1 to about 750 mg/kg of body weight per day, for example, in the range of 0.5 to 60 mg/kg/day, or, for example, in the range of 1 to 20 mg/kg/day.

The desired dose may conveniently be presented in a single dose or as divided dose administered at appropriate intervals, for example as two, three, four or more doses per day.

The compound is conveniently administered in unit dosage form; for example containing 10 to 1500 mg, conveniently 20 to 1000 mg, most conveniently 50 to 700 mg of active ingredient per unit dosage form.

Ideally the active ingredient should be administered to achieve peak plasma concentrations of the active compound of from about 1 to about 75μM, about 2 to 50 μM, about 3 to about 30 μM. This may be achieved, for example, by the intravenous injection of a 0.1 to 5% solution of the active ingredient, optionally in saline, or orally administered as a bolus containing about 1 to about 500 mg of the active ingredient. Desirable blood levels may be maintained by a continuous infusion to provide about 0.01 to about 5.0 mg/kg/hour or by intermittent infusions containing about 0.4 to about 15 mg/kg of the active ingredient.

When the compounds of the present invention or a pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof is used in combination with a second therapeutic agent active against the same virus the dose of each compound may be either the same as or differ from that when the compound is used alone. Appropriate doses will be readily appreciated by those skilled in the art.

While it is possible that, for use in therapy, a compound of the invention may be administered as the raw chemical it is preferable to present the active ingredient as a pharmaceutical composition. The invention thus further provides a pharmaceutical composition comprising compounds of the present invention or a pharmaceutically acceptable derivative thereof together with one or more pharmaceutically acceptable

carriers therefore and, optionally, other therapeutic and/or prophylactic ingredients. The carrier(s) must be "acceptable" in the sense of being compatible with the other ingredients of the formulation and not deleterious to the recipient thereof.

Pharmaceutical compositions include those suitable for oral, rectal, nasal, topical (including buccal and sub-lingual), transdermal, vaginal or parenteral (including intramuscular, sub-cutaneous and intravenous) administration or in a form suitable for administration by inhalation or insufflation. The formulations may, where appropriate, be conveniently presented in discrete dosage units and may be prepared by any of the methods well known in the art of pharmacy. All methods include the step of bringing into association the active compound with liquid carriers or finely divided solid carriers or both and then, if necessary, shaping the product into the desired formulation.

Pharmaceutical compositions suitable for oral administration may conveniently be presented as discrete units such as capsules, cachets or tablets each containing a predetermined amount of the active ingredient; as a powder or granules; as a solution, a suspension or as an emulsion. The active ingredient may also be presented as a bolus, electuary or paste. Tablets and capsules for oral administration may contain conventional excipients such as binding agents, fillers, lubricants, disintegrants, or wetting agents. The tablets may be coated according to methods well known in the art. Oral liquid preparations may be in the form of, for example, aqueous or oily suspensions, solutions, emulsions, syrups or elixirs, or may be presented as a dry product for constitution with water or other suitable vehicle before use. Such liquid preparations may contain conventional additives such as suspending agents, emulsifying agents, non-aqueous vehicles (which may include edible oils), or preservatives.

The compounds according to the invention may also be formulated for parenteral administration (e.g. by injection, for example bolus injection or continuous infusion) and may be presented in unit dose form in ampoules, pre-filled syringes, small volume infusion or in multi-dose containers with an added preservative. The compositions may take such forms as suspensions, solutions, or emulsions in oily or aqueous vehicles, and may contain formulatory agents such as suspending, stabilizing and/or dispersing agents. Alternatively, the active ingredient may be in powder form, obtained by aseptic isolation of sterile solid or by lyophilization from solution, for constitution with a suitable vehicle, e.g. sterile, pyrogen-free water, before use.

For topical administration to the epidermis, the compounds according to the invention may be formulated as ointments, creams or lotions, or as a transdermal patch. Such transdermal patches may contain penetration enhancers such as linalool, carvacrol, thymol, citral, menthol and t-anethole. Ointments and creams may, for example, be formulated with an aqueous or oily base with the addition of suitable thickening and/or gelling agents. Lotions may be formulated with an aqueous or oily base and will in general also contain one or more emulsifying agents, stabilizing agents, dispersing agents, suspending agents, thickening agents, or colouring agents.

Compositions suitable for topical administration in the mouth include lozenges comprising active ingredient in a flavoured base, usually sucrose and acacia or tragacanth; pastilles comprising the active ingredient in an inert base such as gelatin and glycerin or sucrose and acacia; and mouthwashes comprising the active ingredient in a suitable liquid carrier.

Pharmaceutical compositions suitable for rectal administration wherein the carrier is a solid are for example presented as unit dose suppositories. Suitable carriers include cocoa butter and other materials commonly used in the art, and the suppositories may be conveniently formed by admixture of the active compound with the softened or melted carrier(s) followed by chilling and shaping in moulds.

Compositions suitable for vaginal administration may be presented as pessaries, tampons, creams, gels, pastes, foams or sprays containing in addition to the active ingredient such carriers as are known in the art to be appropriate.

For intra-nasal administration the compounds of the invention may be used as a liquid spray or dispersible powder or in the form of drops. Drops may be formulated with an aqueous or non-aqueous base also comprising one more dispersing agents, solubilizing agents or suspending agents. Liquid sprays are conveniently delivered from pressurized packs.

For administration by inhalation the compounds according to the invention are conveniently delivered from an insufflator, nebulizer or a pressurized pack or other convenient means of delivering an aerosol spray. Pressurized packs may comprise a suitable propellant such as dichlorodifluoromethane, trichlorofluoromethane, dichlorotetrafluoroethane, carbon dioxide or other suitable gas. In the case of a

pressurized aerosol the dosage unit may be determined by providing a valve to deliver a metered amount.

Alternatively, for administration by inhalation or insufflation, the compounds according to the invention may take the form of a dry powder composition, for example a powder mix of the compound and a suitable powder base such as lactose or starch. The powder composition may be presented in unit dosage form in, for example, capsules or cartridges or e.g. gelatin or blister packs from which the powder may be administered with the aid of an inhalator or insufflator.

When desired the above described formulations adapted to give sustained release of the active ingredient may be employed.

The following general schemes and examples are provided to illustrate various embodiments of the present invention and shall not be considered as limiting in scope. It will be appreciated by those of skill in the art that other compounds of the present invention can be obtained by substituting the generically or specifically described reactants and/or operating conditions used in the following examples.

In the foregoing and in the following examples, all temperatures are set forth uncorrected in degrees Celsius; and, unless otherwise indicated, all parts and percentages are by weight.

The following abbreviations may be used as follows:

aq	aqueous
conc	concentrate
DCM	methylene chloride
DIPEA	Diisopropylethylamine
DMF	dimethylformamide
DMSO	Dimethylsulfoxide
EtOAc	Ethyl acetate
HATU	*O*-(7-Azabenzotriazol-1-yl)-N,N,N',N'-tetramethyluronium hexafluorophosphate
M	molar
MeOH	Methanol

MTBE	methyl ter-butyl ether
n-BuLi	n-butyl lithium
$PdCl_2dppf$	(1,1'-Bis-(diphenylphosphino)-ferrocene)palladium (II) dichloride
$Pd(PPh_3)_2Cl_2$	trans-dichlorobis(triphenyl phosphine) Palladium (II)
RT	room temperature
TEA	Triethylamine
THF	Tetrahydrofuran

The compounds of this invention may be prepared in light of the specification using steps generally known to those of ordinary skill in the art. Those compounds may be analyzed by known methods, including but not limited to LCMS (liquid chromatography mass spectrometry) HPLC (high performance liquid chromatography) and NMR (nuclear magnetic resonance). It should be understood that the specific conditions shown below are only examples, and are not meant to limit the scope of the conditions that can be used for making compounds of this invention. Instead, this invention also includes conditions that would be apparent to those skilled in that art in light of this specification for making the compounds of this invention. Unless otherwise indicated, all variables in the following schemes are as defined herein. General Schemes:

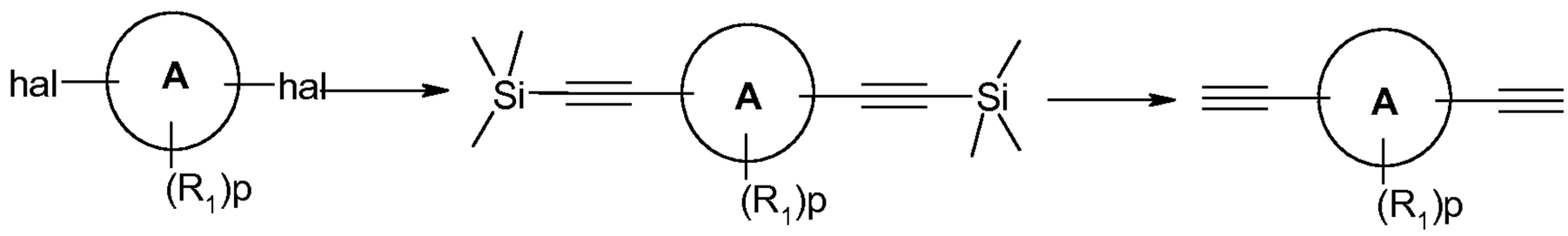
Mass spec. samples were analyzed on a MicroMass Quattro Micro of MicroMass LCZ mass spectrometer operated in single MS mode with electrospray ionization. Samples were introduced into the mass spectrometer using chromatography. Mobile phase for all mass spec. analyses consisted of 10mM pH 7 ammonium acetate and a 1:1 acetonitrile-methanol mixture. Method A: Column gradient conditions were 5%-100% acetonitrile-methanol over 3.5 mins gradient time and 4.8 mins run time on an ACE5C8 3.0 x 75mm column. Flow rate was 1.2 ml/min. Method B: Column gradient were 5%-100% acetonitrile-methanol over 10 mins gradient time and 12 mins run time on a ACE5C8 4.6 x 150 mm column. Flow rate was 1.5 mL/min. As used herein, the term "Rt(min)" refers to the LCMS retention time, in minutes, associated with the compound. Unless otherwise indicated, the LCMS method utilized to obtain the reported retention time is as detailed above. If the Rt(min) is < 5 min method A was used, if the Rt(min) is >5 min then method B was used.

1H-NMR spectra were recorded at 400 MHz using a Bruker DPX 400 or Varian instrument.

Purification by reverse phase HPLC is carried out under standard conditions using a Phenomenex Gemini C18 column, 21.2 mmID x 250 mm, 5 μm, 110Å. Elution is

performed using a linear gradient 20 to 90 % (CH_3CN in water or CH_3CN in water with 0.02%HCl) with a flow rate of 5.0 mL/minute.

General procedure 1:

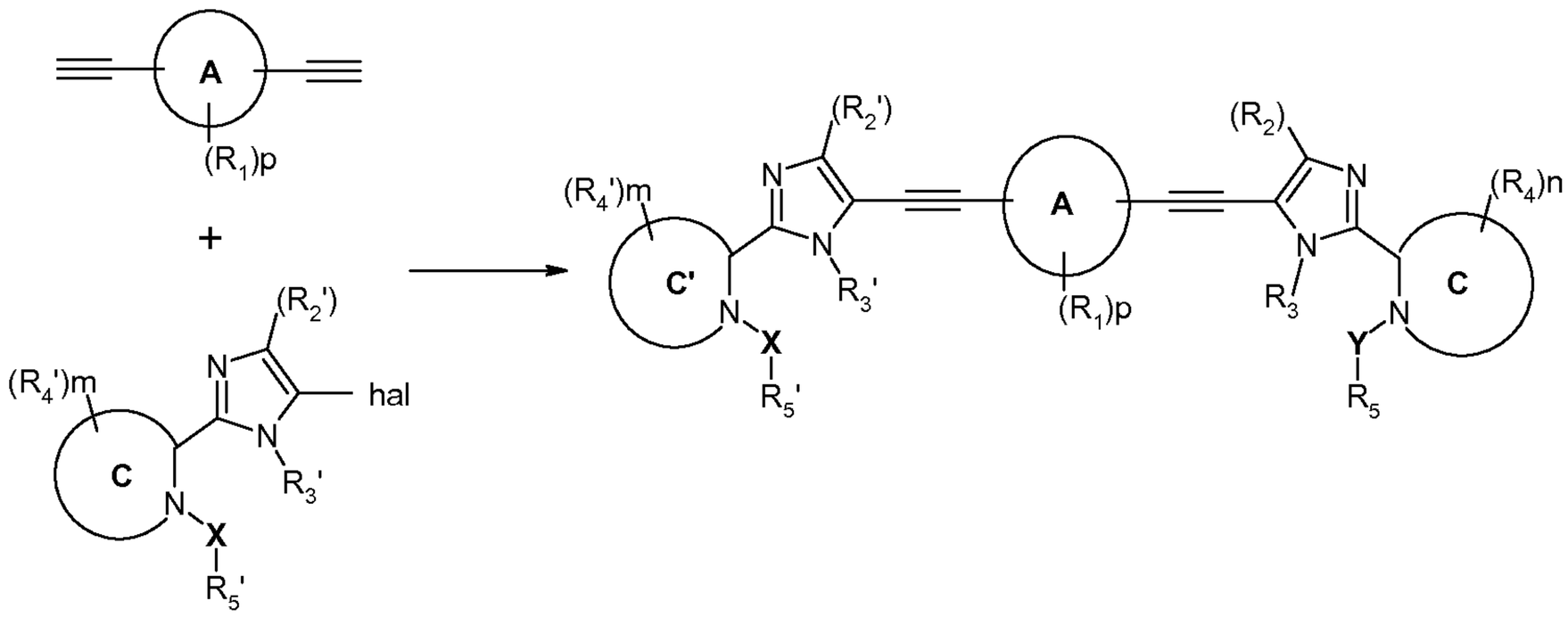


hal is halogen

The diethynyl intermediate is prepared in 2 steps from the commercially available bis-halogenated aryl or heterocycle. A Sonogashira coupling with bis(trimethylsilyl)acetylene using CuI and palladium catalysts in solvent such as DMF in presence of base such as TEA or DIPEA give the bis-trimethyl ethynyl silane intermediate. The silyl groups are hydrolyzed in presence of a base such as K_2CO_3 in MeOH to give the expected diethynyl intermediate.

The Sonogashira coupling reaction is a well established method for producing acetylene containing compounds. Conditions for such coupling are well known in the art and can be found for example in the examples of the present application, in Yamagushi et al. (Synlett 1999, No.5, 549-550), or in Tykwinski et al. Angew. Chem.. Inte. Ed. 2003, 42, 1566-1568.

General procedure 2:



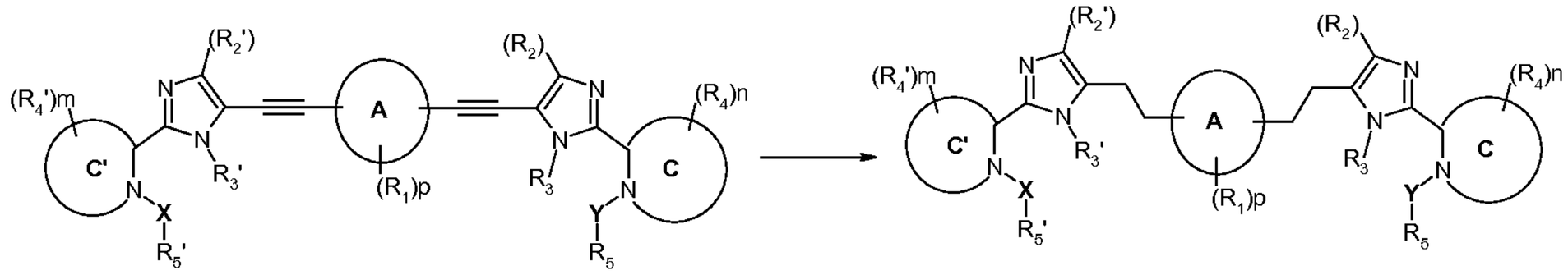
hal is halogen

The compound is formed from the diethynyl intermediate and the iodo or bromo imidazole intermediate by a Sonogoshira coupling using CuI and palladium catalysts in solvents such as DMF in presence of base such as TEA or DIPEA.

In one embodiment, the halogen is iodo or bromo.

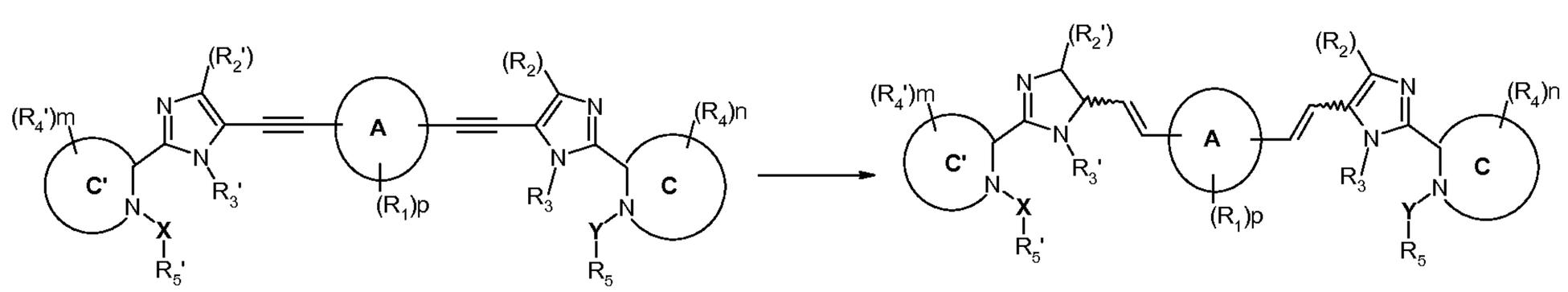
In one embodiment, the halogen is iodo.

General procedure 3:



Reduction of the triple bond is done under standard hydrogenation procedure as known by those of ordinary skill in the art. The compound having triple bonds is dissolved in a suitable solvent such as methanol and a catalytic amount of a 1M solution of HCl is added followed by a catalytic amount of 10% Pd/C. The reaction mixture is stirred at RT under 1 atmosphere of hydrogen until completion of the reaction, filtered and the filtrate concentrated to dryness to afford the alkyl derivatives.

General procedure 4:



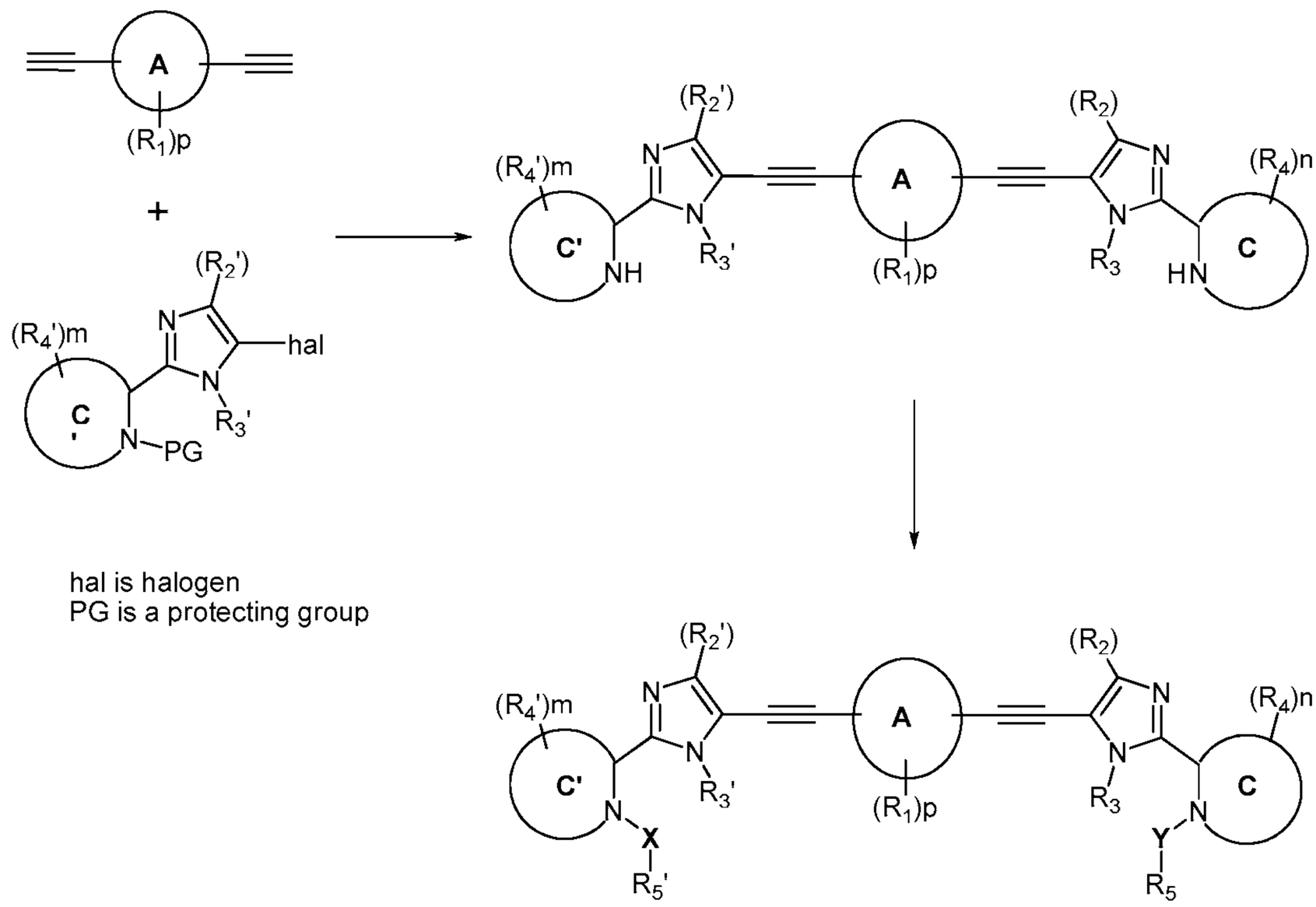
Reduction of the triple bonds to double bonds could be done under standard hydrogenation procedure as known in the art. Such conditions are described for example in the following references:

Tri H. V. Huynh et al. Organic Letters, 2009, vol. 11, 999-1002.

Sellarajah, Shan et al. J.Med. Chem. 2004, 47 (22) 5515

Chandrasehkar, S et al. Tetrahedron Letters 2004, 45, 2421-2423.

General procedure 5:



Alternatively, the compound is formed from the diethynyl intermediate and the protected iodo or bromo imidazole intermediate by a Sonogoshira coupling using CuI and palladium catalysts in solvents such as DMF in presence of base such as TEA or DIPEA. Removal of the protecting group optionally followed by coupling with the complimentary functionalized X-R5' or Y-R5 group can be accomplished under standard reactioj conditions known in the art.

In one embodiment, the halogen is iodo or bromo.

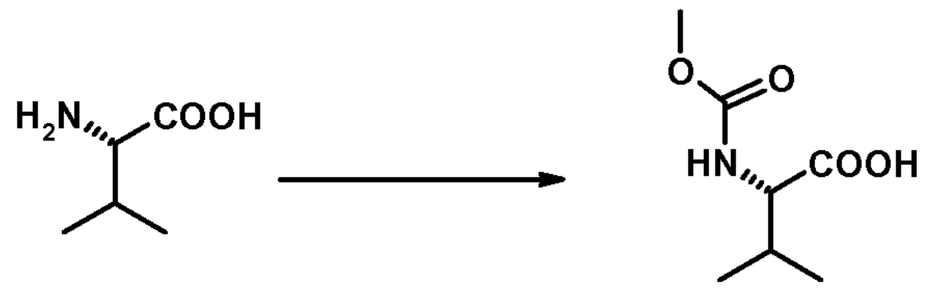
In one embodiment, the halogen is iodo.

In one embodiment, the protecting group is *tert*-butoxycarbonyl.

Mass spec. samples were analyzed on a Micromass Platform LCZ mass spectrometer operated in single MS mode with electrospray ionization. Samples were introduced into the mass spectrometer using chromatography. Mobile phase for all mass spec. analyses consisted of H_2O+0.01%TFA and CH_3CN+0.01%TFA. Method: Column gradient conditions were 5%-85%CH_3CN+0.01%TFA in 20 minutes gradient time on a SymmetryShield RP18 3.5um, 2.1x50mm column. Flow rate was 0.5mL/minute. As used herein, the term "Rt(minute)" refers to the LCMS retention time, in minutes, associated with the compound. Unless otherwise indicated, the LCMS method utilized to obtain the reported retention time is detailed above.

Intermediate 1

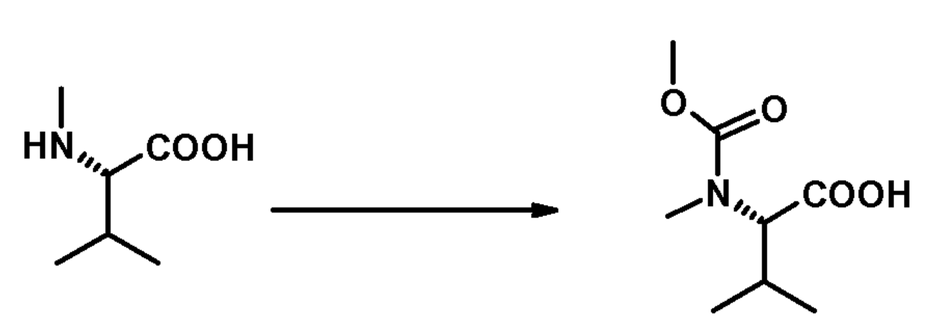
(2S)-2-(methoxycarbonylamino)-3-methyl-butanoic acid



L- Valine (140 g, 1.195 mol) is added to a stirred solution of 1 M sodium hydroxide (1.183 L, 1.183 mol). After complete dissolution, sodium carbonate (65.8 g, 621.4 mmol) is added followed by methyl chloroformate (122g, 99.75 mL, 1.291 mol) at 0°C over 40 minutes. The reaction mixture is stirred at RT for 3.5 hours, then washed with diethyl ether (3x 200ml). The aqueous layer is cooled to 0°C, and acidified to pH 1-2. The white solid formed is filtered on a Buchner, washed with cold water and dried to afford the title compound (2S)-2-(methoxycarbonylamino)-3-methyl-butanoic acid (140g, 67%).

Intermediate 2

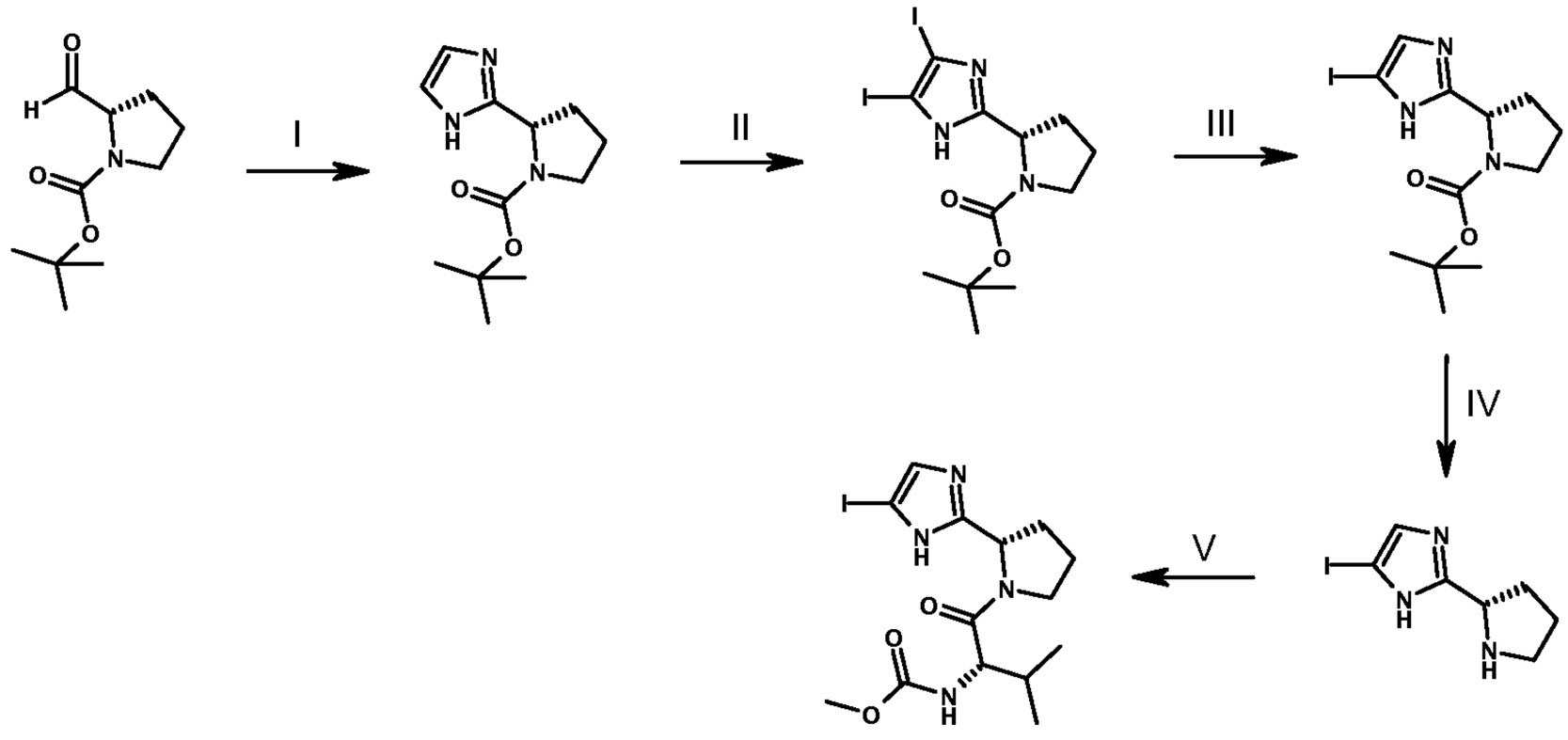
(2S)-2-[Methoxycarbonyl(methyl)amino]-3-methyl-butanoic acid



(2S)-3-Methyl-2-methylamino-butanoic acid (5 g, 38.12 mmol) is added to a stirring solution of sodium hydroxide (76.2 mL of 1 M, 76.24 mmol). After complete dissolution, disodium carbonate (2.1 g, 19.82 mmol) is added followed by methyl chloroformate (3.18 mL, 41.17 mmol) at 0°C over 40 minutes. The reaction mixture is stirred at RT for 4 hours, then washed with diethyl ether (2x 75 ml). The aqueous layer is cooled to 0°C, acidified to pH 1-2 and extracted with CH_2Cl_2. The organic phase is dried over $MgSO_4$, filtered and concentrated to dryness to give the title compound (2S)-2-[methoxycarbonyl(methyl)amino]-3-methyl-butanoic acid (5.12g, 71%) as a clear oil.

Intermediate 3

Methyl N-[(1S)-1-[(2S)-2-(5-iodo-1H-imidazol-2-yl)pyrrolidine-1-carbonyl]-2-methyl-propyl]carbamate



Step I:

tert-Butyl(2S)-2-(1H-imidazol-2-yl)pyrrolidine-1-carboxylate

To a stirred solution of commercially available *tert*-butyl (2S)-2-formylpyrrolidine-1-carboxylate (15 g, 75.3 mmol) in a 1/1 mixture MeOH (30mL) / NH_4OH (30mL) is added oxaldehyde (3.4 mL, 75.3 mmol) over 10 minutes. The reaction is stirred at RT for 72 hours and evaporated to dryness. The residue is purified by flash column chromatography on silica gel (EtOAc/Hexanes 50% to 75%) to give *tert*-butyl(2S)-2-(1H-imidazol-2-yl)pyrrolidine-1-carboxylate (5.2g, 29%).

Step II:

tert-Butyl(2S)-2-(4,5-diiodo-1H-imidazol-2-yl)pyrrolidine-1-carboxylate

To a stirred solution of *tert*-butyl (2S)-2-(1H-imidazol-2-yl)pyrrolidine-1-carboxylate (5g, 21 mmol) in CH_2Cl_2 (120 mL) is added 1-iodopyrrolidine-2,5-dione (10.4 g, 46.3 mmol) at 0°C over 15 minutes. The reaction mixture is stirred 2 hours at 0°C, concentrated to dryness, and the residue is purified by flash column chromatography on silica gel (25% EtOAc in Hexanes) to give *tert*-butyl(2S)-2-(4,5 diiodo-1H-imidazol-2-yl)pyrrolidine-1-carboxylate(8.6g, 83%).

Step III:

tert-Butyl(2S)-2-(5-iodo-1H-imidazol-2-yl)pyrrolidine-1-carboxylate

To a cooled (-78°C) solution of *tert*-butyl (2S)-2-(4,5-diiodo-1H-imidazol-2-yl)pyrrolidine-1-carboxylate (6.5g, 13.29 mmol) in THF (65 mL) is added dropwise 1.5M *n*-BuLi in hexanes (22.15 mL, 33.22 mmol) over 30 minutes. The reaction mixture is stirred 30 minutes and an additional 1.5 eq of 1.5 M *n*-BuLi in hexanes is added over 30 minutes. After addition of 20 mL 1N HCl the reaction mixture is allowed to stir at RT. The reaction mixture is extracted by EtOAc, washed with H_2O, dried over Na_2SO_4, filtered, concentrated to dryness, and purified by flash column chromatography on silica gel (0 to 50% EtOAc in Hexanes) to give *tert*-butyl (2S)-2-(5-iodo-1H-imidazol-2-yl)pyrrolidine-1-carboxylate (2.93g, 60%).

Step IV:

5-Iodo-2-[(2S)-pyrrolidin-2-yl]-1H-imidazole (HCl salt)

To *tert*-butyl (2S)-2-(5-iodo-1H-imidazol-2-yl)pyrrolidine-1-carboxylate (2.9g, 7.9 mmol) is added a 4 M solution of HCl in dioxane (29 mL, 795.4 mmol) at 0°C. The reaction mixture is stirred for 4 hours at RT, evaporated to dryness to afford 5-iodo-2-[(2S)-pyrrolidin-2-yl]-1H-imidazole (HCl salt) (2.4g, 100%) as a white solid.

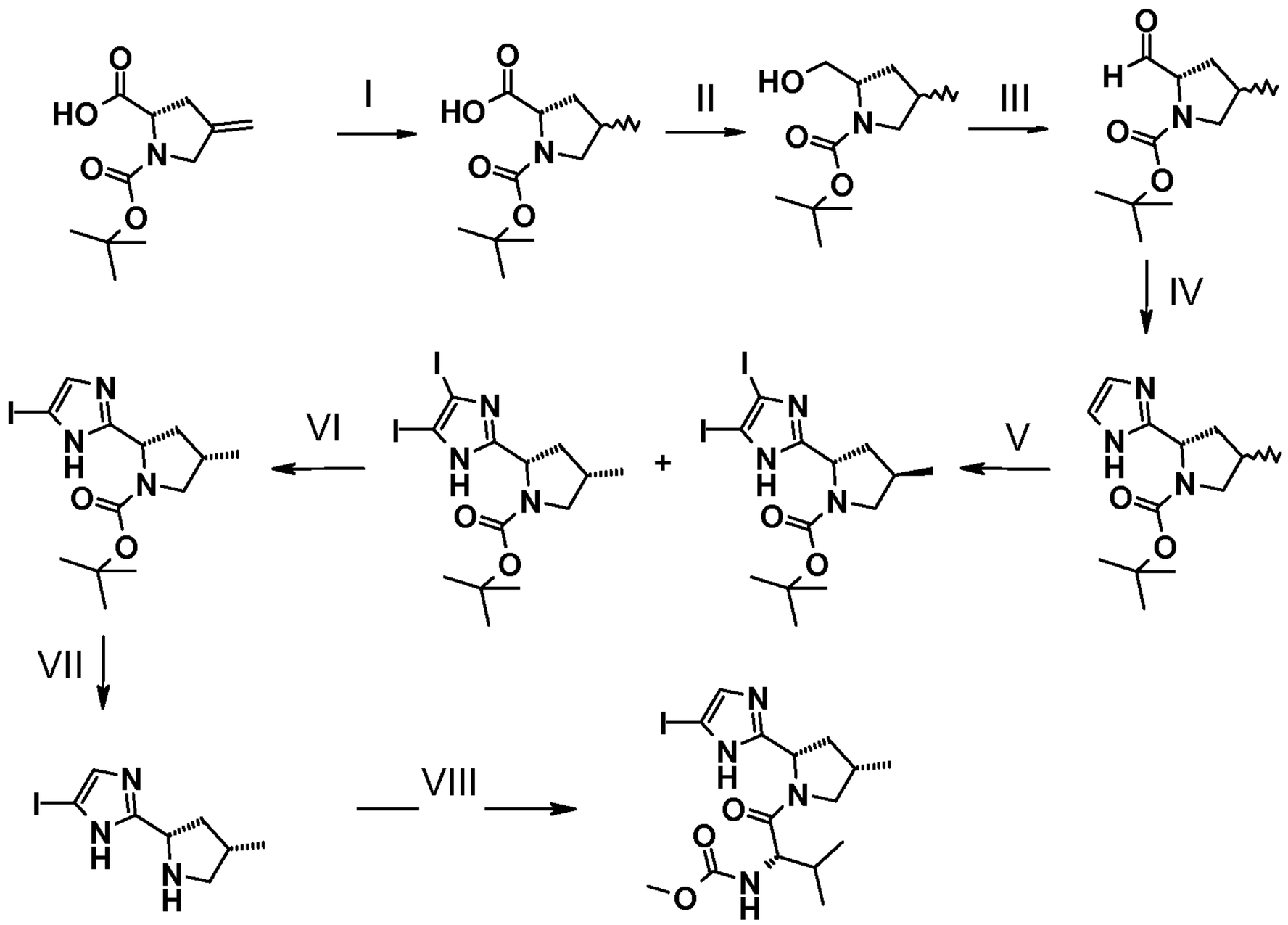
Step V:

Methyl N-[(1S)-1-[(2S)-2-(5-iodo-1H-imidazol-2-yl)pyrrolidine-1-carbonyl]-2-methyl-propyl]carbamate

To a chilled solution (0°C) of (2S)-2-(methoxycarbonylamino)-3-methyl-butanoic acid (2.2 g, 12.7 mmol) and HATU (5.4 g, 14.3 mmol) in DMF (48 mL) is added DIPEA (10.3 g, 13.9 mL, 79.8 mmol) followed by 5-iodo-2-[(2S)-pyrrolidin-2-yl]-1H-imidazole HCL salt (2.4 g, 7.9 mmol). The reaction mixture is stirred overnight at RT, diluted with H_2O and EtOAc. The organic phase is separated, dried over Na_2SO_4, filtered and concentrated to dryness. The residue is purified by flash column chromatography on silica gel (0 to 100% EtOAc in Hexanes) to give Methyl N-[(1S)-1-[(2S)-2-(5-iodo-1H-imidazol-2-yl)pyrrolidine-1-carbonyl]-2-methyl-propyl]carbamate (1.3g, 35%).

Intermediate 4

Methyl N-[(1S)-1-[(2S,4S)-2-(5-iodo-1H-imidazol-2-yl)-4-methyl-pyrrolidine-1-carbonyl]-2-methyl-propyl]carbamate



Step I:

(2S)-1-*tert*-Butoxycarbonyl-4-methyl-pyrrolidine-2-carboxylic acid

A solution of (2S)-1-*tert*-butoxycarbonyl-4-methylene-pyrrolidine-2-carboxylic acid (25g, 110 mmol) in methanol or ethanol (250 mL) is purged 3 times under $N_{2(g)}$ before the addition of PtO_2 (2.5g, 11 mmol). The solution is purged again with vacuum and $H_{2(g)}$, and this purge is repeated three times. Then the reaction mixture is stirred for 20 hours under one atmosphere of hydrogen. The reaction mixture is filtered on celite to remove the catalyst, and the filtrate is concentrated to dryness to give (2S)-1-tert-butoxycarbonyl-4-methyl-pyrrolidine-2-carboxylic acid (24.9g, 98.7%) as a white solid (mixture of cis/trans approx. 80/20 ratio).

Step II:

tert-Butyl (2S)-2-(hydroxymethyl)-4-methyl-pyrrolidine-1-carboxylate

To a solution of (2S)-1-*tert*-butoxycarbonyl-4-methyl-pyrrolidine-2-carboxylic acid (26.6 g, 116.0 mmol) in THF (160 mL) is added 1 M Borane in THF (243.6 mL, 243.6 mmol) at 0°C. The reaction mixture is stirred at RT overnight. Then 50 mL of a saturated aqueous solution of NH_4Cl is carefully added (dropwise) at 4°C, followed by 100 mL of H_2O. The

mixture is extracted with EtOAc and the organic phase is washed with H_2O, dried over Na_2SO_4, filtered and concentrated to dryness. The residue is purified by flash column chromatography on silica gel (0 to 20% EtOAc in Hexanes) to give *tert*-butyl (2S)-2-(hydroxymethyl)-4-methyl-pyrrolidine-1-carboxylate (23.5g, 94%).

Step III:

tert-Butyl (2S)-2-formyl-4-methyl-pyrrolidine-1-carboxylate

To a solution of oxalyl chloride (319.4 mL of 2 M, 638.8 mmol) in CH_2Cl_2 (460 mL) is added DMSO (90.69 mL, 1.28 mol) over 30 minutes, keeping the internal temperature around -60°C. t*ert*-Butyl (2S)-2-(hydroxymethyl)-4-methyl-pyrrolidine-1-carboxylate (55g, 255.5 mmol) in CH_2Cl_2 (460 mL) is then added over 50 minutes at -78°C. The reaction mixture is stirred for 20 minutes before dropwise addition of DIPEA (445 mL, 2.55 mol). The reaction mixture is stirred at -78°C for 2 hours and is allowed to warm to RT over 2 hours. To this mixture is added slowly 800 mL of 1N HCl. After stirring, the organic phase is separated, dried over Na_2SO_4, filtered and concentrated to dryness. The residue is purified by flash column chromatography on silica gel (0 to 20% EtOAc in Hexanes) to give *tert*-butyl (2S)-2-formyl-4-methyl-pyrrolidine-1-carboxylate (48.5 g, 227.4 mmol, 85%) as a brown oil (mixture cis/trans 77/23).

Step IV:

tert-Butyl (2S)-2-(1H-imidazol-2-yl)-4-methyl-pyrrolidine-1-carboxylate

To a stirred solution of *tert*-butyl (2S)-2-formyl-4-methyl-pyrrolidine-1-carboxylate (45 g, 211 mmol) in MeOH (90 mL) is added NH_4OH (90 mL). Oxaldehyde (85.6g, 67.7 mL of 40 %w/v, 466.7 mmol) is added by portions (exothermic reaction). The reaction mixture is stirred at RT overnight, diluted with H_2O (300 ml) and is extracted with CH_2Cl_2 (2 x 300ml). The aqueous phase is extracted a second time with CH_2Cl_2 and the combined organic layers are washed with H_2O, dried over Na_2SO_4, filtered and evaporated to dryness. The residue is purified by recrystallization in EtOAc, to give 24 g of the title compound. The filtrate is evaporated to dryness and the residue is purified by flash column chromatography on silica gel (25 to 100% EtOAc in Hexanes) to give 9.67 g of title compound. The two isolated solids are combined to give *tert*-butyl (2S)-2-(1H-imidazol-2-yl)-4-methyl-pyrrolidine-1-carboxylate (33.67 g, 63.5%).

^{1}H NMR (400 MHz, dmso, mixture of Cis and Trans isomers and its rotamers) δ 11.71 (s, 1 H), 6.85 (s, 2 H), 4.86 - 4.58 (m, 2 H), 3.75-3.5 (m, 2 H), 3.03 - 2.82 (m, 2 H), 2.36 - 2.25 (m, 1 H), 2.25 - 2.11 (m, 1 H), 1.6-1.45 (m, 1 H), 1.39 (s, minor rotamer of minor isomer), 1.37 (s, minor rotamer of major isomer), 1.15 (s, major rotamer of minor

isomer), 1.09 (s, major rotamer of major isomer) 1.005 (d, minor isomer) 0.99 (d, major isomer).

Step V:

tert-Butyl (2S,4S)-2-(4,5-diiodo-1H-imidazol-2-yl)-4-methyl-pyrrolidine-1-carboxylate

To a stirred solution of *tert*-butyl (2S)-2-(1H-imidazol-2-yl)-4-methyl-pyrrolidine-1-carboxylate (36.6 g, 145.6 mmol) in CH_2Cl_2 (366.0 mL) at 5°C is added 1-iodopyrrolidine-2,5-dione (68.80 g, 305.8 mmol) over 15 minutes. After 1 hour, a 10% sodium thiosulfate solution (800ml) is added. After stirring for 10 minutes, the organic phase is separated, washed with water, dried over Na_2SO_4, filtered and evaporated to dryness. The crude is purified by flash column chromatography on silica gel (0 to 50% EtOAc in Hexanes) to give *tert*-butyl (2S,4S)-2-(4,5-diiodo-1H-imidazol-2-yl)-4-methyl-pyrrolidine-1-carboxylate (52.3 g, 65.7%).

^{1}H NMR (400 MHz, dmso, 2.5:1 mixture of rotamers), peaks for the major rotamer δ 12.70 (s, 1 H), 4.57 (dd, 1 H), 3.62 - 3.52 (m, 1 H), 2.95 (t, 1 H), 2.35 - 2.0 (m, 2 H), 1.50 (dd, 1 H), 1.10 (s, 9 H), 1.01 (d, 3 H).

tert-Butyl (2S,4R)-2-(4,5-diiodo-1H-imidazol-2-yl)-4-methyl-pyrrolidine-1-carboxylate (10.5 g, 13%) is also isolated.

^{1}H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO, 1.2:1 mixture of rotamers), peaks for the major rotamer, δ 12.65 (br s, 1 H), 4.69 (dd,1 H), 3.69 - 3.50 (m, 1 H), 2.82 (t, 1 H), 2.45-2.3 (m, 1 H), 1.91 - 1.68 (m, 2 H), 1.15 (s, 9 H), 0.97 (d, *J* = 6.6 Hz, 3 H). Selected peaks for the minor rotamer: 4.77 (d), 1.38 (s).

Step VI:

tert-Butyl (2S,4S)-2-(5-iodo-1H-imidazol-2-yl)-4-methyl-pyrrolidine-1-carboxylate

A solution of LiCl in THF (3.9 mL of a 0.5 M solution, 1.99 mmol) is added to tert-butyl (2S,4S)-2-(4,5-diiodo-1H-imidazol-2-yl)-4-methyl-pyrrolidine-1-carboxylate (1g, 1.99 mmol). After stirring for 5 minutes at RT the reaction mixture is cooled down to -20°C and a solution of methyl magnesium chloride in THF (946.7 µL of 2.1 M, 1.99 mmol) is added dropwise. After stirring for 20 minutes at -20°C, a solution of isopropyl magnesium chloride in THF (3.2 mL of 1.24 M, 3.97 mmol) is added dropwise. The reaction mixture is slowly warmed up to RT and stirred for 2 hours. The reaction mixture is cooled down to 0°C and a saturated aqueous NH_4Cl solution is slowly added followed by water. This mixture is then extracted with EtOAc (3 x 20 mL), and the combined organic layers are washed with brine, dried over Na_2SO_4, filtered and concentrated to dryness. The residue is purified by flash column chromatography on silica gel (0 to 25%

EtOAC/Hexane) to afford *tert*-butyl (2S,4S)-2-(5-iodo-1H-imidazol-2-yl)-4-methyl-pyrrolidine-1-carboxylate (636 mg, 83%) as a white solid.

^{1}H NMR (400 MHz, dmso, 2:1 mixture of rotamers), peaks for the major rotamer, δ 12.15 (s, 1 H), 7.19 (s, 1 H), 4.65 – 4.57 (m, 1 H), 3.65 – 3.55 (m, 1 H), 2.95 (t, 1 H), 2.4-2.1 (m, 2 H), 1.52 (dd, 1 H), 1.10 (s, 9 H), 1.00 (d, 3 H). Selected peaks for minor rotamer, 12.09 (s), 7.15 (s), 1.36 (s).

Step VII:

5-Iodo-2-[(2S,4S)-4-methylpyrrolidin-2-yl]-1H-imidazole as a HCl salt

To a solution of *tert*-butyl (2S,4S)-2-(5-iodo-1H-imidazol-2-yl)-4-methyl-pyrrolidine-1-carboxylate (1.6g, 4.242 mmol) in MeOH (16mL) is added a 4M HCl in dioxane solution (16 ml) at 0°C. The reaction mixture is stirred at RT overnight and evaporated to dryness to afford 5-iodo-2-[(2S,4S)-4-methylpyrrolidin-2-yl]-1H-imidazole (1.37g, 92.5%) as a yellow solid.

^{1}H NMR (400 MHz, dmso) δ 9.98 (br s, 1 H), 9.17 (br s, 1 H), 7.46 (s, 1 H), 4.8-4.6 (m, 1 H), 3.45-3.35 (m, 1 H), 2.9-2.75 (m, 1 H), 2.5–2.3 (m, 2 H), 1.88–1.78 (m, 1 H), 1.09 (d, 3 H).

Step VIII:

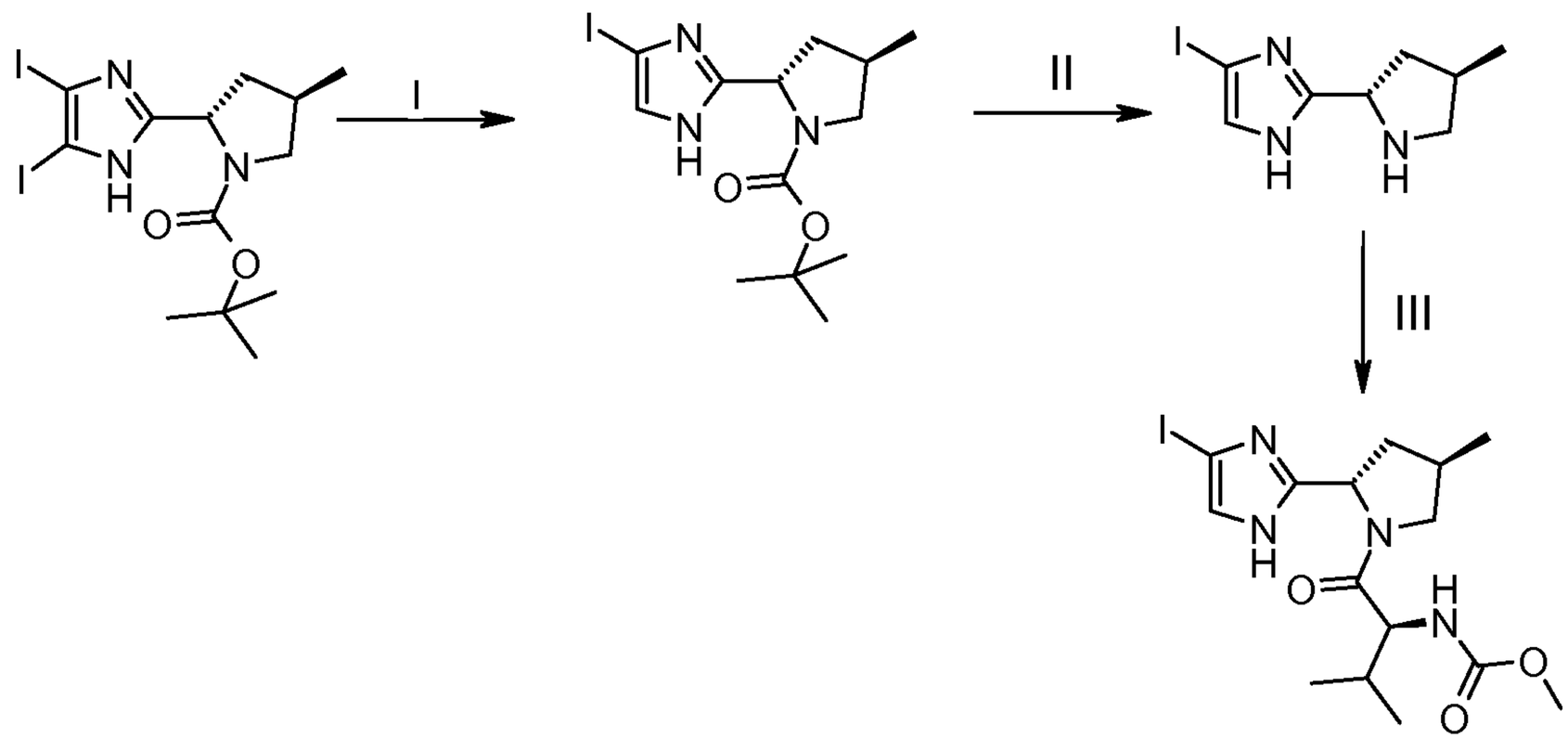
Methyl N-[(1S)-1-[(2S,4S)-2-(5-iodo-1H-imidazol-2-yl)-4-methyl-pyrrolidine-1-carbonyl]-2-methyl-propyl]carbamate

To a solution of (2S)-2-(methoxycarbonylamino)-3-methyl-butanoic acid (644.5 mg, 3.68 mmol) in DMF (25 mL) at 0°C is added HATU (1.4 g, 3.68 mmol), DIPEA (2.5mL, 14.57 mmol) followed by 5-iodo-2-[(2S,4S)-4-methylpyrrolidin-2-yl]-1H-imidazole as HCl salt (1.28 g, 3.64 mmol). The reaction mixture is stirred at RT for 20 hours, diluted with EtOAc and H_2O. The organic phase is separated, washed with H_2O, dried over Na_2SO_4, filtered and concentrated to dryness. The residue is purified by flash column chromatography on silica gel (0 to 100% EtOAC/Hexane) to afford methyl N-[(1S)-1-[(2S,4S)-2-(5-iodo-1H-imidazol-2-yl)-4-methyl-pyrrolidine-1-carbonyl]-2-methyl-propyl]carbamate(1.3g, 87.3%) as a white solid.

^{1}H NMR (400 MHz, dmso) δ 12.03 (s, 1 H), 7.19 (d, 1 H), 7.18 (s, 1 H), 4.83 (dd, 1 H), 4.16 – 3.91 (m, 2 H), 3.52 (s, 3 H), 3.16 (t, 1 H), 2.38-2.08 (m, 2 H), 1.9–1.72 (m, 1 H), 1.72–1.61 (m, 1 H), 1.06 (d, 3 H), 0.76 (d, 3 H), 0.755 (m, 3 H).

Intermediate 5

Methyl (S)-1-((2S,4R)-2-(4-iodo-1H-imidazol-2-yl)-4-methylpyrrolidin-1-yl)-3-methyl-1-oxobutan-2-ylcarbamate



Step I:

(2S,4R)-*tert*-Butyl 2-(4-iodo-1H-imidazol-2-yl)-4-methylpyrrolidine-1-carboxylate

A solution of LiCl in THF (2.000 mL of 0.5 M, 1.000 mmol) is added to tert-butyl (2S,4R)-2-(4,5-diiodo-1H-imidazol-2-yl)-4-methyl-pyrrolidine-1-carboxylate (503.12 mg, 1.000 mmol) in 25 mL flask. The mixture is stirred at RT for 5 minutes, cooled to -20°C, and a solution of 3 M methyl magnesium chloride in THF (333.3 µL, 1.000 mmol) is added drop wise. The reaction mixture is stirred at -20°C for 20 minutes, and a solution of isopropyl magnesium chloride in THF (846.2 µL of 1.3 M, 1.100 mmol) is added drop wise. The reaction mixture is slowly warmed up to RT over 1 hour, and left overnight. An additional amount of isopropyl magnesium chloride in THF (423.1 µL of 1.3 M, 0.5500 mmol) is added at RT, and the mixture is stirred for 1 hour. Another additional amount of isopropyl magnesium chloride in THF (423.1 µL of 1.3 M, 0.5500 mmol) is added, and the mixture is stirred at RT for 2 hours. An additional amount of isopropyl magnesium chloride in THF (423.1 µL of 1.3 M, 0.5500 mmol) is added, and the mixture is stirred for 30 minutes. The reaction mixture is poured into cold saturated aq. NH_4Cl solution, extracted with EtOAc (3 x 20 mL), and the combined extracts are washed with brine, dried over Na_2SO_4, filtered and concentrated to dryness. The residue is purified by flash column chromatography on silica gel (0 to 20% EtOAC/CH_2Cl_2) to afford (2S,4R)-tert-butyl 2-(4-iodo-1H-imidazol-2-yl)-4-methylpyrrolidine-1-carboxylate (240 mg, 0.6133 mmol, 61.34%) as white solid.

Rf = 0.5 (EA:Hex, 1:1).

^{1}H NMR (400 MHz, $CDCl_3$) δ 10.59 (s, 1H), 7.02 (s, 1H), 4.90 (d, *J* = 8.1 Hz, 1H), 3.55 - 3.39 (m, 1H), 3.05 - 2.82 (m, 2H), 2.6-2.45 (m, 1H), 1.80 - 1.65 (m, 1H), 1.46 (s, 9H), 1.06 (dd, *J* = 6.7 Hz, 3H).

Step II:

4-Iodo-2-((2S,4R)-4-methylpyrrolidinium-2-yl)-1H-imidazol-3-ium chloride

To a stirred solution of *tert*-butyl (2S,4R)-2-(4-iodo-1H-imidazol-2-yl)-4-methyl-pyrrolidine-1-carboxylate (229 mg, 0.6071 mmol) in MeOH (1 mL) is added HCl in dioxane (1.518 mL of 4 M, 6.071 mmol). The resulting solution is stirred at RT and a thick precipitate is formed within 20 min The precipitate is diluted with diethyl ether, filtered, and dried under high vacuum to afford 4-iodo-2-((2S,4R)-4-methylpyrrolidinium-2-yl)-1H-imidazol-3-ium chloride (185 mg, 0.5250 mmol, 86.48%) as a white solid.

^{1}H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d6) δ 10.30 (br s, 1H), 9.24 (br s, 1H), 7.46 (s, 1H), 4.85-4.7 (m, 1H), 3.5-3.35 (m, 1H), 2.85-2.72 (m, 1H), 2.61 - 2.5 (m, 1H), 2.38 - 2.24 (m, 1H), 1.98 - 1.85 (m, 1H), 1.05 (d, *J* = 6.8 Hz, 3H).

Step III:

Methyl (S)-1-((2S,4R)-2-(4-iodo-1H-imidazol-2-yl)-4-methylpyrrolidin-1-yl)-3-methyl-1-oxobutan-2-ylcarbamate

To a cold (0-4 °C) stirred solution of (2S)-2-(methoxycarbonylamino)-3-methyl-butanoic acid (50.10 mg, 0.2860 mmol), 4-iodo-2-((2S,4R)-4-methyl-pyrrolidinium-2-yl)-1H-imidazol-3-ium chloride (96 mg, 0.2724 mmol) and HATU (108.7 mg, 0.2860 mmol) in DMF (1.918 mL) is added DIPEA (140.9 mg, 189.9 µL, 1.090 mmol). The reaction mixture is slowly warmed up to RT, stirred overnight, diluted with water (5 mL), and extracted with ethyl acetate (3 x 10 mL). The combined extracts are washed with a saturated aqueous sodium bicarbonate solution, brine, dried over Na_2SO_4, and concentrated to dryness. The residue is purified by flash column chromatography on silica gel (50% to 100% EtOAC/hexanes) to afford methyl (S)-1-((2S,4R)-2-(4-iodo-1H-imidazol-2-yl)-4-methylpyrrolidin-1-yl)-3-methyl-1-oxobutan-2-ylcarbamate (119 mg, 0.2595 mmol, 95.26%) as white solid.

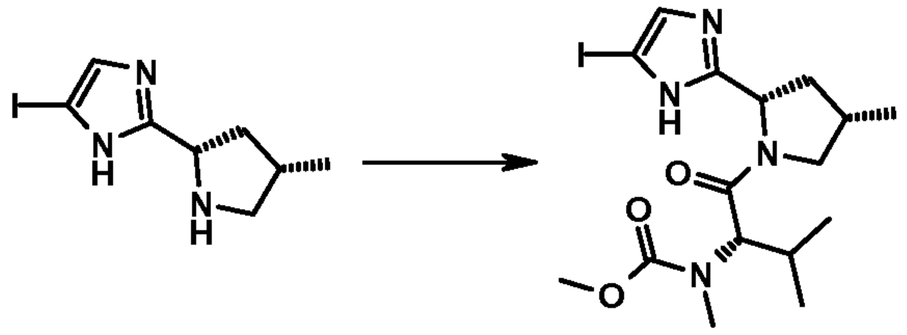
Rf = 0.47 (EtOAc).

^{1}H NMR (400 MHz, CD_3OD) δ 7.06 (s, 1H), 5.13 (dd, *J* = 8.4, 3.7 Hz, 1H), 4.14 (d, *J* = 7.5 Hz, 1H), 3.92 (dd, *J* = 9.7, 7.1 Hz, 1H), 3.62 (s, 3H), 3.43 (dd, *J* = 9.6, 8.0 Hz, 1H), 2.71-2.6 (m, 1H), 2.30-1.81 (m, 3H), 1.09 (d, *J* = 6.7 Hz, 3H), 0.88 (d, *J* = 6.7 Hz, 3H), 0.861 (d, *J* = 6.7 Hz, 3H).

LC/MS : m/z 434.9 ($M + H^+$).

Intermediate 6

Methyl N-[(1S)-1-[(2S,4S)-2-(4-iodo-1H-imidazol-2-yl)-4-methyl-pyrrolidine-1-carbonyl]-2-methyl-propyl]-N-methyl-carbamate

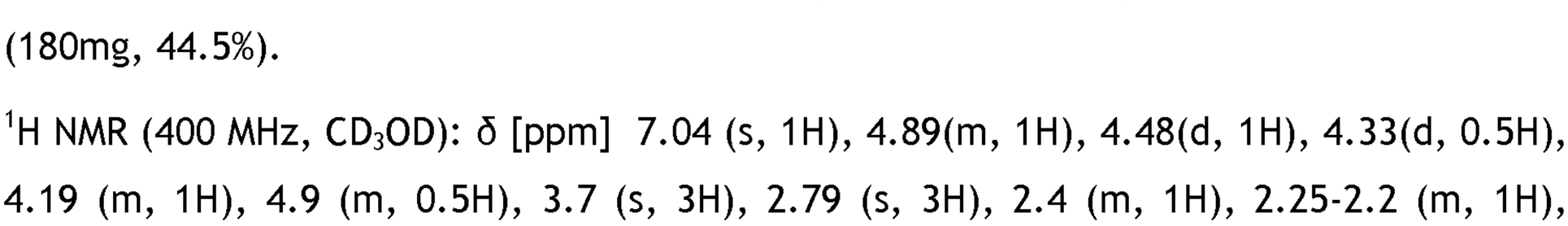


To a stiring solution of 4-iodo-2-[(2S,4S)-4-methylpyrrolidin-2-yl]-1H-imidazole (250 mg, 0.90 mmol), (2S)-2-[methoxycarbonyl(methyl)amino]-3-methyl-butanoic acid (179.2 mg, 0.94 mmol) and 2,4,6-collidine (357.7 µL, 2.7 mmol) in DMF (4 mL) is added HATU (581.2 mg, 0.94 mmol) at 0°C. The reaction mixture is stirred at RT overnight and diluted with EtOAc. The organic layer is washed with H_2O, brine, dried over Na_2SO_4, filtered and concentrated to dryness. The residue is purified by flash column chromatography on silica gel (10 to 100% EtOAc/Hexane) to afford Methyl N-[(1S)-1-[(2S,4S)-2-(4-iodo-1H-imidazol-2-yl)-4-methyl-pyrrolidine-1-carbonyl]-2-methyl-propyl]-N-methyl-carbamate (180mg, 44.5%).

^{1}H NMR (400 MHz, CD_3OD): δ [ppm] 7.04 (s, 1H), 4.89(m, 1H), 4.48(d, 1H), 4.33(d, 0.5H), 4.19 (m, 1H), 4.9 (m, 0.5H), 3.7 (s, 3H), 2.79 (s, 3H), 2.4 (m, 1H), 2.25-2.2 (m, 1H), 2.11-2.05(m, 1H), 1.79-1.7 (m, 1H), 1.12 (s, 3H), 0.8 (dd, 3H), 0.76 (dd, 3H).
LC/MS: m/z = 448.95($M+H^+$).

Intermediate 7

Methyl N-[(1S)-1-[(2S)-2-(4-ethynyl-1H-imidazol-2-yl)pyrrolidine-1-carbonyl]-2-methyl-propyl]carbamate



Step I

Methyl N-[(1S)-2-methyl-1-[(2S)-2-[4-(2-trimethylsilylethynyl)-1H-imidazol-2-yl]pyrrolidine-1-carbonyl]propyl]carbamate

Ethynyl(trimethyl)silane (91.1 mg, 131.1 µL, 0.93 mmol), methyl N-[(1S)-1-[(2S)-2-(4-iodo-1H-imidazol-2-yl)pyrrolidine-1-carbonyl]-2-methyl-propyl]carbamate (130 mg, 0.31 mmol), Pd(dppf)Cl_2-DCM (25.2 mg, 0.031 mmol), TEA (62.60 mg, 86.2 µL, 0.62 mmol),

and CuI (11.78 mg, 0.062 mmol) are dissolved in 10 mL of DMF. The system is purged with nitrogen and the mixture is heated to 70°C overnight under nitrogen. After evaporation of the solvent under vacuum, the residue is purified by flash column chromatography on silica gel (0 to 5% methanol/CH_2Cl_2) to afford methyl N-[(1S)-2-methyl-1-[(2S)-2-[4-(2-trimethylsilylethynyl)-1H-imidazol-2-yl]pyrrolidine-1-carbonyl]propyl]carbamate (100 mg).

^{1}H NMR (400 MHz, $CDCl_3$): δ [ppm] 10.35 (s, 1H), 6.93 (s, 1H), 5.50 (d, 1H), 4.95 (m, 1H), 4.07 (m, 1H), 3.37-3.69 (m, 5H), 1.69-2.10 (m, 5H), 0.60-0.83 (m, 6H), 0.00 (m, 9H).
LC/MS : m/z 391.00 ($M + H^+$).

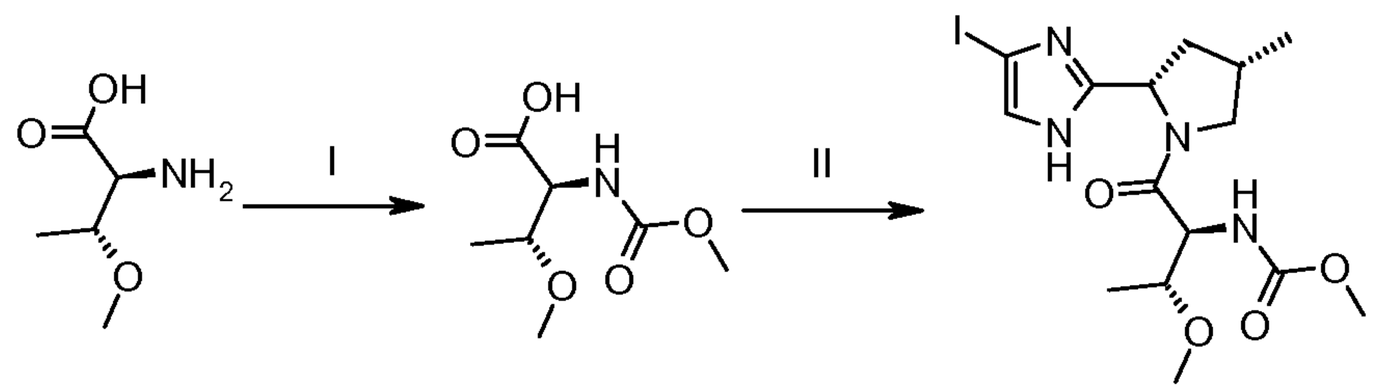
Step II:

Methyl N-[(1S)-1-[(2S)-2-(4-ethynyl-1H-imidazol-2-yl)pyrrolidine-1-carbonyl]-2-methyl-propyl]carbamate

To a solution of methyl N-[(1S)-2-methyl-1-[(2S)-2-[4-(2-trimethylsilylethynyl)-1H-imidazol-2-yl]pyrrolidine-1-carbonyl]propyl]carbamate (100 mg, 0.256 mmol) in 3 mL of THF is added 1M TBAF/THF (384 L, 0.38 mmol). The mixture is stirred at RT for 20 minutes and the solvent is removed under reduced pressure. The residue is purified by flash column chromatography on silica gel (0 to 5% methanol/CH_2Cl_2) to afford methyl N-[(1S)-1-[(2S)-2-(4-ethynyl-1H-imidazol-2-yl)pyrrolidine-1-carbonyl]-2-methyl-propyl]carbamate (56 mg).

Intermediate 8

Methyl (2S,3R)-1-((2S,4S)-2-(4-iodo-1H-imidazol-2-yl)-4-methylpyrrolidin-1-yl)-3-methoxy-1-oxobutan-2-ylcarbamate



Step I:

(2S,3R)-3-methoxy-2-(methoxycarbonylamino)butanoic acid

To a solution of (2S,3R)-2-amino-3-methoxy-butanoic acid (2 g, 15.02 mmol) in aq. NaOH (14.87 mL of 1 M, 14.87 mmol) is added Na_2CO_3 (827.8 mg, 7.810 mmol). The reaction mixture is stirred for few minutes until solution become clear, and cooled to ice-bath temperature. Methyl chloroformate (1.533 g, 1.253 mL, 16.22 mmol) is added drop wise over a period of 10 minutes and the reaction mixture is stirred for 4.5 hours at RT. The

aqueous solution is washed with diethyl ether (3 x 30 mL), cooled to ice-bath temperature, acidified with HCl_{conc}, extracted with CH_2Cl_2 (3 x 30 mL). The combined organic extracts are washed with brine, dried over Na_2SO_4, filtered, and concentrated to afford (2S,3R)-3-methoxy-2-(methoxycarbonylamino)butanoic acid (1.96 g, 10.25 mmol, 68.25%) as white solid.

^1H NMR (400 MHz, CD_3OD) δ 4.92 (br s, 1 H), 4.18 (d, 1 H), 3.93 (td, 1 H), 3.65 (s, 3 H), 3.29 (s, 3H), 1.16 (d, 3 H).

Step II:

Methyl (2S,3R)-1-((2S,4S)-2-(4-iodo-1H-imidazol-2-yl)-4-methylpyrrolidin-1-yl)-3-methoxy-1-oxobutan-2-ylcarbamate

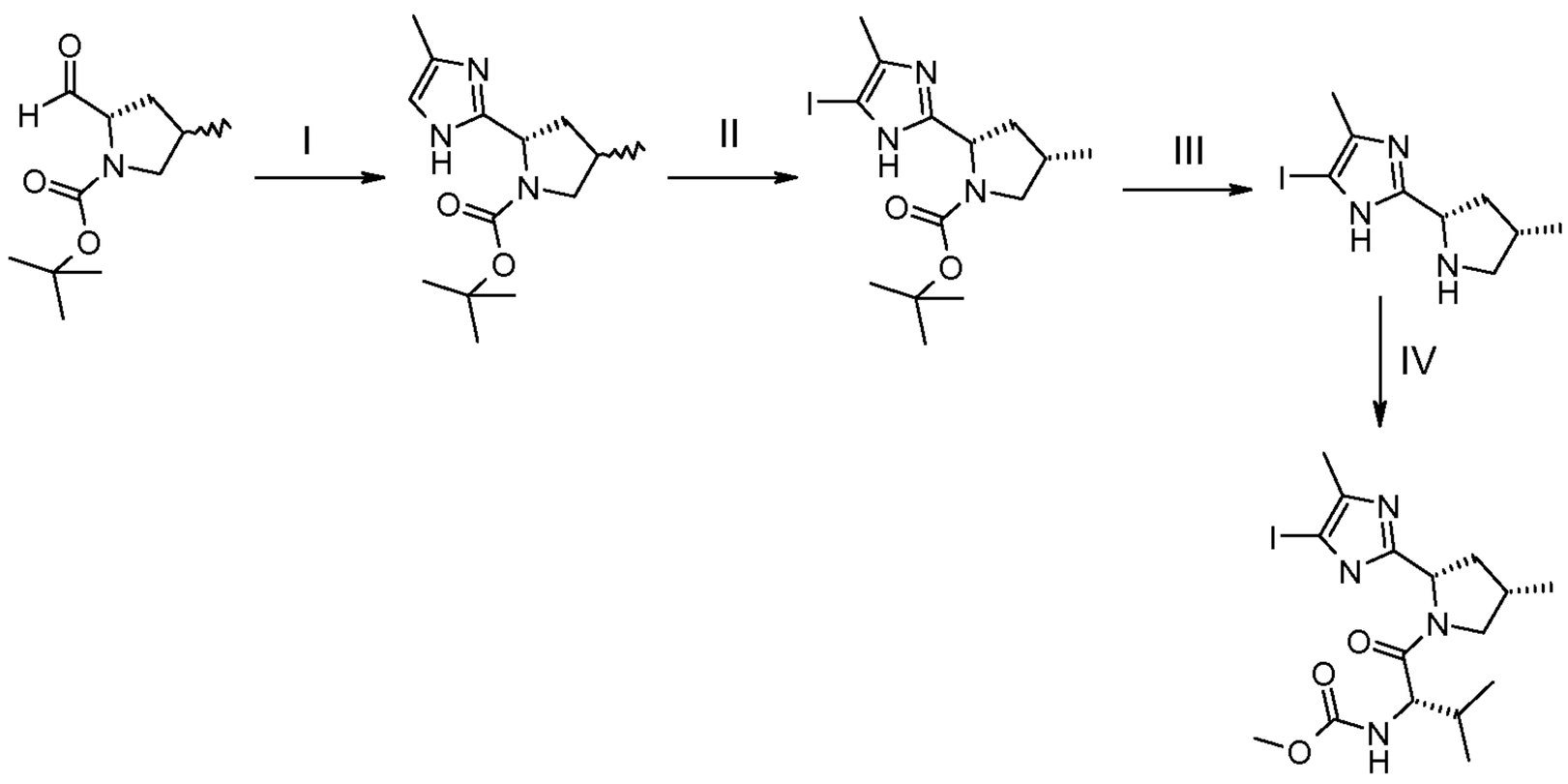
To a cold (0-4°C) stirred solution of 5-iodo-2-[(2S,4S)-4-methylpyrrolidin-1-ium-2-yl]-1H-imidazole hydrochloride (90 mg, 0.2564 mmol) and (2S,3R)-3-methoxy-2-(methoxycarbonylamino)butanoic acid (51.47 mg, 0.2692 mmol) in DMF (1.800 mL) is sequentially added HATU (102.4 mg, 0.2692 mmol) and DIPEA (132.6 mg, 178.7 µL, 1.026 mmol). The reaction mixture is slowly warmed up to RT, stirred overnight, diluted with water (5 mL), and extracted with EtOAc (3 x 10 mL). The combined extracts are washed with saturated aqueous sodium bicarbonate solution, brine, dried over Na_2SO_4, and concentrated to dryness. The residue is purified by flash column chromatography on silica gel (50 to 100% EtOAc / hexanes). The residue is dissolved in toluene and concentrated to dryness to remove azeotropically trace amounts of DMF to afford methyl (2S,3R)-1-((2S,4S)-2-(4-iodo-1H-imidazol-2-yl)-4-methylpyrrolidin-1-yl)-3-methoxy-1-oxobutan-2-ylcarbamate (107 mg, 0.2376 mmol, 92.72%) as solid.

Rf = 0.15 (EtOAc-Hexanes, 7:3).

^1H NMR (400 MHz, $CDCl_3$) δ 10.48 (s, 1 H), 6.99 (s, 1 H), 5.63 (d, 1 H), 5.15 (t, 1 H), 4.51 (br s, 1 H), 3.94 – 3.84 (m, 1 H), 3.68 (s, 3 H), 3.6-3.5 (m, 1 H), 3.15 (s, 3 H), 3.07 (t, 1 H), 2.47 (t, 2 H), 2.35-2.2 (m, 1 H), 1.7-1.55 (m, 1 H), 1.13 (d, 3 H), 1.08 (d, 3 H).

Intermediate 9

Methyl N-[(1S)-1-[(2S,4S)-2-(5-iodo-1H-imidazol-2-yl)-4-methyl-pyrrolidine-1-carbonyl]-2-methyl-propyl]carbamate



Step I

tert-Butyl (2S)-4-methyl-2-(4-methyl-1H-imidazol-2-yl)pyrrolidine-1-carbo-xylate

A stirred solution of *tert*-butyl (2S)-2-formyl-4-methyl-pyrrolidine-1-carboxylate (282 mg, 1.322 mmol) in MeOH (5,6 mL) is cooled to -20°C and gaseous ammonia is bubbled for 10 minutes. 2-Oxopropanal (35% w/w in water, 1.905 g, 9.254 mmol) is added and the reaction mixture is warmed to room temperature over one hour. The mixture is then heated to 65°C for 1 hour, concentrated and 5mL of water is added to the residue. The aqueous layer is extracted with CH_2Cl_2 (3 x 10mL). The combined organic layers are dried over Na_2SO_4, filtered, and evaporated to dryness. The residue is purified by flash column chromatography on silica gel (0 to 20% MeOH in CH_2Cl_2) to afford *tert*-Butyl (2S)-4-methyl-2-(4-methyl-1H-imidazol-2-yl)pyrrolidine-1-carbo-xylate 307 mg (88%).

Step II

tert-butyl (2S,4S)-2-(5-iodo-4-methyl-1H-imidazol-2-yl)-4-methyl-pyrrolidine-1-carboxylate

To a stirred solution of *tert*-butyl (2S)-4-methyl-2-(4-methyl-1H-imidazol-2-yl)pyrrolidine-1-carboxylate (307 mg, 1.013 mmol) in CH_2Cl_2 (15 mL) is added N-iodosuccinimide (240 mg, 1.013 mmol) at 5°C. The reaction mixture is stirred for one hour and 2 mL of water is added. The organic layer is separated, dried over Na_2SO_4, and evaporated to dryness. The residue is purified by flash column chromatography on silica gel (12 to 100% EtOAc in

Hexanes) to give *tert*-butyl (2S,4S)-2-(5-iodo-4-methyl-1H-imidazol-2-yl)-4-methyl-pyrrolidine-1-carboxylate (246 mg, 62%).

Step III:

4-Iodo-5-methyl-2-[(2S,4S)-4-methylpyrrolidin-2-yl]-1H-imidazole hydrochloride

tert-Butyl (2S,4S)-2-(5-iodo-4-methyl-1H-imidazol-2-yl)-4-methyl-pyrrolidine-1-carboxylate (125 mg, 0.320 mmol) is stirred with HCl (4M in dioxane, 2mL) overnight. The reaction mixture is then concentrated to afford 5-iodo-4-methyl-2-[(2S,4S)-4-methylpyrrolidin-2-yl]-1H-imidazole hydrochloride used as is for the next step.

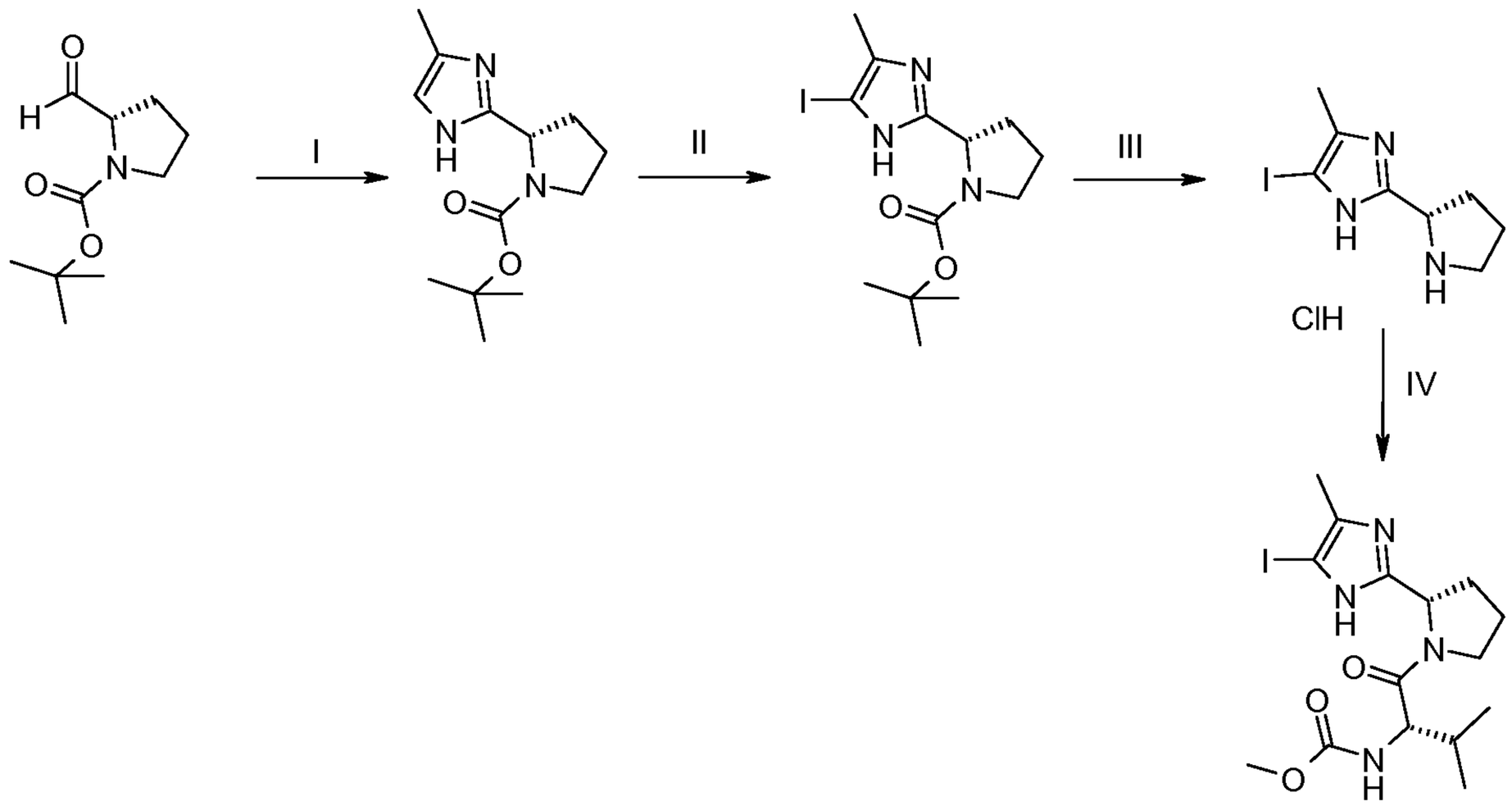
Step IV:

Methyl N-[(1S)-1-[(2S,4S)-2-(5-iodo-4-methyl-1H-imidazol-2-yl)-4-methyl-pyrrolidine-1-carbonyl]-2-methyl-propyl]carbamate

5-iodo-4-methyl-2-[(2S,4S)-4-methylpyrrolidin-2-yl]-1H-imidazole hydrochloride (0.320 mmol) and (2S)-2-(methoxycarbonylamino)-3-methyl-butanoic acid (56 mg, 0.320 mmol) are dissolved in DMF (2 mL) and the mixture is cooled in an ice bath. DIPEA (167 µL, 0.960 mmol) is added followed by HATU (134 g, 0.352 mmol). The reaction mixture is warmed to room temperature, stirred for 20 hours, diluted with 5 mL of saturated $NaHCO_3$ (aq.) and extracted with EtOAc. The combined organic layers are washed with water, dried over Na_2SO_4, and evaporated to dryness. The residue is purified by flash column chromatography on silica gel (0 to 20% MeOH/CH_2Cl_2) to afford methyl N-[(1S)-1-[(2S,4S)-2-(5-iodo-4-methyl-1H-imidazol-2-yl)-4-methyl-pyrrolidine-1-carbonyl]-2-methyl-propyl]carbamate (125 mg, 88% for the last two steps).

Intermediate 10

Methyl N-[(1S)-1-[(2S)-2-(5-iodo-4-methyl-1H-imidazol-2-yl)-pyrrolidine-1-carbonyl]-2-methyl-propyl]carbamate



Step I:

tert-butyl (2S)-2-(4-methyl-1H-imidazol-2-yl)pyrrolidine-1-carboxylate

A stirred solution of *tert*-butyl (2S)-2-formyl-pyrrolidine-1-carboxylate (540 mg, 2.710 mmol) in MeOH (10,8 mL) is cooled to -20°C and gaseous ammonia is bubbled for 10 minutes. 2-oxopropanal (35% w/w in water, 3.9 g, 19.0 mmol) is then added and the reaction mixture is warmed to RT over one hour. The mixture is then heated to 65°C for 1 hour. The solvent is evaporated and 5mL of water is added to the residue. The product is then extracted with EtOAc (3 x 10 mL). The combined organic layers are dried over Na_2SO_4, filtered, and evaporated to dryness. The residue is purified by flash column chromatography on silica gel (20 to 100% EtOAc in hexanes) to give *tert*-butyl (2S)-2-(4-methyl-1H-imidazol-2-yl)pyrrolidine-1-carboxylate (644 mg, 88%).

Step II:

tert-Butyl (2S)-2-(5-iodo-4-methyl-1H-imidazol-2-yl)-pyrrolidine-1-carboxylate

To a stirred solution of *tert*-butyl (2S)-2-(4-methyl-1H-imidazol-2-yl)pyrrolidine-1-carboxylate (625 mg, 2.178 mmol) in CH_2Cl_2 (5.5 mL) at 5°C is added N-iodosuccinimide (516 mg, 2.178 mmol). The reaction is stirred for one hour and 5 mL of water is added. The organic layer is separated, dried over Na_2SO_4, and evaporated to dryness. The residue is purified by flash column chromatography on silica gel (0 to 20% MeOH in CH_2Cl_2) to give *tert*-butyl (2S)-2-(5-iodo-4-methyl-1H-imidazol-2-yl)-pyrrolidine-1-carboxylate.

Step III:

5-iodo-4-methyl-2-[(2S)-pyrrolidin-2-yl]-1H-imidazole hydrochloride

tert-butyl (2S)-2-(5-iodo-4-methyl-1H-imidazol-2-yl)-pyrrolidine-1-carboxylate (2.178 mmol from previous step) is stirred with HCl (4M in dioxane, 5.4 mL) for one hour. Diethyl ether is added (5 ml) and a precipitate is formed. The precipitate is collected by filtration and dried under vacuum to afford 5-iodo-4-methyl-2-[(2S)-pyrrolidin-2-yl]-1H-imidazole hydrochloride (505mg, 74% for the last two steps).

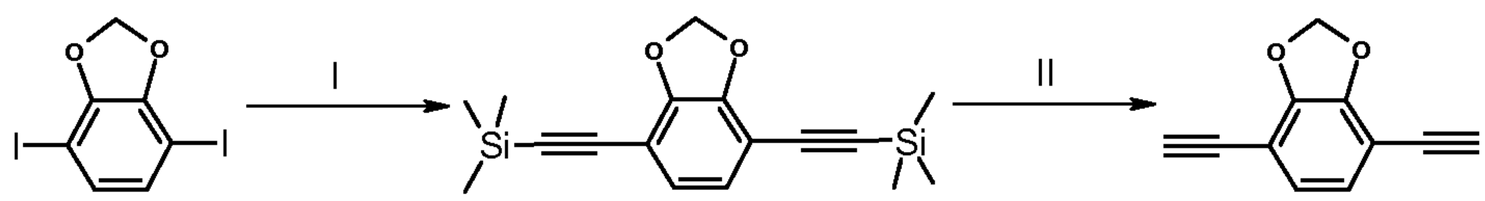
Step IV:

Methyl N-[(1S)-1-[(2S)-2-(5-iodo-4-methyl-1H-imidazol-2-yl)-pyrrolidine-1-carbonyl]-2-methyl-propyl]carbamate

5-iodo-4-methyl-2-[(2S,4S)-pyrrolidin-2-yl]-1H-imidazole hydrochloride (492 mg, 1.569 mmol) and (2S)-2-(methoxycarbonylamino)-3-methyl-butanoic acid (275 mg, 1.569 mmol) are dissolved in DMF (4.9 mL) and the mixture is cooled in an ice bath. DIPEA (820 µL, 4.707 mmol) is added followed by HATU (656 g, 1.726 mmol). The reaction mixture is warmed to room temperature and stirred for 20 hours. The reaction mixture is then diluted with 10 mL of saturated $NaHCO_3$ (aq.) and extracted with EtOAc. The combined organic layers are dried over Na_2SO_4, filtered, and evaporated to dryness. The residue is diluted in 5 mL of xylene and evaporated again. The residue is purified by flash column chromatography on silica gel (0 to 20% $MeOH/CH_2Cl_2$) to afford methyl N-[(1S)-1-[(2S)-2-(5-iodo-4-methyl-1H-imidazol-2-yl)-pyrrolidine-1-carbonyl]-2-methyl-propyl]carbamate (507 mg, 74%).

Intermediate 11

4,7-diethynyl-1,3-benzodioxole



Step I:

Trimethyl-[2-[7-(2-trimethylsilylethynyl)-1,3-benzodioxol-4-yl]ethynyl]silane

To a stirred solution of 4,7-diiodo-1,3-benzodioxole (500 mg, 1.3 mmol), $Pd(PPh_3)_2Cl_2$ (93.8 mg, 0.13 mmol), CuI (50.9 mg, 0.26 mmol) in DMF (5mL) is added ethynyl(trimethyl)silane (472 µL, 3.3 mmol) and TEA (931 µL, 6.6 mmol). The reaction mixture is stirred at 80^0C for 16 hours, diluted with EtOAc, H_2O, and filtered on celite. The organic phase is separated, dried over Na_2SO_4, filtered and concentrated to dryness.

The residue is purified by flash column chromatography on silica gel (0 to 10% EtOAc in Hexanes) to give trimethyl-[2-[7-(2-trimethylsilylethynyl)-1,3-benzodioxol-4-yl]ethynyl]silane (344mg, 81%).

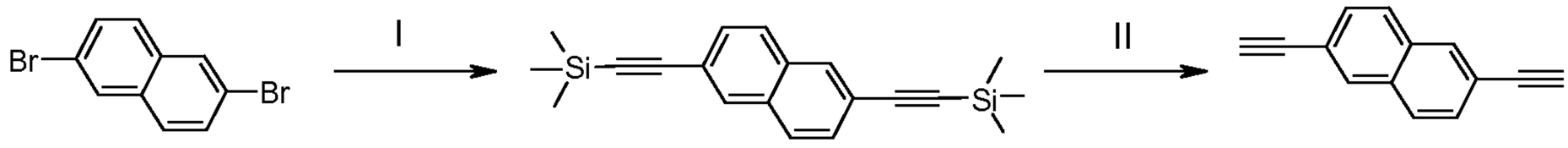
Step II:

4,7-diethynyl-1,3-benzodioxole

To a solution of trimethyl-[2-[7-(2-trimethylsilyl-ethynyl)-1,3-benzodioxol-4-yl]ethynyl]silane (340 mg, 1.08 mmol) in MeOH (6.8 mL) is added K_2CO_3 (328.7 mg, 2.37 mmol). The reaction mixture is stirred at RT for 2 hours and evaporated to dryness. The residue is diluted with EtOAc and H_2O. The organic phase is separated, dried over Na_2SO_4, filtered and concentrated to give 4,7-diethynyl-1,3-benzodioxole (180mg, 98%) as a brown solid.

Intermediate 12

2,6-Diethynylnaphthalene



Step I:

2,6-Bis((trimethylsilyl)ethynyl)naphthalene

To a suspension of 2,6-dibromonaphthalene (500 mg, 1.748 mmol), CuI (66.58 mg, 0.3496 mmol) and Pd(dppf)Cl_2-DCM (214.1 mg, 0.2622 mmol) in DMF (8 mL) is sequentially added TEA (707.5 mg, 974.5 µL, 6.992 mmol) and cold ethynyl(trimethyl)silane (377.7 mg, 543.5 µL, 3.846 mmol) under nitrogen atmosphere. The reaction mixture is heated at 80°C for 7.5 hrs in a sealed tube and a precipitate is formed in the reaction tube after few hours of heating. The reaction mixture is cooled to RT, and filtered off. The white precipitate is washed with DMF (3.0 mL), dried under high vacuum to afford 2,6-bis((trimethylsilyl)ethynyl)naphthalene (620 mg) as white solid.

1H NMR spectra showed 2.6:1 mixture of the desired compound and triethyl ammonium bromide, this mixture is used as such in the next step without further purification.

^{1}H NMR (400 MHz, $CDCl_3$) δ 7.91 (s, 2 H), 7.67 (d, 2 H), 7.47 (d, 2 H), 0.27 (s, 18 H).

Step II:

2,6-Diethynylnaphthalene

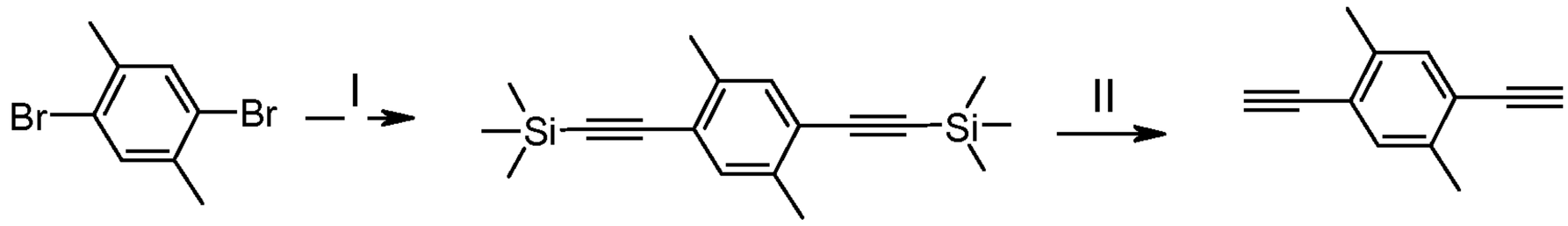
To a stirred suspension of trimethyl-[2-[6-(2-trimethylsilylethynyl)-2-naphthyl]ethynyl]silane (590 mg, 1.472 mmol) in MeOH (10 mL) is added K_2CO_3 (447.5 mg, 3.238 mmol) in one portion, and the heterogeneous mixture is stirred at RT for 2.5 hours. To this reaction mixture is added CH_2Cl_2 (3.0 mL) and the mixture is stirred for an additional 30 minutes, concentrated, diluted with water (6 mL), and extracted with CH_2Cl_2 (3 x 10 mL). The combined organic extracts are washed with brine, dried over Na_2SO_4, filtered, and concentrated to dryness. The residue is purified by flash column chromatography on silica gel (0 to 5% EtOAc in Hexanes) to give 2,6-diethynylnaphthalene (157 mg, 0.8901 mmol, 60.46%) as white solid.

Rf = 0.37 (EA:hex, 1:20).

^{1}H NMR (400 MHz, $CDCl_3$) δ 8.00-7.95 (m, 2 H), 7.73 (d, 2 H), 7.53 (dd, 2 H), 3.17 (s, 2 H).

Intermediate 13

1,4-Diethynyl-2,5-dimethyl-benzene



Step I:

1,4-Dimethyl-2,5-bis-trimethylsilyl)ethynyl-benzene

1,4-Dimethyl-2,5-bis-trimethylsilyl)ethynyl-benzene is prepared from 1,4-dibromo-2,5-dimethyl-benzene according to the procedure reported for 2,6-bis((trimethylsilyl)ethynyl)naphthalene.

Step II:

1,4-Diethynyl-2,5-dimethyl-benzene

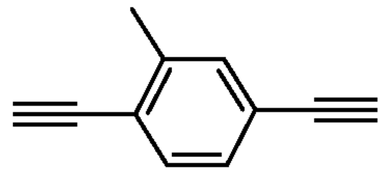
To a stirred suspension of 1,4-dimethyl-2,5-bis-trimethylsilyl)ethynyl-benzene (700 mg, 2.345 mmol) in MeOH (14.70 mL) is added dipotassium carbonate (713.0 mg, 5.159 mmol) in one portion and the heterogeneous mixture is stirred at RT for 2.5 hours. To this mixture is added CH_2Cl_2 (3.0 mL), and the mixture is stirred for an additional 30 minutes, concentrated, diluted with water (6 mL), and extracted with CH_2Cl_2 (3 x 15 mL). The combined organic extracts are washed with brine, dried over Na_2SO_4, filtered and concentrated to dryness. The residue is purified by flash column chromatography on silica gel (0 to 5% MeOH in CH_2Cl_2) to give 1,4-diethynyl-2,5-dimethyl-benzene (248 mg, 1.608 mmol, 68.58%) as light yellow solid.

Rf = 0.43 (Hexanes).

^{1}H NMR (400 MHz, $CDCl_3$) δ 7.29 (s, 2 H), 3.31 (s, 2 H), 2.37 (s, 6 H).

Intermediate 14

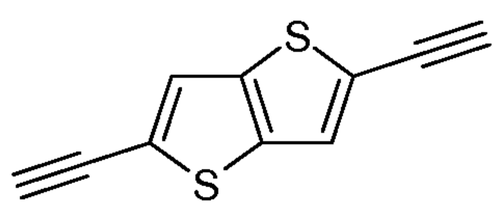
1,4-Diethynyl-2-methyl-benzene



The title compound is synthesized from 1,4-dibromo-2-methyl benzene as described in **Intermediate 13.**

Intermediate 15

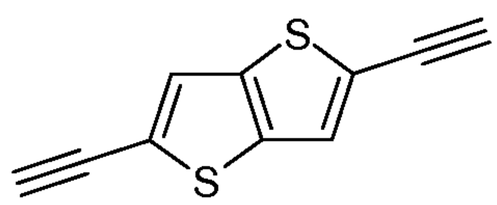
2,5-Diethynyl-thieno[3,2-b]thiophene



The title compound is synthesized from 2,5-Dibromo-thieno[3,2-b]thiopheneas described in **Intermediate 13.**

Intermediate 16

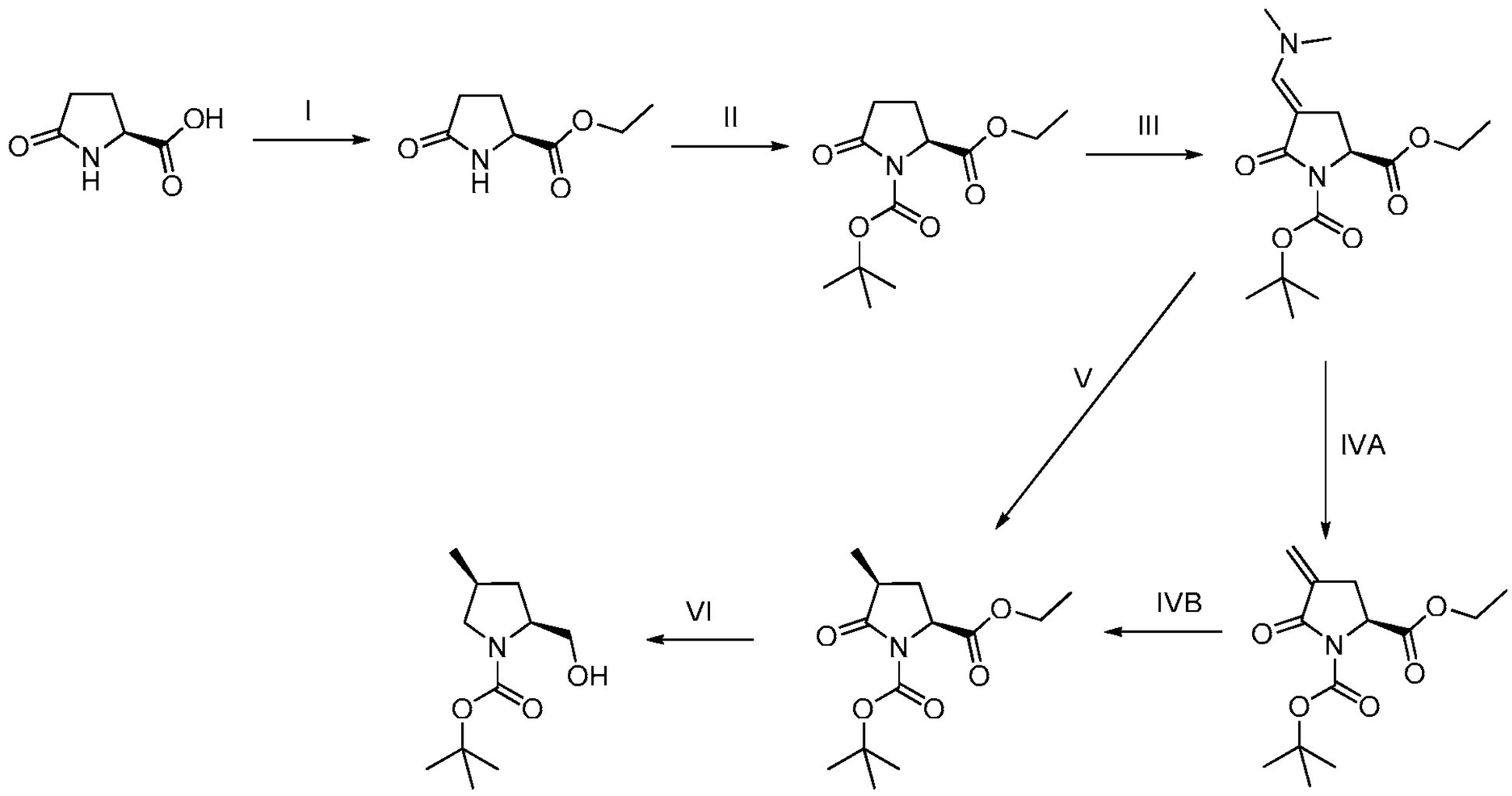
2,5-Diethynyl-thieno[3,2-b]thiophene



The title compound is synthesized from 2,5-Dibromo-thieno[3,2-b]thiopheneas described in **Intermediate 13.**

Intermediate 17

(2S, 4S)-4-methyl-N-(t-butoxycarbonyl)prolinol



Step I:

Ethyl-(2S)-pyroglutamate

To a solution of L-pyroglutamic acid (445 g, 3.45 mol) in ethanol (3.6 L) was added 98% sulfuric acid (18 mL). The resulting reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature overnight. Sodium carbonate (140 g) was added and the stirring was continued for an additional 1.5 hr. The suspension was filtered and the filtrate was evaporated under reduced pressure. The residue was azeotroped with dichloromethane to afford 541 g (100%) of ethyl-(2S)-pyroglutamate as a viscous oil. This material was used in the next step without any further purification.

Step II:

Ethyl-(2S)-N-(t-butoxycarbonyl)pyroglutamate

To a solution of ethyl L-pyroglutamate (542 g, 3.45 mol), dimethylaminopyridine (42.14 g, 3.79 mol), and triethylamine (577 mL, 4.139 mol) in dichloromethane (4 L) was added in portions BOC anhydride (827.8 g, 3.79 mol). The resulting mixture was stirred at room temperature overnight. The reaction mixture was washed with saturated aqueous ammonium chloride solution. The dichloromethane layer was separated, dried with magnesium sulfate, filtered, and evaporated in vacuo to afford 887.4 g (100%) of (ethyl-(2S)-N-(t-butoxycarbonyl)pyroglutamate as a light red oil that solidified upon standing.

The crude product contained traces of dimethylaminopyridine and dichloromethane but was clean enough to use in the next step without further purification.

Step III:

Ethyl-(2S)-4-(N,N-dimethylaminomethylidene-N-(t-butoxylcarbonyl)pyroglutamate

To a solution of ethyl-(2S)-N-(t-butoxycarbonyl)pyroglutamate (150 g, 583 mmol) in 1,2-dimethoxylethane (1.5 L) was added 1-t-butoxy-N,N,N',N'-tetramethylmethanediamine (162 g, 932.8 mmol). The reaction was heated to reflux overnight, cooled, and evaporated in vacuo. The residue was triturated with hexanes and filtered to afford 170 g (93%) of ethyl-(2S)-4-(N,N-dimethylaminomethylidene-N-(t-butoxycarbonyl)pyroglutamate as a red solid.

Step IVA:

Ethyl-(2S)-4-methylene-N-(t-butoxycarbonyl)pyroglutamate

To a solution of ethyl-(2S)-4-(N,N-dimethylaminomethylidene-N-(t-butoxycarbonyl)pyroglutamate (23.6 g, 75.4 mmol) in tetrahydrofuran (120 mL) was added 1N HCl (70 mL). The reaction stirred at room temperature for two hours. The layers were separated and the aqueous layer was extracted with an additional 50 mL of tetrahydrofuran. The tetrahydrofuran layers were combined and potassium carbonate (14.9 g, 107.5 mmol) and 37% formaldehyde in water 60 mL) were added. The mixture was stirred for 45 minutes. The layers were separated and the tetrahydrofuran layer was dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated in vacuo and the oil that remained was dissolved in dichloromethane and filtered over a plug of silica gel. The plug was eluted with 25% ethyl acetate/dichloromethane and the filtrate was evaporated in vacuo to afford 16.4 g (81%) of ethyl-(2S)-4-methylene-N-(t-butoxycarbonyl)pyroglutamate was a yellow solid.

Step IVB:

Ethyl-(2S, 4S)-4-methyl-N-(t-butoxycarbonyl)pyroglutamate

To a solution of ethyl-(2S)-4-methylene-N-(t-butoxycarbonyl)pyroglutamate (9.6 g, 35.7 mmol) in methanol (96 mL) was platinum (IV) oxide (404 mg, 1.782 mmol). The reaction degassed and stirred under an atmosphere of hydrogen overnight. The reaction was filtered through Celite and the filtercake was rinsed with methanol. The filtrate was evaporated in vacuo to afford 8.6 g (89%) of ethyl-(2S, 4S)-4-methyl-N-(t-butoxycarbonyl)pyroglutamate as a clear, colorless oil.

Step V:

Ethyl-(2S, 4S)-4-methyl-N-(t-butoxycarbonyl)pyroglutamate

A Parr vessel was charged with a solution of ethyl-(2S)-4-(N,N-dimethylaminomethylidene-N-(t-butoxylcarbonyl)pyroglutamate (30 g, 96.04 mmol) in ethanol (300 mL) and 10.22 g (9.60 mmol) of 10% wet, Degussa-type Pd/C. The atmosphere above the solution was evacuated and replaced with hydrogen at 50 psi. The reaction shaken for a day replacing the pressure of hydrogen as necessary. The filtrate was filtered over Celite and the filterbed was washed with ethyl acetate. The combined filtrates were evaporated in vacuo to afford an oil. The oil was purified on a silica gel column using 10-30% ethyl acetate/hexanes to afford 18.6 g (71%) of ethyl-(2S, 4S)-4-methyl-N-(t-butoxycarbonyl)pyroglutamate as a clear, viscous oil.

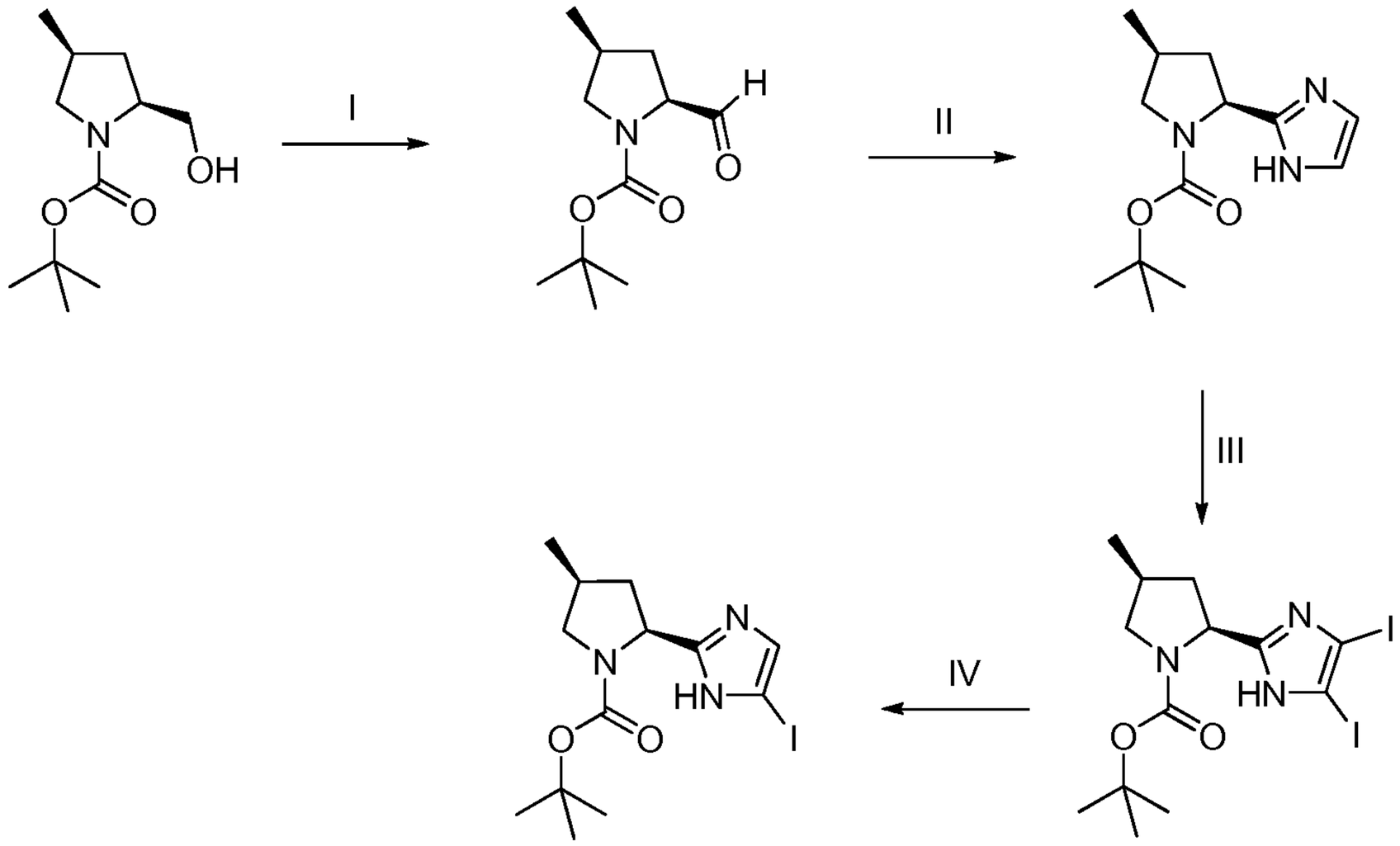
Step VI:

(2S, 4S)-4-methyl-N-(t-butoxycarbonyl)prolinol

To a solution of ethyl-(2S, 4S)-4-methyl-N-(t-butoxycarbonyl)pyroglutamate (11 g, 40.5 mmol) in tetrahydrofuran (66 mL) cooled to 0°C was added sodium borohydride (3.84 g, 101.4 mmol). The reaction stirred for 15 minutes and boron trifluoride etherate (14.39 g, 101.4 mmol) was added dropwise. The reaction was stirred at 0°C for three hours and then warmed to ambient temperature and stirred for twelve hours. The reaction was poured into ice cold water, stirred for thirty minutes, and evaporated in vacuo. The residue was dissolved in ethyl acetate and washed successively with 1N hydrochloric acid, water and brine. The organic solution was dried with sodium sulfate, filtered, and evaporated in vacuo. The crude product was purified through column chromatography on a silica gel column using 10-40% ethyl acetate in hexanes to afford 8.73 g (69%) of (2S, 4S)-4-methyl-N-(t-butoxycarbonyl)prolinol as a clear, colorless oil.

Intermediate 18 : method A

(3S,5S)-tert-butyl 5-(5-iodo-1H-imidazol-2-yl)-3-methyl-2-oxopyrrolidine-1-carboxylate



Step I:

(2S,4S)-tert-butyl 2-formyl-4-methylpyrrolidine-1-carboxylate

4-Methyl-N-(t-butoxycarbonyl)-(2S)-prolinol is oxidized to (2S,4S)-tert-butyl 2-formyl-4-methylpyrrolidine-1-carboxylate under standard oxidizing conditions known in the art for oxidizing an alcohol to an aldehyde (e.g. TEMPO/bleach).

Step II:

(2S,4S)-tert-butyl 2-(1H-imidazol-2-yl)-4-methylpyrrolidine-1-carboxylate

The (2S,4S)-tert-butyl 2-formyl-4-methylpyrrolidine-1-carboxylate is converted to the (2S,4S)-tert-butyl 2-(1H-imidazol-2-yl)-4-methylpyrrolidine-1-carboxylate using ammonium hydroxide and glyoxal in methanol (*see* Intermediate 3, Step I).

Step III:

(2S,4S)-tert-butyl 2-(4,5-diiodo-1H-imidazol-2-yl)-4-methylpyrrolidine-1-carboxylate

The (2S,4S)-tert-butyl 2-(1H-imidazol-2-yl)-4-methylpyrrolidine-1-carboxylate is reacted with N-iodosuccinimide to afford the bis-iodoimidazole (2S,4S)-tert-butyl 2-(4,5-diiodo-1H-imidazol-2-yl)-4-methylpyrrolidine-1-carboxylate (*see* Intermediate 3, Step II).

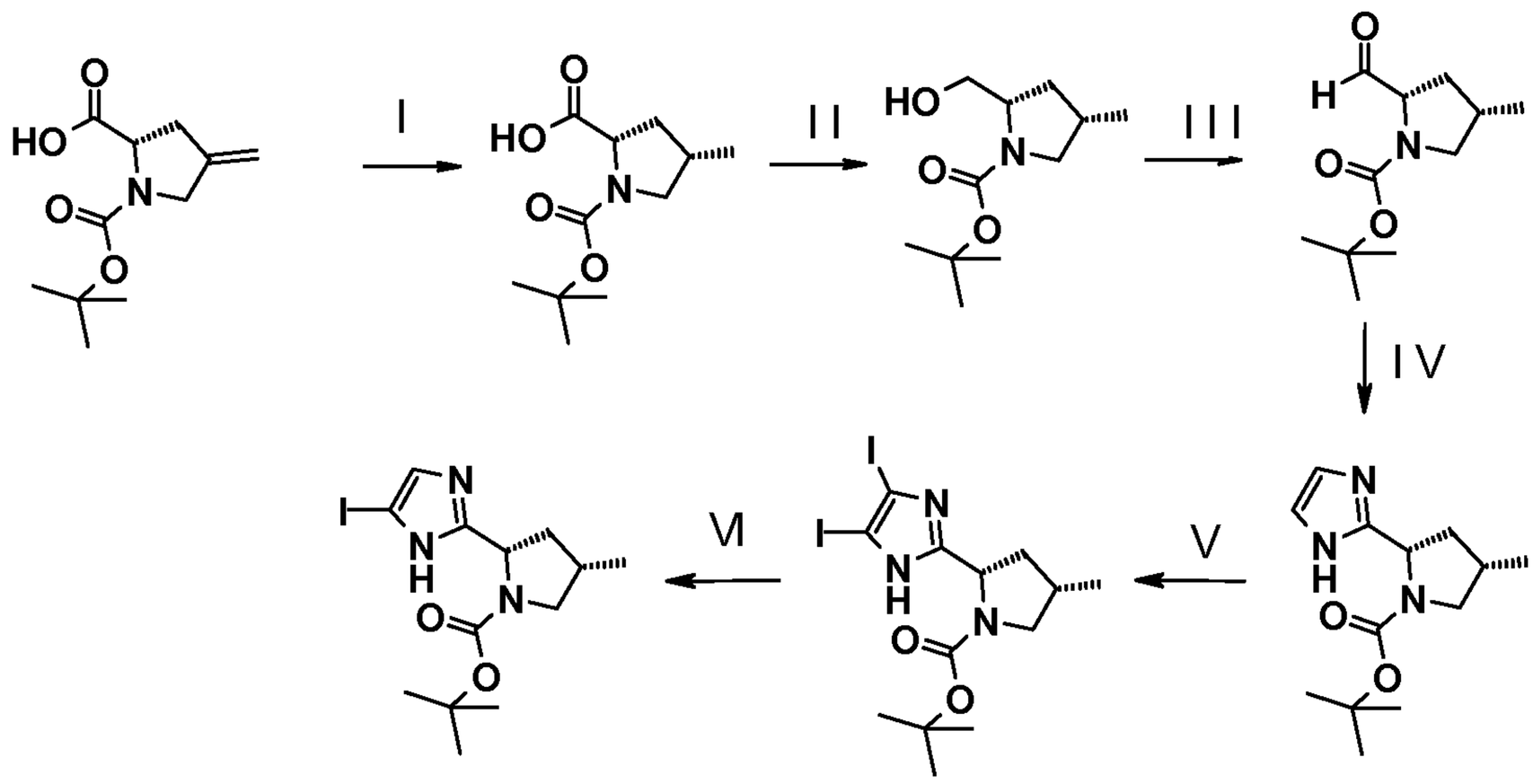
Step IV:

(2S,4S)-tert-butyl 2-(5-iodo-1H-imidazol-2-yl)-4-methylpyrrolidine-1-carboxylate

The 4-iodo substituent of (2S,4S)-tert-butyl 2-(4,5-diiodo-1H-imidazol-2-yl)-4-methylpyrrolidine-1-carboxylate is selectively removed by metallation, preferably with isopropyl magnesium chloride, followed by a quench with a proton source such as water to afforde the mono-iodoimidazole (2S,4S)-tert-butyl 2-(5-iodo-1H-imidazol-2-yl)-4-methylpyrrolidine-1-carboxylate (*see* Intermediate 3, Step III).

Intermediate 18: method B

Methyl N-[(1S)-1-[(2S,4S)-2-(5-iodo-1H-imidazol-2-yl)-4-methyl-pyrrolidine-1-carbonyl]-2-methyl-propyl]carbamate



Step I:

In a 2L Parr flask under nitrogen, a solution of (2S)-1-*tert*-butoxycarbonyl-4-methylene-pyrrolidine-2-carboxylic acid (175 g, 770.1 mmol) in ethanol (700 mL) is added PtO_2 (5.250 g, 23.12 mmol). The suspension is purged 3 times, (vacuum/hydrogen) and stirred at rt on a Parr apparatus under 30-40 psi of hydrogen. The Initial H_2 consumption is rapid and then the reaction is completed after 60 minutes. The catalyst is decanted and the supernatant is cannulated in 1L Erlenmeyer, then filtered through Celite and washed with ethanol. The mother liquor is put aside. The reaction is repeated 7 times using a total of 8.8 g of PtO_2. The reaction mixtures of the 7 runs are combined (ratio of *cis*/*trans* 3.6/1) and evaporated to a volume of 3 L. Isopropyl acetate (1.5 L) is added and 2 L of the solution is evaporated. Isopropyl acetate (1.5 L) is added and 1 L of the solution is evaporated. The compound is started to crystallize in the solution, heptane (1.5 liters) and isopropyl acetate (1L) are added and the suspension is stirred at rt for 1 hour and then at 0°C for 2 hours. The mixture is filtered and washed with a cold solution of 2:1 heptane/isopropyl acetate (1L). The cake is dried for 2 hours, then put in the

vacuum oven yielding (2S)-1-*tert*-butoxycarbonyl-4-methyl-pyrrolidine-2-carboxylic acid; 883.44 g (71% yield) as a pale gray crystalline powder, 9:1 (*S*:*R*).

The crude product (850 g) is recrystallized in isopropyl acetate (2 volume) and heptane (1 volume). The recrystallization process is repeated 2 times to reach a ratio of 23/1 (*S*:*R*).

Step II:

In a 22 L, 3 neck round bottom flask under nitrogen equipped with a thermocouple, an addition funnel and a mechanical stirrer (2S,4S)-1-*tert*-butoxycarbonyl-4-methyl-pyrrolidine-2-carboxylic acid (672 g, 2.931 mol) and THF (4 L) are added and cooled in an ice bath until the internal temperature is about 3°C. The Borane/THF solution (5.527 kg, 6.155 L of 1 M, 6.155 mol) is added dropwise over 3.5 hours using the addition funnel. An exotherm of 10°C and a very strong gas formation are occurred during the addition of the first 1800 mL. The reaction mixture is stirred overnight at room temp. TLC: (25% EtOAC/Hexane) shows no starting material. Then 1 L of a saturated aqueous solution of NH_4Cl is carefully added (dropwise) at 4°C. An exotherm of 20°C and a very strong gas formation are observed. H_2O (5000 mL) is added and the mixture is extracted with EtOAc (2 L), the phases are separated and the aqueous phase is re-extracted with EtOAc (2L). The organic phases are merged and the solvent is evaporated. To the residual mixture is added EtOAc (3 L) and the phases are separated and dried over Na_2SO_4, filtered and concentrated to a small volume. The residual solution contains water and a white solid. The mixture is transferred to a 5L extraction funnel and added EtOAc (1L) and water (500 mL). The organic phase is dried over sodium sulfate and the mixture is stirred for 30 minutes, filtered and evaporated to dryness. The residue is purified by a plug of silica gel using 0 to 30% EtOAc/Hexanes as eluant to give *tert*-butyl (2S,4S)-2-(hydroxymethyl)-4-methyl-pyrrolidine-1-carboxylate (604 g, 2.806 mol, 95% yield).

Step III:

In a 12L of three-neck RBF under nitrogen equipped with a mechanical stirrer, a thermocouple and a 2L addition funnel, oxalyl chloride (2.2 kg, 1.52 L of 2 M, 3.05 mol) and CH_2Cl_2 (2.1 L) are added. The solution is cooled to -78°C in an acetone/dry ice bath while stirring. The DMSO (476.6 g, 432.9 mL, 6.1 mol) is added dropwise using the addition funnel, while keeping the internal temp around -67±5°C. A solution of *tert*-butyl (2S,4S)-2-(hydroxymethyl)-4-methyl-pyrrolidine-1-carboxylate (262.65 g, 1.22 mol) in CH_2Cl_2 (1.8 L) is added and the mixture is stirred for 20 minutes at -75±5°C. Finally DIPEA

(1.57 kg, 2.13 L, 12.2 mol) is added over 90 minutes keeping the internal temp at -73 ± 2°C. The reaction mixture is stirred for 2 hours at -76±2°C and then the temperature is raised to room temp over 2 hours. A solution of HCl 1N (3400 ml) is slowly added using an addition funnel, an exotherm of 6°C is observed, the phases are separated (aqueous pH=8) and the HCl washing procedure is repeated until the pH of the aqueous phase is below 2. The organic phase is dried using Na_2SO_4, filtered and concentrated to give a yellow oil (300 g). The Swern reaction was repeated on the same scale and the two crude reactions are combined and purified together. The residue is purified by a plug of silica gel using 0 to 15% EtOAc in Hexanes as eluant to give *tert*-butyl (2S,4S)-2-formyl-4-methyl-pyrrolidine-1-carboxylate (480 g, 2.25 mol, 92.2%) as a golden oil.

Step IV:

In a 5L 3 neck RBF under nitrogen equipped with a thermocouple, a refrigerant and an addition funnel, *tert*-butyl (2S,4S)-2-formyl-4-methyl-pyrrolidine-1-carboxylate (480 g, 2.25 mol) and MeOH (960 ml) are added while stirring an exotherm of +20°C is observed. NH_4OH (960.0 mL) is added, an exotherm of 12°C is noted. Oxaldehyde (913.7 g, 722.3 mL of 40 %w/v, 4.98 mol) is added over 39 minutes using the addition funnel. A very big exotherm up to 70°C is observed. The reaction mixture is stirred overnight at room temperature. In the morning the reaction mixture is all solidified with no apparent liquid. Water (1.5 L) is added and stirred for 1 hour. The suspension is filtered on a Buchner funnel and washed with water (~2L) until the mother liquor is pale brown. The wet solid is transferred in a 12L RBF, then water (3L) is added and the suspension is stirred for 2 hours, filtered and washed with water (1.5 L) and heptane (1.5 L) and then dried for 2 days in a vacuum oven at 45°C. The crude gray solid contains 8% of 2-(1H-imidazol-2-yl)-1H-imidazole as a side product impurity. The solid is transferred into a 12L 5 neck RBF, ethyl acetate (4L) is added and the mixture is refluxed. The water is azeotroped with ethyl acetate (1.5 L). The hot solution is filtered to remove the insoluble 2-(1H-imidazol-2-yl)-1H-imidazole. The remaining solution is evaporated to 1L and then the suspension is stirred in an ice/bath, filtered and washed with cold ethyl acetate to give *tert*-butyl (2S,4S)-2-(1H-imidazol-2-yl)-4-methyl-pyrrolidine-1-carboxylate (330g, 1.31 mol, 58% yield) as a pale gray solid, 99.4 % pure.

Step V:

In a 12L 4 neck RBF under nitrogen equipped with mechanical stirrer, a thermocouple a refrigerant and an addition funnel, *tert*-butyl (2S,4S)-2-(1H-imidazol-2-yl)-4-methyl-pyrrolidine-1-carboxylate (334.4 g, 1.331 mol) and CH_2Cl_2 (3.344 L) are added while stirring. The solution is cooled to below 5°C using an ice bath. NIS (628.8 g, 2.795 mol) is

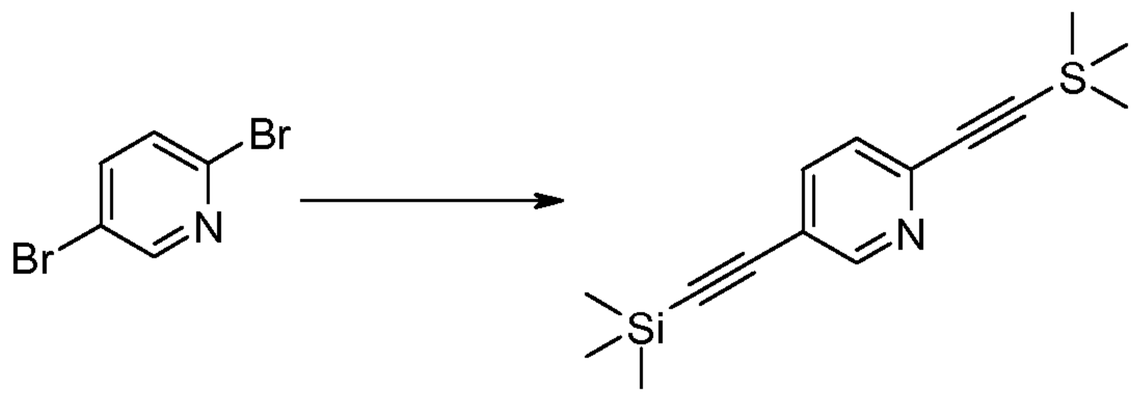
added in 6 batches of 104.8 g each over 30 minutes while keeping the internal temperature below 5°C. The reaction mixture is stirred for 2.5 hours and then HPLC shows the completion of the reaction. A solution of 10% sodium thiosulfate solution (4 L) is added and the reaction mixture is stirred for 15 minutes and the phases are separated. The organic phase is transferred back in the 12L reactor, water (2 L) and CH_2Cl_2 (1 L) are added, the mixture is stirred for 15 minutes. The organic phase is dried over sodium sulfate, filtered and evaporated to dryness to afford *tert*-butyl (2S,4S)-2-(4,5-diiodo-1H-imidazol-2-yl)-4-methyl-pyrrolidine-1-carboxylate, (646.3g, 93% yield, 96% purity). ^1H NMR (400 MHz, dmso, 2.5:1 mixture of rotamers), peaks for the major rotamer: δ 12.70 (s, 1 H), 4.57 (dd, 1 H), 3.62 - 3.52 (m, 1 H), 2.95 (t, 1 H), 2.35 - 2.0 (m, 2 H), 1.50 (dd, 1 H), 1.10 (s, 9 H), 1.01 (d, 3 H).

Step VI:

In a 5L 3 neck round bottom flask under nitrogen equipped with a mechanical stirrer, LiCl (54.09 g, 1.276 mol) and THF (2.504 L) are added and stirred at rt overnight. In a 12L 3 neck round bottom flask under nitrogen equipped with a temperature reader, a mechanical stirrer and an 1L addition funnel, *tert*-butyl (2S,4S)-2-(4,5-diiodo-1H-imidazol-2-yl)-4-methyl-pyrrolidine-1-carboxylate (642 g, 1.276 mol) and LiCl solution in THF are added while stirring. The reaction mixture is cooled down to -20°C. To the beige suspension is added dropwise a solution of methyl magnesium chloride in THF (425.3 mL of 3 M, 1.276 mol) over 60 minutes keeping the internal temperature between -17 and -20°C. The reaction mixture is stirred at the same temperature for 20 minutes. A solution of isopropyl magnesium chloride in THF (1.276 L of 2 M, 2.552 mol) is added dropwise over 70 minutes while keeping the internal temperature between -17 and -23 °C, then the mixture is slowly warmed up to rt. TLC 50% ETOAC/Hexane shows that the reaction is completed. The reaction mixture is cooled down in an ice/water bath to ~10°C and a 10% aq. NH_4Cl solution (2 L) is added dropwise. An exotherm of 35°C and gas formation are observed. Water (1 L) and ethyl acetate (2L) are added and the mixture is stirred for 30 minutes. The phases are separated and the aqueous phase is re-extracted with EtOAc (2L). The organic phases are combined and 2L of water is added, the mixture is stirred for 10 minutes. The phases are separated and the organic phase is dried over Na_2SO_4 and filtered. The solvent is concentrated to a small volume and heptane (1000 mL) is added and evaporated slowly. The suspension is stirred for 30 minutes at rt and then in an ice bath for 1 hour, filtered and washed with cold heptane/ethyl acetate (95/5). The solid is dried in the vacuum oven at 35°C to afford *tert*-butyl (2S,4S)-2-(5-iodo-1H-imidazol-2-yl)-4-methyl-pyrrolidine-1-carboxylate (420.24 g; 91% pure, 87.3% yield)) as a beige solid, used as it is for the next step.

Intermediate 19

Trimethyl-[2-[5-(2-trimethylsilylethynyl)-2-pyridyl]ethynyl]silane

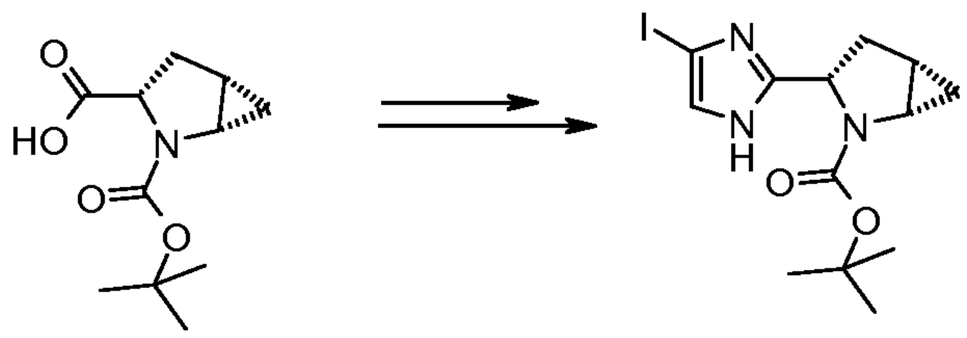


A stirred suspension of 2,5-dibromopyridine (1.5 g, 6.332 mmol), copper Iodide (120.6 mg, 0.6332 mmol) and $PdCl_2(dppf)$-CH_2Cl_2 (517.1 mg, 0.6332 mmol) in DMF (24.00 mL) is degassed and added triethyl amine (2.563 g, 3.530 mL, 25.33 mmol). Then ethynyl(trimethyl)silane (1.368 g, 1.968 mL, 13.93 mmol) is added under nitrogen atmosphere and the resultant reaction mixture is heated at 80°C for 8 hours in a sealed tube. The reaction mixture is concentrated, passed through a small plug of silica and eluted with 10% ethyl acetate-hexanes. The solvents are concentrated and the residue is purified by silica gel column chromatography using EtOAc-Hexanes (0:100 to 1:90) as eluent to obtain trimethyl-[2-[6-(2-trimethylsilylethynyl)-3-pyridyl]ethynyl]silane (780 mg, 2.811 mmol, 43.43%) as light brown solid. Rf = 0.61 (10% EtOAc-Hexanes). ^1H NMR (400 MHz, $CDCl_3$): δ 8.61 (dd, 1 H), 7.67 (dd, 1 H), 7.37 (dd, 1 H), 0.254 (s, 9 H), 0.246 (s, 9 H).

LC/MS: m/z = 271.86 ($M+H^+$). Rt = 18.7 minutes.

Intermediate 20

tert-Butyl (1S,3S,5S)-3-(4-iodo-1H-imidazol-2-yl)-4-azabicyclo[3.1.0]hexane-4-carboxylate

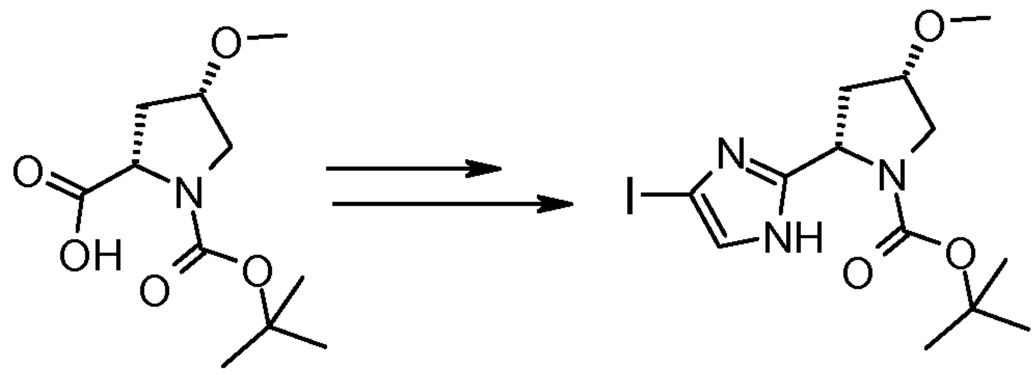


The title compound is prepared from (1S,3S,5S)-2-*tert*-butoxycarbonyl-2-azabicyclo[3.1.0]hexane-3-carboxylic using the same sequence of reactions (Step II to VI) as described for intermediate 4.

LC/MS: m/z = 375.78 ($M+H^+$). Rt = 6.33 minutes.

Intermediate 21

tert-Butyl (2S,4S)-2-(4-iodo-1H-imidazol-2-yl)-4-methoxy-pyrrolidine-1-carboxylate



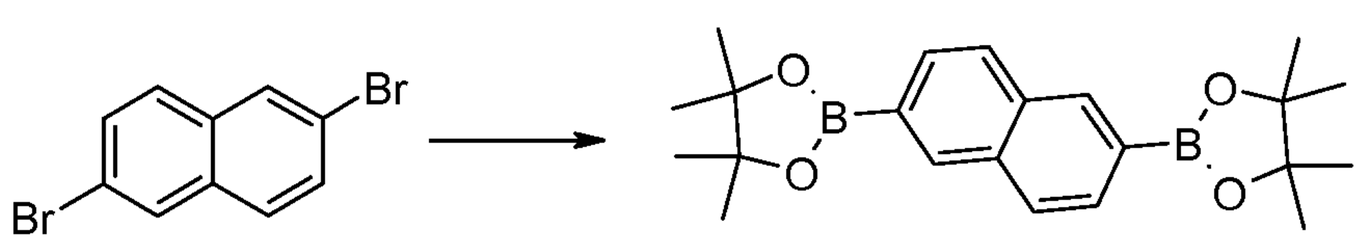
Title compound is prepared using the same sequence of reactions (step II to VI) as described for intermediate **4** starting from *tert*-butyl (2S,4S)-2-(hydroxymethyl)-4-methoxy-pyrrolidine-1-carboxylate. Rf = 0.18 (70% EtOAc-Hexanes).

^{1}H NMR (400 MHz, $CDCl_3$, peaks for the major rotamer): δ 9.85 (s, 1 H), 6.99 (s, 1 H), 4.96 (br s, 1 H), 4.1 – 3.3 (m, 3 H), 3.35 (s, 3 H), 2.4 – 2.2 (m, 2 H), 1.28 (s, 9 H).

LC/MS: m/z = 393.78 ($M+H^+$). Rt = 8.46 minutes.

HPLC (Rt) = 22.55 minutes, Method: 0-40% acetonitrile-water in 40 min, Gemini C18 3µm, 4.6 mmx250 mm. **Intermediate 22:**

4,4,5,5-Tetramethyl-2-[6-(4,4,5,5-tetramethyl-1,3,2-dioxaborolan-2-yl)-2-naphthyl]-1,3,2-dioxaborolane



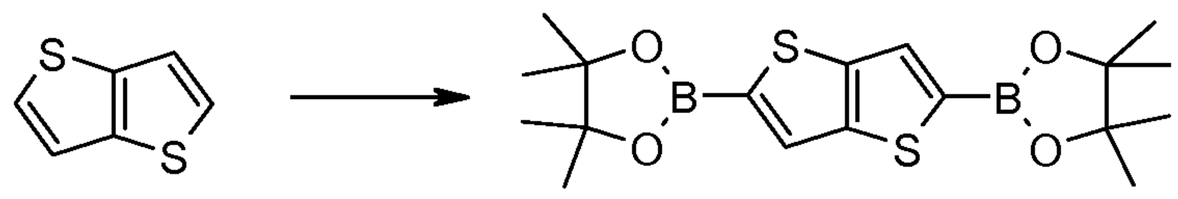
To a stirred suspension of 2,6-dibromonaphthalene (1 g, 3.497 mmol), 4,4,5,5-tetramethyl-2-(4,4,5,5-tetramethyl-1,3,2-dioxaborolan-2-yl)-1,3,2-dioxaborolane (2.131 g, 8.393 mmol) and KOAc (2.059 g, 20.98 mmol) in dioxnae (30.00 mL) is added $Pd(dppf)Cl_2$-CH_2Cl_2 (571.2 mg, 0.6994 mmol) in one portion, degassed and filled with nitrogen. The flask is sealed, heated at 100°C overnight (crude LC-MS shows the desired compound) and cooled to rt. The reaction mixture is filtered through celite, washed with CH_2Cl_2 and concentrated. The residue is purified on a small plug of silica gel using CH_2Cl_2. The organic layer is diluted with heptanes (20 mL), concentrated on rotary evaporator until CH_2Cl_2 is removed. The resultant product is collected by filtration, washed with heptanes, dried under high vacuum to afford 4,4,5,5-tetramethyl-2-[6-(4,4,5,5-tetramethyl-1,3,2-dioxaborolan-2-yl)-2-naphthyl]-1,3,2-dioxaborolane (760 mg, 1.990 mmol, 56.90%) as light brown solid. Rf = 0.39 (1:9 EtOAc-Hexanes).

LC/MS, m/z = 381 ($M+H^+$); Rt : 18.94 minutes.

^{1}H NMR (400 MHz, $CDCl_3$): δ 8.357 (s, 2H), 7.86 (d, 2 H), 7.827 (d, 2 H), 1.39 (s, 24 H).

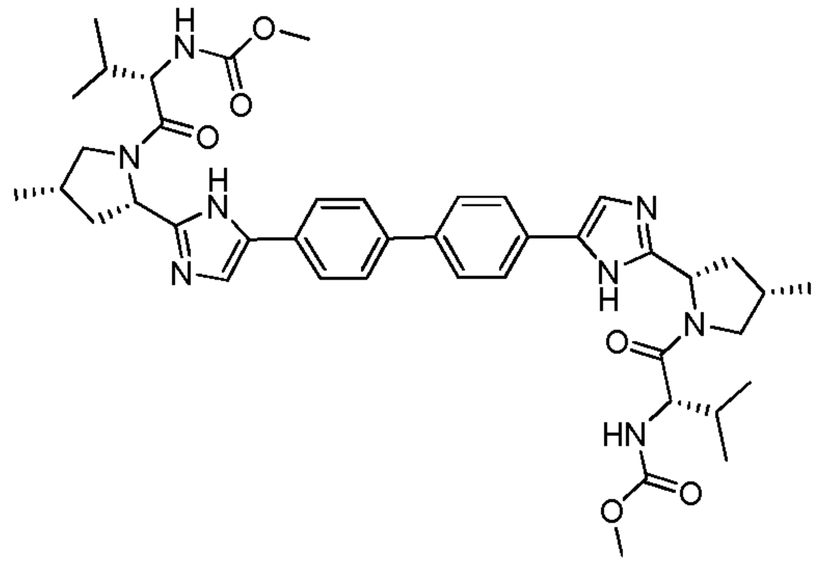
Intermediate 23

4,4,5,5-Tetramethyl-2-[5-(4,4,5,5-tetramethyl-1,3,2-dioxaborolan-2-yl)thieno[3,2-b]thiophen-2-yl]-1,3,2-dioxaborolane



To a solution of thieno[3,2-b]thiophene (1.5 g, 10.70 mmol) in THF (25.5 mL) at -78°C under N_2 is added dropwise a solution of BuLi in hexanes (8.988 mL of 2.5 M, 22.47 mmol), stirred for 20 minutes, cooling bath is replaced with ice bath and stirred for 50 minutes. The resultant thick suspension is quenched with 2-isopropoxy-4,4,5,5-tetramethyl-1,3,2-dioxaborolane (4.181 g, 4.584 mL, 22.47 mmol). The reaction mixture is kept overnight and then quenched with saturated aq. NH_4Cl solution. After extraction with CH_2Cl_2 (2 x 100 mL), the combined extracts are washed with brine and dried (Na_2SO_4). Organic solution is diluted with ~20 mL of ethyl acetate, concentrated slowly on rotary evaporator until CH_2Cl_2 is removed. The resultant white fine crystals are collected by filtration. The solid is washed with heptanes and dried under high vacuum to afford 4,4,5,5-tetramethyl-2-[5-(4,4,5,5-tetramethyl-1,3,2-dioxaborolan-2-yl)thieno[3,2-b]thiophen-2-yl]-1,3,2-dioxaborolane (2.57 g, 6.554 mmol, 61.25%) as half-white solid. ^1H NMR (400 MHz, $CDCl_3$): δ 7.75 (s, 4H), 1.343 (s, 24H).

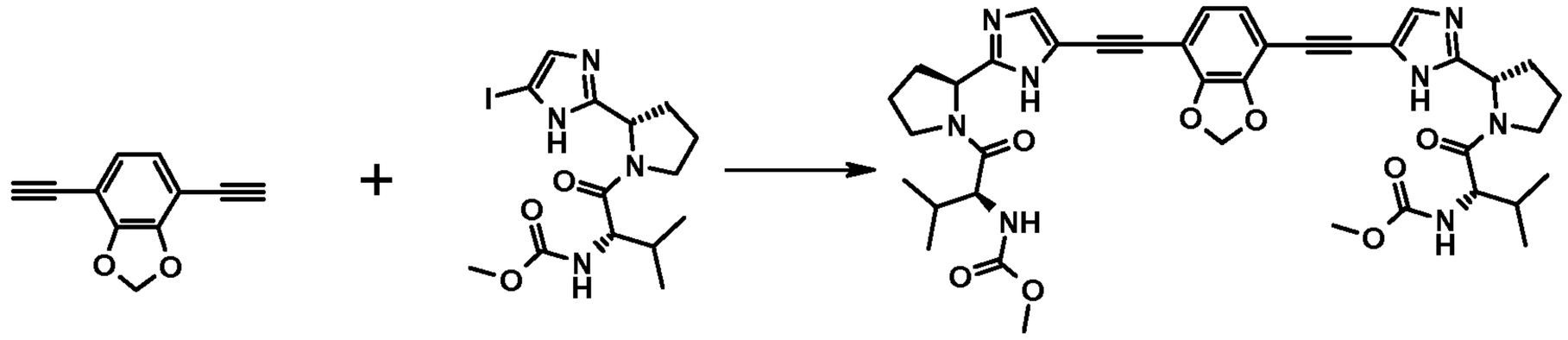
Example 1



The above compound was prepared according to the procedures disclosed herein.

Example 2

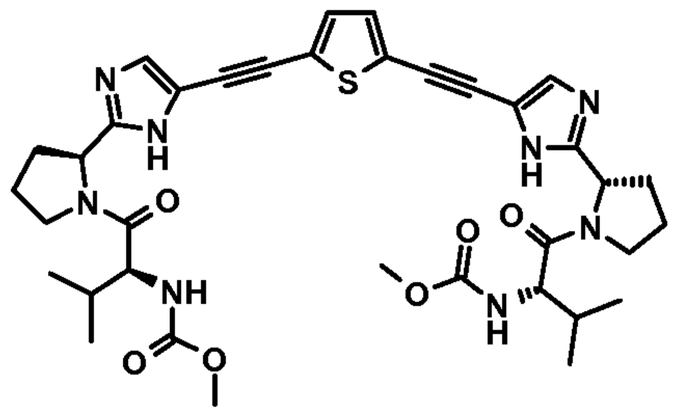
((S)-1-{(S)-2-[5-(7-{2-[(S)-1-((S)-2-(methoxycarbonylamino)-3-methyl-butanoyl]pyrrolidin-2-yl]-3H-imidazol-4-ylethynyl}-benzo[1,3]dioxol-4-ylethynyl)1H-1H-imidazol-2-yl]pyrrolidine-1-carbonyl}-2-methyl-propyl]-carbamic acid methyl ester



To a solution of 4,7-diethynyl-1,3-benzodioxole (40.50 mg, 0.24 mmol), methyl N-[(1S)-1-[(2S)-2-(5-iodo-1H-imidazol-2-yl)pyrrolidine-1-carbonyl]-2-methyl-propyl]carbamate (200 mg, 0.47 mmol), $Pd(PPh_3)_2Cl_2$ (16.7 mg, 0.024 mmol), CuI (4.53 mg, 0.024mmol) in DMF is added TEA (165.8 µL, 1.19 mmol). The reaction mixture is stirred at 80°C for 16 hours, diluted with EtOAc and H_2O, and filtered on celite. The organic phase is dried over Na_2SO_4, filtered and concentrated to dryness. The residue is purified by reverse phase flash column chromatography on silica gel (25 to 50% CH_3CN in H_2O) and repurified by reverse phase HPLC using a gradient of CH_3CN/water to give ((S)-1-{(S)-2-[5-(7-{2-[(S)-1-((S)-2-(methoxycarbonylamino)-3-methyl-butanoyl]pyrrolidin-2-yl]-3H-imidazol-4-ylethynyl}-benzo[1,3]dioxol-4-ylethynyl)1H-1H-imidazol-2-yl]pyrrolidine-1-carbonyl}-2-methyl-propyl]-carbamic acid methyl ester (19 mg, 9.4%) as a white solid.
LC/MS: m/z = 755.5 ($M + H^+$).

Example 3

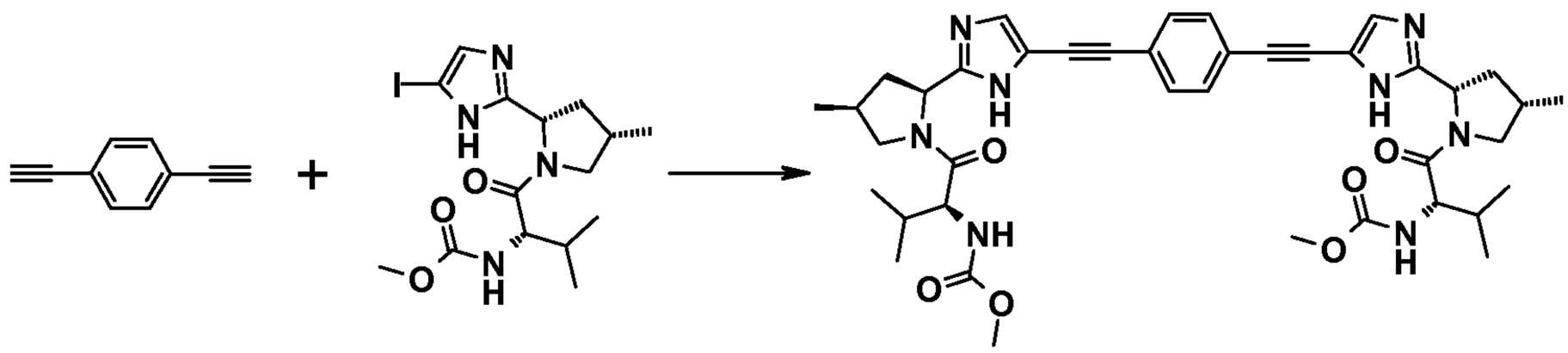
Methyl N-[(1S)-1-[(2S)-2-[4-[2-[5-[2-[2-[(2S)-1-[2-(Methoxycarbonylamino)-3-methyl-butanoyl]pyrrolidin-2-yl]-1H-imidazol-4-yl]ethynyl]-2-thienyl]ethynyl]-1H-imidazol-2-yl]pyrrolidine-1-carbonyl]-2-methyl-propyl]carbamate



The title compound is synthesized from 2,5-diethynyl-thiophene and methyl N-[(1S)-1-[(2S)-2-(5-iodo-1H-imidazol-2-yl)pyrrolidine-1-carbonyl]-2-methyl-propyl]carbamate as described in **Example 13**.

Example 4A

((S)-1-{(2S,4S)-2-[5-(4-{2-[(2S,4S)-1-((S)-2-Methoxycarbonylamino-3-methyl-butyryl)-4-methyl-pyrrolidin-2-yl]-3H-imidazol-4-ylethynyl}-phenylethynyl)-1H-imidazol-2-yl]-4-methyl-pyrrolidine-1-carbonyl}-2-methylpropyl)-carbamic acid methyl ester

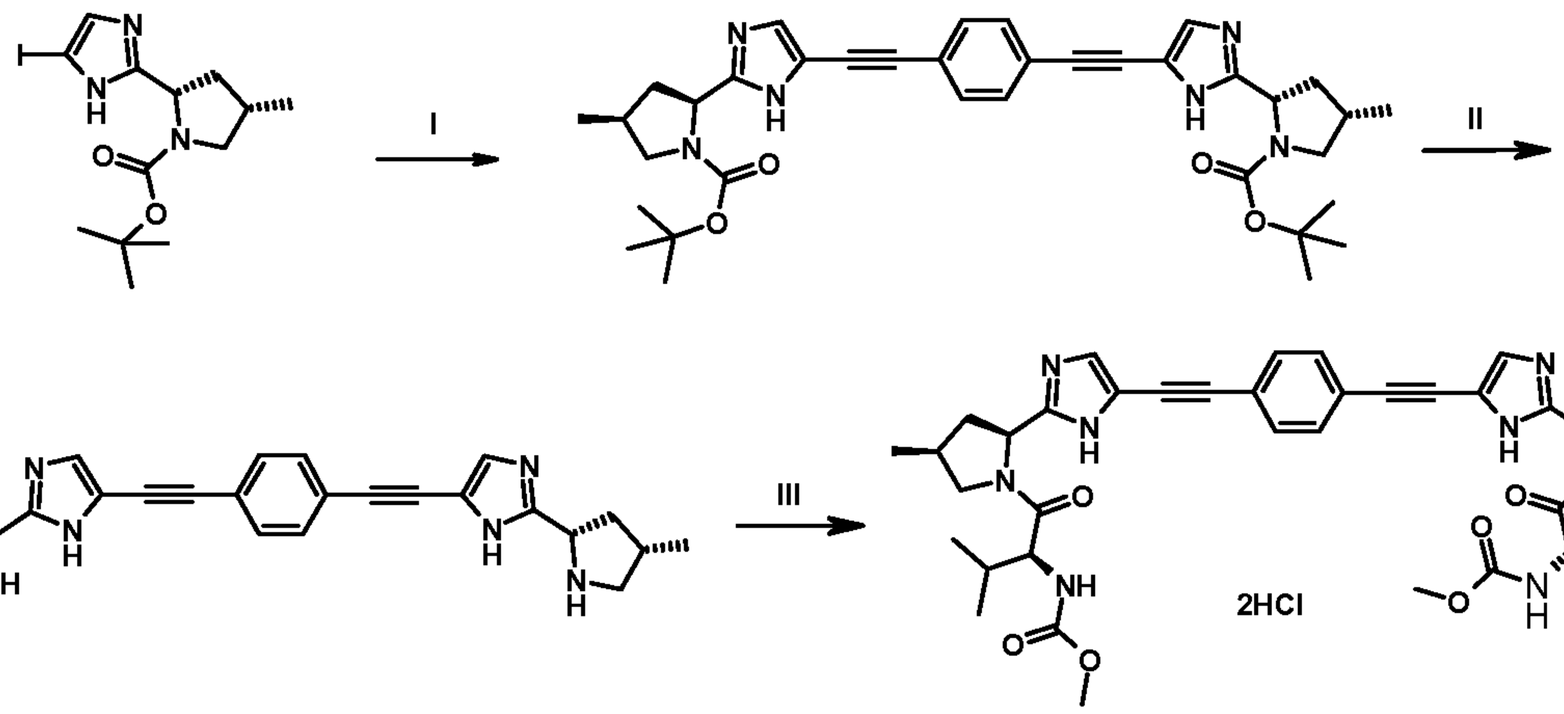


To a stirring solution of 1,4-diethynylbenzene (145.3 mg, 1.152 mmol), methyl N-[(1S)-1-[(2S,4S)-2-(5-iodo-1H-imidazol-2-yl)-4-methyl-pyrrolidine-1-carbonyl]-2-methyl-propyl]carbamate (1000 mg, 2.303 mmol), Pd(dppf)Cl_2-DCM (47.04 mg, 0.05760 mmol), and CuI (21.94 mg, 0.1152 mmol) in DMF (8 mL, degassed) is added triethylamine (582.9 mg, 802.9 µL, 5.760 mmol). The reaction mixture is stirred at 80°C for 16 hours, diluted with 100 ml of EtOAc and 20 ml of H_2O, and is filtrated on celite. The organic phase is separated, dried over Na_2SO_4, filtered and concentrated to dryness to give 900 mg of brown solid. The residue is purified by flash column chromatography on silica gel (0 to 10% MeOH/Toluene) to afford 400 mg of the title compound with a purity of 85%. The solid is purified by recrystallization in MeOH to afford ((S)-1-{(2S,4S)-2-[5-(4-{2-[(2S,4S)-1-((S)-2-methoxycarbonylamino-3-methyl-butyryl)-4-methyl-pyrrolidin-2-yl]-3H-imidazol-4-ylethynyl}-phenylethynyl)-1H-imidazol-2-yl]-4-methyl-pyrrolidine-1-carbonyl}-2-methylpropyl)-carbamic acid methyl ester (240 mg, 28%) as a white solid.

^{1}H NMR (400 MHz, cdcl$_3$, mixture of rotamers), peaks for the major rotamer, δ 10.70 (s, 2 H), 7.45 – 7.35 (m, 6 H), 7.215 (d, 2 H), 5.45-5.4 (m, 2 H), 5.18 – 5.07 (m, 2 H), 4.39 – 4.29 (m, 2 H), 4.05-3.9 (m, 2 H), 3.68 (s, 6 H), 3.1-3.0 (m, 2 H), 2.75-2.2 (m, 4 H), 1.95-1.8 (m, 2 H), 1.16 (d, 6 H), 0.87 – 0.8 (doublets, 12 H).

Example 4B

((S)-1-{(2S,4S)-2-[5-(4-{2-[(2S,4S)-1-((S)-2-Methoxycarbonylamino-3-methyl-butyryl)-4-methyl-pyrrolidin-2-yl]-3H-imidazol-4-ylethynyl}-phenylethynyl)-1H-imidazol-2-yl]-4-methyl-pyrrolidine-1-carbonyl}-2-methylpropyl)-carbamic acid methyl ester



Step I:

tert-Butyl (2S,4S)-2-[4-[2-[4-[2-[2-[(2S,4S)-1-tert-butoxycarbonyl-4-methyl-pyrrolidin-2-yl]-1H-imidazol-4-yl]ethynyl]phenyl]ethynyl]-1H-imidazol-2-yl]-4-methyl-pyrrolidine-1-carboxylate

To a stirred suspension of tert-butyl (2S,4S)-2-(5-iodo-1H-imidazol-2-yl)-4-methyl-pyrrolidine-1-carboxylate (1 g, 2.556 mmol), copper Iodide (46.4 mg, 0.24 mmol) and Pd(dppf)Cl_2-DCM (198.8 mg, 0.24 mmol) in DMF (11 mL) is sequentially added TEA (739.2 mg, 1.018 mL, 7.31 mmol) and 1,4-diethynylbenzene (153.5 mg, 1.217 mmol) under nitrogen atmosphere. The reaction mixture is heated at 80 ° C for 2 hours, cooled to RT, and diluted with water (10 mL). The reaction mixture is stirred at RT for 30 minutes, and cooled at 0°C for 15 min. The reaction mixture is filtered to collect a precipitate. The precipitate is purified by flash column chromatography on silica gel (10% MeOH/Toluene) to afford tert-butyl (2S,4S)-2-[4-[2-[4-[2-[2-[(2S,4S)-1-tert-butoxycarbonyl-4-methyl-pyrrolidin-2-yl]-1H-imidazol-4-yl]ethynyl]phenyl]ethynyl]-1H-imidazol-2-yl]-4-methyl-pyrrolidine-1-carboxylate (260 mg, 31.5%, purity, 92%) as solid.

LC/MS, m/z: 625.45 ($M+H^+$).

Step II:

(S,S)-4,4'-(1,4-phenylenebis(ethyne-2,1-diyl))bis(2-((2S,4S)-4-methylpyrrolidinium-2-yl)-1H-imidazol-3-ium) chloride

To a stirred mixture of tert-butyl (2S,4S)-2-[4-[2-[4-[2-[2-[(2S,4S)-1-tert-butoxycarbonyl-4-methyl-pyrrolidin-2-yl]-1H-imidazol-4-yl]ethynyl]phenyl]ethynyl]-1H-imidazol-2-yl]-4-methyl-pyrrolidine-1-carboxylate (260 mg, 0.4162 mmol) in MeOH (1.3 mL) at 0°C (using water/ice bath) is added HCl in dioxane (1.457 mL of 4 M, 5.827 mmol) over 2 minutes. The reaction mixture is warmed up to RT and stirred for 19 hours. The reaction mixture is filtered and washed with MTBE to give (S,S)-4,4'-(1,4-phenylenebis(ethyne-2,1-diyl))bis(2-((2S,4S)-4-methylpyrrolidinium-2-yl)-1H-imidazol-3-ium) chloride (192 mg, 95%) as pale brownish powder.

LC/MS, m/z: 425 ($M+H^+$).

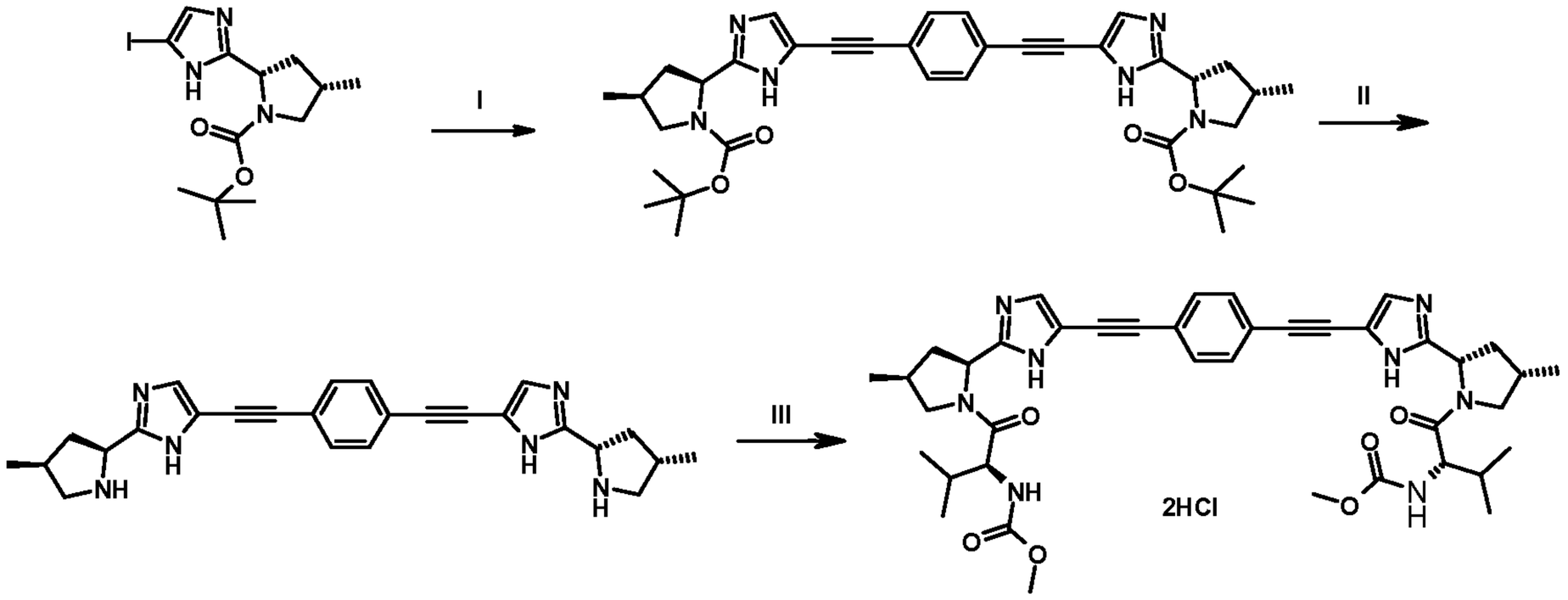
Step III:

Methyl N-[(1S)-1-[(2S,4S)-2-[5-[2-[4-[2-[2-[(2S,4S)-1-[(2S)-2-(methoxycarbonylamino)-3-methyl-butanoyl]-4-methyl-pyrrolidin-2-yl]-1H-imidazol-5-yl]ethynyl]phenyl]ethynyl]-1H-imidazol-2-yl]-4-methyl-pyrrolidine-1-carbonyl]-2-methyl-propyl]carbamate

(2S)-2-(methoxycarbonylamino)-3-methyl-butanoic acid (113.3 mg, 0.6470 mmol), (S,S)-4,4'-(1,4-phenylenebis(ethyne-2,1-diyl))bis(2-((2S,4S)-4-methylpyrrolidinium-2-yl)-1H-imidazol-3-ium) chloride (180 mg, 0.32 mmol), HATU (240 mg, 0.63 mmol), DIPEA (326.3 mg, 439.8 µL, 2.525 mmol) are dissolved in DMF (3.6 mL) at 0°C. The reaction mixture is warmed to RT and stirred overnight. The reaction mixture is diluted with water, stirred for 30 minutes, and filtered to collect a precipitate. The precipitate is purified by flash column chromatography on silica gel (0 to 10% MeOH in toluene) to afford methyl N-[(1S)-1-[(2S,4S)-2-[5-[2-[4-[2-[2-[(2S,4S)-1-[(2S)-2-(methoxycarbonylamino)-3-methyl-butanoyl]-4-methyl-pyrrolidin-2-yl]-1H-imidazol-5-yl]ethynyl]phenyl]ethynyl]-1H-imidazol-2-yl]-4-methyl-pyrrolidine-1-carbonyl]-2-methyl-propyl]carbamate (129 mg, 0.1549 mmol, 49.1%) as a beige solid. LC/MS, m/z: 739.3 ($M+H^+$).

Example 4C:

((S)-1-{(2S,4S)-2-[5-(4-{2-[(2S,4S)-1-((S)-2-Methoxycarbonylamino-3-methyl-butyryl)-4-methyl-pyrrolidin-2-yl]-3H-imidazol-4-ylethynyl}-phenylethynyl)-1H-imidazol-2-yl]-4-methyl-pyrrolidine-1-carbonyl}-2-methylpropyl)-carbamic acid methyl ester



Step I:

In a 3 neck, 5 L RBF equipped with a thermocouple and a stirring bar, *tert*-butyl (2S,4S)-2-(5-iodo-1H-imidazol-2-yl)-4-methyl-pyrrolidine-1-carboxylate (400 g, 996.8 mmol), the trimethyl-[2-[4-(2-trimethylsilylethynyl)phenyl]ethynyl]silane (137.5 g, 498.2 mmol), the $PdCl_2(dppf)_2$-CH_2Cl_2 (20.34 g, 24.91 mmol) and copper Iodide (4.744 g, 24.91 mmol) are added under nitrogen atmosphere. DMF (2 L) is added and the suspension is stirred and then degassed twice (vacuum 5 minutes followed by bubbled stream of nitrogen gas for 5 minutes). DBU (834.3 g, 819.5 mL, 5.480 mol) is added over 1 minute. The solution is degassed twice (vacuum 5 minutes followed by bubbled stream of nitrogen gas for 5 minutes) and degassed water (13.46 g, 13.46 mL, 747.3 mmol) is added. The stirring is switched from magnetic to mechanical under N_2 atmosphere. The reaction mixture is heated to 60°C and then degassed water (13.46 g, 13.46 mL, 747.3 mmol) is added. The reaction is followed by HPLC. After 4 hours the reaction mixture is transferred in a 22 L reactor with stirring and water (18 L) is added over 60 minutes (exotherm of 10°C is observed). The reaction mixture is cooled to below 5°C in an ice bath and stirred for 30 minutes. The solid is filtered and washed with water (5 L) and heptane (4 L). The solid is dried in a vacuum oven at 35°C overnight. The wet solid is dissolved in CH_2Cl_2/MeOH (3L; 90/10) and stirred for 20 minutes. The phases are separated and the aqueous phase is re-extracted with CH_2Cl_2/MeOH (500 ml; 90/10). The phases are separated, the organic phases are merged and silica gel (800 mL) is added to the solution and then it is evaporated to dryness. The residue is purified by a plug of silica gel using 1 to 10%

MeOH/CH_2Cl_2 as eluant. The selected fractions are concentrated to a thick paste and stirred in an ice bath for 30 minutes and then filtered to afford *tert*-butyl (2S,4S)-2-[4-[2-[4-[2-[2-[(2S,4S)-1-*tert*-butoxycarbonyl-4-methyl-pyrrolidin-2-yl]-1H-imidazol-4-yl]ethynyl]phenyl]ethynyl]-1H-imidazol-2-yl]-4-methyl-pyrrolidine-1-carboxylate (234 g, 366.6 mmol, 73.57% yield) as a pale yellow solid; 97.8% pure.

Step II:

In a 3 neck, 5 L RBF equipped with a mechanical stirrer, a temperature controller J-Kem model 260 and a heating mantel, *tert*-butyl (2S,4S)-2-[5-[2-[4-[2-[2-[(2S,4S)-1-*tert*-butoxycarbonyl-4-methyl-pyrrolidin-2-yl]-1H-imidazol-5-yl]ethynyl]phenyl]ethynyl]-1H-imidazol-2-yl]-4-methyl-pyrrolidine-1-carboxylate (234.5 g, 367.1 mmol) and methanol (1.834 L) are added while stirring. Charcoal (233.7 g, 19.46 mol) is added and the suspension is heated at reflux for 1.5 hours. Celite (100 g) is added and the mixture is stirred for 5 minutes and filtered through celite and washed with methanol. The solution is evaporated to 1L and transferred in a 3 neck, 5 L RBF equipped with a mechanical stirrer, the solution is cooled in an ice bath. HCl in Dioxane (1.285 L of 4 M, 5.139 mol) is added over 35 minutes while keeping the internal temperature below 15 °C. At the end of the addition, an off white solid is started to form and it becomes thicker, the reaction is slowly warmed to rt and followed by HPLC. After 5.5 hours, the suspension becomes very thick. MTBE (917.2 mL) is added and the mixture is stirred for 1 hour at rt, filtered and washed with MTBE. The solid is dried in a vacuum oven at 35°C for 2 days to afford (S,S)-4,4'-(1,4-phenylenebis(ethyne-2,1-diyl))bis(2-((2S,4S)-4-methylpyrrolidinium-2-yl)-1H-imidazol-3-ium) chloride (206.9 g, 360.9 mmol, 98.31%) 99.5% pure as a yellow powder.

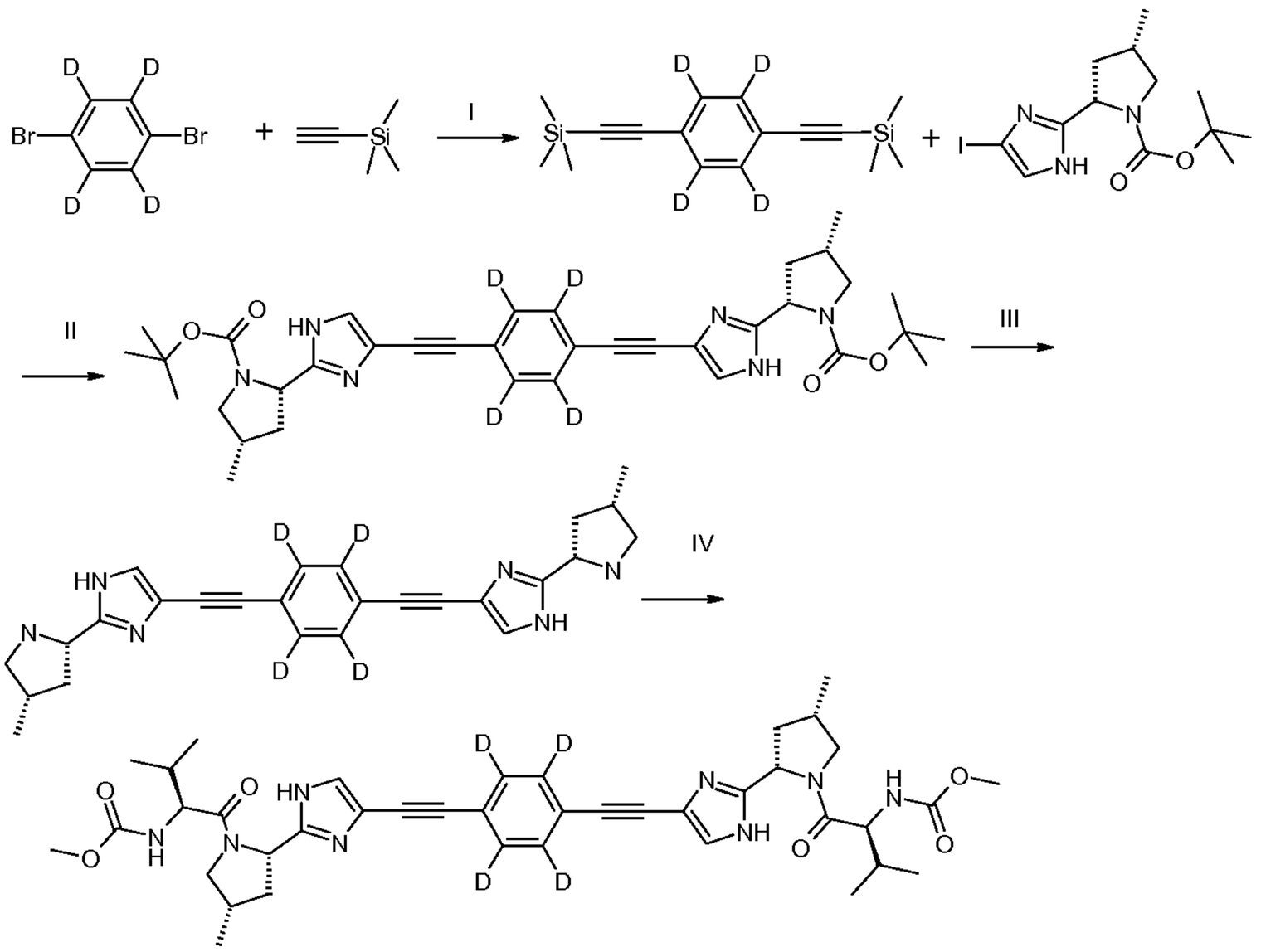
Step III:

In a 12L 4 neck RBF under nitrogen equipped with mechanical stirrer, a thermocouple and an addition funnel, (S,S)-4,4'-(1,4-phenylenebis(ethyne-2,1-diyl))bis(2-((2S,4S)-4-methylpyrrolidinium-2-yl)-1H-imidazol-3-ium) chloride (196.27 g, 342.4 mmol), the (2S)-2-(methoxycarbonylamino)-3-methyl-butanoic acid (120.0 g, 684.8 mmol) and HATU (260.4 g, 684.8 mmol) are added. The powder is stirred under nitrogen and DMF (1.953 L) is added, the solution is then cooled to 3 °C using an ice/water bath. N,N-diisopropylethylamine (354.0 g, 477.1 mL, 2.739 mol) is added dropwise over 80 minutes while keeping the internal temperature at 4±2°C. The reaction mixture is stirred for 1.5 hours and followed by HPLC/MS that shows that the reaction is completed. Cold water (5.859 L) is added dropwise over 90 minutes while keeping the internal temperature below 8.5°C. The suspension is stirred for 1 hour in an ice bath, filtered and washed with

cold water (600 ml) and then with cold heptane (400 ml). The crude product is dried overnight at 45°C in vacuum oven. The crude powder (253 g) is transferred in a 12 L 5 neck RBF equipped with a mechanical stirrer, a condenser, a temperature controller J-Kem model 260 and a heating mantel. Methanol (6L) is added and the mixture is heated at reflux until the compound is dissolved. The hot solution is filtered and washed with methanol (500 mL). The solution is transferred in a 12 L 5 neck RBF equipped with a mechanical stirrer, a temperature controller J-Kem model 260, a heating mantel and a distillation head. Methanol (4 L) is distilled off while stirring. The heating is turned off and the solution is slowly brought back to room temperature and slowly crystallized out overnight. The suspension is cooled for 30 minutes in an ice bath, filtered on a large Buchner and washed with cold methanol (200 mL). The cake is dried in a vacuum oven at 35°C for 3 days to give methyl N-[(1S)-1-[(2S,4S)-2-[5-[2-[4-[2-[2-[(2S,4S)-1-[(2S)-2-(methoxycarbonylamino)-3-methyl-butanoyl]-4-methyl-pyrrolidin-2-yl]-1H-imidazol-5-yl]ethynyl]phenyl]ethynyl]-1H-imidazol-2-yl]-4-methyl-pyrrolidine-1-carbonyl]-2-methyl-propyl]carbamate (172 g, 228.5 mmol, 66.73% yield) as an off white powder 98.16% pure by HPLC.

Example 5

Methyl N-[(1S)-2-methyl-1-[(2S,4S)-4-methyl-2-[4-[2-[2,3,5,6-tetradeuterio-4-[2-[2-[(2S,4S)-1-[(2S)-2-(methoxycarbonylamino)-3-methyl-butanoyl]-4-methyl-pyrrolidin-2-yl]-1H-imidazol-4-yl]ethynyl]phenyl]ethynyl]-1H-imidazol-2-yl]pyrrolidine-1-carbonyl]-2-methyl-propyl]carbamate



Step I

To a solution of 1,4-dibromo-2,3,5,6-tetradeuterio-benzene (500 mg, 2.084 mmol) in DMF (10 mL) are added $PdCl_2(dppf)$-CH_2Cl_2 (85.09 mg, 0.1042 mmol) and CuI (19.84 mg, 0.1042 mmol). After degassing, DIPEA (1.077 g, 1.451 mL, 8.336 mmol) and ethynyl-trimethyl-silane (614.1 mg, 883.6 µL, 6.252 mmol) are added to the reaction mixture. Then the solution is heated at 45°C under nitrogen overnight. After removal of the solvent under reduced pressure, the residue is purified by silica gel column chromatography using hexane to provide trimethyl-[2-[2,3,5,6-tetradeuterio-4-(2-trimethylsilylethynyl)phenyl]ethynyl]silane (360 mg, 1.311 mmol, 62.93%) as yellow solid. ^1H NMR (CD_3OD, 400 MHz): 0.00 (m, 9H).

Step II

To a solution of *tert*-butyl (2S,4S)-2-(4-iodo-1H-imidazol-2-yl)-4-methyl-pyrrolidine-1-carboxylate (288.5 mg, 0.7648 mmol) in DMF (3 mL) are added trimethyl-[2-[2,3,5,6-tetradeuterio-4-(2-trimethylsilylethynyl)phenyl]ethynyl]silane (100 mg, 0.3642 mmol), $PdCl_2(dppf)$-CH_2Cl_2 (14.87 mg, 0.01821 mmol), CuI (3.468 mg, 0.01821 mmol) and DBU (665.3 mg, 653.5 µL, 4.370 mmol). After degassing, water (19.69 mg, 19.69 µL, 1.093 mmol) is added to the reaction mixture. Then the solution is heated at 60°C under nitrogen overnight. After removal of the solvent under reduced pressure, the residue is purified by silica gel column chromatography using MeOH (0-5%) in CH_2Cl_2 to provide *tert*-butyl (2S,4S)-2-[4-[2-[4-[2-[2-[(2S,4S)-1-*tert*-butoxycarbonyl-4-methyl-pyrrolidin-2-yl]-1H-imidazol-4-yl]ethynyl]-2,3,5,6-tetradeuterio-phenyl]ethynyl]-1H-imidazol-2-yl]-4-methyl-pyrrolidine-1-carboxylate (141 mg, 0.2242 mmol, 61.57%) as a off-white solid. LC/MS: m/z = 629.20 ($M+H^+$).

Step III

To a solution of tert-butyl (2S,4S)-2-[4-[2-[4-[2-[2-[(2S,4S)-1-tert-butoxycarbonyl-4-methyl-pyrrolidin-2-yl]-1H-imidazol-4-yl]ethynyl]-2,3,5,6-tetradeuterio-phenyl]ethynyl]-1H-imidazol-2-yl]-4-methyl-pyrrolidine-1-carboxylate (196 mg, 0.3117 mmol) in 3 mL of methanol is added HCl/dioxane (779.2 µL of 4 M, 3.117 mmol) . The mixture is stirred at rt for 1 hour and then concentrated to dryness. The residue is used in the next step without any further purification.

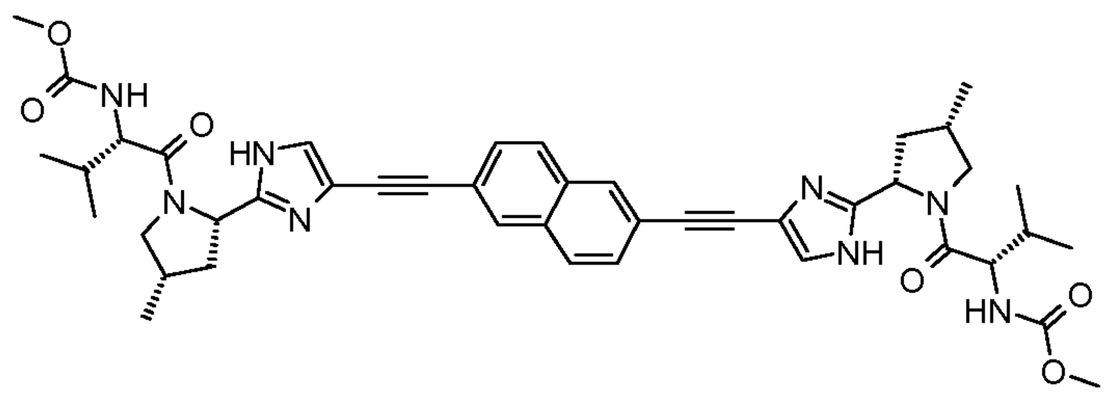
Step IV

To a solution of 2-[(2S,4S)-4-methylpyrrolidin-2-yl]-4-[2-[2,3,5,6-tetradeuterio-4-[2-[2-[(2S,4S)-4-methylpyrrolidin-2-yl]-1H-imidazol-4-yl]ethynyl]phenyl]ethynyl]-1H-imidazole (hydrochloric acid (4)) (179 mg, 0.3116 mmol) HCl salt in DMF (5 mL) are added (2S)-2-(methoxycarbonylamino)-3-methyl-butanoic acid (136.5 mg, 0.7790 mmol), HATU (296.2 mg, 0.7790 mmol) and DIPEA (402.7 mg, 542.7 µL, 3.116 mmol). The mixture is stirred at

rt overnight. After removal of the solvent under reduced pressure, the residue is purified twice by silica gel column chromatography using MeOH (0-6%) in CH_2Cl_2 to provide methyl N-[(1S)-2-methyl-1-[(2S,4S)-4-methyl-2-[4-[2-[2,3,5,6-tetradeuterio-4-[2-[2-[(2S,4S)-1-[(2S)-2-(methoxycarbonylamino)-3-methyl-butanoyl]-4-methyl-pyrrolidin-2-yl]-1H-imidazol-4-yl]ethynyl]phenyl]ethynyl]-1H-imidazol-2-yl]pyrrolidine-1-carbonyl]-2-methyl-propyl]carbamate (184 mg, 0.2353 mmol, 75.51%) as an off-white solid. LC/MS: m/z = 743.58 ($M+H^+$). ^1H NMR (CD_3OD, 400 MHz): δ 7.15-7.24 (d, 2H), 4.95(m, 2H), 4.20 (m, 4H), 3.62 (s, 6H), 2.46 (m, 4H), 1.96 (m, 4H), 1.15-1.30 (m, 8H), 0.84(m, 12H).

Example 6:

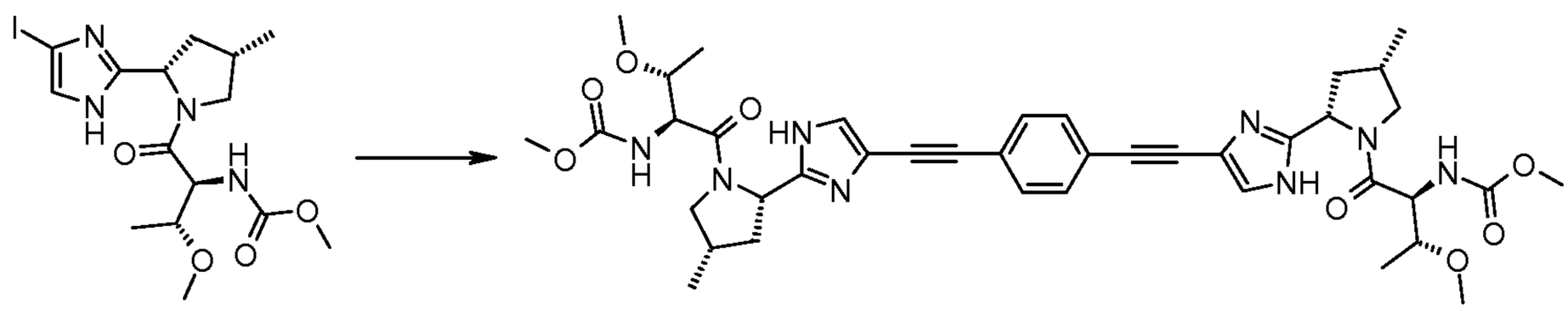
Methyl N-[(1S)-1-[(2S,4S)-2-[4-[2-[6-[2-[2-[(2S,4S)-1-[(2S)-2-(methoxycarbonylamino)-3-methyl-butanoyl]-4-methyl-pyrrolidin-2-yl]-1H-imidazol-3-ium-4-yl]ethynyl]-2-naphthyl]ethynyl]-1H-imidazol-3-ium-2-yl]-4-methyl-pyrrolidine-1-carbonyl]-2-methyl-propyl]carbamate as HCl salt



To a stirred suspension of methyl N-[(1S)-1-[(2S,4S)-2-(5-iodo-1H-imidazol-2-yl)-4-methyl-pyrrolidine-1-carbonyl]-2-methyl-propyl]carbamate, CuI and $Pd(dppf)Cl_2$-DCM in DMF is sequentially added TEA and 2,6-diethynylnaphthalene under nitrogen atmosphere. The reaction mixture is heated at 70°C for 3 hours in a sealed tube, and is concentrated to dryness. The residue is purified by flash column chromatography on silica gel (0 to 15% MeOH in EtOAc) to give a mixture of diastereomers. The mixture is purified by reverse phase HPLC using a gradient of CH_3CN/water to afford the title compound as HCl salt. ^1H NMR (400 MHz, CD_3OD) δ 8.11 (s, 2 H), 7.925 (d, 2 H), 7.67 (s, 2 H), 7.61 (d, 2 H), 5.09 (dd, 2 H), 4.29 (t, 2 H), 4.18 (d, 2 H), 3.64 (s, 6 H), 3.4-3.25 (m, 2 H), 2.65-2.4 (m, 4 H), 2.05-1.75 (m, 4 H), 1.208 (d, 6 H), 0.88 (d, 6 H), 0.86 (d, 6 H).
LC/MS: m/z = 789.61 ($M+H^+$).

Example 7:

Dimethyl (2S,2'S,3R,3'R)-1,1'-((3S,3'S,5S,5'S)-5,5'-(4,4'-(1,4-phenylenebis(ethyne-2,1-diyl))bis(1H-imidazole-4,2-diyl))bis(3-methylpyrrolidine-5,1-diyl))bis(3-methoxy-1-oxobutane-2,1-diyl)dicarbamate



To a stirred suspension of methyl N-[(1S,2R)-1-[(2S,4S)-2-(4-iodo-1H-imidazol-2-yl)-4-methyl-pyrrolidine-1-carbonyl]-2-methoxy-propyl]carbamate (99.96 mg, 0.2220 mmol), CuI (4.228 mg, 0.02220 mmol) and Pd(dppf)Cl_2-DCM (18.13 mg, 0.02220 mmol) in DMF (1.5 mL) is sequentially added TEA (67.39 mg, 92.82 µL, 0.6660 mmol) and 1,4-diethynylbenzene (14 mg, 0.1110 mmol) under nitrogen atmosphere. The reaction mixture is heated at 70°C for 3 hours, diluted with water (10 mL) and extracted with CH_2Cl_2 (3 x 10 mL). The combined extracts are washed with water, brine, dried over Na_2SO_4, filtered, and concentrated to dryness. The residue is purified by flash column chromatography on silica gel (5 to 25% MeOH in toluene) and is repurified by reverse phase HPLC using a gradient of CH_3CN/water to afford dimethyl (2S,2'S,3R,3'R)-1,1'-((3S,3'S,5S,5'S)-5,5'-(4,4'-(1,4-phenylenebis(ethyne-2,1-diyl))bis(1H-imidazole-4,2-diyl))bis(3-methylpyrrolidine-5,1-diyl))bis(3-methoxy-1-oxobutane-2,1-diyl)dicarbamate (11.4 mg, 0.01321 mmol, 11.90%) as HCl salt.

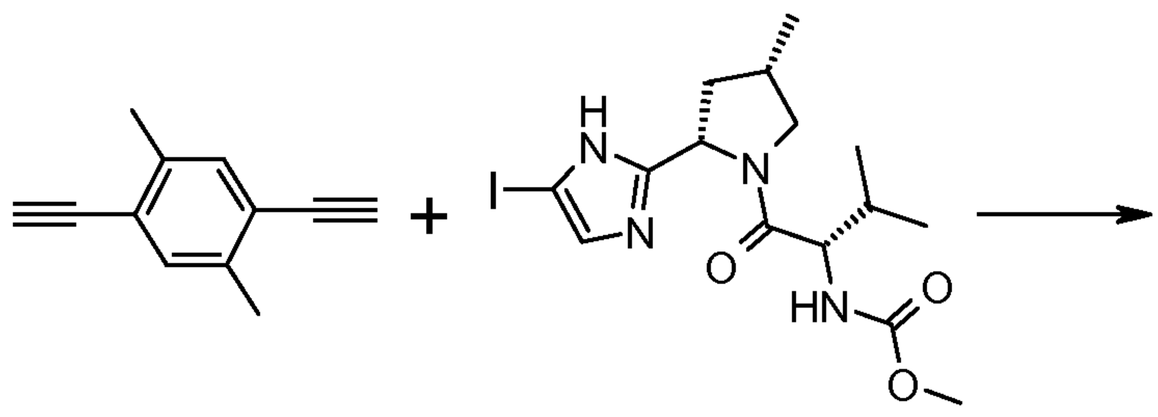
Rf = 0.42 (MeOH-Toluene, 1:4),

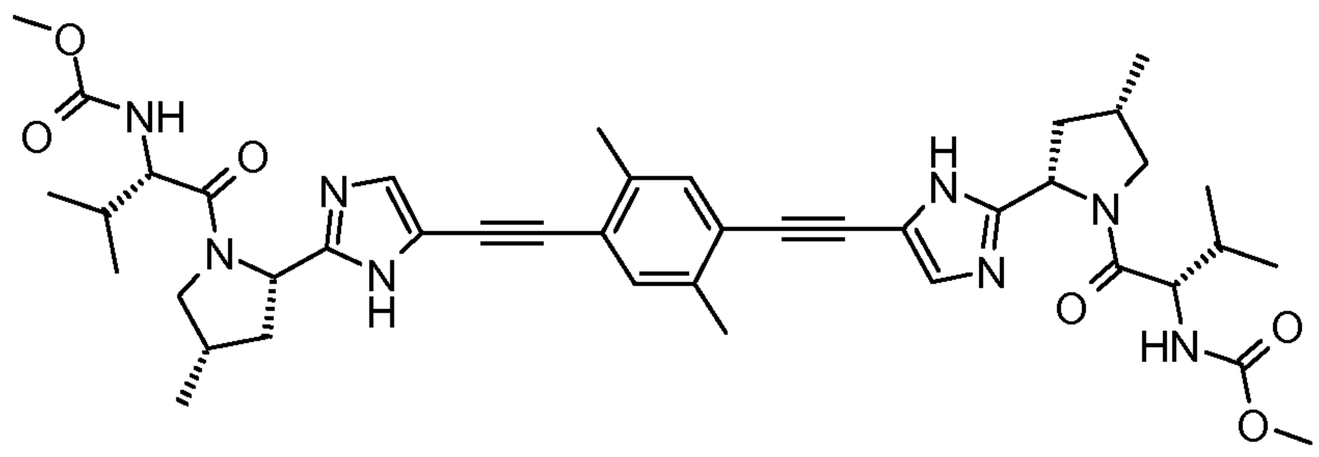
^{1}H NMR (400 MHz, CD_3OD) δ 7.64 (s, 2 H), 7.50 (s, 4 H), 5.03 (dd, 2 H), 4.35 (d, 2 H), 4.26 - 4.1 (m, 2 H), 3.6-3.4 (m, 2 H), 3.56 (s, 6 H), 3.3-3.1 (m, 1 H), 3.2 (s, 6 H), 2.6-2.3 (m, 4 H), 1.75-1.55 (m, 2 H), 1.11 (d, 6 H), 0.99 (d, 6 H).

LC/MS: m/z = 771.58 ($M+H^+$).

Example 8:

Dimethyl (2S,2'S)-1,1'-((3S,3'S,5S,5'S)-5,5'-(4,4'-(2,5-dimethyl-1,4-phenylene)bis(ethyne-2,1-diyl)bis(1H-imidazole-4,2-diyl))bis(3-methylpyrrolidine-5,1-diyl))bis(3-methyl-1-oxobutane-2,1-diyl)dicarbamate





To a stirred suspension of methyl N-[(1S)-1-[(2S,4S)-2-(5-iodo-1H-imidazol-2-yl)-4-methyl-pyrrolidine-1-carbonyl]-2-methyl-propyl]carbamate (73.22 mg, 0.1686 mmol) , CuI (3.211 mg, 0.01686 mmol) and Pd(dppf)Cl_2-DCM (13.77 mg, 0.01686 mmol) in DMF (1.144 mL) is sequentially added TEA (70.50 µL, 0.5058 mmol) and 1,4-diethynyl-2,5-dimethyl-benzene (13 mg, 0.08430 mmol) under nitrogen atmosphere. The reaction mixture is heated at 50°C overnight, diluted with water (10 mL), and a precipitate is formed. The precipitate is filtered, washed with water, and dried under high vacuum to afford the title compound (65 mg) which is converted into HCl salt using 4N HCl in dioxane. The mixture is freeze dried and purified by reverse phase HPLC using a gradient of CH_3CN/water to afford dimethyl (2S,2'S)-1,1'-((3S,3'S,5S,5'S)-5,5'-(4,4'-(2,5-dimethyl-1,4-phenylene)bis(ethyne-2,1-diyl)bis(1H-imidazole-4,2-diyl))bis(3-methylpyrrolidine-5,1-diyl))bis(3-methyl-1-oxobutane-2,1-diyl)dicarbamate as HCl salt (3.9 mg, 0.004276 mmol, 5.072%) as light yellow solid.

Rf = 0.29 (MeOH-Toluene, 1:9).

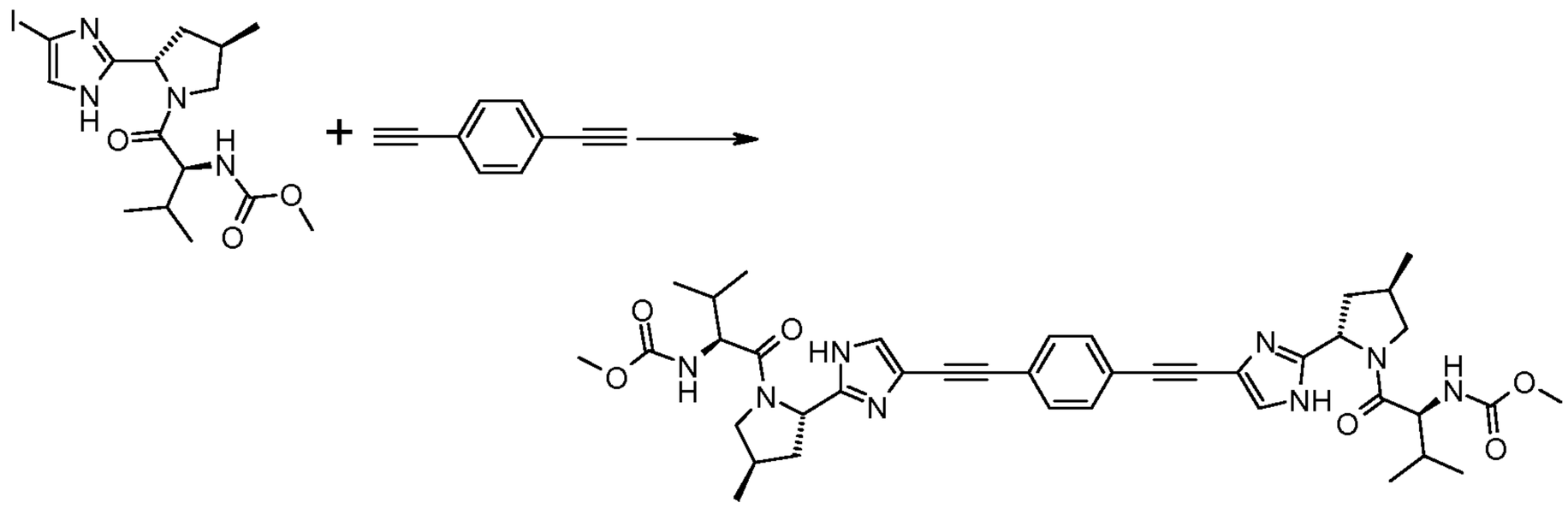
^{1}H NMR (400 MHz, CD_3OD) δ 7.79 (s, 2 H), 7.44 (s, 2 H), 5.10 (dd, 2 H), 4.30 (t, 2 H), 4.17 (d, 2 H), 3.63 (s, 6 H), 3.39 – 3.31 (m, 2 H), 2.45 (s, 6 H), 2.65-2.45 (m, 4 H), 2.04 – 1.90 (m, 2 H), 1.8-1.7 (m, 2 H), 1.20 (d, 6 H), 0.87 (d, 6 H), 0.85 (d, 6 H).

LC/MS: m/z = 767.59 ($M+H^+$).

Example 9:

Dimethyl (2S,2'S)-1,1'-((3R,3'R,5S,5'S)-5,5'-(4,4'-(1,4-phenylenebis-

(ethyne-2,1-diyl))bis(1H-imidazole-4,2-diyl))bis(3-methylpyrrolidine-5,1-diyl))bis(3-methyl-1-oxobutane-2,1-diyl)dicarbamate



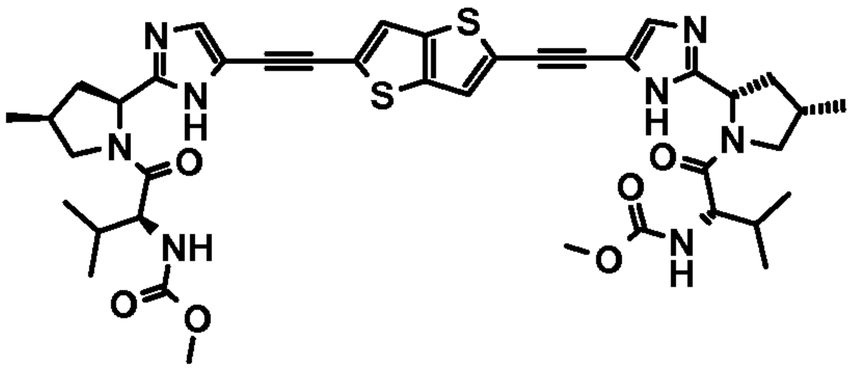
To a stirred suspension of methyl (S)-1-((2S,4R)-2-(4-iodo-1H-imidazol-2-yl)-4-methylpyrrolidin-1-yl)-3-methyl-1-oxobutan-2-ylcarbamate (96.41 mg, 0.21 mmol), CuI (4.23 mg, 0.022 mmol) and $Pd(dppf)Cl_2$-DCM (18.13 mg, 0.022 mmol) in DMF (1.5 mL) is sequentially added TEA (92.82 µL, 0.67 mmol) and 1,4-diethynylbenzene (14 mg, 0.11 mmol) under nitrogen atmosphere. The reaction mixture is heated at 70°C for 3 hours, diluted with water (6 mL), and a precipitate is filtered off. The precipitate is dissolved in CH_2Cl_2, filtered through a pad of celite, and concentrated to dryness. The residue is purified by flash column chromatography on silica gel (5 to 10% MeOH in toluene) to afford the title compound (43 mg) which is converted into its HCl salt and purified by reverse phase HPLC using a gradient of CH_3CN/water to afford dimethyl (2S,2'S)-1,1'-((3R,3'R,5S,5'S)-5,5'-(4,4'-(1,4-phenylenebis-ethyne-2,1-diyl))bis(1H-imidazole-4,2-diyl))bis(3-methylpyrrolidine-5,1-diyl))bis(3-methyl-1-oxobutane-2,1-diyl)dicarbamate as HCl salt (17.1 mg, 0.0199 mmol, 17.93%) as white solid.

^1H NMR (400 MHz, CD_3OD) δ 7.76 (s, 2 H), 7.60 (s, 4 H), 5.25 (dd, 2 H), 4.17 (d, 2 H), 4.02 - 3.86 (m, 2 H), 3.64 (s, 6 H), 3.61 - 3.48 (m, 2 H), 2.7-2.58 (m, 2 H), 2.28-1.99 (m, 6 H), 1.14 (d, 6 H), 0.91 (d, 6 H), 0.89 (d, 6 H).

LC/MS: m/z = 739.5 ($M + H^+$).

Example 10:

Methyl N-[(1S)-1-[(2S,4S)-2-[5-[2-[5-[2-[2-[(2S,4S)-1-[(2S)-2-(methoxycarbonylamino)-3-methyl-butanoyl]-4-methyl-pyrrolidin-2-yl]-1H-imidazol-5-yl]ethynyl]thieno[3,2-b]thiophen-2-yl]ethynyl]-1H-imidazol-2-yl]-4-methyl-pyrrolidine-1-carbonyl]-2-methyl-propyl]carbamate

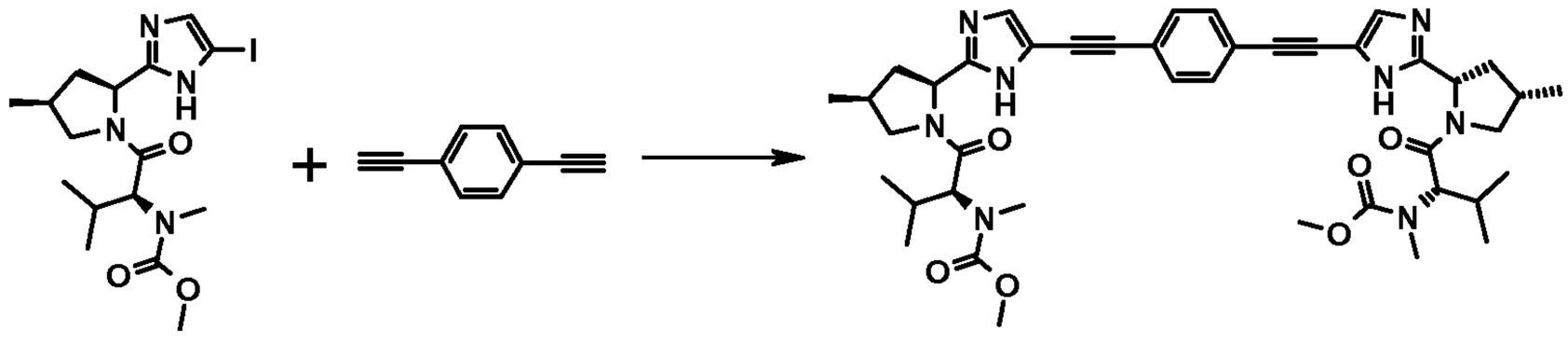


The title compound is synthesized from 2,5-Diethynyl-thieno[3,2-b]thiophene and methyl N-[(1S)-1-[(2S,4S)-2-(5-iodo-1H-imidazol-2-yl)-4-methyl-pyrrolidine-1-carbonyl]-2-methyl-propyl]carbamate as described in **Example 4A.**

LC/MS: m/z = 801.5 ($M+H^+$).

Example 11:

Methyl N-[(1S)-1-[(2S,4S)-2-[4-[2-[4-[2-[2-[(2S,4S)-1-[(2S)-2-[methoxycarbonyl(methyl)amino]-3-methyl-butanoyl]-4-methyl-pyrrolidin-2-yl]-1H-imidazol-4-yl]ethynyl]phenyl]ethynyl]-1H-imidazol-2-yl]-4-methyl-pyrrolidine-1-carbonyl]-2-methyl-propyl]-N-methyl-carbamate



To a stirred suspension of methyl N-[(1S)-1-[(2S,4S)-2-(5-iodo-1H-imidazol-2-yl)-4-methyl-pyrrolidine-1-carbonyl]-2-methyl-propyl]-N-methyl-carbamate (75mg, 0.17 mmol), CuI(3.18 mg, 0.017 mmol) and Pd(dppf)Cl_2-DCM (13.6 mg, 0.017mmol) in DMF (1.2 mL) is sequentially added TEA (70 µL, 0.50 mmol) and 1,4-diethynylbenzene (10.55 mg, 0.083 mmol) under nitrogen atmosphere. The reaction mixture is heated at 70°C for 1 hour, diluted with water and extracted with CH_2Cl_2. The organic phase is washed with water, brine, dried over Na_2SO_4, filtered and concentrated to dryness. The residue is purified by flash column chromatography on silica gel (1 to 30% MeOH in CH_2Cl_2) and purified by reverse phase HPLC using a gradient of CH_3CN/water to give methyl N-[(1S)-1-[(2S,4S)-2-[4-[2-[4-[2-[2-[(2S,4S)-1-[(2S)-2-[methoxycarbonyl(methyl)amino]-3-

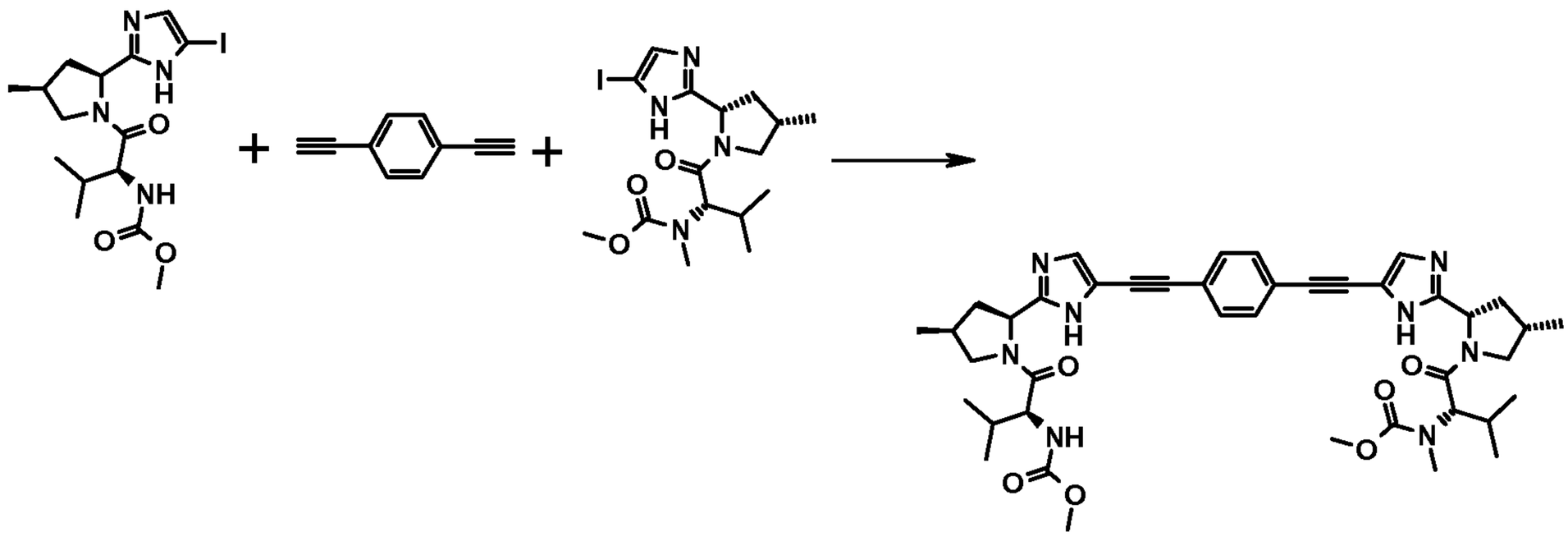
methyl-butanoyl]-4-methyl-pyrrolidin-2-yl]-1H-imidazol-4-yl]ethynyl]phenyl]ethynyl]-1H-imidazol-2-yl]-4-methyl-pyrrolidine-1-carbonyl]-2-methyl-propyl]-N-methyl-carbamate。

^{1}H NMR (400 MHz, CD_3OD) δ 7.65 (m, 2H), 7.47 (s, 4H), 4.95 (m, 2H),4.43 (d, 2H), 4.29 (m,1H), 4.19-4.14(m, 2H), 4.0-3.8(m, 1H), 3.64 (s, 6H), 2.74 (s, 6H), 2.57-2.46 (m, 2H), 2.33-2.27 (m, 2H), 2.07-2.01 (m, 2H), 1.70 -1.62 (m, 2H), 1.08 (d, 6H), 0.84 (dd, 6H), 0.70(dd, 6H).

LC/MS: m/z = 767.46($M+H^+$).

Example 12:

Methyl N-[(1S)-1-[(2S,4S)-2-[4-[2-[4-[2-[2-[(2S,4S)-1-[(2S)-2-(methoxycarbonylamino)-3-methyl-butanoyl]-4-methyl-pyrrolidin-2-yl]-1H-imidazol-4-yl]ethynyl]phenyl]ethynyl]-1H-imidazol-2-yl]-4-methyl-pyrrolidine-1-carbonyl]-2-methyl-propyl]-N-methyl-carbamate

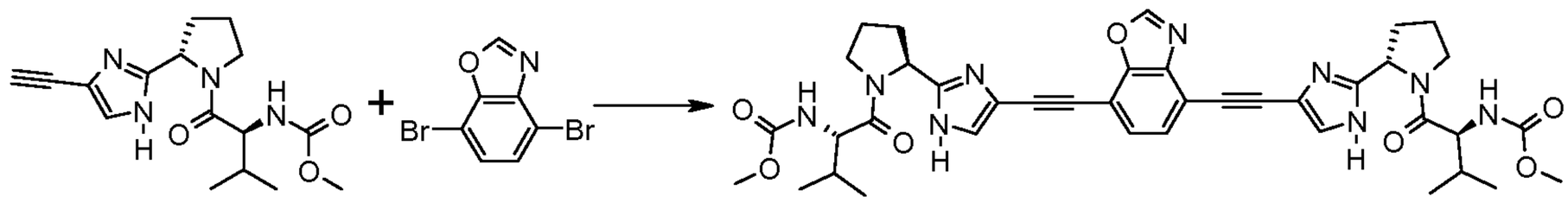


To a stirred suspension of methyl N-[(1S)-1-[(2S,4S)-2-(5-iodo-1H-imidazol-2-yl)-4-methyl-pyrrolidine-1-carbonyl]-2-methyl-propyl]carbamate (100 mg, 0.23mmol), methyl N-[(1S)-1-[(2S,4S)-2-(5-iodo-1H-imidazol-2-yl)-4-methyl-pyrrolidine-1-carbonyl]-2-methyl-propyl]-N-methyl-carbamate (103.2 mg, 0.23mmol), CuI (8.7mg, 0.04 mmol) and Pd(dppf)Cl_2-DCM (37.6 mg, 0.04 mmol) in DMF (3 mL) is sequentially added TEA (192.6 µL, 1.38 mmol) and 1,4-diethynylbenzene (29mg, 0.23 mmol) under nitrogen atmosphere. The reaction mixture is heated at 70°C for 1 hour, diluted with water and extracted with CH_2Cl_2. The organic phase is washed with water, brine, dried over Na_2SO_4, filtered and concentrated to dryness. The residue is purified by flash column chromatography on silica gel (1 to 30% MeOH in CH_2Cl_2) and purified by reverse phase HPLC using a gradient of CH_3CN/water to give methyl N-[(1S)-1-[(2S,4S)-2-[4-[2-[4-[2-[2-[(2S,4S)-1-[(2S)-2-(methoxycarbonylamino)-3-methyl-butanoyl]-4-methyl-pyrrolidin-2-yl]-1H-imidazol-4-

yl]ethynyl]phenyl]ethynyl]-1H-imidazol-2-yl]-4-methyl-pyrrolidine-1-carbonyl]-2-methyl-propyl]-N-methyl-carbamate as a white powder.
^{1}H NMR (400 MHz, CD_3OD) δ 7.55 (m, 2H), 7.47 (s, 4H), 5.00-4.92 (m, 2H), 4.42 (d, 1H), 4.41-4.14(m, 2H), 4.22 (m, 1H), 4.08 (d, 1H), 3.99 (m, 1H), 3.64 (s, 3H), 3.54 (s, 3H), 2.74 (s, 3H), 2.55-2.44 (m, 2H), 2.34 (m, 2H), 2.03 (m, 1H), 1.87 (m, 1H), 1.67 (m, 2H), 1.10-1.04 (m, 6H), 0.79-0.69 (m, 12H).
LC/MS: m/z = 753.4($M+H^+$).

Example 13:

Methyl N-[(1S)-1-[(2S)-2-[4-[2-[4-[2-[2-[(2S)-1-[(2S)-2-(methoxycarbonylamino)-3-methyl-butanoyl]pyrrolidin-2-yl]-1H-imidazol-4-yl]ethynyl]-1,3-benzoxazol-7-yl]ethynyl]-1H-imidazol-2-yl]pyrrolidine-1-carbonyl]-2-methyl-propyl]carbamate



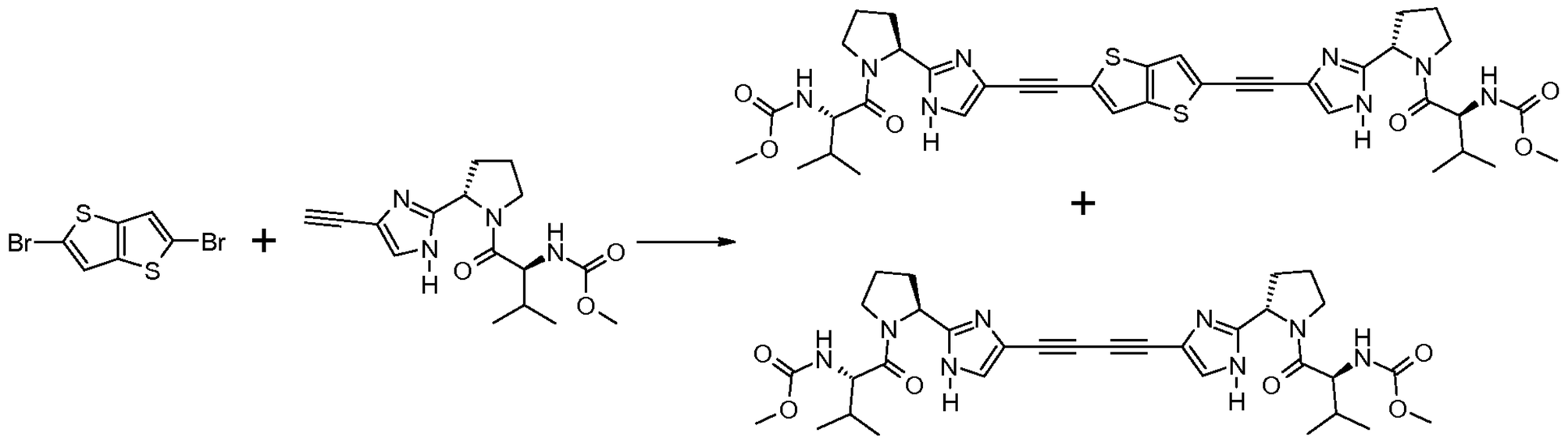
4,7-Dibromo-1,3-benzoxazole (19 mg, 0.07 mmol), methyl N-[(1S)-1-[(2S)-2-(4-ethynyl-1H-imidazol-2-yl)pyrrolidine-1-carbonyl]-2-methyl-propyl]carbamate (56 mg, 0.17 mmol), Pd(dppf)Cl_2-DCM (5.7 mg, 0.007 mmol), TEA (19.6 uL,0.14 mmol) and CuI (2.6 mg, 0.014 mmol) are dissolved in 3 mL of DMF. The system is flushed with nitrogen and the mixture is heated at 70°C overnight. After evaporation of the solvent under vacuum, the residue is purified by flash column chromatography on silica gel (0 to 7% MeOH in CH_2Cl_2) and is further purified by reverse phase HPLC using a gradient of CH_3CN/water to give methyl N-[(1S)-1-[(2S)-2-[4-[2-[4-[2-[2-[(2S)-1-[(2S)-2-(methoxycarbonylamino)-3-methyl-butanoyl]pyrrolidin-2-yl]-1H-imidazol-4-yl]ethynyl]-1,3-benzoxazol-7-yl]ethynyl]-1H-imidazol-2-yl]pyrrolidine-1-carbonyl]-2-methyl-propyl]carbamate (10.4 mg).
^{1}H NMR (400 MHz, CD_3OD): δ [ppm] 8.58 (s, 1H), 7.38-7.50 (m, 4H), 5.08 (m, 2H), 4.18 (d, 2H), 3.80-3.94 (m, 4H), 3.55 (s, 6H), 1.99-2.26 (m, 10H), 0.86-0.97 (m, 12H).
LC/MS : m/z 752.58 ($M+H^+$).

1H NMR (400 MHz, CD_3OD) δ 7.29 (m, 2H), 7.12 (m, 4H), 5.05(m, 2H), 4.17(d, 2H), 3.98-3.92 (m, 2H), 3.82-3.78 (m, 2H), 3.62 (s, 6H), 2.24 (m, 4H), 2.12 (m, 2H), 2.03-1.97 (m, 4H), 1.3-1.27 (m, 6H), 0.95-0.85 (m, 12H).
LC/MS: m/z = 717.5($M+H^+$).

Examples 14 and 15:

methyl N-[(1S)-1-[(2S)-2-[4-[2-[2-[2-[2-[(2S)-1-[(2S)-2-(methoxycarbonylamino)-3-methyl-butanoyl]pyrrolidin-2-yl]-1H-imidazol-4-yl]ethynyl]thieno[3,2-b]thiophen-5-yl]ethynyl]-1H-imidazol-2-yl]pyrrolidine-1-carbonyl]-2-methyl-propyl]carbamate (14) and

methyl N-[(1S)-1-[(2S)-2-[4-[4-[2-[(2S)-1-[(2S)-2-(methoxycarbonylamino)-3-methyl-butanoyl]pyrrolidin-2-yl]-1H-imidazol-4-yl]buta-1,3-diynyl]-1H-imidazol-2-yl]pyrrolidine-1-carbonyl]-2-methyl-propyl]carbamate (15)



2,5-Dibromothieno[3,2-b]thiophene (26 mg, 0.088 mmol), methyl N-[(1S)-1-[(2S)-2-(4-ethynyl-1H-imidazol-2-yl)pyrrolidine-1-carbonyl]-2-methyl-propyl]carbamate (70 mg, 0.22 mmol), $Pd(dppf)Cl_2$-DCM (57.1 mg, 0.008 mmol), TEA (24.5 uL,0.17 mmol) and CuI (3.3 mg, 0.017 mmol) are dissolved in 3 mL of DMF. The system is flushed with nitrogen and the reaction mixture is heated at 70°C overnight. After evaporation of the solvent under vacuum, the residue is purified by flash column chromatography on silica gel (0 to 7% MeOH in CH_2Cl_2) and is further purified by reverse phase HPLC using a gradient of CH_3CN/water to give methyl N-[(1S)-1-[(2S)-2-[4-[2-[2-[2-[2-[(2S)-1-[(2S)-2-(methoxycarbonylamino)-3-methyl-butanoyl]pyrrolidin-2-yl]-1H-imidazol-4-yl]ethynyl]thieno[3,2-b]thiophen-5-yl]ethynyl]-1H-imidazol-2-yl]pyrrolidine-1-carbonyl]-2-methyl-propyl]carbamate (16 mg)

^{1}H NMR (400 MHz, CD_3OD): δ [ppm] 7.41 (s, 2H), 7.25 (s, 2H), 5.08 (m, 2H), 4.18 (d, 2H), 3.80-3.94 (m, 4H), 3.56 (s, 6H), 1.97-2.27 (m, 10H), 0.82-0.96 (m, 12H).

LC/MS : m/z 773.53 ($M+H^+$).

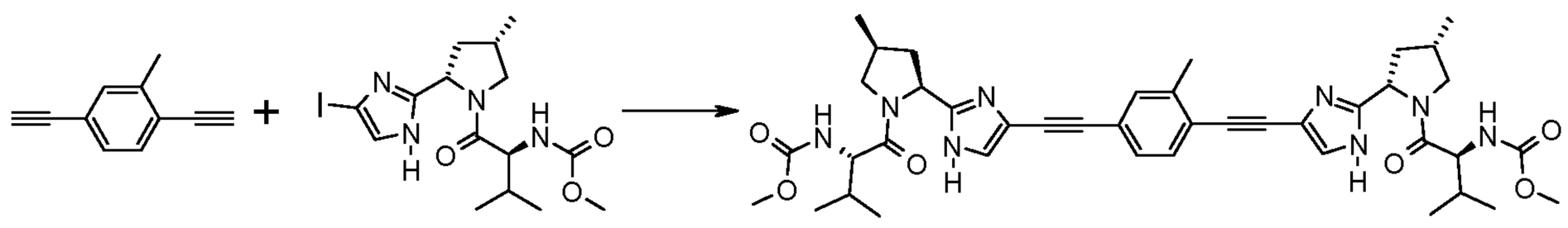
Methyl N-[(1S)-1-[(2S)-2-[4-[4-[2-[(2S)-1-[(2S)-2-(methoxycarbonylamino)-3-methyl-butanoyl]pyrrolidin-2-yl]-1H-imidazol-4-yl]buta-1,3-diynyl]-1H-imidazol-2-yl]pyrrolidine-1-carbonyl]-2-methyl-propyl]carbamate (5 mg) is also isolated.

^{1}H NMR (400 MHz, CD_3OD): δ [ppm] 7.33 (s, 2H), 5.08 (m, 2H), 4.18 (d, 2H), 3.77-3.91 (m, 4H), 3.56 (s, 6H), 1.92-2.22 (m, 10H), 0.86-0.96 (m, 12H).

LC/MS : m/z 635.48 ($M+H^+$).

Example 16:

Methyl N-[(1S)-1-[(2S,4S)-2-[4-[2-[4-[2-[2-[(2S,4S)-1-[(2S)-2-(methoxycarbonylamino)-3-methyl-butanoyl]-4-methyl-pyrrolidin-2-yl]-1H-imidazol-4-yl]ethynyl]-2-methyl-phenyl]ethynyl]-1H-imidazol-2-yl]-4-methyl-pyrrolidine-1-carbonyl]-2-methyl-propyl]carbamate

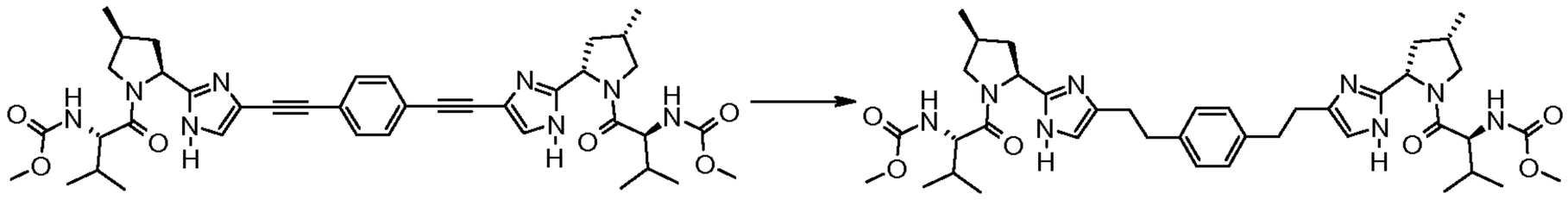


Methyl N-[(1S)-1-[(2S,4S)-2-(4-iodo-1H-imidazol-2-yl)-4-methyl-pyrrolidine-1-carbonyl]-2-methyl-propyl]carbamate (60 mg, 0.14 mmol), 1,4-diethynyl-2-methyl-benzene (8.8 mg, 0.06 mmol), Pd(dppf)Cl_2-DCM (5.1 mg, 0.006 mmol), TEA (22 uL, 0.16 mmol) and CuI (2.4 mg, 0.012 mmol) are dissolved in 2 mL of DMF. The mixture is heated to 50°C under N_2 overnight. After evaporation of the solvent under vacuum, the residue is purified by flash column chromatography on silica gel (0 to 7% MeOH in CH_2Cl_2) and is further purified by reverse phase HPLC using a gradient of CH_3CN/water to give methyl N-[(1S)-1-[(2S,4S)-2-[4-[2-[4-[2-[2-[(2S,4S)-1-[(2S)-2-(methoxycarbonylamino)-3-methyl-butanoyl]-4-methyl-pyrrolidin-2-yl]-1H-imidazol-4-yl]ethynyl]-2-methyl-phenyl]ethynyl]-1H-imidazol-2-yl]-4-methyl-pyrrolidine-1-carbonyl]-2-methyl-propyl]carbamate (10 mg) as a white solid.

^{1}H NMR (400 MHz, CD_3OD): δ [ppm] 7.42-7.82 (m, 5H), 5.10 (m, 2H), 4.30 (m, 2H), 4.18 (d, 2H), 3.63 (s, 6H), 2.45-2.65 (m, 9H), 1.70-1.96 (m, 4H), 1.19 (m, 6H).0.86 (m, 12H). LC/MS : m/z 753.56 ($M+H^+$).

Example 17:

Methyl N-[(1S)-1-[(2S,4S)-2-[4-[2-[4-[2-[2-[(2S,4S)-1-[(2S)-2-(methoxy-carbonylamino)-3-methyl-butanoyl]-4-methyl-pyrrolidin-2-yl]-1H-imidazol-4-yl]ethyl]phenyl]ethyl]-1H-imidazol-2-yl]-4-methyl-pyrrolidine-1-carbonyl]-2-methyl-propyl]carbamate



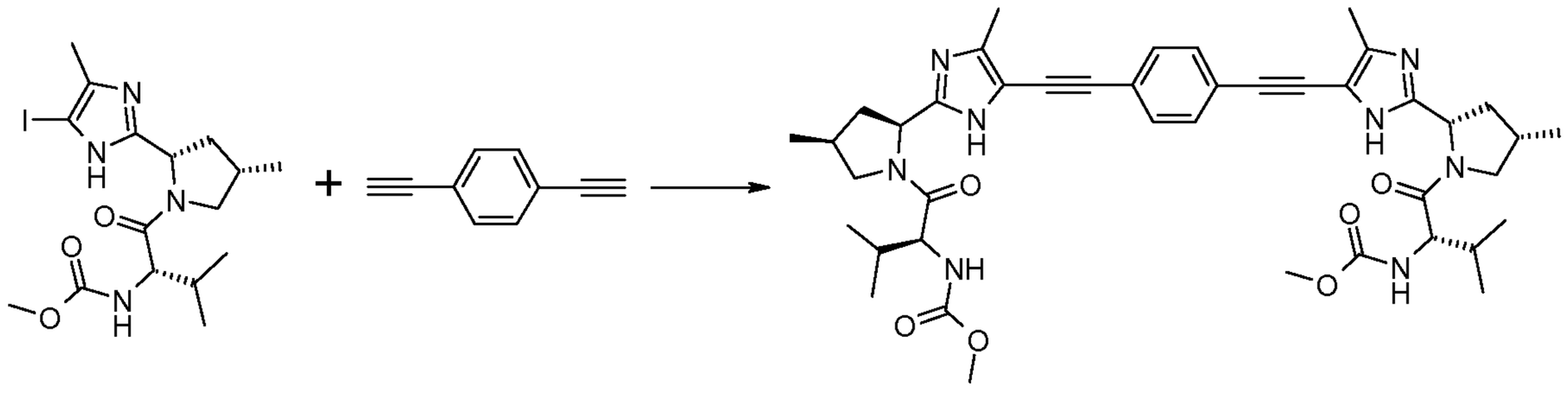
To a solution of methyl N-[(1S)-1-[(2S,4S)-2-[4-[2-[4-[2-[2-[(2S,4S)-1-[(2S)-2-(methoxycarbonylamino)-3-methyl-butanoyl]-4-methyl-pyrrolidin-2-yl]-1H-imidazol-4-yl]ethynyl]phenyl]ethynyl]-1H-imidazol-2-yl]-4-methyl-pyrrolidine-1-carbonyl]-2-methyl-propyl]carbamate (9.3 mg, 0.012 mmol) in 2 mL of methanol are added one drop of 1M HCl and a catalytic amount of 10% Pd/C. The reaction mixture is stirred at RT overnight under 1 atmosphere of hydrogen. The mixture is filtered and the filtrate is concentrated to dryness. The residue is purified by reverse phase HPLC using a gradient of CH_3CN/water to give methyl N-[(1S)-1-[(2S,4S)-2-[4-[2-[4-[2-[2-[(2S,4S)-1-[(2S)-2-(methoxy-carbonylamino)-3-methyl-butanoyl]-4-methyl-pyrrolidin-2-yl]-1H-imidazol-4-yl]ethyl]phenyl]ethyl]-1H-imidazol-2-yl]-4-methyl-pyrrolidine-1-carbonyl]-2-methyl-propyl]carbamate (2.8 mg).

^1H NMR (400 MHz, CD_3OD): [ppm] 7.07 (m, 6H), 5.06 (m, 2H), 4.16-4.27 (m, 4H), 3.60 (s, 6H), 2.89 (m, 6H), 2.45-2.60 (m, 4H), 1.70-1.96 (m, 4H), 1.19 (m, 10H).0.86 (m, 12H).

LC/MS : m/z 747.56 ($M+H^+$).

Example 18:

Methyl N-[(1S)-1-[(2S,4S)-2-[5-[2-[4-[2-[2-[(2S,4S)-1-[(2S)-2-(methoxycarbonylamino)-3-methyl-butanoyl]-4-methyl-pyrrolidin-2-yl]-4-methyl-1H-imidazol-5-yl]ethynyl]phenyl]ethynyl]-4-methyl-1H-imidazol-2-yl]-4-methyl-pyrrolidine-1-carbonyl]-2-methyl-propyl] carbamate

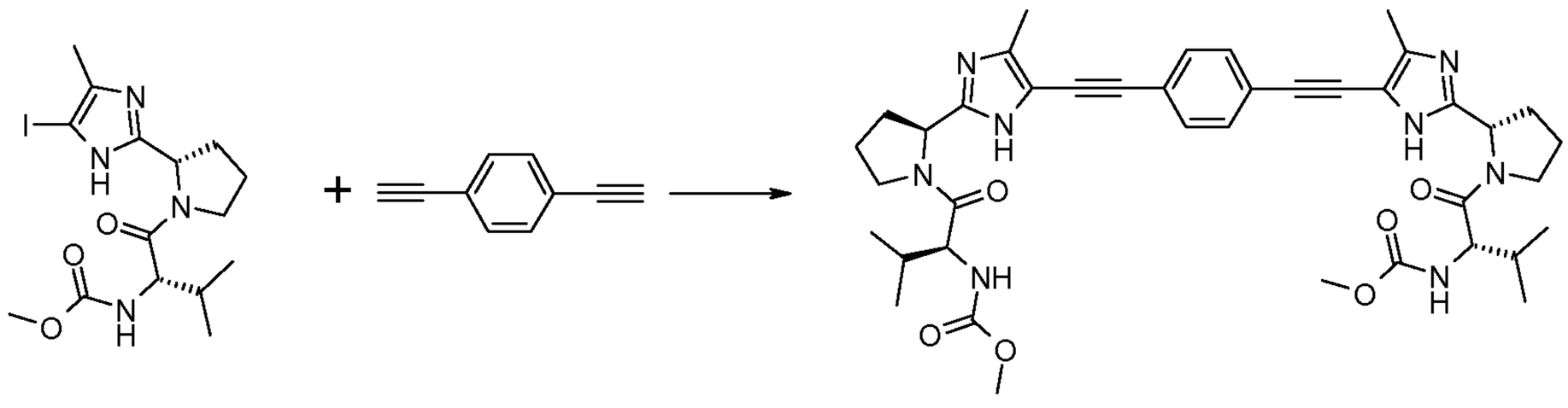


To a solution of methyl N-[(1S)-1-[(2S,4S)-2-(5-iodo-1H-imidazol-2-yl)-4-methyl-pyrrolidine-1-carbonyl]-2-methyl-propyl]carbamate (125 mg, 0.28 mmol), 1,4-diethynylbenzene (17.59 mg, 0.14 mmol), $Pd(dppf)Cl_2$-DCM (11.38 mg, 0.014 mmol), and CuI (5.31 mg, 0.028 mmol) in DMF (2.50 mL) is added TEA (70.53 mg, 97.15 µL, 0.70 mmol) and the reaction mixture is heated at 80°C for 18 hours. The reaction mixture is diluted with water (10 mL) and is extracted with of EtOAc (5 x 10 mL). The combined organic layers are washed with water, dried over Na_2SO_4, and evaporated to dryness. The residue is purified by flash column chromatography on silica gel (0 to 15% MeOH in CH_2Cl_2) and is further purified by reverse phase HPLC using a gradient of CH_3CN/water to give methyl N-[(1R)-1-[(2S,4S)-2-[5-[2-[4-[2-[2-[(2S,4S)-1-[(2S)-2-

(methoxycarbonylamino)-3-methyl-butanoyl]-4-methyl-pyrrolidin-2-yl]-4-methyl-1H-imidazol-5-yl]ethynyl]phenyl]ethynyl]-4-methyl-1H-imidazol-2-yl]-4-methyl-pyrrolidine-1-carbonyl]-2-methyl-propyl] carbamate (10.7 mg, 9%).
LC/MS : m/z 767.58 ($M+H^+$).

Example 19:

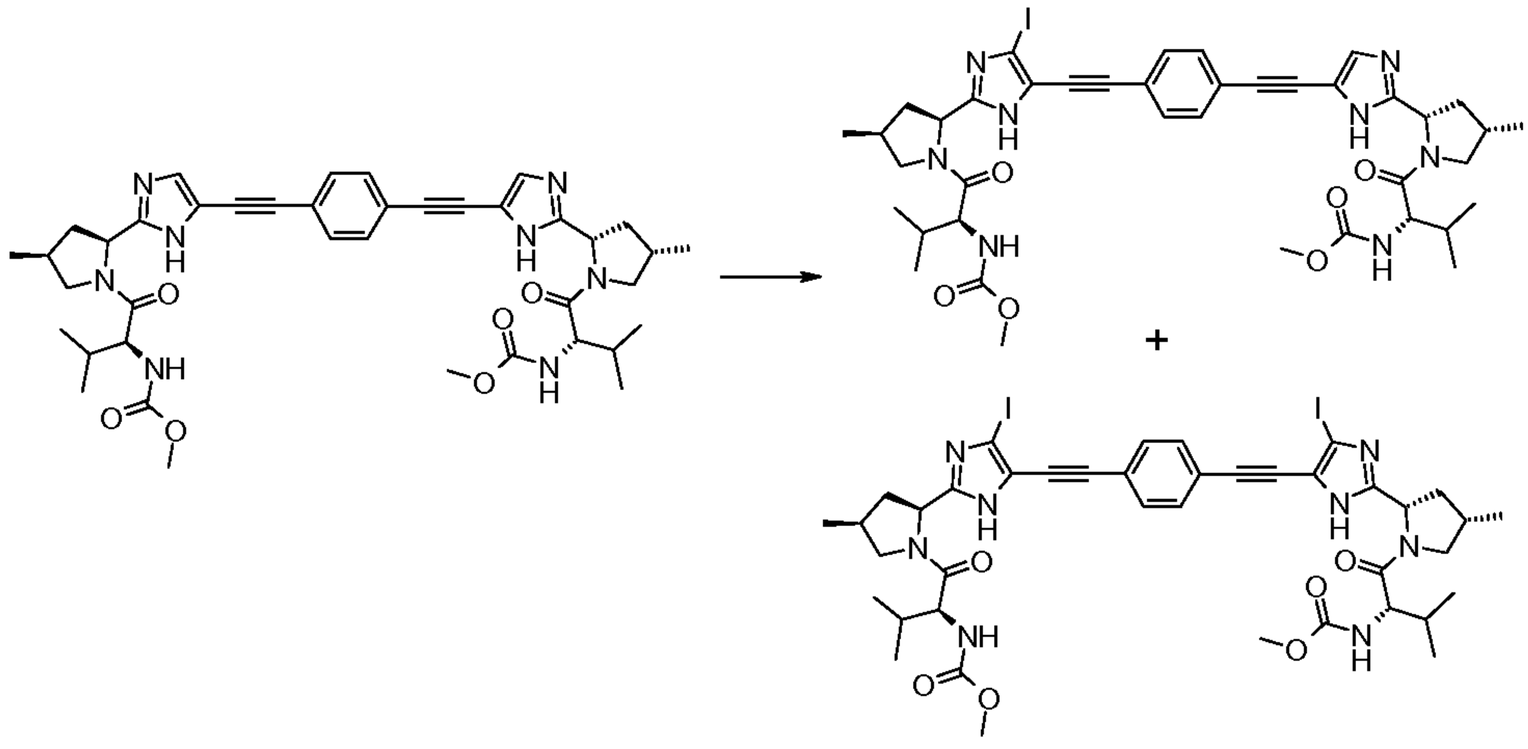
Methyl N-[(1S)-1-[(2S)-2-[5-[2-[4-[2-[2-[(2S)-1-[(2S)-2-(methoxycarbonylamino)-3-methyl-butanoyl]-pyrrolidin-2-yl]-4-methyl-1H-imidazol-5-yl]ethynyl]phenyl]ethynyl]-4-methyl-1H-imidazol-2-yl]-pyrrolidine-1-carbonyl]-2-methyl-propyl] carbamate



To a solution of methyl N-[(1S)-1-[(2S)-2-(5-iodo-1H-imidazol-2-yl)-pyrrolidine-1-carbonyl]-2-methyl-propyl]carbamate (129 mg, 0.296 mmol) , 1,4-diethynylbenzene (18.7 mg, 0.148 mmol) , Pd(dppf) (12.1 mg, 0.0148 mmol) , and CuI (5.6 mg, 0.0296 mmol) in DMF (2.6 mL) is added TEA (103 µL, 0.740 mmol) and the mixture is heated at 80°C for 18 hours. The reaction mixture is diluted with water (10 mL) and is extracted with of EtOAc (5 x 10 mL). The combined organic layers are washed with water, dried over Na_2SO_4, and evaporated to dryness. The residue is purified by flash column chromatography on silica gel (0 to 15% MeOH in CH_2Cl_2) and is further purified by reverse phase HPLC using a gradient of CH_3CN/water to give Methyl N-[(1R)-1-[(2S,4S)-2-[5-[2-[4-[2-[2-[(2S,4S)-1-[(2S)-2-(methoxycarbonylamino)-3-methyl-butanoyl]-pyrrolidin-2-yl]-4-methyl-1H-imidazol-5-yl]ethynyl]phenyl]ethynyl]-4-methyl-1H-imidazol-2-yl]-pyrrolidine-1-carbonyl]-2-methyl-propyl] carbamate (46 mg, 42%).
^1H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d_6) δ 12.00 (m, 2H), 7.44 (m, 4H), 7.25 (m, 2H), 4.92 (m, 2H), 3.98 (m, 2H), 3.74 (m, 2H), 3.50 (s, 6H), 2.22 (m, 6H), 2.12 (m, 6H), 1.91 (m, 6H), 0.82 (m, 12H).

Examples 20 and 21

Methyl N-[(1S)-1-[(2S,4S)-2-[4-iodo-5-[2-[4-[2-[4-iodo-2-[(2S,4S)-1-[(2S)-2-(methoxycarbonylamino)-3-methyl-butanoyl]-4-methyl-pyrrolidin-2-yl]-1H-imidazol-5-yl]ethynyl]phenyl]ethynyl]-1H-imidazol-2-yl]-4-methyl-pyrrolidine-1-carbonyl]-2-methyl-propyl]carbamate (21)



To a stirred suspension of Methyl N-[(1S)-1-[(2S,4S)-2-[5-[2-[4-[2-[2-[(2S,4S)-1-[(2S)-2-(methoxycarbonylamino)-3-methyl-butanoyl]-4-methyl-pyrrolidin-2-yl]-1H-imidazol-5-yl]ethynyl]phenyl]ethynyl]-1H-imidazol-2-yl]-4-methyl-pyrrolidine-1-carbonyl]-2-methyl-propyl]carbamate (0.127 g, 0.172 mmol) in CH_2Cl_2 (1.3 mL) at 0°C is added N-iodosuccinimide (0.085 g, 0.378 mmol) under nitrogen atmosphere. The reaction mixture is stirred 1 hour at 0°C and 1 hour at RT. The reaction mixture is concentrated and purified by reverse phase HPLC using a gradient of CH_3CN/water to afford methyl N-[(1S)-1-[(2S,4S)-2-[4-iodo-5-[2-[4-[2-[4-iodo-2-[(2S,4S)-1-[(2S)-2-(methoxycarbonylamino)-3-methyl-butanoyl]-4-methyl-pyrrolidin-2-yl]-1H-imidazol-5-yl]ethynyl]phenyl]ethynyl]-1H-imidazol-2-yl]-4-methyl-pyrrolidine-1-carbonyl]-2-methyl-propyl]carbamate (32 mg, 0.03114 mmol, 18.11%, purity, 96.4%)

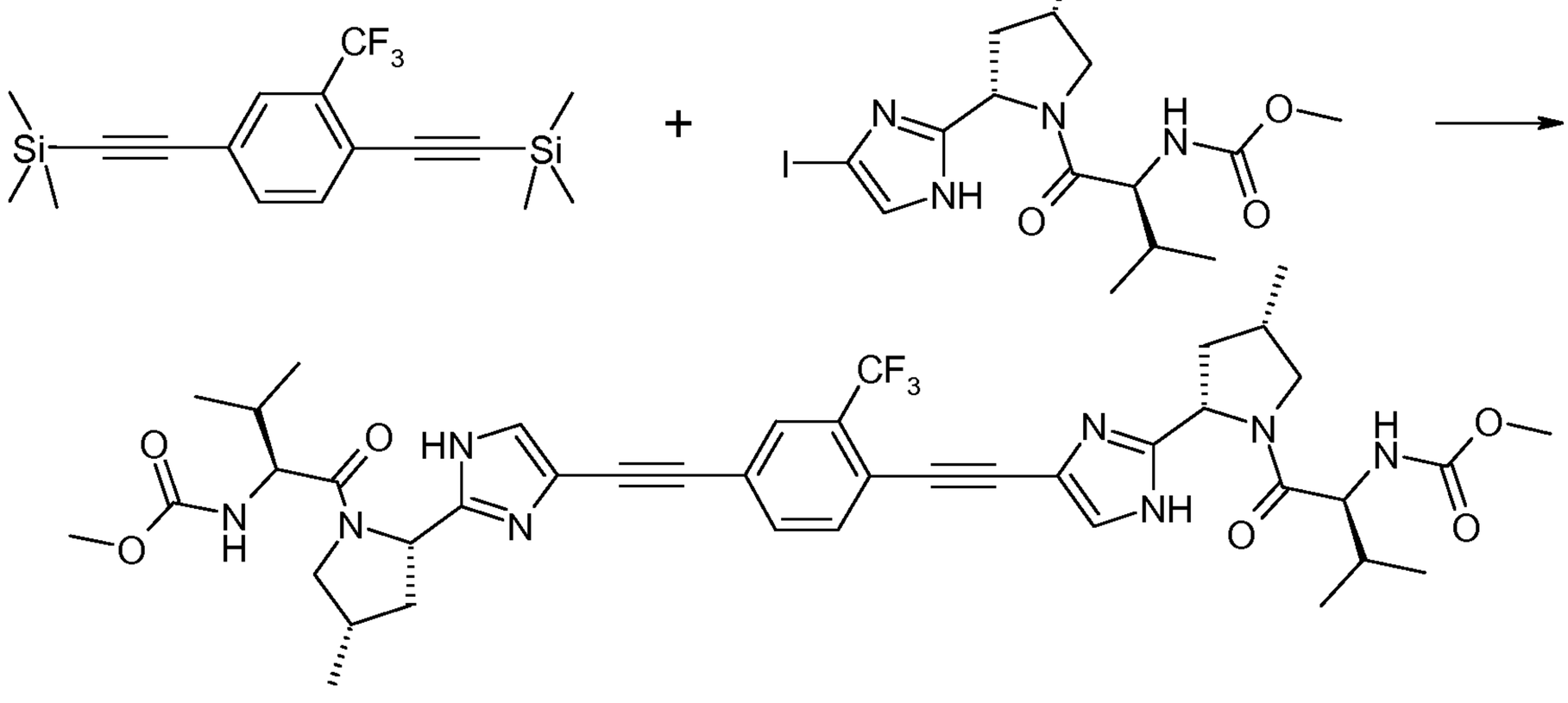
LC/MS, m/z: 991.01 ($M+H^+$)

and methyl N-[(2S)-1-[(2S,4S)-2-(5-{2-[4-(2-{4-iodo-2-[(2S,4S)-1-[(2S)-2-[(methoxycarbonyl)amino]-3-methylbutanoyl]-4-methylpyrrolidin-2-yl]-1H-imidazol-5-yl}ethynyl)phenyl]ethynyl}-1H-imidazol-2-yl)-4-methylpyrrolidin-1-yl]-3-methyl-1-oxobutan-2-yl]carbamate (7.5 mg, 0.0087 mmol 4.4%, purity, 95.9%)

LC/MS, m/z: 865.33 ($M+H^+$).

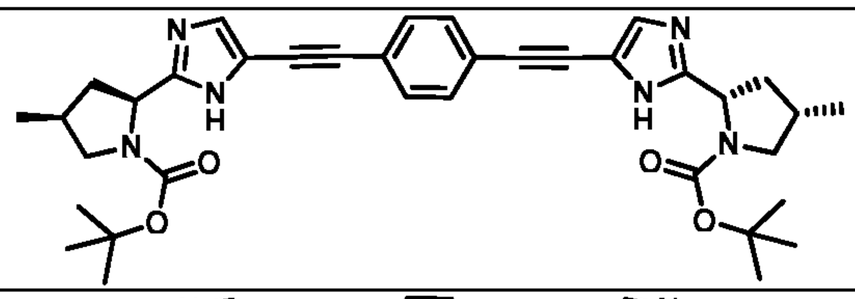
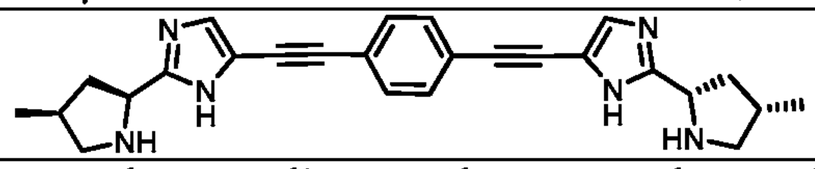
Example 22

Methyl N-[1-[(2S,4S)-2-[4-[2-[4-[2-[2-[(2S,4S)-1-[2-(methoxycarbonylamino)-3-methyl-butanoyl]-4-methyl-pyrrolidin-2-yl]-1H-imidazol-4-yl]ethynyl]-2-(trifluoromethyl)phenyl]ethynyl]-1H-imidazol-2-yl]-4-methyl-pyrrolidine-1-carbonyl]-2-methyl-propyl]carbamate



To a stirred solution of methyl N-[1-[(2S,4S)-2-(4-iodo-1H-imidazol-2-yl)-4-methyl-pyrrolidine-1-carbonyl]-2-methyl-propyl]carbamate (59.02 mg, 0.1359 mmol) in DMF (2 mL) are added trimethyl-[2-[2-(trifluoromethyl)-4-(2-trimethylsilylethynyl)phenyl]ethynyl]silane (20 mg, 0.05908 mmol), $PdCl_2(dppf)$-CH_2Cl_2 (4.825 mg, 0.005908 mmol), CuI (2.251 mg, 0.01182 mmol), H_2O (5.322 mg, 5.322 µL, 0.2954 mmol) and DBU (89.94 mg, 88.35 µL, 0.5908 mmol). The mixture is degassed and heated to 75°C under nitrogen overnight. After removal of the solvent under reduced pressure, the residue is suspended in water, extracted with CH_2Cl_2 (3x10 mL). The combined organic extracts are washed with brine, dried over Na_2SO_4, concentrated, purified by silica gel column chromatography using MeOH/CH_2Cl_2 (0-6%), and the major fraction is further purified using reverse-phase prep-HPLC to provide methyl N-[1-[(2S,4S)-2-[4-[2-[4-[2-[2-[(2S,4S)-1-[2-(methoxycarbonylamino)-3-methyl-butanoyl]-4-methyl-pyrrolidin-2-yl]-1H-imidazol-4-yl]ethynyl]-2-(trifluoromethyl)phenyl]ethynyl]-1H-imidazol-2-yl]-4-methyl-pyrrolidine-1-carbonyl]-2-methyl-propyl]carbamate (6.9 mg, 0.008466 mmol, 14.33%) as a white solid . LC/MS: m/z = 807.44 ($M+H^+$). ^1H NMR (CD_3OD, 400 MHz): δ 7.20-7.7.80 (m, 5H), 4.98(m, 2H), 4.20 (m, 4H), 3.62 (s, 6H), 2.46 (m, 4H), 1.96 (m, 4H), 1.15-1.30 (m, 8H), 0.84(m, 12H).

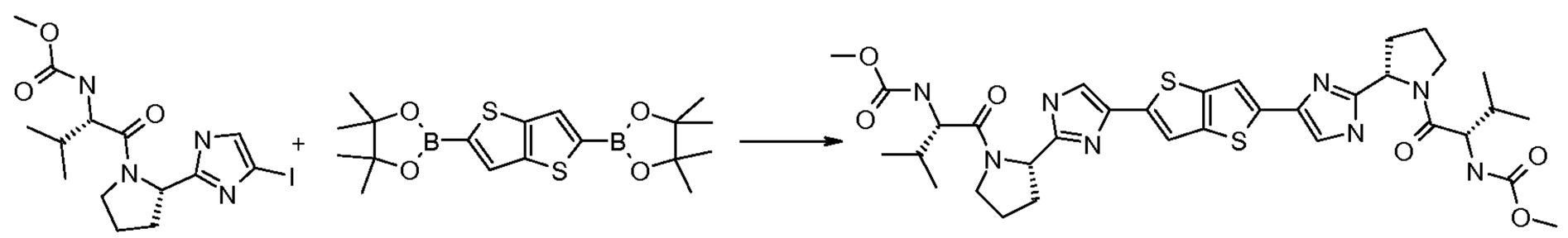
Examples 23 and 24

23	
24	

The above compounds were prepared according to the procedures disclosed herein.

Example 25:

Methyl N-[(1S)-1-[(2S)-2-[4-[2-[2-[(2S)-1-[(2S)-2-(methoxycarbonylamino)-3-methyl-butanoyl]pyrrolidin-2-yl]-1H-imidazol-4-yl]thieno[3,2-b]thiophen-5-yl]-1H-imidazol-2-yl]pyrrolidine-1-carbonyl]-2-methyl-propyl]carbamate

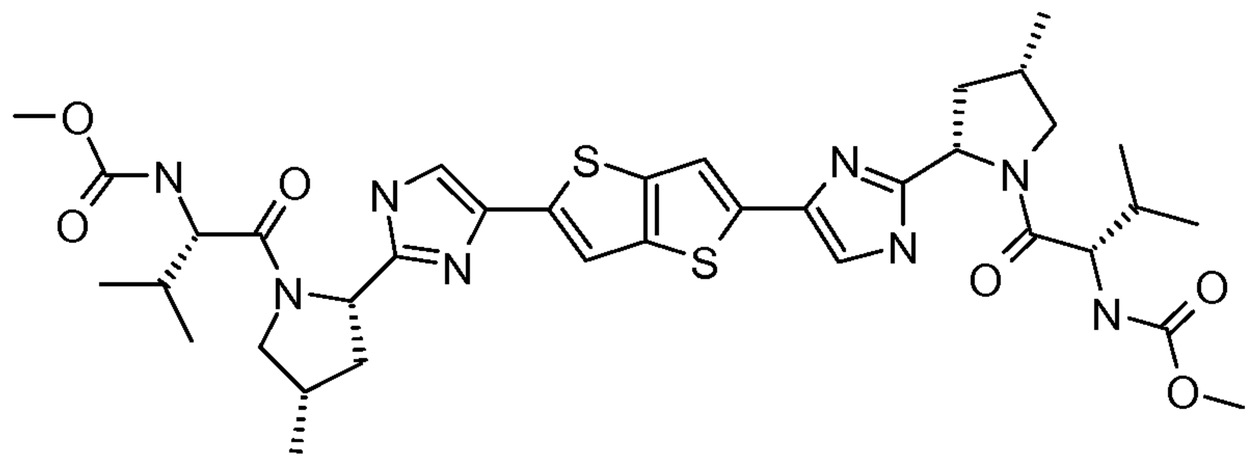


To a solution of methyl N-[(1S)-1-[(2S)-2-(4-iodo-1H-imidazol-2-yl)pyrrolidine-1-carbonyl]-2-methyl-propyl]carbamate (116.6 mg, 0.2775 mmol) and 4,4,5,5-tetramethyl-2-[5-(4,4,5,5-tetramethyl-1,3,2-dioxaborolan-2-yl)thieno[3,2-b]thiophen-2-yl]-1,3,2-dioxaborolane (47 mg, 0.08629 mmol) in acetonitrile (2.5 mL) in a microwave vial (10 mL) under nitrogen atmosphere are sequentially added $Pd(dppf)Cl_2$-CH_2Cl_2 (14.78 mg, 0.01810 mmol) and aq. sodium bicarbonate (603.3 µL of 1 M, 0.6033 mmol). The resultant suspension is heated in microwave at 150°C for 10 minutes and concentrated. The residue is dissolved in 10% MeOH-CH_2Cl_2, filtered off salts and concentrated. The residue is purified by silica gel column chromatography using methanol-ethyl acetate (0:100 to 15:85) as eluent to afford a yellow compound (29 mg) which is repurified by reverse phase HPLC to afford methyl N-[(1S)-1-[(2S)-2-[4-[2-[2-[(2S)-1-[(2S)-2-(methoxycarbonylamino)-3-methyl-butanoyl]pyrrolidin-2-yl]-1H-imidazol-4-yl]thieno[3,2-b]thiophen-5-yl]-1H-imidazol-2-yl]pyrrolidine-1-carbonyl]-2-methyl-propyl]carbamate (6.90 mg, 0.009014 mmol, 9.893%) as a light yellow solid. Rf = 0.29 (MeOH:EtOAc, 1:4). LC/MS, m/z = 725.5 ($M+H^+$); Rt : 7.55 minutes.

HPLC (Rt) = 18.1 minutes, Method: 10%-50% AcCN-water (0.01% TFA) for 40 min, Gemini C18 3µm, 4.6 mm x 250 mm.

Example 26:

Methyl N-[(1S)-1-[(2S,4S)-2-[4-[5-[2-[(2S,4S)-1-[(2S)-2-(methoxycarbonylamino)-3-methyl-butanoyl]-4-methyl-pyrrolidin-2-yl]-1H-imidazol-4-yl]thieno[3,2-b]thiophen-2-yl]-1H-imidazol-2-yl]-4-methyl-pyrrolidine-1-carbonyl]-2-methyl-propyl]carbamate

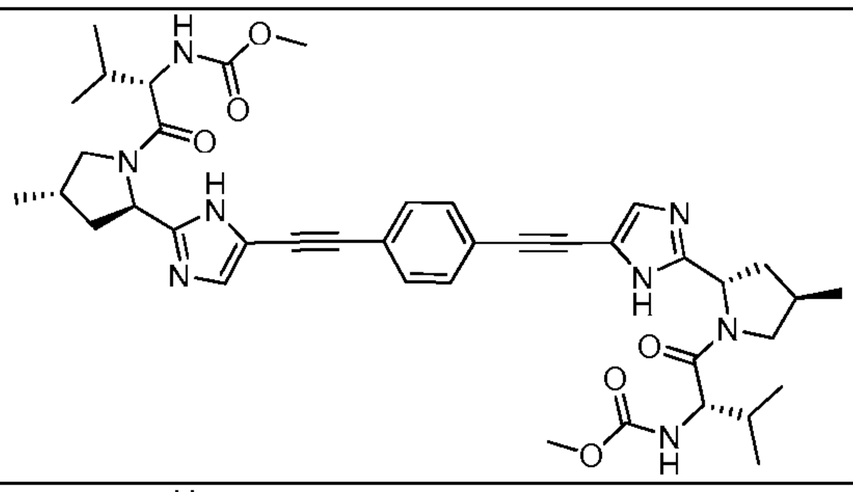
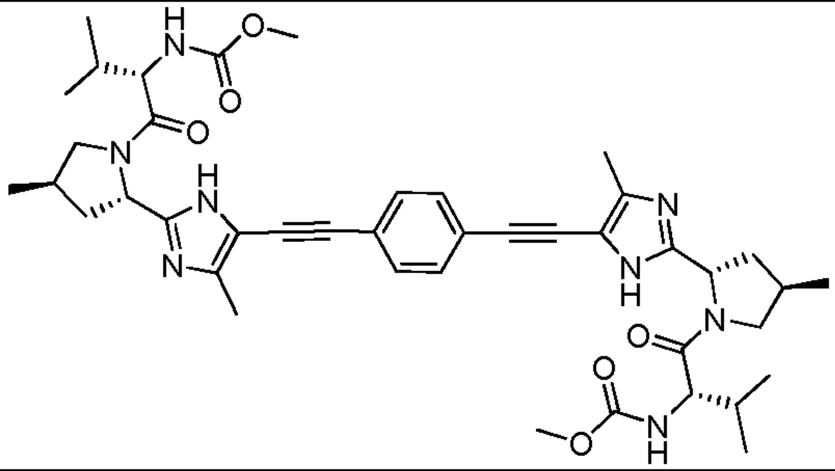
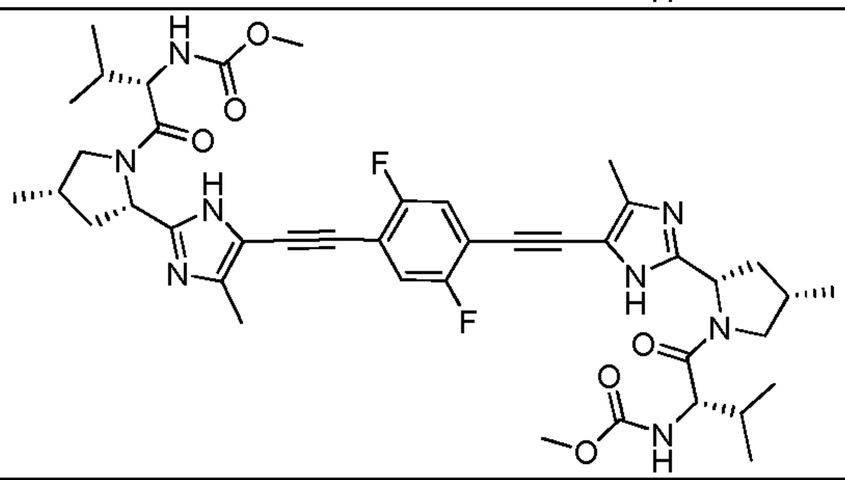


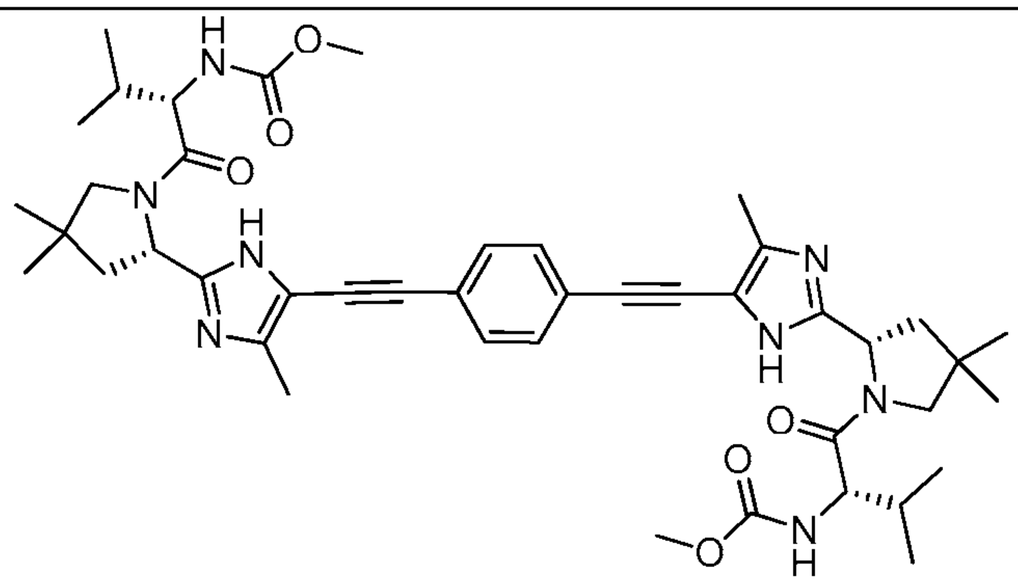
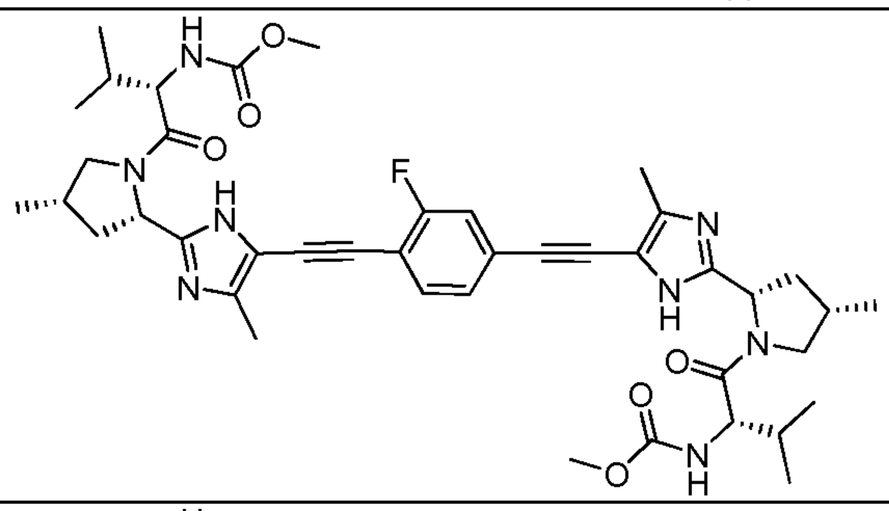
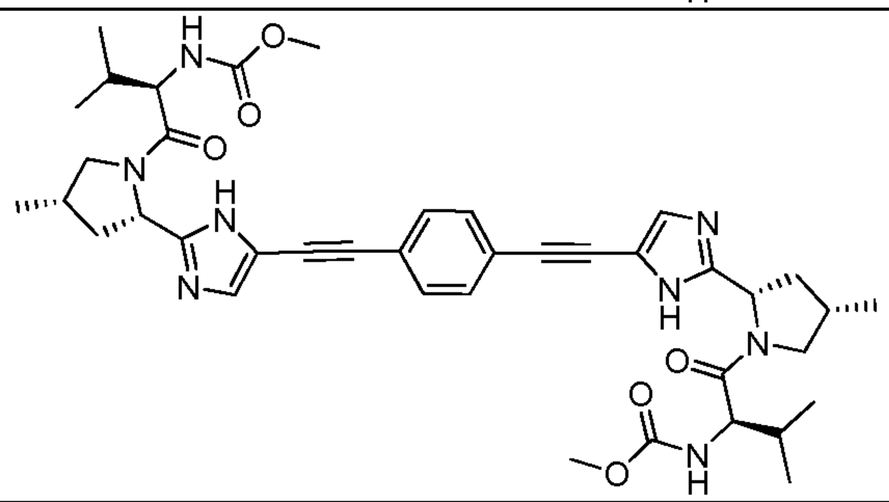
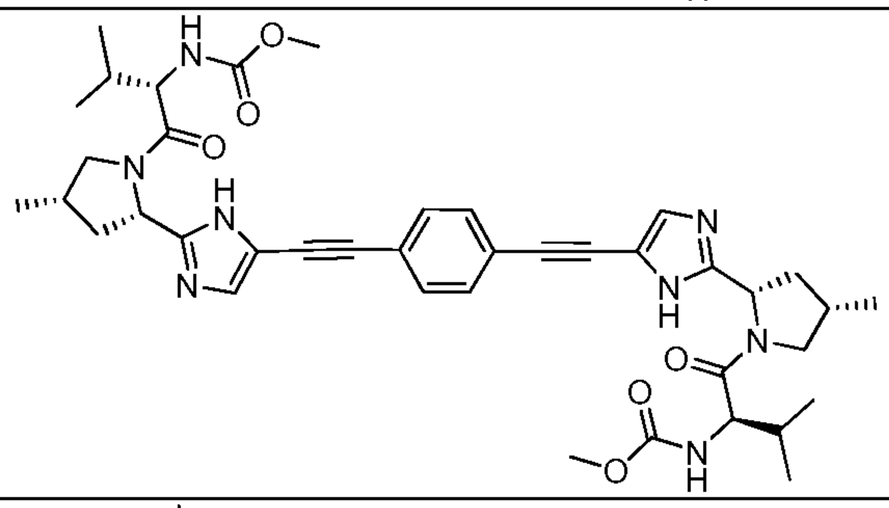
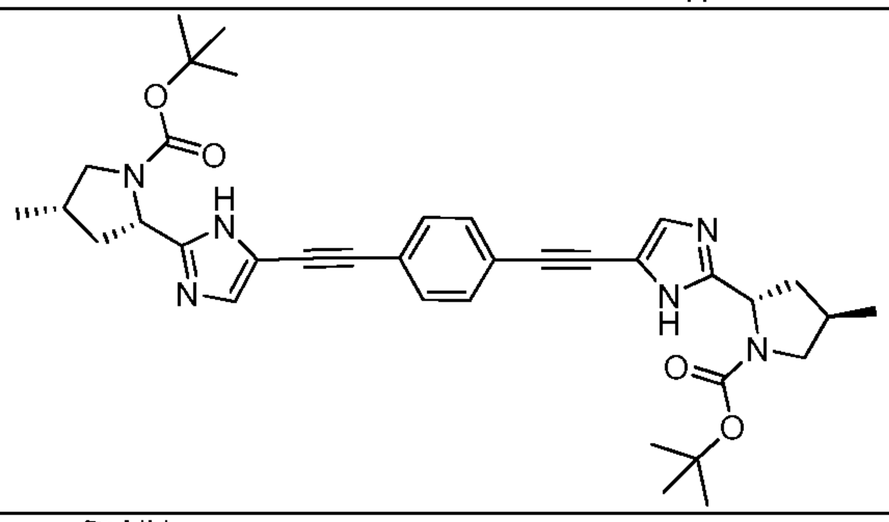
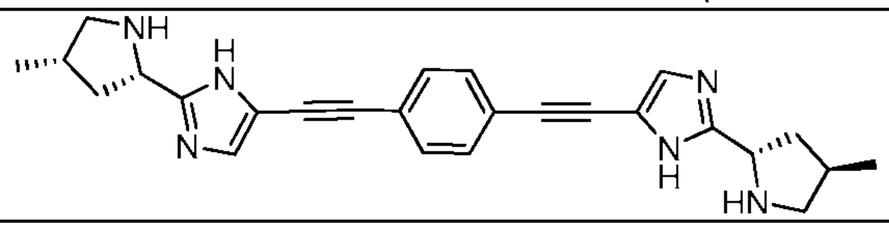
The title compound is prepared from methyl N-[(1S)-1-[(2S,4S)-2-(4-iodo-1H-imidazol-2-yl)-4-methyl-pyrrolidine-1-carbonyl]-2-methyl-propyl]carbamate as described for Example 25.

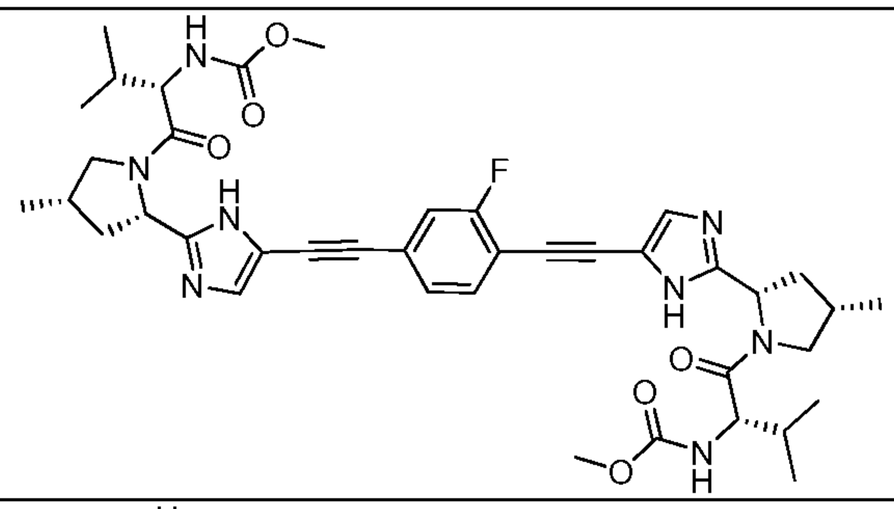
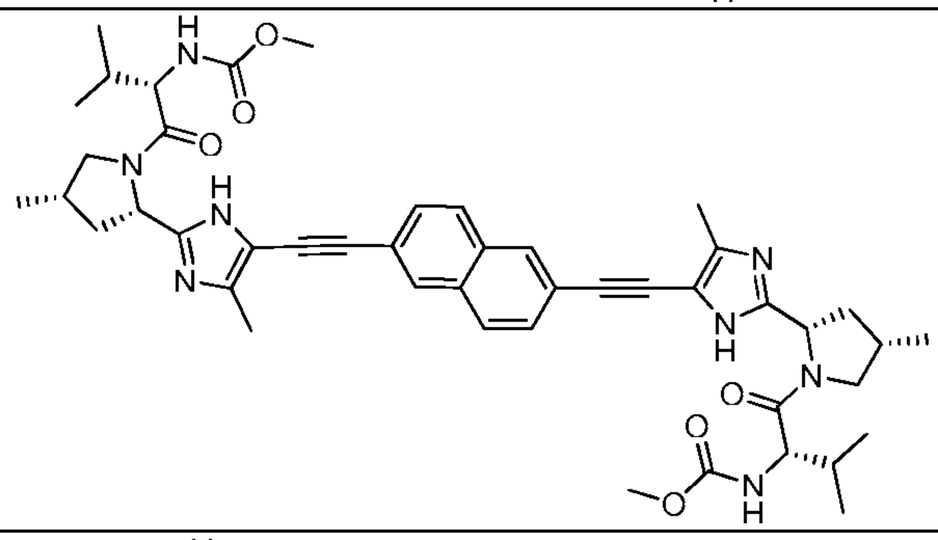
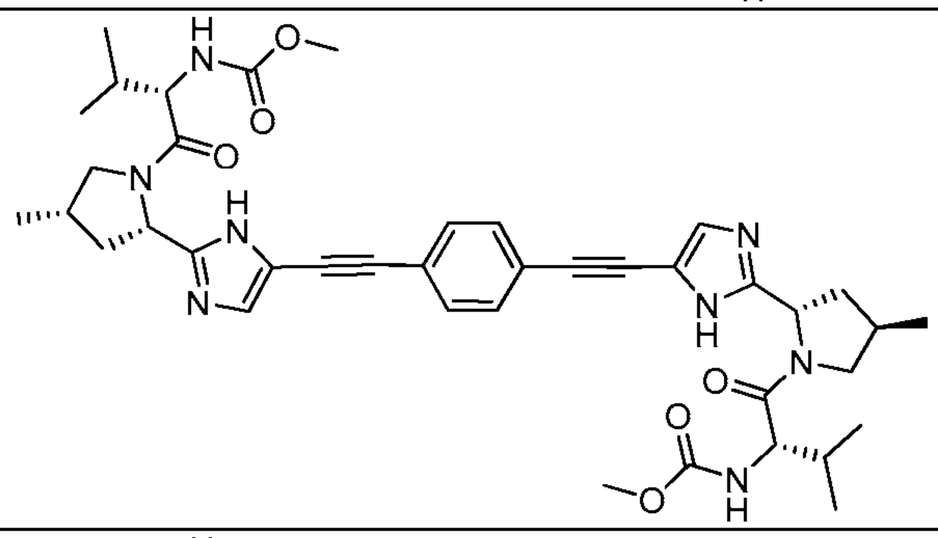
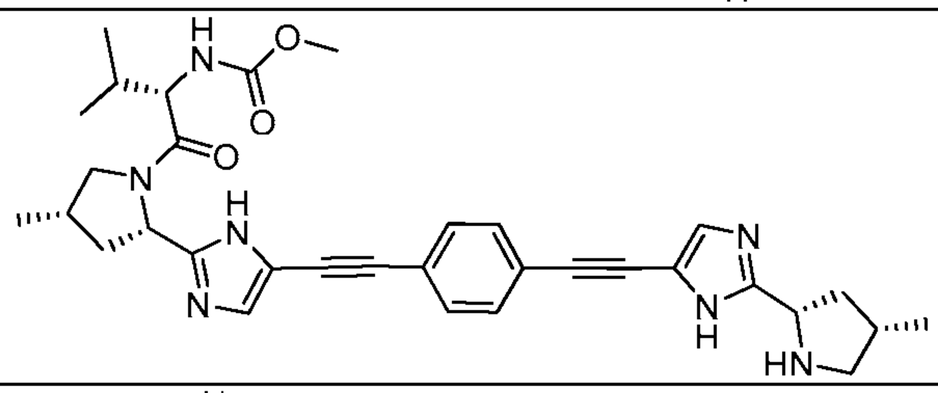
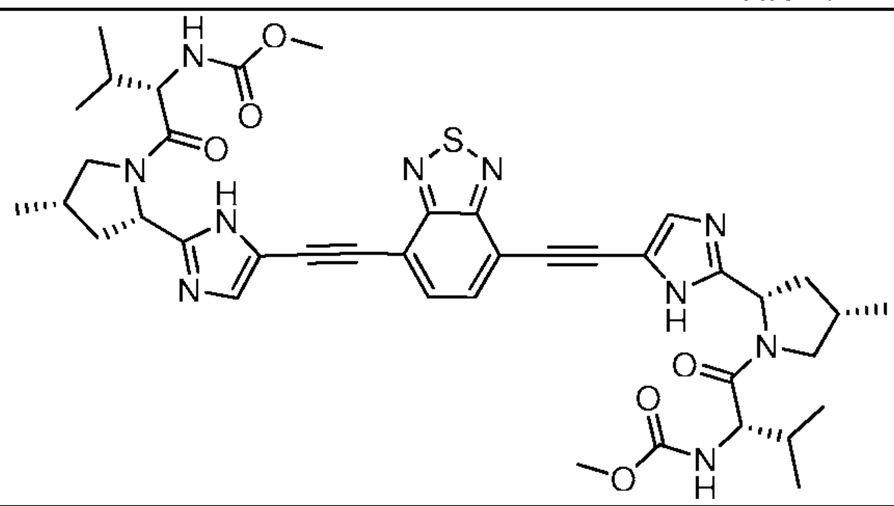
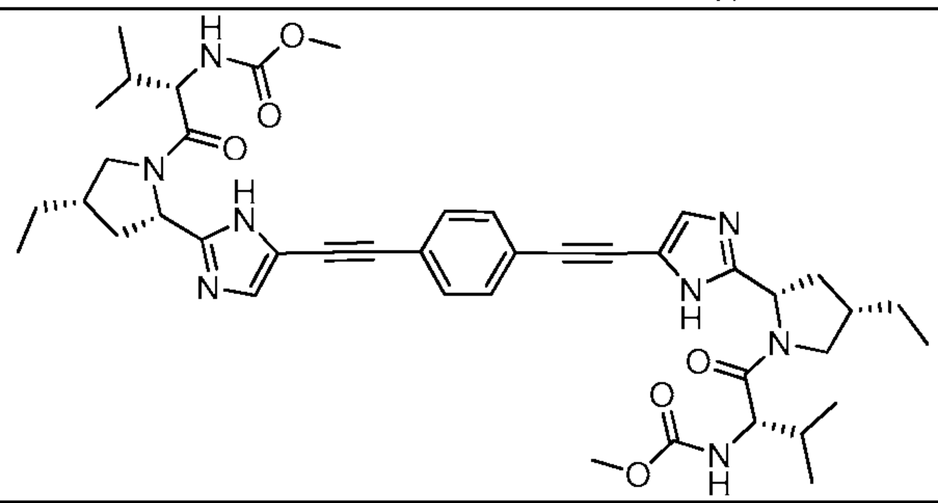
LC/MS, m/z = 753.15 ($M+H^+$); Rt : 7.01 minutes.

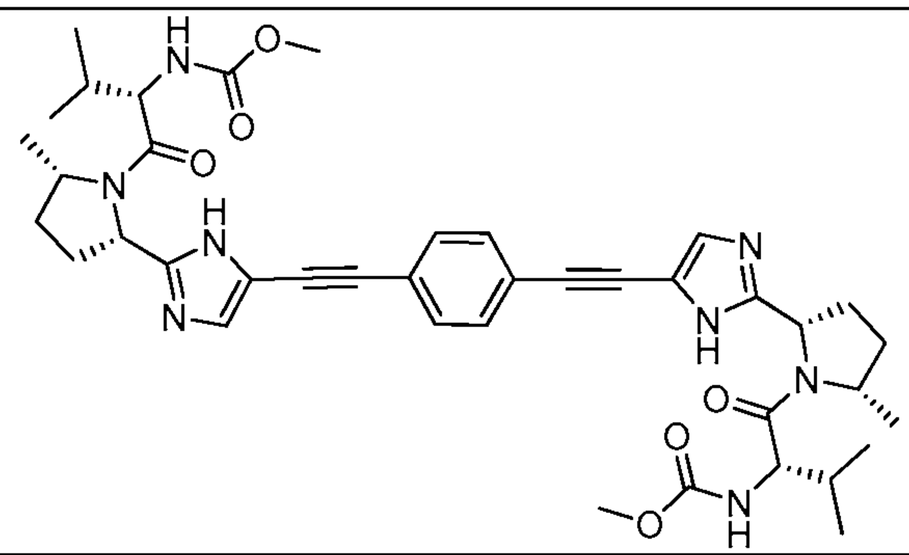
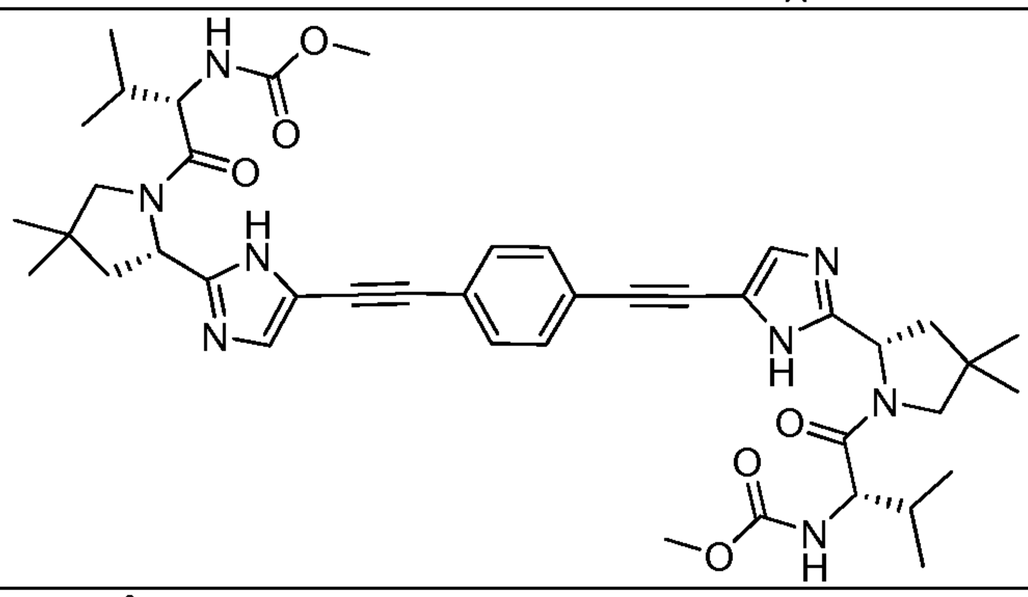
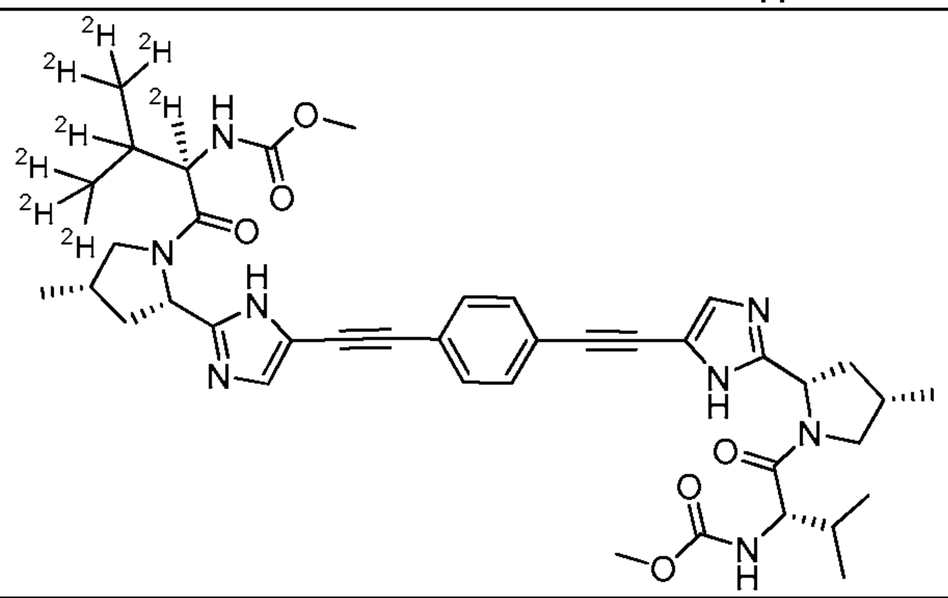
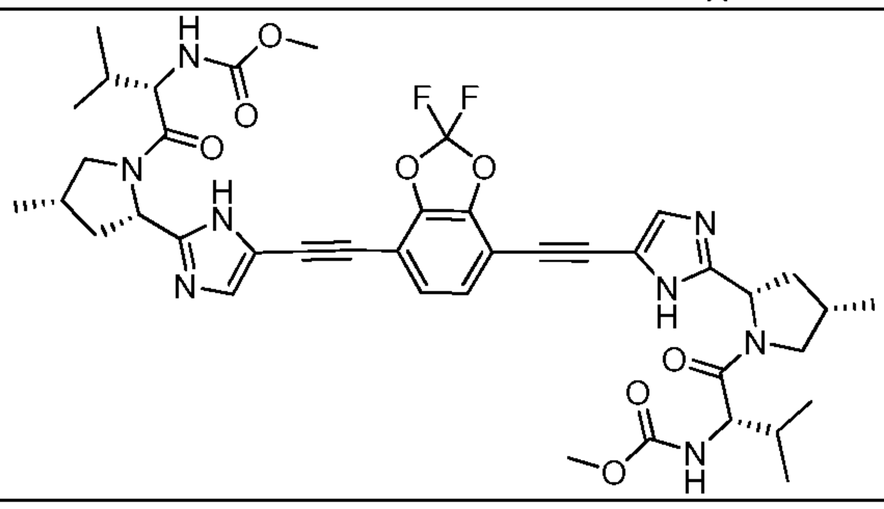
HPLC (Rt) = 9.9 minutes, Method: 20%-60% AcCN-water (0.01% TFA) for 40 min, Gemini C18 3µm, 4.6 mm x 250 mm.

Examples 27 to 45

27	
28	
29	

30	
31	
32	
33	
34	
35	

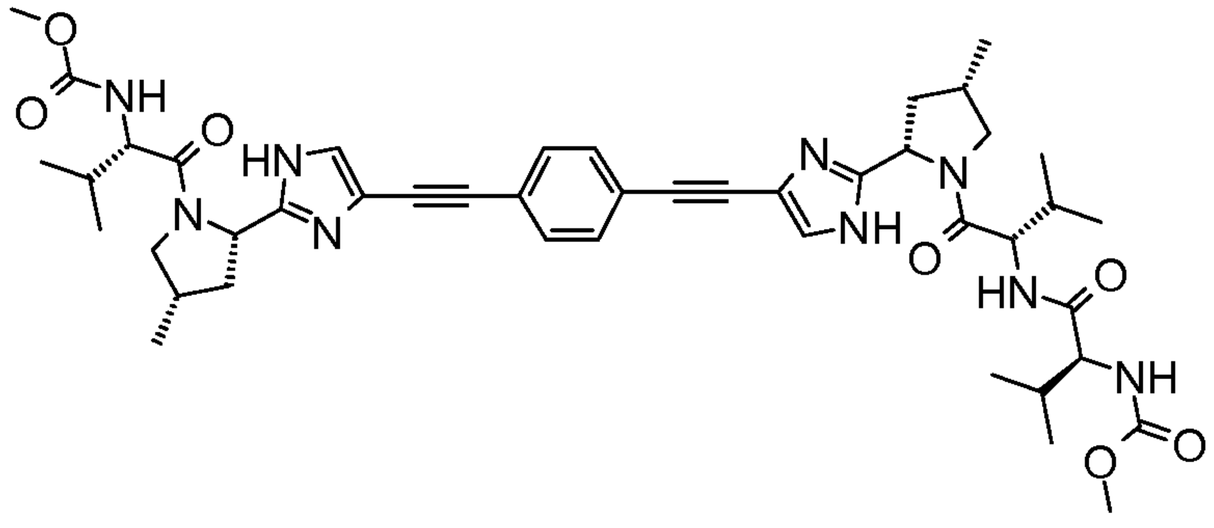
36	
37	
38	
39	
40	
41	

42	
43	
44	
45	

The above compounds were prepared according to the procedures disclosed herein.

Example 46:

Methyl N-[(1S)-1-[(2S,4S)-2-[5-[2-[4-[2-[2-[(2S,4S)-1-[(2S)-2-[[(2S)-2-(methoxycarbonylamino)-3-methyl-butanoyl]amino]-3-methyl-butanoyl]-4-methyl-pyrrolidin-2-yl]-1H-imidazol-5-yl]ethynyl]phenyl]ethynyl]-1H-imidazol-2-yl]-4-methyl-pyrrolidine-1-carbonyl]

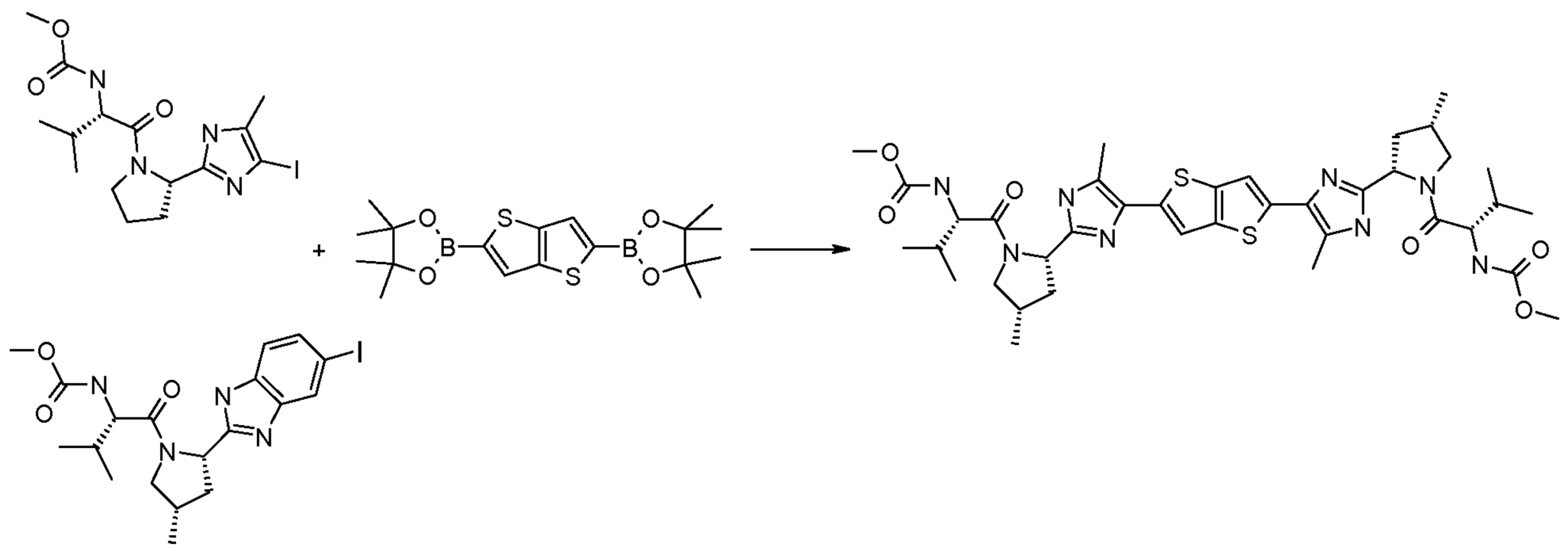


The same procedures are followed as mentioned for Example 4B.

LC/MS: m/z = 838.56 ($M+H^+$). HPLC (Rt) = 43.34 minutes; Method: Phenomenex Gemini C18 3 um, 25% CH3CN-H2O (isocratic).

Example 47:

Methyl N-[(1S)-1-[(2S,4S)-2-[4-[5-[2-[(2S,4S)-1-[(2S)-2-(methoxycarbonylamino)-3-methyl-butanoyl]-4-methyl-pyrrolidin-2-yl]-5-methyl-1H-imidazol-4-yl]thieno[3,2-b]thiophen-2-yl]-5-methyl-1H-imidazol-2-yl]-4-methyl-pyrrolidine-1-carbonyl]-2-methyl-propyl]carbamate



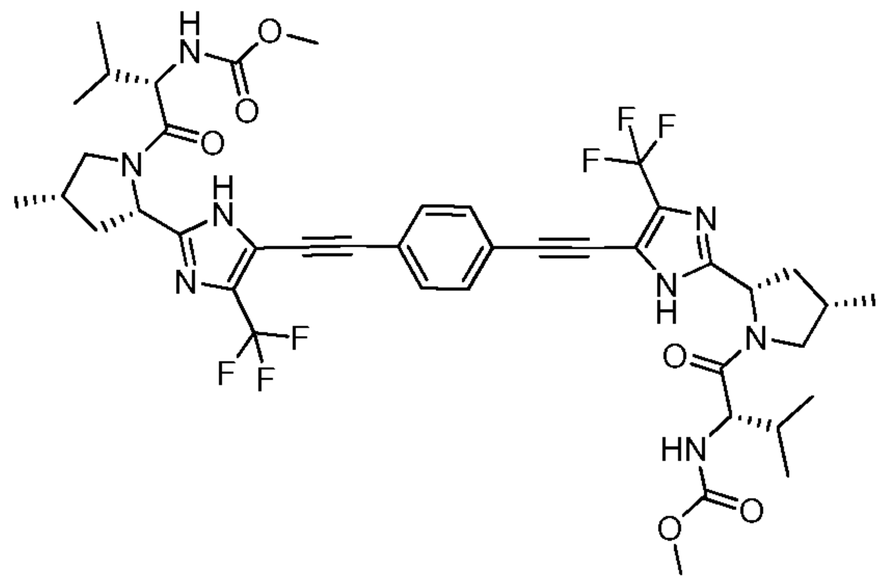
To a degassed (vacuum/nitrogen flush) mixture of methyl N-[(1S)-1-[(2S,4S)-2-(5-iodo-1H-benzimidazol-2-yl)-4-methyl-pyrrolidine-1-carbonyl]-2-methyl-propyl]carbamate (92.65 mg, 0.1913 mmol), methyl N-[(1S)-1-[(2S,4S)-2-(5-iodo-4-methyl-1H-imidazol-2-yl)-4-methyl-pyrrolidine-1-carbonyl]-2-methyl-propyl]carbamate (85.76 mg, 0.1913 mmol),

4,4,5,5-tetramethyl-2-[5-(4,4,5,5-tetramethyl-1,3,2-dioxaborolan-2-yl)thieno[3,2-b]thiophen-2-yl]-1,3,2-dioxaborolane (75 mg, 0.1913 mmol) and K_2CO_3 (132.2 mg, 0.9565 mmol) in degassed IPA (2.250 mL) and H_2O (750.0 µL) are added [3-(2-dicyclohexylphosphanylphenyl)-2,4-dimethoxy-phenyl]sulfonyloxysodium (15.69 mg, 0.03061 mmol) and $Pd(OAc)_2$ (1.718 mg, 0.007652 mmol). The reaction mixture is degassed twice and slowly heated at 90°C for 16 hours, diluted with ethyl acetate (30 mL) and then the aqueous solution is discarded. The organic layer is washed with brine, dried (Na_2SO_4) and concentrated. The residue is purified by silica gel column chromatography using ethyl acetate to 10% MeOH-EtOAc as eluent to afford a mixture of products (110 mg) as yellow solid. LC-MS shows the presence of a mixture of methyl N-[(1S)-1-[(2S,4S)-2-[4-[5-[2-[(2S,4S)-1-[(2S)-2-(methoxycarbonylamino)-3-methyl-butanoyl]-4-methyl-pyrrolidin-2-yl]-5-methyl-1H-imidazol-4-yl]thieno[3,2-b]thiophen-2-yl]-5-methyl-1H-imidazol-2-yl]-4-methyl-pyrrolidine-1-carbonyl]-2-methyl-propyl]carbamate (HPLC Rt 8.42 minutes, M.Wt. 781), methyl N-[(1S)-1-[(2S,4S)-2-[4-[5-[2-[(2S,4S)-1-[(2S)-2-(methoxycarbonylamino)-3-methyl-butanoyl]-4-methyl-pyrrolidin-2-yl]-1H-benzimidazol-5-yl]thieno[3,2-b]thiophen-2-yl]-5-methyl-1H-imidazol-2-yl]-4-methyl-pyrrolidine-1-carbonyl]-2-methyl-propyl]carbamate (HPLC Rt, 13.6 minutes, M.Wt. 817) and methyl N-[(1S)-1-[(2S,4S)-2-[5-[5-[2-[(2S,4S)-1-[(2S)-2-(methoxycarbonylamino)-3-methyl-butanoyl]-4-methyl-pyrrolidin-2-yl]-1H-benzimidazol-5-yl]thieno[3,2-b]thiophen-2-yl]-1H-benzimidazol-2-yl]-4-methyl-pyrrolidine-1-carbonyl]-2-methyl-propyl]carbamate (HPLC Rt. 19.3 minutes, M.Wt. 853.06). Reverse phase HPLC purification of the mixture gives the title compound (18.3 mg, 0.02160 mmol, 45.17%) as a light yellow solid.

LC/MS, m/z = 781.17 ($M+H^+$); Rt : 6.92 minutes.

HPLC (Rt) = 8.26 minutes, Method: 20%-60% AcCN-water (0.01% TFA) for 40 min, Gemini C18 3µm, 4.6 mm x 250 mm.

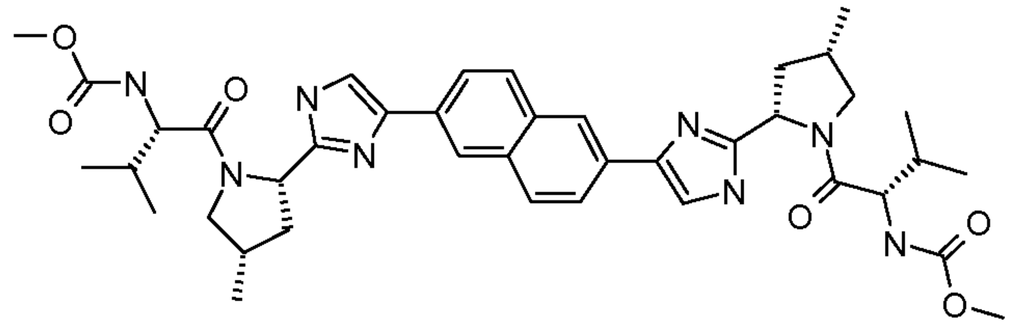
Example 48



The above compound was prepared according to the procedures disclosed herein.

Example 49:

Methyl N-[(1S)-1-[(2S,4S)-2-[4-[6-[2-[(2S,4S)-1-[(2S)-2-(methoxycarbonylamino)-3-methyl-butanoyl]-4-methyl-pyrrolidin-2-yl]-1H-imidazol-4-yl]-2-naphthyl]-1H-imidazol-2-yl]-4-methyl-pyrrolidine-1-carbonyl]-2-methyl-propyl]carbamate

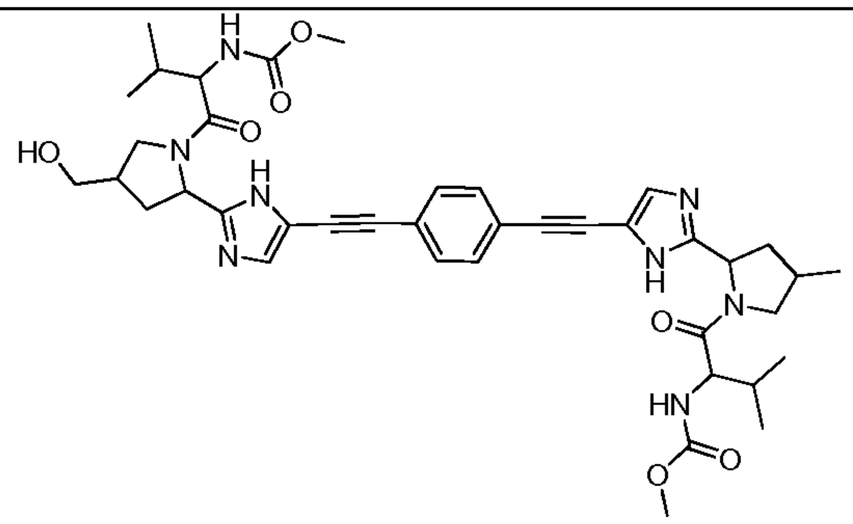
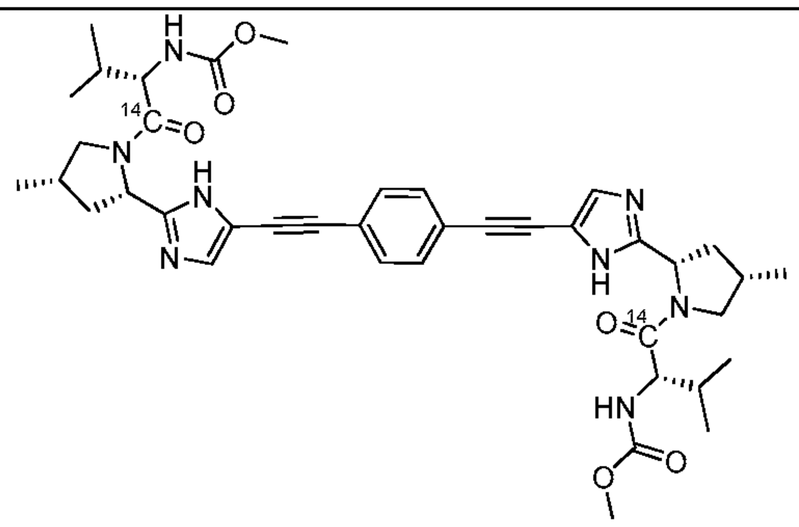


The title compound is prepared from methyl N-[(1S)-1-[(2S,4S)-2-(4-iodo-1H-imidazol-2-yl)-4-methyl-pyrrolidine-1-carbonyl]-2-methyl-propyl]carbamate, methyl N-[(1S)-1-[(2S,4S)-2-(5-iodo-1H-benzimidazol-2-yl)-4-methyl-pyrrolidine-1-carbonyl]-2-methyl-propyl]carbamate and 4,4,5,5-tetramethyl-2-[6-(4,4,5,5-tetramethyl-1,3,2-dioxaborolan-2-yl)-2-naphthyl]-1,3,2-dioxaborolane as described for Example 47.

LC/MS, m/z = 741.42 ($M+H^+$); Rt : 6.46 minutes.

HPLC (Rt) = 6.72 minutes, Method: 20%-60% AcCN-water (0.01% TFA) for 40 min, Gemini C18 3µm, 4.6 mm x 250 mm.

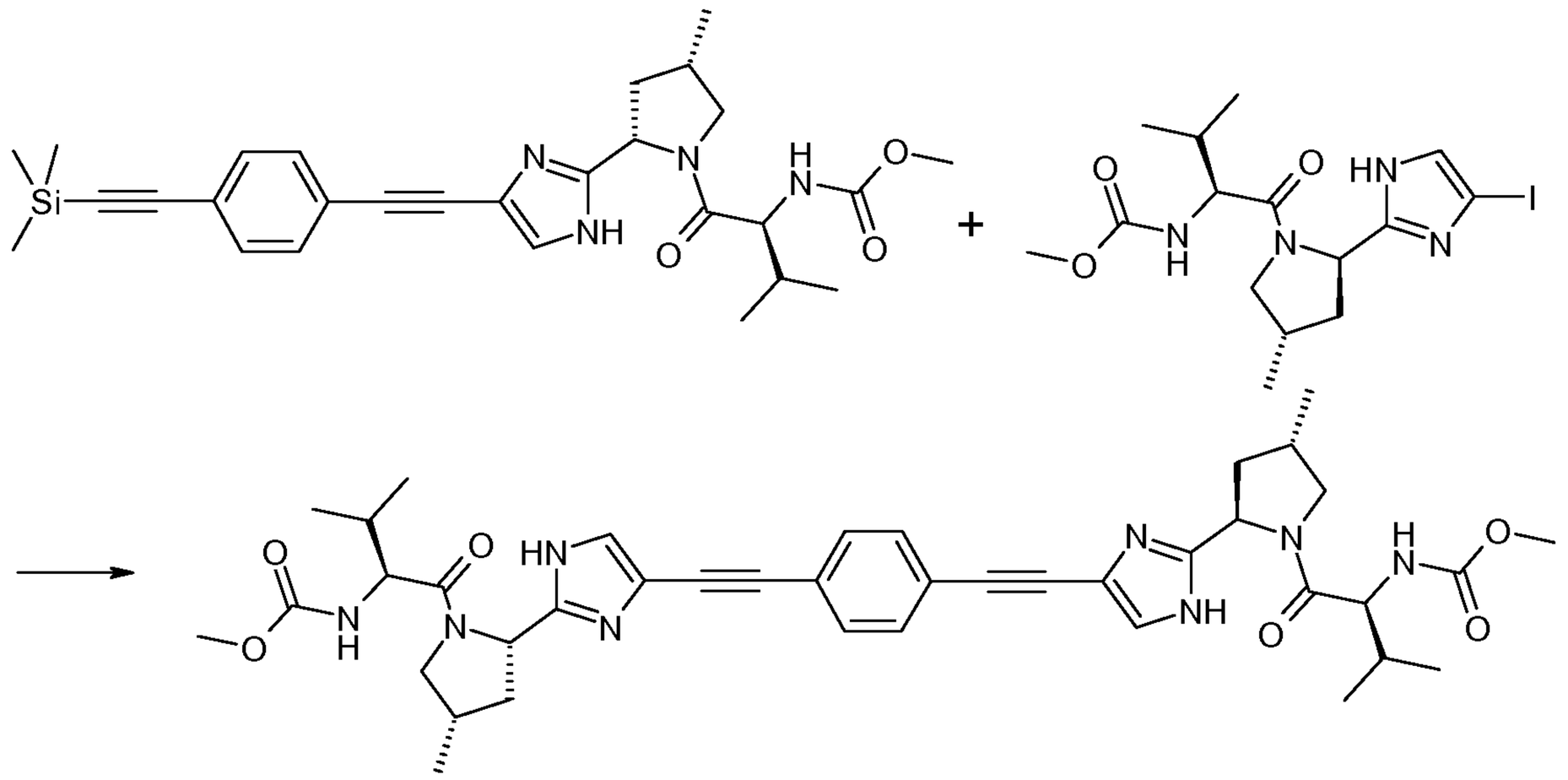
Examples 50 and 51

50	
51	

The above compounds were prepared according to the procedures disclosed herein.

Example 52

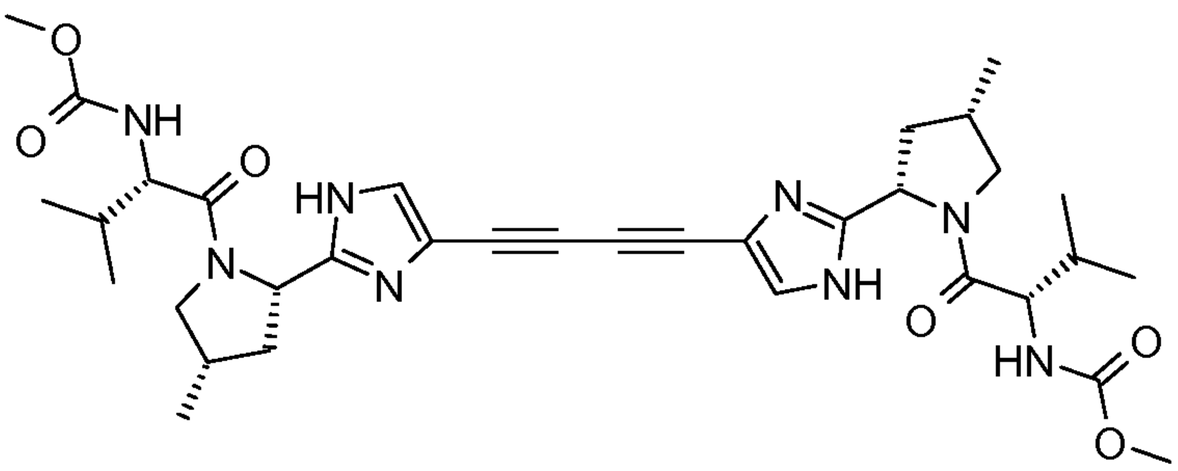
Methyl N-[(1S)-1-[(2R,4S)-2-[4-[2-[4-[2-[2-[(2S,4S)-1-[(2S)-2-(methoxycarbonylamino)-3-methyl-butanoyl]-4-methyl-pyrrolidin-2-yl]-1H-imidazol-4-yl]ethynyl]phenyl]ethynyl]-1H-imidazol-2-yl]-4-methyl-pyrrolidine-1-carbonyl]-2-methyl-propyl]carbamate



To a stirred solution of methyl N-[(1S)-2-methyl-1-[(2S,4S)-4-methyl-2-[4-[2-[4-(2-trimethylsilylethynyl)phenyl]ethynyl]-1H-imidazol-2-yl]pyrrolidine-1-carbonyl]propyl]carbamate (63.89 mg, 0.1266 mmol) in DMF (2 mL) are added methyl N-[(1S)-1-[(2R,4S)-2-(4-iodo-1H-imidazol-2-yl)-4-methyl-pyrrolidine-1-carbonyl]-2-methyl-propyl]carbamate (50 mg, 0.1151 mmol), $PdCl_2(dppf)$-CH_2Cl_2 (9.400 mg, 0.01151 mmol), CuI (2.192 mg, 0.01151 mmol), DBU (140.2 mg, 137.7 µL, 0.9208 mmol) and water (10.37 mg, 10.37 µL, 0.5755 mmol). The mixture is degassed and heated at 75°C under nitrogen overnight. After removal of the solvent under reduced pressured, the residue is suspended in water, extracted with CH_2Cl_2 (3x10 mL). The combined organic extracts are washed with brine, dried over Na_2SO_4, concentrated, purified by silica gel column chromatography using MeOH (0-6%) in CH_2Cl_2 and the major fraction is further purified using reverse-phase prep-HPLC to provide methyl N-[(1S)-1-[(2R,4S)-2-[4-[2-[4-[2-[2-[(2S,4S)-1-[(2S)-2-(methoxycarbonylamino)-3-methyl-butanoyl]-4-methyl-pyrrolidin-2-yl]-1H-imidazol-4-yl]ethynyl]phenyl]ethynyl]-1H-imidazol-2-yl]-4-methyl-pyrrolidine-1-carbonyl]-2-methyl-propyl]carbamate (3.9 mg, 0.005199 mmol, 4.517%) as a white solid. LC/MS: m/z = 739.43 ($M+H^+$). ^1H NMR (CD_3OD, 400 MHz): δ 7.55-7.65 (m, 6H), 5.25(m, 1H), 5.10(m, 1H), 4.20 (m, 4H), 3.62 (2xs, 6H), 2.50 (m, 4H), 2.00 (m, 4H), 1.15 (m, 8H), 0.84(m, 12H).

Example 53

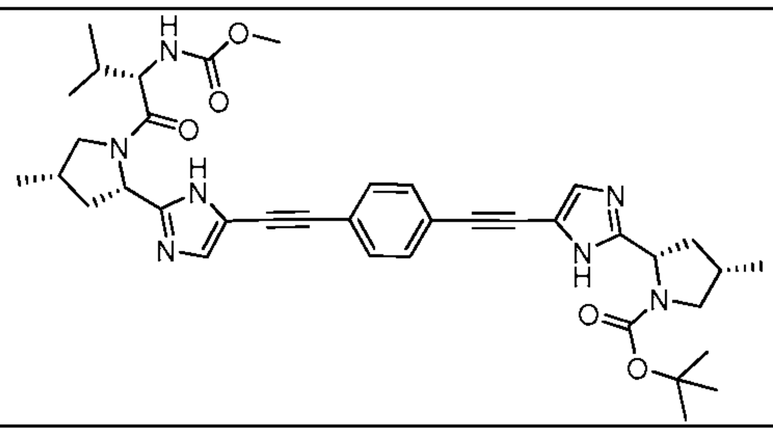
Methyl N-[(1S)-1-[(2S,4S)-2-[4-[4-[2-[(2S,4S)-1-[(2S)-2-(methoxycarbonylamino)-3-methyl-butanoyl]-4-methyl-pyrrolidin-2-yl]-1H-imidazol-4-yl]buta-1,3-diynyl]-1H-imidazol-2-yl]-4-methyl-pyrrolidine-1-carbonyl]-2-methyl-propyl]carbamate



LC/MS, m/z = 663.44 ($M+H^+$); Rt : 7.61 minutes.

HPLC RT = 14.47 minutes; Method: 20%-60% AcCN-water (0.01% TFA) for 40 min, Gemini C18 3µm, 4.6 mm x 250 mm.

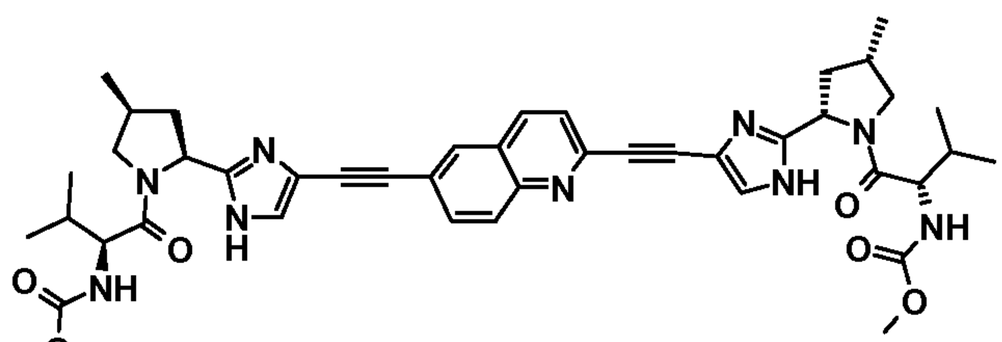
Example 54

54	

The above compound was prepared according to the procedures disclosed herein.

Example 55

Methyl N-[(1S)-1-[(2S,4S)-2-[4-[2-[2-[2-[2-[(2S,4S)-1-[(2S)-2-(methoxycarbonylamino)-3-methyl-butanoyl]-4-methyl-pyrrolidin-2-yl]-1H-imidazol-4-yl]ethynyl]-6-quinolyl]ethynyl]-1H-imidazol-2-yl]-4-methyl-pyrrolidine-1-carbonyl]-2-methyl-propyl]carbamate



The title compound is synthesized from methyl N-[(1S)-1-[(2S,4S)-2-(4-iodo-1H-imidazol-2-yl)-4-methyl-pyrrolidine-1-carbonyl]-2-methyl-propyl]carbamate and 2,6-diethynylquinoline as described in Example 6.

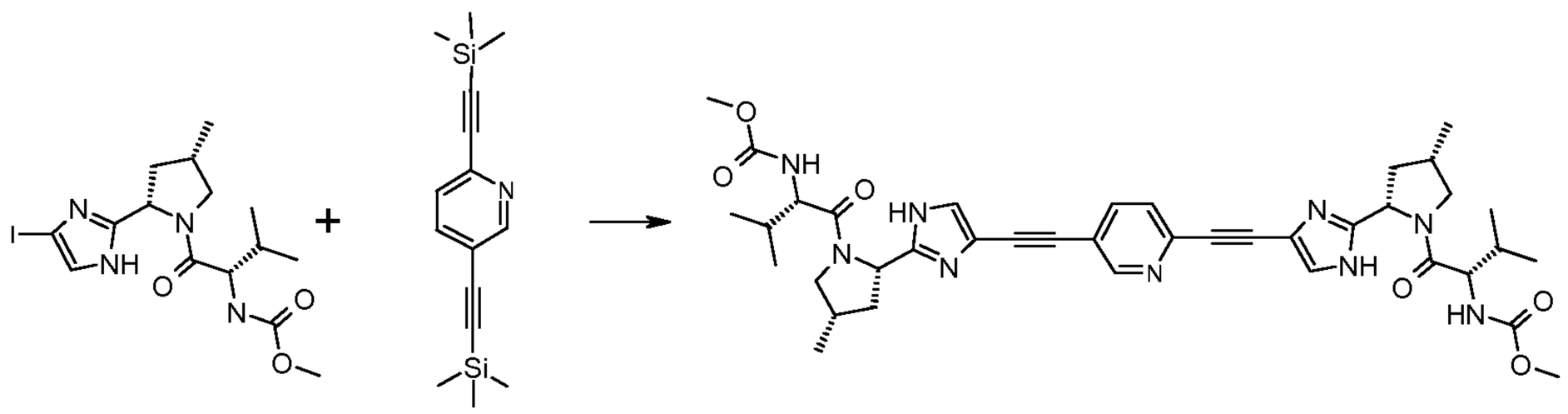
^{1}H NMR (400 MHz, CD_3OD): δ 8.30 (d, 1H), 8.03 (s, 1H), 7.92 (d, 1H), 7.79 (d, 1H), 7.63(d, 1H), 7.45 (s, 1H), 7.32 (s, 1H), 5.01 (m, 2H), 4.19 (m, 2H), 4.17 (m, 2H), 3.62 (s, 6H), 2.46 (m, 2H), 2.34 (m, 2H),1.99-1.86 (m, 4H), 1.36-1.27 (m, 2H), 1.17 (d, 6H), 0.89-0.82 (m, 12H).

LC/MS: m/z = 790.3 ($M + H^+$).

2,6-Diethynylquinoline is prepared from 2,6-dibromoquinoline according to the procedure reported for intermediate 12.

Example 56

Methyl N-[(1S)-1-[(2S,4S)-2-[4-[2-[5-[2-[2-[(2S,4S)-1-[(2S)-2-(methoxycarbonylamino)-3-methyl-butanoyl]-4-methyl-pyrrolidin-2-yl]-1H-imidazol-4-yl]ethynyl]-2-pyridyl]ethynyl]-1H-imidazol-2-yl]-4-methyl-pyrrolidine-1-carbonyl]-2-methyl-propyl]carbamate



To a mixture of methyl N-[(1S)-1-[(2S,4S)-2-(4-iodo-1H-imidazol-2-yl)-4-methyl-pyrrolidine-1-carbonyl]-2-methyl-propyl]carbamate (102.4 mg, 0.2234 mmol), trimethyl-[2-[6-(2-trimethylsilylethynyl)-3-pyridyl]ethynyl]silane (31 mg, 0.1117 mmol), $PdCl_2$(dppf)-CH_2Cl_2 (13.69 mg, 0.01676 mmol) and copper Iodide (3.192 mg, 0.01676 mmol) is added DMF (1 mL) under nitrogen atmosphere. The reaction mixture is degassed thrice (vacuum and nitrogen gas) and DBU (204.0 mg, 200.4 µL, 1.340 mmol) is added. The reaction mixture is degassed three times, degassed water (6.037 mg, 6.037 µL, 0.3351 mmol) is added and heated at 60°C for 8 hours. The reaction mixture is diluted with water (6 mL), extracted with methanol-CH_2Cl_2, and the combined extracts are washed with brine. The organic layer is dried (Na_2SO_4), concentrated and purified by silica gel column chromatography using methanol-CH_2Cl_2 (0 to 10%) as eluent to afford a crude product (43 mg) which is repurified by HPLC to afford methyl N-[(1S)-1-[(2S,4S)-2-[4-[2-[5-[2-[2-[(2S,4S)-1-[(2S)-2-(methoxycarbonylamino)-3-methyl-butanoyl]-4-methyl-pyrrolidin-2-yl]-1H-imidazol-4-yl]ethynyl]-2-pyridyl]ethynyl]-1H-imidazol-2-yl]-4-methyl-pyrrolidine-1-carbonyl]-2-methyl-propyl]carbamate (22.7 mg, 0.02985 mmol, 26.73%).

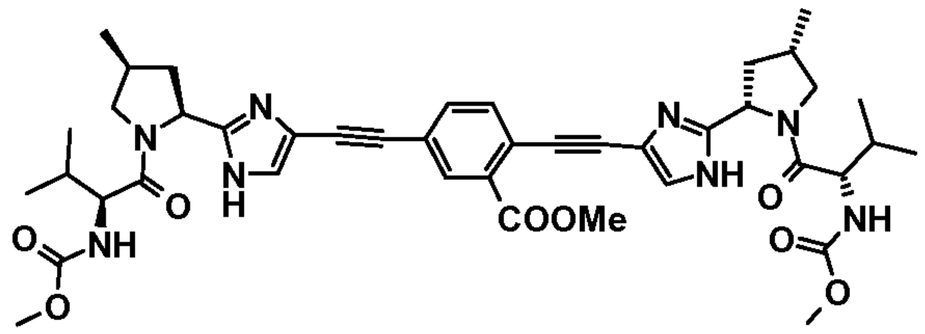
^{1}H NMR (400 MHz, CD_3OD): δ 8.49 (s, 1H), 7.78 (d, 1 H), 7.46 (d, 1 H), 7.3 (s, 1 H), 7.25 (s, 1 H), 4.95 - 4.86 (m, 2 H), 4.15 - 4.05 (m, 4 H), 3.54 (s, 6 H), 3.3 - 3.5 (m, 2 H), 2.44 - 2.16 (m, 4 H), 1.94 - 1.66 (m, 4 H), 1.08 (d, 6 H), 0.77 (d, 6 H), 0.74 (d, 6 H).

LC/MS: m/z = 740.45 ($M+H^+$). Rt = 7.75 minutes.

HPLC (Rt) = 13.4 minutes, Method: 20%-60% AcCN-water (0.01% TFA) for 40 minutes, Gemini C18 3µm, 4.6 mm x 250 mm.

Example 57

Methyl 2,5-bis[2-[2-[(2S,4S)-1-[(2S)-2-(methoxycarbonylamino)-3-methyl-butanoyl]-4-methyl-pyrrolidin-2-yl]-1H-imidazol-4-yl]ethynyl]benzoate



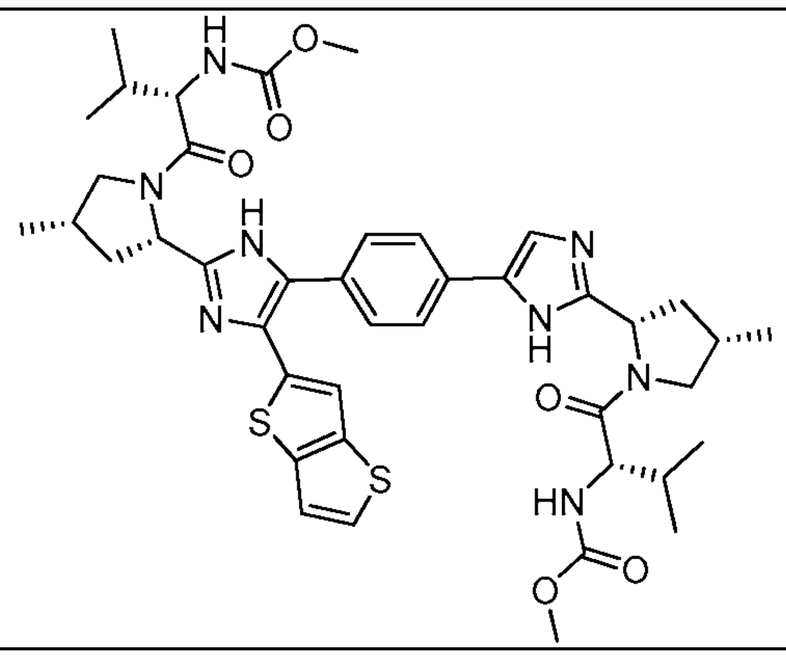
The title compound is synthesized from *tert*-butyl (2S,4S)-2-(4-iodo-1H-imidazol-2-yl)-4-methyl-pyrrolidine-1-carboxylate and methyl 2,5-diethynylbenzoate as described in Example 4B.

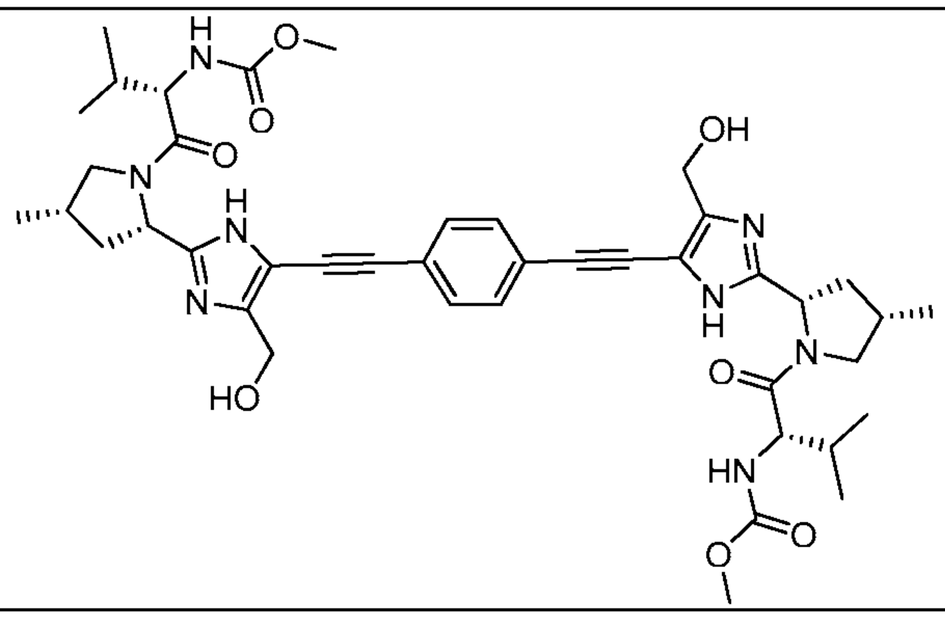
1H NMR (400 MHz, CD_3OD): δ 7.97 (s, 1H), 7.58 (m, 2H), 7.29 (m, 2H), 4.98 (m, 2H),4.21-4.15 (m, 4H), 3.92 (s, 3H), 3.62 (s, 6H), 2.48-2.42 (m, 2H), 2.36-2.31 (m, 2H), 1.97-1.85(m, 4H), 1.16 (s, 6H), 0.81-0.88 (m, 12H).

LC/MS: m/z = 797.4 ($M + H^+$).

Methyl 2,5-diethynylbenzoate is prepared from methyl 2,5-diiodobenzoate according to the procedure reported for intermediate 12.

Examples 58 and 59

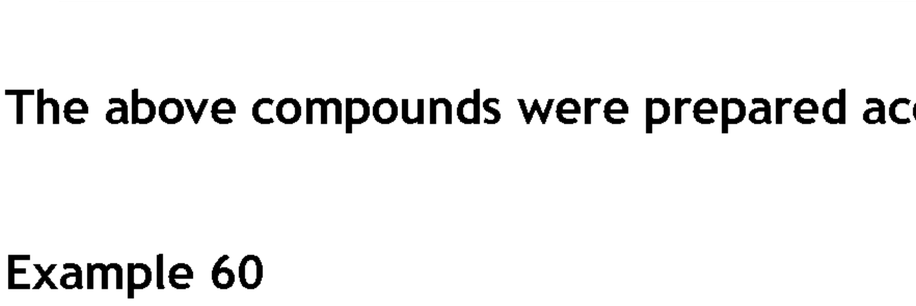
58	

59	

The above compounds were prepared according to the procedures disclosed herein.

Example 60

Methyl N-[(1S)-1-[(2S,4S)-2-[4-[2-[5-[2-[2-[(2S,4S)-1-[(2S)-2-(methoxycarbonylamino)-3-methyl-butanoyl]-4-methyl-pyrrolidin-2-yl]-1H-imidazol-4-yl]ethynyl]-2-thienyl]ethynyl]-1H-imidazol-2-yl]-4-methyl-pyrrolidine-1-carbonyl]-2-methyl-propyl]carbamate



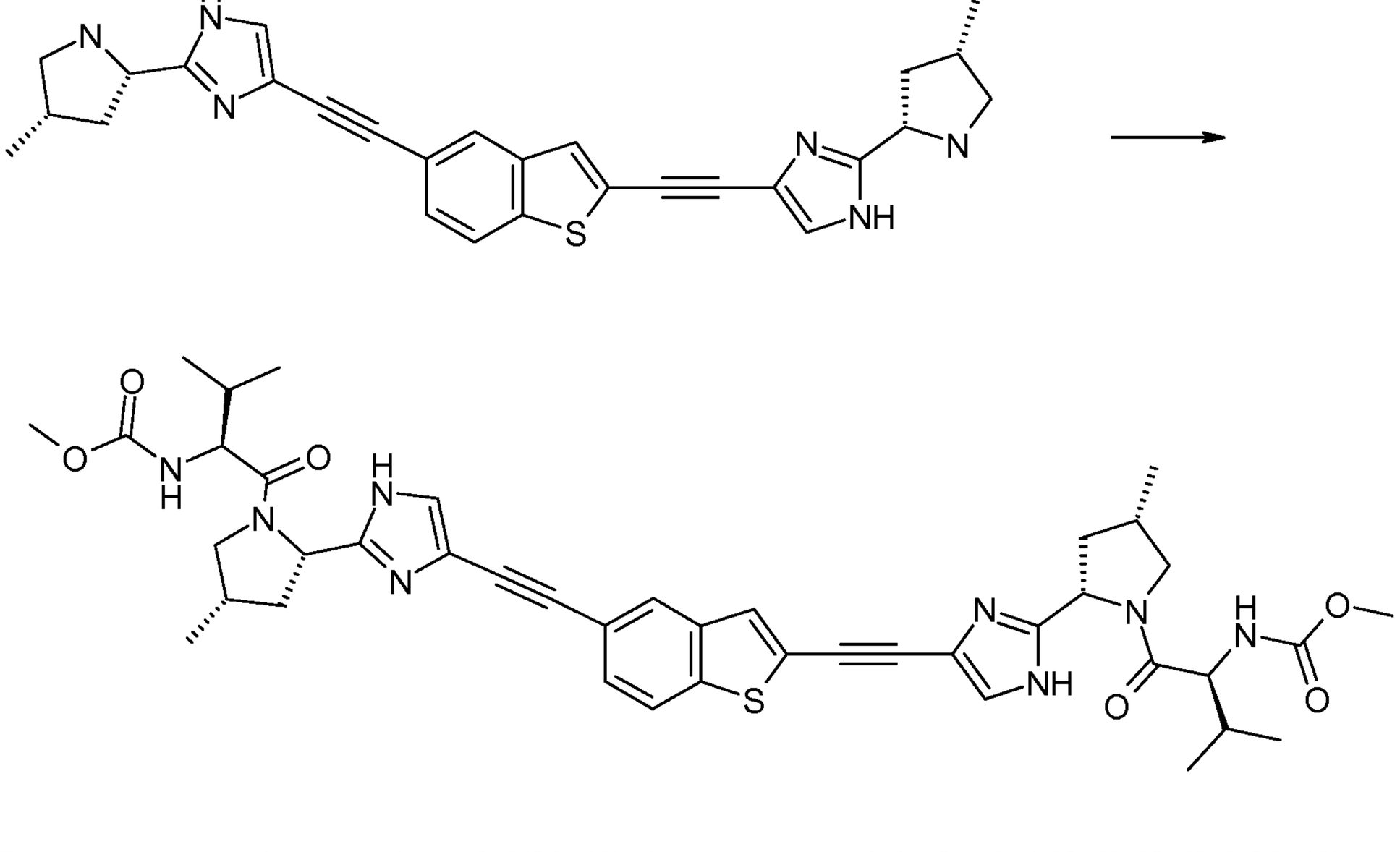
The title compound is synthesized from methyl N-[(1S)-1-[(2S)-2-(4-ethynyl-1Himidazol-2-yl)pyrrolidine-1-carbonyl]-2-methyl-propyl]carbamate and 2,5-dibromothiophene as described in Example 13.

^{1}H NMR (400 MHz, CD_3OD): δ 7.27 (m, 2H), 7.12 (m, 2H), 4.95 (m, 2H), 4.2-4.07(m, 4H), 3.62 (s, 6H), 2.47-2.41 (m, 2H), 2.35-2.32 (m, 2H), 1.96-1.89 (m, 2H), 1.91-1.83 (m, 2H), 1.27 (m, 2H),1.15(d, 6H), 0.91-0.82 (m, 12H).

LC/MS: m/z = 745.3 ($M + H^+$).

Example 61

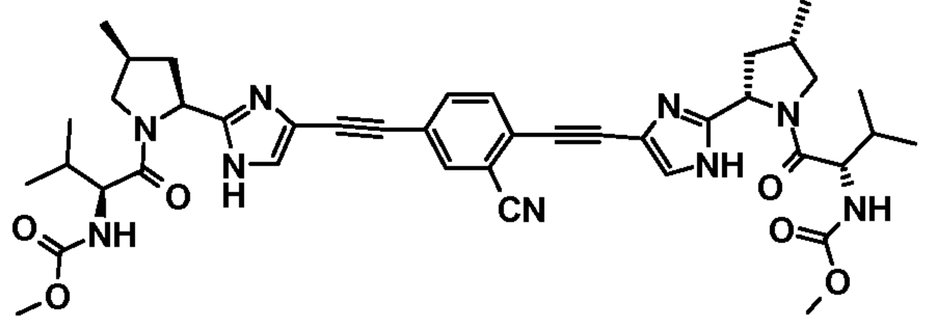
Methyl N-[(1S)-1-[(2S,4S)-2-[4-[2-[2-[2-[2-[(2S,4S)-1-[(2S)-2-(methoxycarbonylamino)-3-methyl-butanoyl]-4-methyl-pyrrolidin-2-yl]-1H-imidazol-4-yl]ethynyl]benzothiophen-5-yl]ethynyl]-1H-imidazol-2-yl]-4-methyl-pyrrolidine-1-carbonyl]-2-methyl-propyl]carbamate



To a solution of 2-[(2S,4S)-4-methylpyrrolidin-2-yl]-4-[2-[2-[2-[2-[(2S,4S)-4-methylpyrrolidin-2-yl]-1H-imidazol-4-yl]ethynyl]benzothiophen-5-yl]ethynyl]-1H-imidazole (Hydrochloric Acid (4)) (30 mg, 0.04789 mmol) HCl salt in DMF (2 mL) are added (2S)-2-(methoxycarbonylamino)-3-methyl-butanoic acid (20.97 mg, 0.1197 mmol), HATU (45.51 mg, 0.1197 mmol) and DIPEA (61.89 mg, 83.41 µL, 0.4789 mmol). The mixture is stirred at rt overnight. After removal of the solvent under reduced pressure, the residue is purified by silica gel column chromatography using MeOH (0-6%) in CH_2Cl_2, and the major fraction is further purified using reverse-phase prep-HPLC to provide methyl N-[(1S)-1-[(2S,4S)-2-[4-[2-[2-[2-[2-[(2S,4S)-1-[(2S)-2-(methoxycarbonylamino)-3-methyl-butanoyl]-4-methyl-pyrrolidin-2-yl]-1H-imidazol-4-yl]ethynyl]benzothiophen-5-yl]ethynyl]-1H-imidazol-2-yl]-4-methyl-pyrrolidine-1-carbonyl]-2-methyl-propyl]carbamate (23 mg, 0.02841 mmol, 59.33%) as a white solid. LC/MS: m/z = 795.40 ($M+H^+$). ^1H NMR (CD_3OD, 400 MHz): δ 7.24-7.95 (m, 6H), 4.95(m, 2H), 4.20 (m, 4H), 3.62 (s, 6H), 2.46 (m, 4H), 1.96 (m, 4H), 1.15 (m, 6H), 0.84(m, 14H).

Example 62

Methyl N-[(1S)-1-[(2S,4S)-2-[4-[2-[2-cyano-4-[2-[2-[(2S,4S)-1-[(2S)-2-(methoxycarbonylamino)-3-methyl-butanoyl]-4-methyl-pyrrolidin-2-yl]-1H-imidazol-4-yl]ethynyl]phenyl]ethynyl]-1H-imidazol-2-yl]-4-methyl-pyrrolidine-1-carbonyl]-2-methyl-propyl]carbamate



The title compound is synthesized from *tert*-butyl (2S,4S)-2-(4-iodo-1H-imidazol-2-yl)-4-methyl-pyrrolidine-1-carboxylate and 2,5-diethynylbenzonitrile as described in Example 4B.

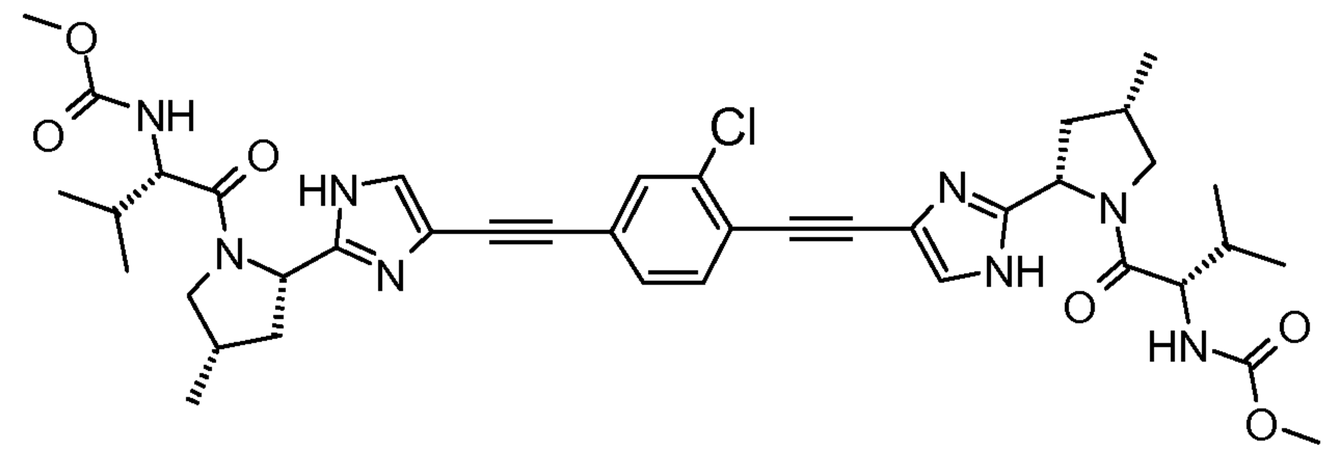
^{1}H NMR (400 MHz, CD_3OD): δ 7.83 (s, 1H), 7.69 (d, 1H), 7.62 (d, 1H), 7.39 (s, 1H), 7.32(s, 1H), 4.99-4.95 (m, 2H), 4.21-4.15 (m, 4H), 3.62 (s, 6H), 2.47-2.42 (m, 2H), 2.34 (m, 2H), 1.96-1.88 (m, 4H),1.27(m, 2H), 1.16 (d, 6H), 0.88-0.81 (m, 12H).

LC/MS: m/z = 764.4 ($M + H^+$).

2,5-Diethynylbenzonitrile is prepared from 2,5-diiodobenzonitrile according to the procedure reported for intermediate 12.

Example 63

Dimethyl (2S,2'S)-1,1'-((3S,3'S,5S,5'S)-5,5'-(4,4'-(2-chloro-1,4-phenylene)bis(ethyne-2,1-diyl)bis(1H-imidazole-4,2-diyl))bis(3-methylpyrrolidine-5,1-diyl))bis(3-methyl-1-oxobutane-2,1-diyl)dicarbamate

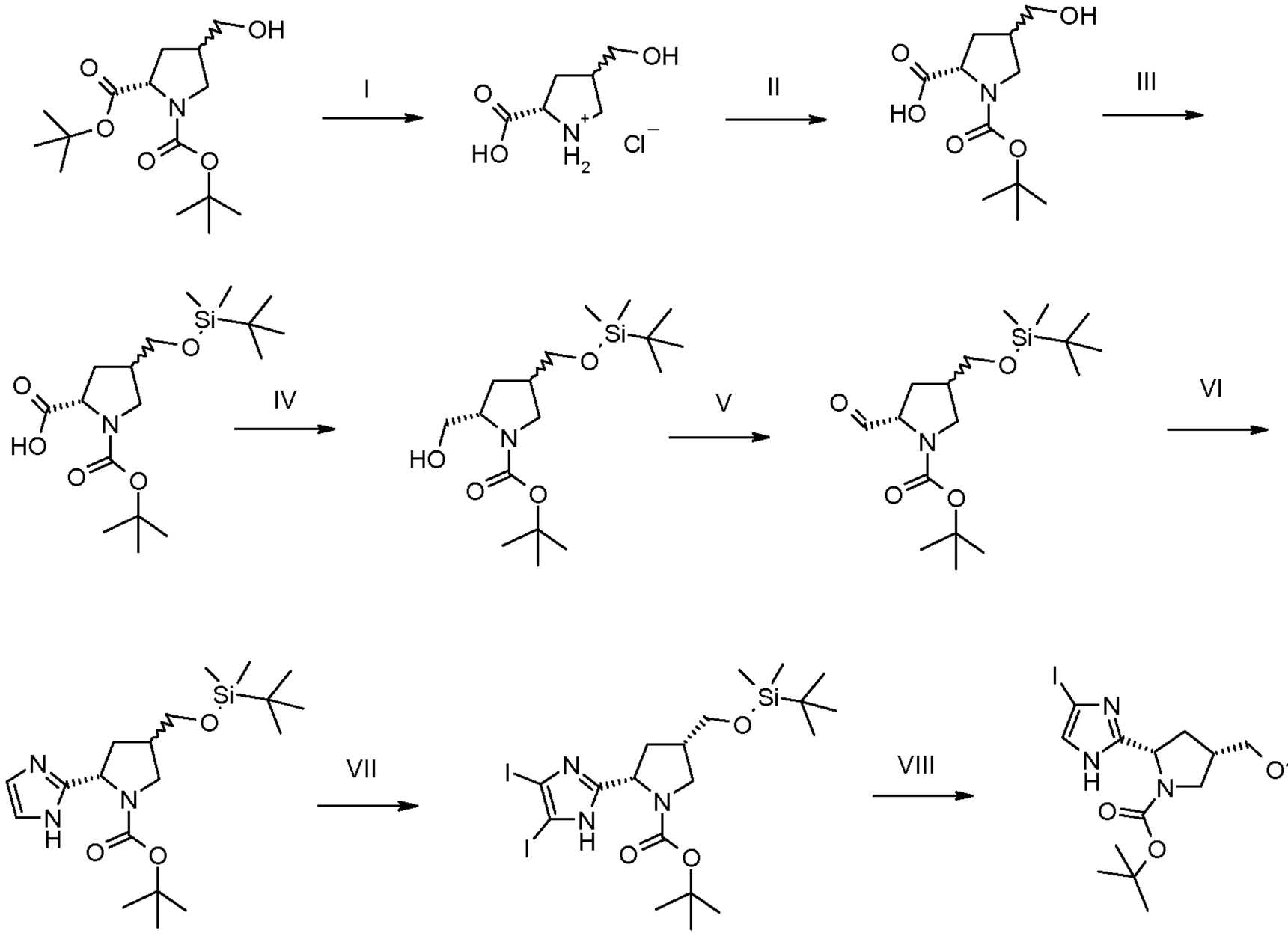


The same procedures are followed as mentioned for Example 4B.

LC/MS: m/z = 659.30 ($M+H^+$); RT= 9.95 minutes.

Example 64

((S)-1-{(2S,4S)-4-Hydroxymethyl-2-[4-(4-{2-[(2S,4S)-1-((S)-2-methoxycarbonylamino-3-methyl-butyryl)-4-methyl-pyrrolidin-2-yl]-1H-imidazol-4-ylethynyl}-phenylethynyl)-1H-imidazol-2-yl]-pyrrolidine-1-carbonyl}-2-methyl-propyl)-carbamic acid methyl ester



The starting material, (2S)-di-*tert*-butyl 4-(hydroxymethyl)pyrrolidine-1,2-dicarboxylate is obtained according to published literature procedures (Durand X., Hudhomme P., Khan J.A., Young D.W.; J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 1, **1996**, 11, 1131).

Step I

A suspension of (2S)-di-*tert*-butyl 4-(hydroxymethyl)pyrrolidine-1,2-dicarboxylate (3990 mg, 13.24 mmol) in HCl (4M in dioxane, 26.47 mL of 4 M, 105.9 mmol) is stirred for 90 minutes and evaporated to dryness. The sample is used as it is for the next step.

Step II

To a solution of (2S)-2-carboxy-4-(hydroxymethyl)pyrrolidin-1-ium chloride (13.24 mmol) (from step I) in THF (20 mL) and water (6.6 mL) are sequentially added NaOH (7.408 mL of 2.5 M, 18.52 mmol) and *tert*-butoxycarbonyl *tert*-butyl carbonate (2.761 g, 2.906 mL, 12.65 mmol). The reaction mixture is stirred at room temperature overnight. NaOH (aqueous 2.5 M, 1.25 mL) is then added to bring the pH to 10-11. THF is evaporated and the residue is washed with ether (2 x 2 mL) and the residue is then acidified with 1M HCl to bring the pH to 1. The mixture is extracted by EtOAc (5 x 20 mL) and the combined

organic layers are dried over Na_2SO_4, filtered and concentrated to dryness to give (2S)-1-(*tert*-butoxycarbonyl)-4-(hydroxymethyl)pyrrolidine-2-carboxylic acid (1.848 g, 84 %).

Step III

To a solution of (2S)-1-(*tert*-butoxycarbonyl)-4-(hydroxymethyl)pyrrolidine-2-carboxylic acid (1775 mg, 7.237 mmol) in DMF (17.75 mL) are sequentially added imidazole (1.084 g, 15.92 mmol) followed by TBDMSCl (2.291 g, 2.828 mL, 15.20 mmol). The mixture is stirred overnight at room temperature. The reaction mixture is extracted by EtOAc (5 x 70 mL) and the combined organic layers are washed with H_2O (3 x 35 mL), dried over Na_2SO_4, filtered and concentrated to dryness. The residue is purified by flash column chromatography on silica gel (0 to 20% methanol in CH_2Cl_2) to give a mixture of mono and bis-silylated product. The product is dissolved in 5:1 methanol (10 mL) water and stirred for 1 h. The mixture is concentrated to dryness and the residue is purified by flash column chromatography on silica gel (0 to 20% methanol in CH_2Cl_2) to give (2S)-1-(*tert*-butoxycarbonyl)-4-(((*tert*-butyldimethylsilyl)oxy)methyl)pyrrolidine-2-carboxylic acid (1.239 g, 88 %).

Step IV

To a solution of (2S)-1-(*tert*-butoxycarbonyl)-4-(((*tert*-butyldimethylsilyl)oxy)methyl)pyrrolidine-2-carboxylic acid (1.080 g, 3.004 mmol) in THF (10.8 mL) is added Borane/THF (5.665 g, 6.308 mL of 1 M, 6.308 mmol) over 10 minutes in an ice bath. The mixture is stirred for 1 hour, warmed to room temperature and stirred for another 2 hours. The mixture is then cooled in an ice bath and diluted with 10% aqueous NH_4Cl (5 mL) followed by 10 mL of water. The reaction mixture is extracted by EtOAc (3 x 20 mL) and the combined organic layers are washed with H_2O (2 x 5 mL), dried over Na_2SO_4, filtered and concentrated to dryness. The residue is purified by flash column chromatography on silica gel (6 to 50 % EtOAc in hexane) to give (2S)-*tert*-butyl 4-(((*tert*-butyldimethylsilyl)oxy)methyl)-2-(hydroxymethyl)pyrrolidine-1-carboxylate (775 mg, 75 %).

Step V

To a solution of oxalyl chloride in CH_2Cl_2 (1.567 mL of 2 M, 3.134 mmol) in CH_2Cl_2 (3.6 mL) at -78°C is added DMSO (489.7 mg, 444.8 µL, 6.267 mmol) and the mixture is stirred for 10 minutes. A solution of (2S)-4-[[*tert*-butyl(dimethyl)silyl]oxymethyl]-2-(hydroxymethyl)pyrrolidine-1-carboxylate (722 mg, 2.089 mmol) in CH_2Cl_2 (8 mL) is then added and the mixture is stirred for another 30 minutes. DIPEA (1.619 g, 2.182 mL, 12.53 mmol) is added and the mixture is stirred for 30 minutes, warmed to room temperature, stirred again for 1 hour and diluted with 1M aqueous HCl (30 mL). The layers are separated and the aqueous layer is extracted by CH_2Cl_2 (2 x 20 mL). The

combined organic layers are dried over Na_2SO_4, filtered, and concentrated to dryness. The residue is purified by flash column chromatography on silica gel (6 to 40 % EtOAc in hexane) to give (2S)-*tert*-butyl 4-(((*tert*-butyldimethylsilyl)oxy)methyl)-2-formylpyrrolidine-1-carboxylate (647 mg, 90 %).

Step VI

Ammonia gas is bubbled in a solution of (2S)-4-[[*tert*-butyl(dimethyl)silyl]oxymethyl]-2-formyl-pyrrolidine-1-carboxylate (581 mg, 1.691 mmol) in methanol (20 mL) at -20°C for 15 minutes and glyoxal (aqueous) (1.718 g, 1.358 mL of 40 % (w/w), 11.84 mmol) is added. The mixture is warmed gently to avoid strong bubbling and refluxed for 2 hours. The reaction mixture is then cooled to room temperature, methanol is evaporated and the residue is diluted with water (10 mL). The reaction mixture is extracted by CH_2Cl_2 (2 x 15 mL) and the combined organic layers are dried over Na_2SO_4, filtered and concentrated to dryness. The residue is purified by flash column chromatography on silica gel (0 to 15 % methanol in CH_2Cl_2) to give (2S)-*tert*-butyl 4-(((*tert*-butyldimethylsilyl)oxy)methyl)-2-(1H-imidazol-2-yl)pyrrolidine-1-carboxylate (454 mg, 70 %).

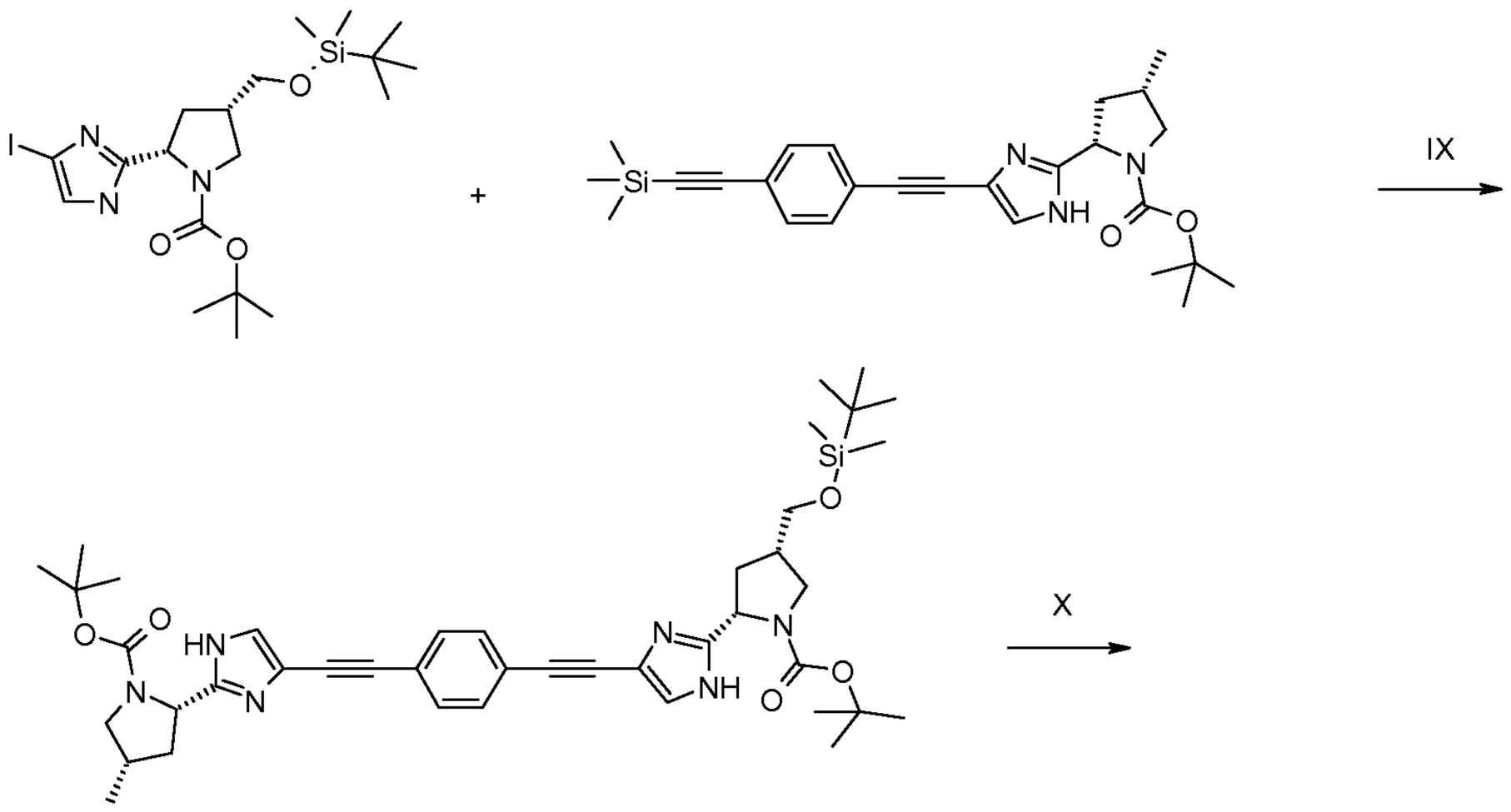
Step VII

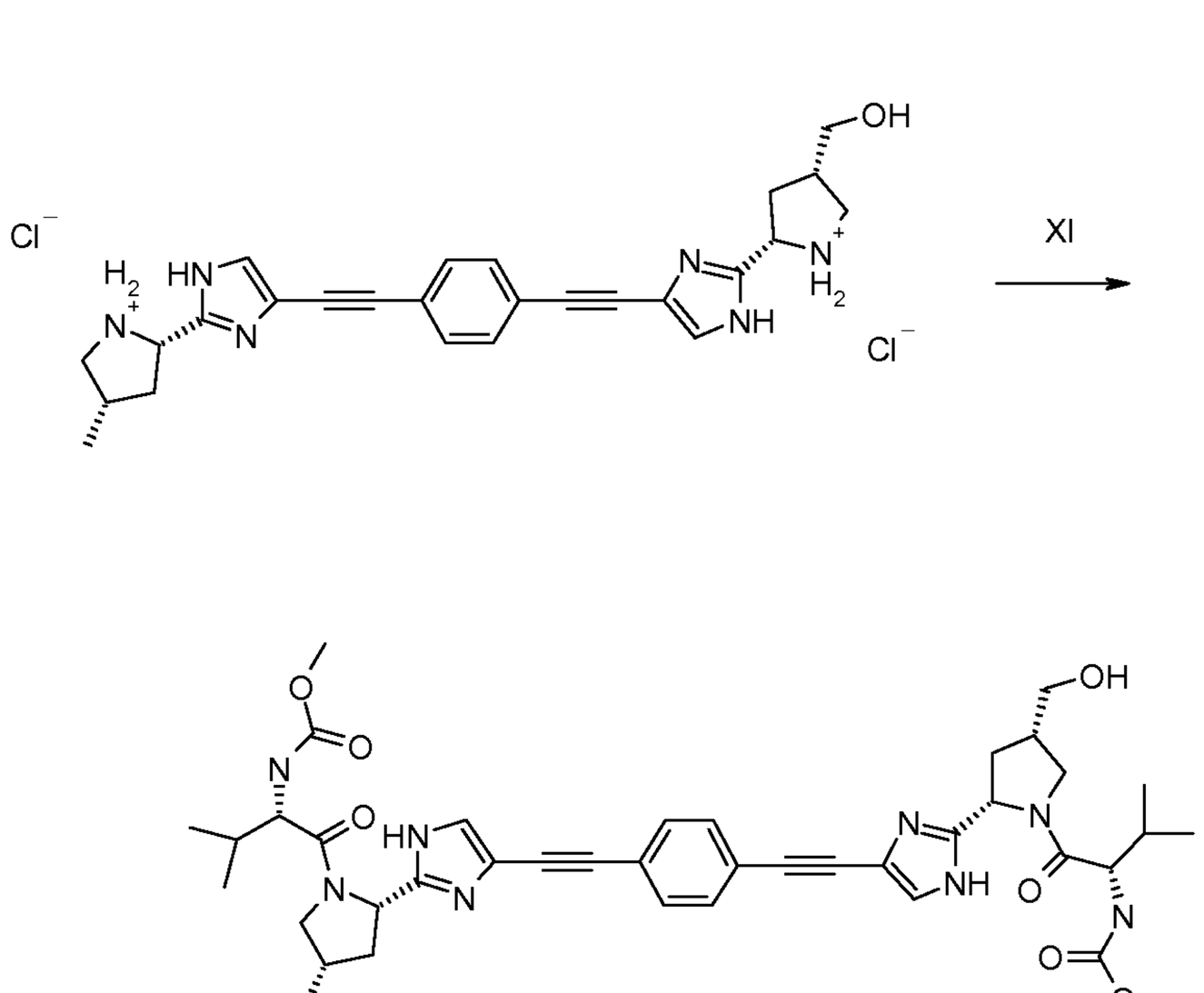
To a solution of (2S)-*tert*-butyl 4-(((*tert*-butyldimethylsilyl)oxy)methyl)-2-(1H-imidazol-2-yl)pyrrolidine-1-carboxylate (450 mg, 1.179 mmol in CH_2Cl_2 (4.6 mL) is added N-iodosuccinimide (557.1 mg, 2.476 mmol). The reaction mixture is stirred at room temperature for 3 hours and diluted with water (5 mL). The layers are separated and aqueous portion is extracted by CH_2Cl_2 (2 x 5 mL) and the combined organic layers are dried over Na_2SO_4, filtered and concentrated to dryness. The residue is purified by flash column chromatography on silica gel (6 to 50 % EtOAc in hexane) to give (2S,4S)-*tert*-butyl-4-(((*tert*-butyldimethylsilyl)oxy)methyl)-2-(4,5-diiodo-1H-imidazol-2-yl)pyrrolidine-1-carboxylate (230 mg, 31 %) as a pure *cis* compound.

Step VIII

To a solution of (2S,4S)-*tert*-butyl-4-(((*tert*-butyldimethylsilyl)oxy)methyl)-2-(4,5-diiodo-1H-imidazol-2-yl)pyrrolidine-1-carboxylate (225 mg, 0.355 mmol) and 0.5 M LiCl (710 µL) in THF at -20°C is added iPrMgCl (177.6 µL of 2 M in THF, 0.3552 mmol) and the mixture is stirred for 15 minutes. Another portion of iPrMgCl (355.2 µL of 2 M in THF, 0.7104 mmol) is added and the mixture is warmed to room temperature and the mixture is stirred for another 2 hours. Another portion of iPrMgCl (150 µL of 2 M in THF) is added to complete the reaction and the mixture is stirred for another 30 minutes. The reaction mixture is diluted with 10% aqueous NH_4Cl (2 mL) and water (2 mL). The reaction mixture is extracted by AcOEt (3 x 10 mL), and the combined organic layers are dried

over Na_2SO_4, filtered and concentrated to dryness. The residue is purified by flash column chromatography on silica gel (6 to 50 % AcOEt in hexane) to give (2S,4S)-*tert*-butyl 4-(((*tert*-butyldimethylsilyl)oxy)methyl)-2-(4-iodo-1H-imidazol-2-yl)pyrrolidine-1-carboxylate (118 mg, 65 %).





Step IX

To a solution of *tert*-butyl (2S,4S)-4-[[*tert*-butyl(dimethyl)silyl]oxymethyl]-2-(4-iodo-1H-imidazol-2-yl)pyrrolidine-1-carboxylate (66 mg, 0.1301 mmol), *tert*-butyl (2S,4S)-4-methyl-2-[4-[2-[4-(2-trimethylsilylethynyl)phenyl]ethynyl]-1H-imidazol-2-yl]pyrrolidine-1-carboxylate (58.24 mg, 0.1301 mmol), $PdCl_2(dppf)$-CH_2Cl_2 (5.312 mg, 0.006505 mmol) and CuI (1.239 mg, 0.006505 mmol) in DMF (2 mL) is added DBU (198.1 mg, 194.6 µL, 1.301

mmol) followed by one portion of water (1.2 µL, 0.5 eq.). The mixture is then warmed up to 60°C and stirred at that temperature for 30 minutes before another portion of water is added (1.2 µL, 0.5 eq.) followed by another portion (1.2 µL, 0.5 eq.) after 30 minutes. The mixture is then stirred overnight at that temperature. The reaction is warmed to 100°C and $PdCl_2$(dppf)-CH_2Cl_2 (4.6 mg, 0.0065 mmol) is added followed by CuI (1.2 mg, 0.0065 mmol). The mixture is stirred for another 3 hours at that temperature. The mixture is then cooled to room temperature and DMF is evaporated to dryness and the residue is purified by flash column chromatography on silica gel (0 to 15 % methanol in CH_2Cl_2) to give (2S,4S)-*tert*-butyl 2-(4-((4-((2-((2S,4S)-1-(*tert*-butoxycarbonyl)-4-(((*tert*-butyldimethylsilyl)oxy)methyl)pyrrolidin-2-yl)-1H-imidazol-4-yl)ethynyl)phenyl)ethynyl)-1H-imidazol-2-yl)-4-methylpyrrolidine-1-carboxylate (26 mg, 26 %).

Step XI

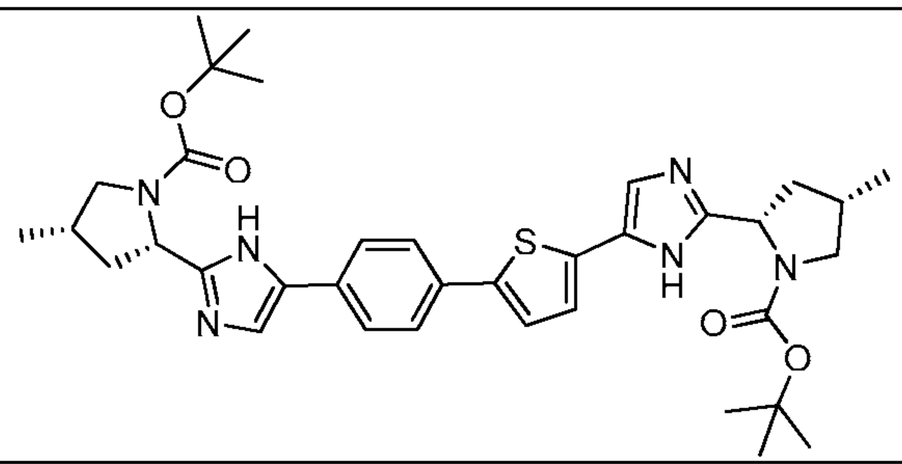
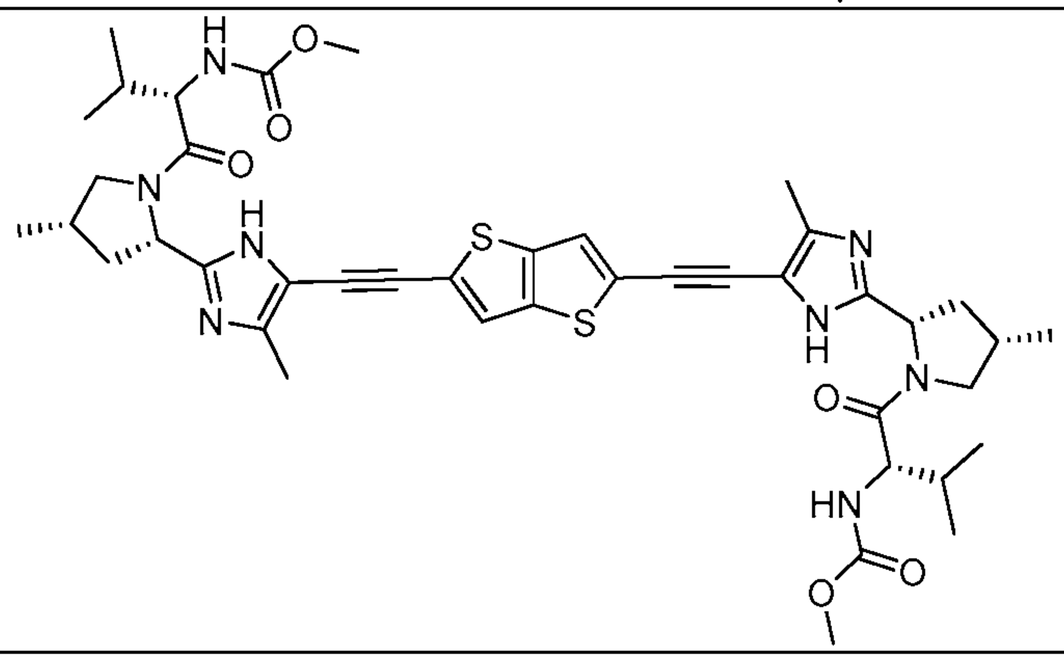
A solution *tert*-butyl (2S,4S)-2-[4-[2-[4-[2-[2-[(2S,4S)-1-*tert*-butoxycarbonyl-4-[[*tert*-butyl(dimethyl)silyl]oxymethyl]pyrrolidin-2-yl]-1H-imidazol-4-yl]ethynyl]phenyl]ethynyl]-1H-imidazol-2-yl]-4-methyl-pyrrolidine-1-carboxylate (25 mg, 0.03311 mmol) in HCl (2 mL of 4 M in dioxane, 8.000 mmol) is stirred for 1 hour and evaporated to dryness. The sample is used as it is for the next step.

Step XII

To a solution of [(3S,5S)-5-[4-[2-[4-[2-[2-[(2S,4S)-4-methylpyrrolidin-2-yl]-1H-imidazol-4-yl]ethynyl]phenyl]ethynyl]-1H-imidazol-2-yl]pyrrolidin-3-yl]methanol (Hydrochloric Acid (2)) (17 mg, 0.03311 mmol) and (2S)-2-(methoxycarbonylamino)-3-methyl-butanoic acid (11.60 mg, 0.06622 mmol) in DMF (2 mL) is cooled in an ice bath and are sequentially added HATU (26.44 mg, 0.06953 mmol) and DIPEA (25.68 mg, 34.61 µL, 0.1987 mmol) under nitrogen atmosphere. The reaction mixture is stirred at that temperature for 1.5 hours and evaporated to dryness. The residue is purified successively by flash column chromatography on silica gel (0 to 15 % methanol in CH_2Cl_2) followed by reverse phase preparative HPLC to afford ((S)-1-{(2S,4S)-4-hydroxymethyl-2-[4-(4-{2-[(2S,4S)-1-((S)-2-methoxycarbonylamino-3-methyl-butyryl)-4-methyl-pyrrolidin-2-yl]-1H-imidazol-4-ylethynyl}-phenylethynyl)-1H-imidazol-2-yl]-pyrrolidine-1-carbonyl}-2-methyl-propyl)-carbamic acid methyl ester (6.2 mg, 26 %).

^{1}H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d_6): δ 12.09 (broad s, 2H), 7.43 (m, 4H), 7.21 (m, 2H), 4.83 (m, 2H), 4.05 (m, 4H), 3.50 (s, 6H), 3.45 (m, 2H), 3.31 (s, 1H), 3.15 (m, 2H), 2.23 (m, 4H), 1.86 (m, 4H), 1.21 (m, 3H), 1.06 (m, 2H), 0.75 (m, 6H). LC/MS: m/z = 755.51 ($M+H^+$).

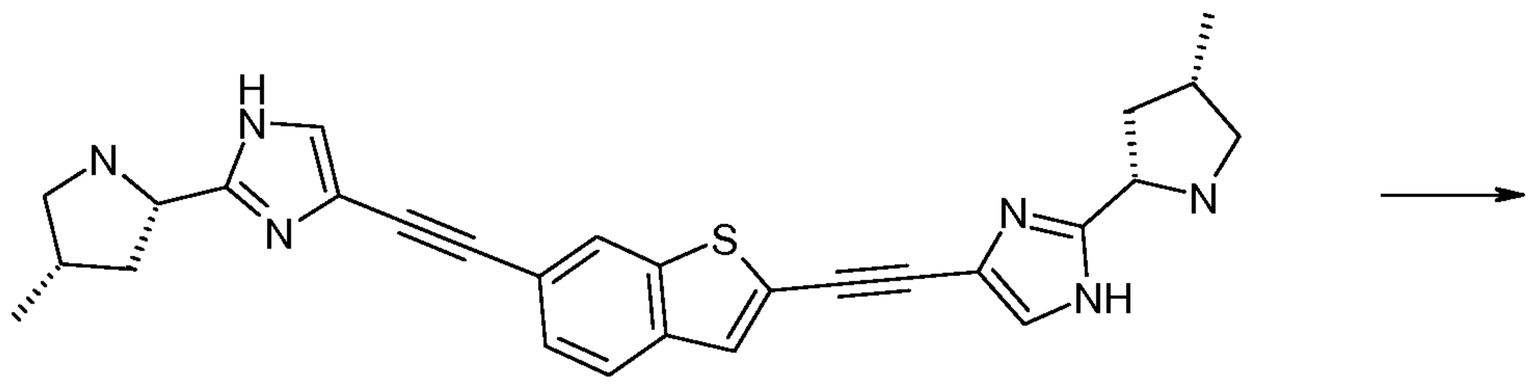
Examples 65 and 66

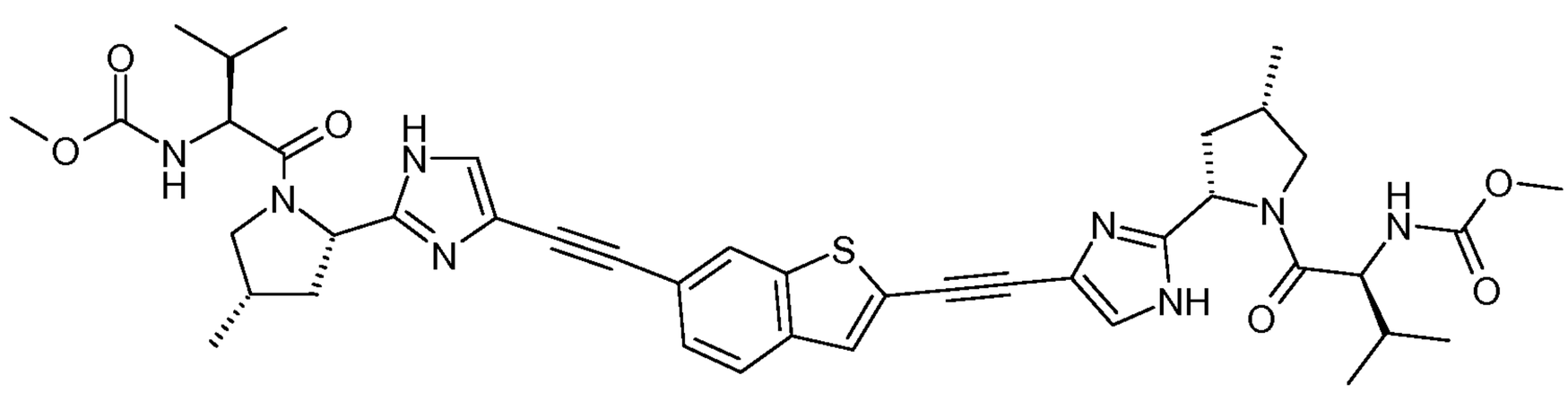
65	
66	

The above compounds were prepared according to the procedures disclosed herein.

Example 67

Methyl N-[(1S)-1-[(2S,4S)-2-[4-[2-[2-[2-[2-[(2S,4S)-1-[(2S)-2-(methoxycarbonylamino)-3-methyl-butanoyl]-4-methyl-pyrrolidin-2-yl]-1H-imidazol-4-yl]ethynyl]benzothiophen-6-yl]ethynyl]-1H-imidazol-2-yl]-4-methyl-pyrrolidine-1-carbonyl]-2-methyl-propyl]carbamate



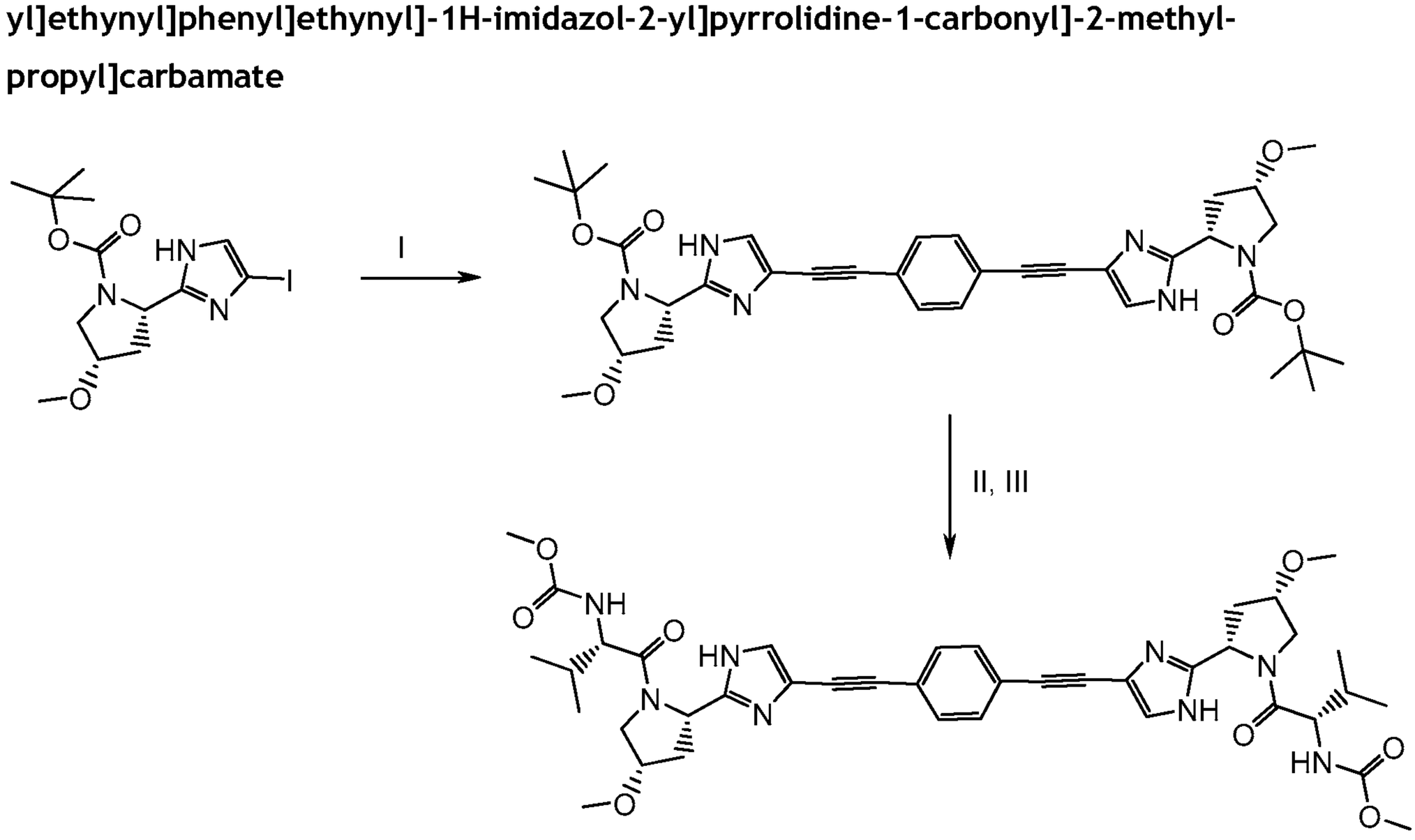


To a solution of 2-[(2S,4S)-4-methylpyrrolidin-2-yl]-4-[2-[2-[2-[2-[(2S,4S)-4-methylpyrrolidin-2-yl]-1H-imidazol-4-yl]ethynyl]benzothiophen-6-yl]ethynyl]-1H-

imidazole (59.3 mg, 0.12 mmol) in DMF (2 mL) are added (2S)-2-(methoxycarbonylamino)-3-methyl-butanoic acid (47.5 mg, 0.27 mmol), HATU (112.6 mg, 0.29 mmol) and DIPEA (159.5 mg, 215.0 µL, 1.234 mmol). The mixture is stirred at rt overnight. After removal of the solvent under reduced pressure, the residue is purified by silica gel column chromatography using methanol (0-6%) in CH_2Cl_2, and the major fraction is further purified using revers-phase prep-HPLC to obtain methyl N-[(1S)-1-[(2S,4S)-2-[4-[2-[2-[2-[2-[(2S,4S)-1-[(2S)-2-(methoxycarbonylamino)-3-methyl-butanoyl]-4-methyl-pyrrolidin-2-yl]-1H-imidazol-4-yl]ethynyl]benzothiophen-6-yl]ethynyl]-1H-imidazol-2-yl]-4-methyl-pyrrolidine-1-carbonyl]-2-methyl-propyl]carbamate (46 mg, 0.05699 mmol, 46.18%) as an off-white solid. LC/MS: m/z = 795.40 ($M+H^+$). ^1H NMR (CD_3OD, 400 MHz): δ 7.24-7.95 (m, 6H), 4.95(m, 2H), 4.20 (m, 4H), 3.62 (s, 6H), 2.46 (m, 4H), 1.96 (m, 4H), 1.15 (m, 6H), 0.84(m, 14H).

Example 68

Methyl N-[(1S)-1-[(2S,4S)-4-methoxy-2-[4-[2-[4-[2-[2-[(2S,4S)-4-methoxy-1-[(2S)-2-(methoxy-carbonylamino)-3-methyl-butanoyl]pyrrolidin-2-yl]-1H-imidazol-4-yl]ethynyl]phenyl]ethynyl]-1H-imidazol-2-yl]pyrrolidine-1-carbonyl]-2-methyl-propyl]carbamate



The title compound is prepared from *tert*-butyl (2S,4S)-2-(4-iodo-1H-imidazol-2-yl)-4-methoxy-pyrrolidine-1-carboxylate using the reactions described below.

Step I:

To a mixture of *tert*-butyl (2S,4S)-2-(4-iodo-1H-imidazol-2-yl)-4-methoxy-pyrrolidine-1-carboxylate, trimethyl-[2-[4-(2-trimethylsilylethynyl)phenyl]ethynyl]-silane, $PdCl_2(dppf)$-CH_2Cl_2 and copper Iodide is added DMF under nitrogen atmosphere. The reaction mixture is degassed thrice (vacuum and nitrogen gas) and then DBU and water are added and heated at 60°C for 8 hours. The reaction mixture is cooled to 0°C, diluted with water and filtered.

Step II:

To a solution of the product from step I in dry MeOH (400 µL) is added HCl in Dioxane. The reaction mixture is stirred at rt for 2 hours and concentrated to afford the corresponding amine as the HCl salt. This material is used as such in the next step.

Step III:

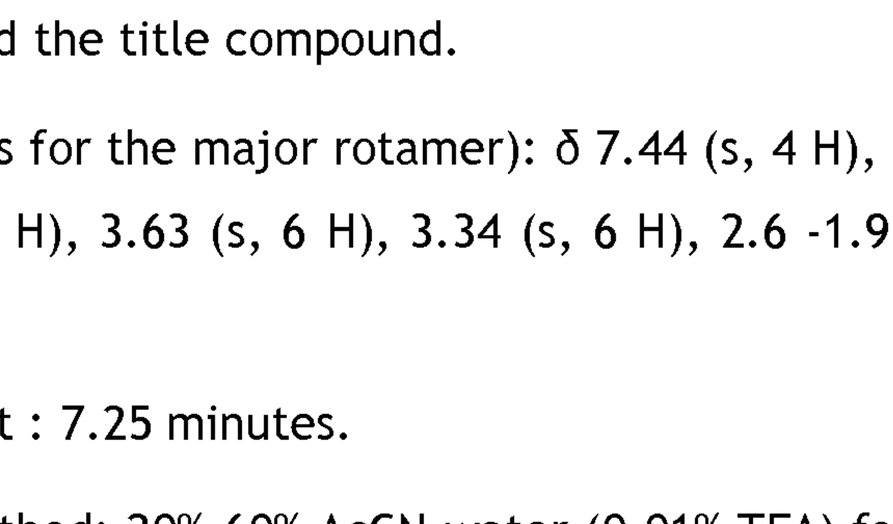
To a cold (-10 to -5^{0}C) stirred solution of the product from step II and HATU in DMF is added DIPEA dropwise. The resultant reaction mixture is slowly warmed up to rt and stirred overnight. The reaction mixture is diluted with water, the resultant white precipitate is collected by filtration and the filtrate is refiltered. The combined precipitates are washed with water and heptanes, dried under high vacuum and purified by reverse phase HPLC to afford the title compound.

^{1}H NMR (400 MHz, CD_3OD, Peaks for the major rotamer): δ 7.44 (s, 4 H), 7.23 (s, 2 H), 5.2 - 5.1 (m, 2 H), 4.2 – 3.0 (m, 8 H), 3.63 (s, 6 H), 3.34 (s, 6 H), 2.6 -1.9 (m, 6 H), 0.92 - 0.86 (doublets, 12 H).

LC/MS, m/z = 771.59 ($M+H^+$); Rt : 7.25 minutes.

HPLC (RT) = 11.70 minutes, Method: 20%-60% AcCN-water (0.01% TFA) for 40 min, Gemini C18 3µm, 4.6 mm x 250 mm.

Example 69

69	

The above compound was prepared according to the procedures disclosed herein.

Example 70

Activity determination using the ELISA and the sub-genomic replicon 1a cell line

The cell line W11.8 containing the sub-genomic HCV replicon of genotype 1a is used to determine the potency of the drugs. The RNA replication in presence of different drug concentrations is indirectly measured in this cell line by the level of NS5A protein content upon drug treatment for four days. It is shown that the level of the NS5A protein correlates well with the level of HCV RNA in the replicon cell line. Cells are split twice a week in order to keep the confluence state below 85% of the culture flask surface area. The culture media used for cell passaging consists of DMEM-10% foetal bovine serum with 100 UI/mL penicillin, 100 µg/mL streptomycin, 2 mM glutamine, 1 mM sodium pyruvate, non-essential amino acids (1x) and 600 µg/mL of G418 final concentrations. Monolayer of the W11.8 cells is trypsinized and cells are counted. Cells are diluted at 50,000 cells/mL with complete DMEM without G418, then approximately 5,000 viable cells (100 µL) are plated per well in a white opaque 96-well microtiter plate. After an incubation period of 2 - 4 hours at 37 °C in a 5% CO2 incubator, compounds are added at various concentrations. Drugs are resuspended in DMSO at a stock concentration of 10 mM. Then, drugs are serially diluted at twice the final concentration in the same medium. One volume (100 µL) of each drug dilution is then added to each well that contains cells. A control compound is used as an internal standard for each plate assay. Sixteen wells are used as control (0% inhibition) without drug. Eight wells are used as background control (100% inhibition) containing 2 µM (final concentration) of the control drug that was shown to inhibit the NS5A expression at ≈ 100% and is nontoxic to the cells. Values from 100% inhibited wells were averaged and used as the background value. Cells are further incubated for four days at 37° C in a 5% CO_2 incubator. Following the incubation time of four days, the media is removed and wells are washed once with 150 µL of PBS at room temperature for five minutes. Cells are then fixed for five minutes using 150 µL per well of cold (-20 °C) fixative solution (50% methanol / 50% acetone mix). Cells are then washed twice with 150 µL of PBS (phosphate buffered saline) per well, following the addition of 150 µL of blocking solution, cells are incubated for one hour at 37 °C to block non-specific sites. The blocking solution is removed and cells are washed twice with 150 µL of PBS per well and once with 150 µL of PBSTS solution (PBS / 0.1% Triton X-100 / 0.02% SDS) per well. Then, 50 µL of mouse monoclonal anti-NS5A antibody (Santa Cruz, Cat. No. sc-52417) is added in each well, diluted 1/1,000 in the blocking solution and incubated at 4 °C overnight. Next day, media is removed and plates are washed five

times with 150 µL of PBS per well with five-minute incubations at room temperature. Then 50 µL per well of peroxidase-conjugated donkey anti-mouse antibody (Jackson Immunoresearch, Cat. No. 715-036-150) diluted 1/10,000 in the blocking solution is added and incubated at room temperature for three hours on a shaker (500 rpm). Plates are washed four times with 150 µL of PBSTS solution per well and once with 150 µL of PBS. Then, substrate solution (100 µl, SuperSignal ELISA Pico Chemiluminescent Substrate, Fisher Cat. No.37069) is added in each well and plates are incubated 60 minutes at room temperature prior to reading the luminescence (relative light units) on the Analyst HT plate reader. The percentage of inhibition at each drug concentration tested (in duplicate) is calculated. The concentration required to reduce viral replication by 50% (IC_{50}) is then determined from dose response curves using nonlinear regression analysis with the GraphPad Prism software, version 2.0 (GraphPad Software Inc., San Diego, CA, USA).

Example 71

Cell-Based Luciferase Reporter HCV (Ib) RNA Replication Assay Cell Culture

Replicon cell lines Huh-5.2 are derived from the Huh-7 hepatocarcinoma cell line are maintained in culture as generally described in Krieger, N; Lohmann, V; Bartenschlager, R. Enhancement of hepatitis C virus RNA replication by cell culture-adaptive mutations. *J. Virol.* **2001**, 75, 4614-4624 . The Huh-5.2 cells contain the highly cell culture-adapted replicon I_{389}luc-ubi-neo/NS3-3'/5.1 construct that carries, in addition to the neomycin gene, an integrated copy to the firefly luciferase gene (Krieger, N; Lohmann, V; Bartenschlager, R. Enhancement of hepatitis C virus RNA replication by cell culture-adaptive mutations. *J. Virol.* **2001**, 75, 4614-4624). This cell line allows measurement of HCV RNA replication and translation by measuring luciferase activity. It has been previously shown that the luciferase activity tightly follows the replicon RNA level in these cells (Krieger, N; Lohmann, V; Bartenschlager, R. Enhancement of hepatitis C virus RNA replication by cell culture-adaptive mutations. *J. Virol.* **2001**, 75, 4614-4624). The Huh- ET cell line has the same features as those mentioned for Huh-5.2 cell line, except that ET cells are more robust and contain an adaptative mutation in the HCV NS4B gene instead of NS5A. Both cell lines are maintained in cultures at a sub-confluent level (<85%) as the level of replicon RNA is highest in actively proliferating cells. The culture media used for cell passaging consist of DMEM (Gibco BRL Laboratories, Mississauga, ON, Canada) supplemented with 10% foetal bovine serum with 1%

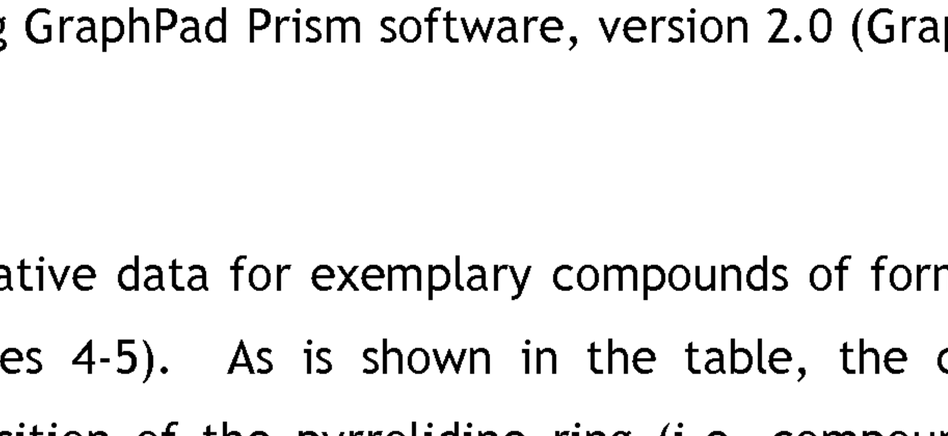
penicilin/streptomycin, 1% glutamine, 1% sodium pyruvate, 1% non-essential amino acids, and 180 µg/ml of G418 final concentration. Cells are incubated at 37°C, in an atmosphere of 5% CO_2 and passaged twice a week to maintain sub-confluence.

Approximately 3000 viable Huh- ET cells (100 µl) are plated per well in a white opaque 96-well microtiter plate. The cell culture media used for the assay is the same as described above except that it contains no G418 and no phenol red. After an incubation period of 3-4 hours at 37° C in a 5% CO_2 incubator, compounds (100 µl) are added at various concentrations. Cells are then further incubated for 4 days at 37° C in a 5% CO_2 incubator. Thereafter, the culture media is removed and cells are lysed by the addition of 95 µL of the luciferase buffer (luciferin substrate in buffered detergent). Cell lysates are incubated at room temperature and protected from direct light for at least 10 minutes. Plates are read for luciferase counts using a luminometer (Wallac MicroBeta Trilux, Perkin Elmer™, MA, USA).

The 50% inhibitory concentrations (IC_{50}s) for inhibitory effect are determined from dose response curves using eleven concentrations per compound in duplicate. Curves are fitted to data points using nonlinear regression analysis, and IC_{50}s are interpolated from the resulting curve using GraphPad Prism software, version 2.0 (GraphPad Software Inc., San Diego, CA, USA).

Table 1C shows comparative data for exemplary compounds of formula (I) (entries 1-3) and formula (IA) (entries 4-5). As is shown in the table, the compounds having a substituent at the 4-position of the pyrrolidine ring (i.e. compounds of the invention where R_4 and $R_{4'}$ are methyl). Data shows IC_{50} values against the sub-genomic replicon 1a cell line.

Table 1C

Entry	Compound	Structure	IC_{50} (pM)
1	4		55

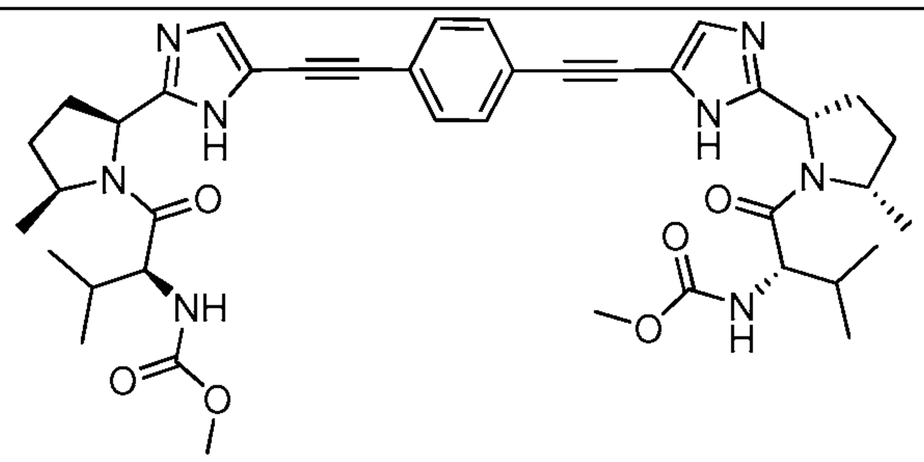
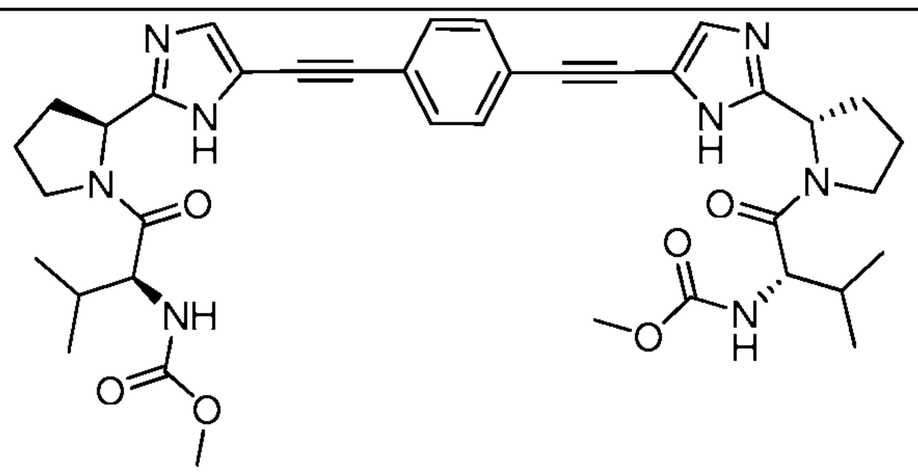
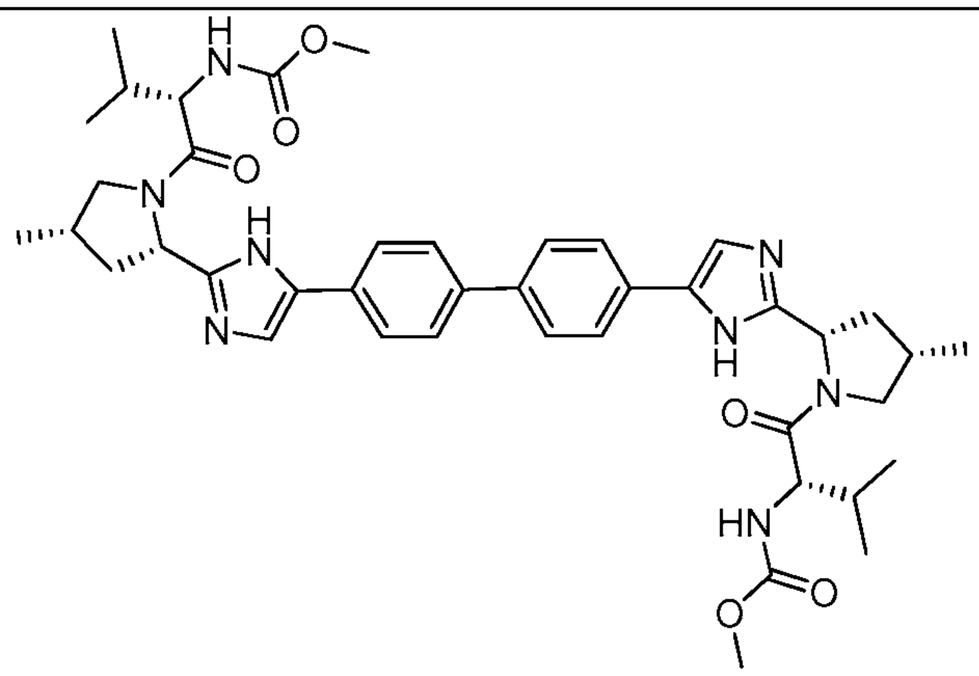
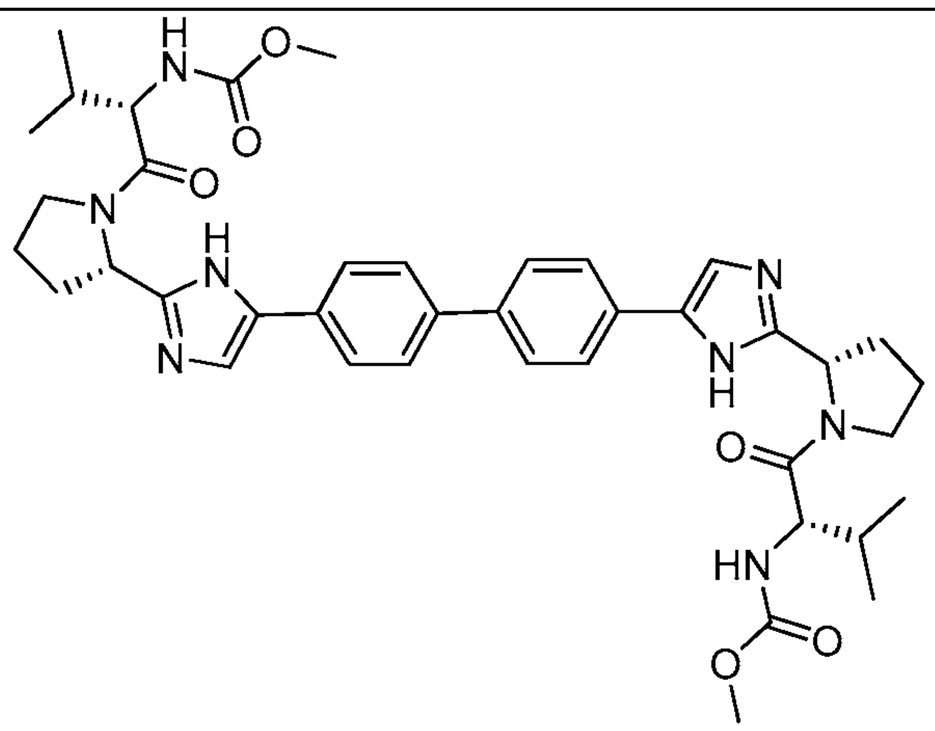
2			240
3			4800
4	1		17
5			50

Table 1D shows compounds representative of the present invention and the EC50 values against the HCV 1b genotype. EC_{50} ranges are presented in micromolar as follows: μM +++ <= 0.005 < ++<= 5.0 < +.

Table 1D

Compound	M + 1 (observed)	Retention time (minutes)	^{1}H-NMR	IC_{50} (μM)
1	767.69	7.14		+++
2	755.5	9.27		+++
3	717.5	8.17		+++
4	739.6	8.24		+++
5	743.44	8.11		+++
6	789.5	9.16		+++
7	771.58	7.5		+++
8	767.59	8.81		+++
9	739.51	8.89		+++
10	802.5	9.86		+++
11	767.4	9.22		+++
12	753.4	8.77		+++
13	752.58	9.14		+++
14	773.49	9.21		+++
15	635.48	7.12		++
16	753.56	8.57		+++
17	747.57	6.13		++
18	767.64	7.94		+++
19	739.65	7.31		+++
20	865.36	10.94		+++
21	991.17	14.56		+++
22	807.44	9.65		+++
23	625.45	9.13	1H NMR (300 MHz, DMSO) d 12.60 (s, 0.4H), 12.20 (s, 1.6H), 7.48 (s, 5.5H), 7.20 (s, 0.5H), 4.76 - 4.59 (m, 2H), 3.75 - 3.59 (m, 2H), 3.04 - 2.91 (m, 2H), 2.41 - 2.30 (m, 2H), 2.29 - 2.13 (m, 2H), 1.72 - 1.49 (m, 2H), 1.37 (s, 6H), 1.14 (s, 12H), 1.02 (d, J = 6.2	++

Compound	M + 1 (observed)	Retention time (minutes)	^{1}H-NMR	IC_{50} (μM)
			Hz, 6H).	
24	425	5.08		++
25	725.5	7.55		+++
26	753.45	7.14		+++
27	739.57	9.06		++
28	767.53	8.11		+++
29	803.55	8.73		+++
30	795.6	8.47		+++
31	785.27	8.31		+++
32	739.49	8.39		++
33	739.53	8.17		+++
34	625.41	8.91		
35	424.99	4.94		
36	757.4	17.58		+++
37	817.63	8.57		+++
38	739.47	8.32		+++
39	582.42	6.49		++
40	797.53	8.7		+++
41	767.6	9.06		+++
42	739.4	9.49		+++
43	767.5	8.93		+++
44	747.49	8.05		+++
45	819.65	10.3		+++
46	838.4	8.49		+++
47	781.17	6.92		+++
48	875.45	16.08		+++
49	741.42	6.46		+++
50				
51	743.4	2.79		
52	739.43	8.62		++
53	663.44	7.61		+++
54	682	8.55		+++
55	790.3	8.64		+++

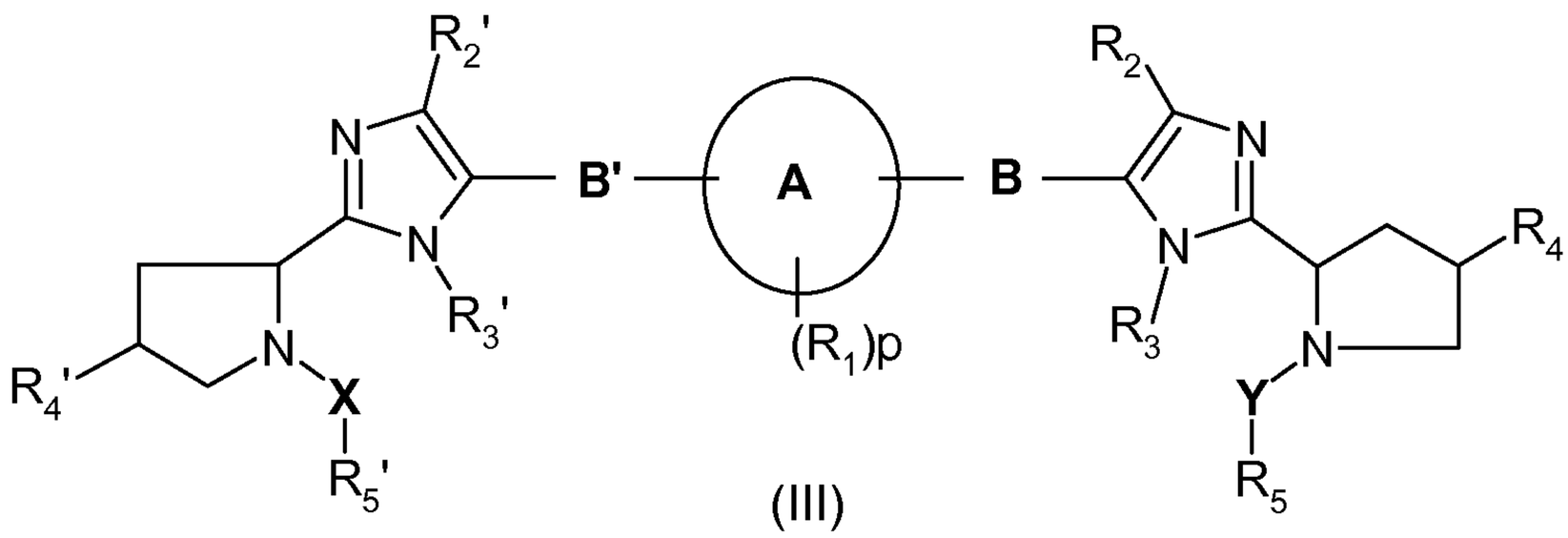
Compound	M + 1 (observed)	Retention time (minutes)	^{1}H-NMR	IC_{50} (μM)
56	740.45	7.75		+++
57	797.4	8.57		+++
58	829.84	2		+++
59	799.51	7.24		++
60	745.3	8.74		+++
61	795.4	9.48		+++
62	764.45	9.01		+++
63	773.6	18.6		+++
64	755.51	7.45		+++
65	659.59	1.76		++
66	829.55	16.6		+++
67	795.57	9.21		+++
68	771.59	7.25		+++
69	829.37	1.75		+++

The preceding examples can be repeated with similar success by substituting the generically or specifically described reactants and/or operating conditions of this invention for those used in the preceding examples.

From the foregoing description, one skilled in the art can easily ascertain the essential characteristics of this invention and, without departing from the spirit and scope thereof, can make various changes and modifications of the invention to adapt it to various usages and conditions.

Claims

1. A compound of Formula (III):



(III)

wherein

A is C_{6-14} aryl, 4-12 membered heterocycle, C_{3-10} cycloalkyl, 5-12 membered heteroaryl, or a bond;

B and B' are each independently C_{1-6} alkyl, C_{2-6} alkenyl, or C_{2-6} alkynyl;

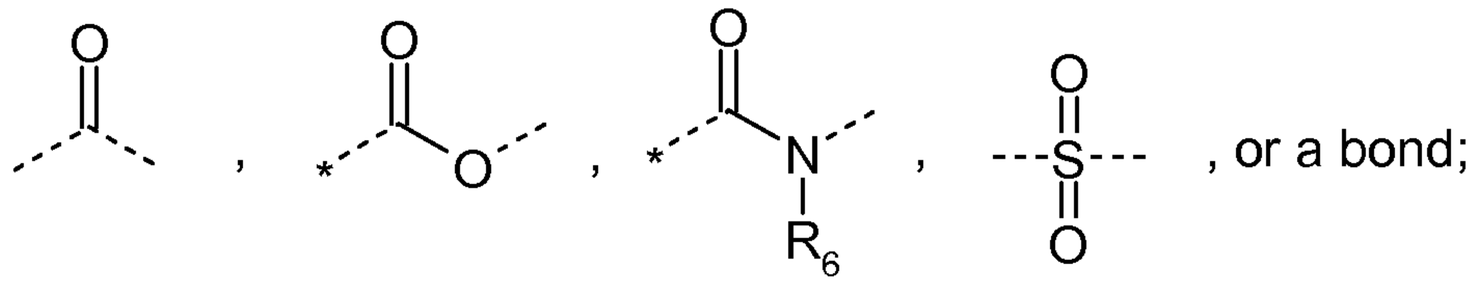
R_1 is H, halogen, $-OR_a$, $-NR_aR_b$, $-C(=O)OR_a$, $-C(O)NR_aR_b$, $-C(=O)OH$, $-C(=O)R_a$, $-C(=NOR_c)R_a$, $-C(=NR_c)NR_aR_b$, $-NR_dC(=O)NR_aR_b$, $-NR_bC(=O)R_a$, $-NR_dC(=NR_c)NR_aR_b$, $-NR_bC(=O)OR_a$, $-OC(=O)NR_aR_b$, $-OC(=O)R_a$, $-OC(=O)OR_a$, hydroxyl, nitro, azido, cyano, $-S(O)_{0-3}R_a$, $-SO_2NR_aR_b$, $-NR_bSO_2R_a$, $-NR_bSO_2NR_aR_b$, $-P(=O)OR_aOR_b$, C_{1-6} alkyl, C_{2-6} alkenyl, C_{2-6} alkynyl, or C_{1-6} halogenated alkyl, or any two occurrences of R_1 can be taken together with the atoms to which they are attached to form a 5-7 cycloalkyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{10} or a 5-7 membered heterocycle which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{12}, wherein R_a, R_b, R_c, and R_d are each independently H, C_{1-12} alkyl, C_{2-12} alkenyl, C_{2-12} alkynyl, C_{6-12} aryl, C_{7-16} aralkyl, 5-12 membered heteroaryl, 6-18 membered heteroaralkyl, 3-12 membered heterocycle, or 4-18 membered heterocycle-alkyl;

R_2 and R_2' are each independently H, halogen, C_{1-6} alkyl, $-(CH_2)_{1-3}OH$, $-OR_a$, $-C(=O)OR_a$, $-C(O)NR_aR_b$, $-C(=O)OH$, C_{6-12} aryl, or 5-12 membered heteroaryl, wherein R_a, R_b, R_c, and R_d are each independently H, C_{1-12} alkyl, C_{2-12} alkenyl, C_{2-12} alkynyl, C_{6-12} aryl, C_{7-16} aralkyl, 5-12 membered heteroaryl, 6-18 membered heteroaralkyl, 3-12 membered heterocycle, or 4-18 membered heterocycle-alkyl;

R_3 and R_3' are each independently H, C_{1-6} alkyl, C_{2-6} alkenyl, or C_{2-6} alkynyl;

R_4 and R_4' are each independently halogen, C_{1-6} alkyl, hydroxyl, C_{6-14} aryl, or C_{1-4} alkoxy;

X and Y are each independently


, or a bond;

wherein the bond marked with an asterisk (*) indicates the attachment to the nitrogen of ring C or C';

R_5 and R_5' are each independently H, C_{1-12} alkyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{10}, C_{2-12} alkenyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{10}, C_{2-12} alkynyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{10}, C_{6-14} aryl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{11}, C_{7-16} aralkyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{11}, 5-12 membered heteroaryl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{11}, 6-18 membered heteroaralkyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{11}, 3-12 membered heterocycle which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{12}, or 4-18 membered heterocycle-alkyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{12};

R_6 is H, C_{1-6} alkyl, or halogenated C_{1-6} alkyl, or can be merged with R_6 or R_6' to form a 3-12 membered heterocycle;

p is 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4;

R^{10} is halogen, $-OR_a$, oxo, $-NR_aR_b$, $=NO-R_c$, $-C(=O)OR_a$, $-C(O)NR_aR_b$, $-C(=O)OH$, $-C(=O)R_a$, $-C(=NOR_c)R_a$, $-C(=NR_c)NR_aR_b$, $-NR_dC(=O)NR_aR_b$, $-NR_bC(=O)R_a$, $-NR_dC(=NR_c)NR_aR_b$, $-NR_bC(=O)OR_a$, $-OC(=O)NR_aR_b$, $-OC(=O)R_a$, $-OC(=O)OR_a$, hydroxyl, nitro, azido, cyano, $-S(O)_{0-3}R_a$, $-SO_2NR_aR_b$, $-NR_bSO_2R_a$, $-NR_bSO_2NR_aR_b$, or $-P(=O)OR_aOR_b$, wherein R_a, R_b, R_c, and R_d are each independently H, C_{1-12} alkyl, C_{2-12} alkenyl, C_{2-12} alkynyl, C_{6-12} aryl, C_{7-16} aralkyl, 5-12 membered heteroaryl, 6-18 membered heteroaralkyl, 3-12 membered heterocycle, or 4-18 membered heterocycle-alkyl;

R^{11} is halogen, $-OR_a$, $-NR_aR_b$, $-C(=O)OR_a$, $-C(O)NR_aR_b$, $-C(=O)OH$, $-C(=O)R_a$, $-C(=NOR_c)R_a$, $-C(=NR_c)NR_aR_b$, $-NR_dC(=O)NR_aR_b$, $-NR_bC(=O)R_a$, $-NR_dC(=NR_c)NR_aR_b$, $-NR_bC(=O)OR_a$, $-OC(=O)NR_aR_b$, $-OC(=O)R_a$, $-OC(=O)OR_a$, hydroxyl, nitro, azido, cyano, $-S(O)_{0-3}R_a$, $-SO_2NR_aR_b$, $-NR_bSO_2R_a$, $-NR_bSO_2NR_aR_b$, or $-P(=O)OR_aOR_b$, C_{1-12} alkyl, C_{2-12} alkenyl, C_{2-12} alkynyl, C_{6-12} aryl, C_{7-16} aralkyl, 5-12 membered heteroaryl, 6-18 membered heteroaralkyl, 3-12 membered heterocycle, or 4-18 membered heterocycle-alkyl, wherein R_a, R_b, R_c, and R_d are each independently H, C_{1-12} alkyl, C_{2-12} alkenyl, C_{2-12} alkynyl, C_{6-12} aryl, C_{7-16} aralkyl, 5-12 membered heteroaryl, 6-18 membered heteroaralkyl, 3-12 membered heterocycle, or 4-18 membered heterocycle-alkyl;

R^{12} is halogen, $-OR_a$, oxo, $-NR_aR_b$, $=NO-R_c$, $-C(=O)OR_a$, $-C(O)NR_aR_b$, $-C(=O)OH$, $-C(=O)R_a$, $-C(=NOR_c)R_a$, $-C(=NR_c)NR_aR_b$, $-NR_dC(=O)NR_aR_b$, $-NR_bC(=O)R_a$, $-NR_dC(=NR_c)NR_aR_b$, -

$NR_bC(=O)OR_a$, $-OC(=O)NR_aR_b$, $-OC(=O)R_a$, $-OC(=O)OR_a$, hydroxyl, nitro, azido, cyano, $-S(O)_{0-3}R_a$, $-SO_2NR_aR_b$, $-NR_bSO_2R_a$, $-NR_bSO_2NR_aR_b$, or $-P(=O)OR_aOR_b$, C_{1-12} alkyl, C_{2-12} alkenyl, C_{2-12} alkynyl, C_{6-12} aryl, C_{7-16} aralkyl, 5-12 membered heteroaryl, 6-18 membered heteroaralkyl, 3-12 membered heterocycle, or 4-18 membered heterocycle-alkyl, wherein R_a, R_b, R_c, and R_d are each independently H, C_{1-12} alkyl, C_{2-12} alkenyl, C_{2-12} alkynyl, C_{6-12} aryl, C_{7-16} aralkyl, 5-12 membered heteroaryl, 6-18 membered heteroaralkyl, 3-12 membered heterocycle, or 4-18 membered heterocycle-alkyl;

wherein as valency allows in B, B', R_a, R_b, R_c, and R_d, R_1, R_2, R_2', R_3, R_3', R_4, R_4', R^{10}, R^{11} and R^{12} each of alkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl, alkoxy, aryl, aralkyl, heteroaryl, heteroaralkyl, heterocycle, or heterocycle-alkyl is independently unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by halogen, $-OR_{a'}$, oxo, $-NR_{a'}R_{b'}$, $=NO-R_{c'}$, $-C(=O)OR_{a'}$, $-C(O)NR_{a'}R_{b'}$, $-C(=O)OH$, $-C(=O)R_{a'}$, $-C(=NOR_{c'})R_{a'}$, $-C(=NR_{c'})NR_{a'}R_{b'}$, $-NR_{d'}C(=O)NR_{a'}R_{b'}$, $-NR_{b'}C(=O)R_{a'}$, $-NR_{d'}C(=NR_{c'})NR_{a'}R_{b'}$, $-NR_{b'}C(=O)OR_{a'}$, $-OC(=O)NR_{a'}R_{b'}$, $-OC(=O)R_{a'}$, $-OC(=O)OR_{a'}$, hydroxyl, nitro, azido, cyano, $-S(O)_{0-3}R_{a'}$, $-SO_2NR_{a'}R_{b'}$, or $-NR_{b'}SO_2R_{a'}$; wherein $R_{a'}$-$R_{d'}$ are each independently H or C_{1-12} alkyl; or

a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

2. A compound according to claim 1, wherein R_4 and R_4' are each independently halogen, C_{1-6} alkyl or C_{1-4} alkoxy.

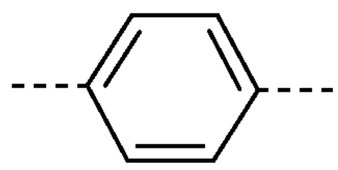
3. A compound according to claim 1, wherein R_4 and R_4' are C_{1-6} alkyl.

4. A compound according to any one of claims 1 to 3, wherein A is phenyl, thiophene, pyridine, pyrimidine, triazole, naphthalene, thienothiene, benzothiadiazole, quinoline, or benzothiophene.

5. A compound according to any one of claims 1 to 3, wherein A is phenyl, thiophene, pyridine, pyrimidine, or triazole.

6. A compound according to claim 5, wherein A is phenyl, or thiophene.

7. A compound according to claim 5, wherein A is



8. A compound according to any one of claims 1 to 7, wherein B and B' are independently C_{2-6} alkynyl or C_{1-6} alkyl.

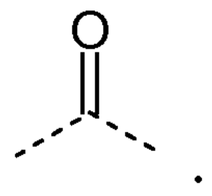
9. A compound according to any one of claims 1 to 7, wherein B and B' are independently -(C≡C)- or -$(CH_2)_2$-.

10. A compound according to any one of claims 1 to 7, wherein B and B' are-(C≡C)-.

11. A compound according to any one of claims 1 to 10, wherein p is 2.

12. A compound according to any one of claims 1 to 10, wherein p is 1.

13. A compound according to any one of claims 1 to 12, wherein X and Y are



14. A compound according to any one of claims 1 or 4 to 13, wherein R_4 and R_4' are each independently halogen, methyl, ethyl, isopropyl, di-fluoromethyl, di-fluoroethyl, trifluoromethyl, tri-fluoroethyl, -CH_2OH, or hydroxyl, or *t*-butoxy.

15. A compound according to any one of claims 1 or 4 to 14, wherein R_4 and R_4' are each independently halogen, methyl, ethyl, *t*-butoxy-, or hydroxyl.

16. A compound according to claim 2, wherein R_4 and R_4' are methoxy.

17. A compound according to claim 15, wherein R_4 and R_4' are fluoro.

18. A compound according to claim 15, wherein R_4 and R_4' are methyl.

19. A compound according to any one of claims 1 to 18, wherein R_3 and R_3' are H.

20. A compound according to any one of claims 1 to 18, wherein R_3 and R_3' are methyl.

21. A compound according to any one of claims 1 to 20, wherein R_1 is halogen, C_{1-3} alkyl, hydroxyl, cyano, C_{1-3} alkoxy, or methoxycarbonyl.

22. A compound according to any one of claims 1 to 20, wherein R_1 is halogen, C_{1-3} alkyl, hydroxyl, cyano, or C_{1-3} alkoxy.

23. A compound according to claim 22, wherein R_1 is chloro, fluoro, methyl, hydroxyl, cyano, or methoxy.

24. A compound according to any one of claims 1 to 19, wherein R_1 is H.

25. A compound according to any one of claims 1 to 24, wherein R_2 and R_2' are methyl.

26. A compound according to any one of claims 1 to 24, wherein R_2 and R_2' are H.

27. A compound according to any one of claims 1 to 24, wherein R_2 and R_2' are H, iodo, methyl, hydroxymethyl, trifluoromethyl, or thienothienyl.

28. A compound according to any one of claims 1 to 27, wherein R_5 and R_5' are each independently, C_{1-8} alkyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{10}, C_{2-8} alkenyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{10}, C_{2-8} alkynyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{10}, phenyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{11}, C_{7-8} aralkyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{11}, 5-6 membered heteroaryl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{11}, 6-8 membered heteroaralkyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{11}, 3-6 membered heterocycle which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{12}, or 4-8 membered heterocycle-alkyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{12}.

29. A compound according to claim 28, wherein R_5 and R_5' are each independently, C_{1-6} alkyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{10}, C_{2-6} alkenyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{10}, C_{2-6} alkynyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{10}, phenyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{11}, benzyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{11}, 5-6 membered heteroaryl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{11}, 6-7 membered heteroaralkyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{11}, 5-6 membered heterocycle which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{12}, or 6-7 membered heterocycle-alkyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{12}.

30. A compound according to claim 28, wherein R_5 and R_5' are each independently, C_{1-6} alkyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{10}, C_{2-6} alkenyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{10}, C_{2-6} alkynyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{10}.

31. A compound according to claim 28, wherein R_5 and R_5' are each independently methyl, ethyl, propyl, isopropyl, butyl, *sec*-butyl, *tert*-butyl, pentyl, 2-methylbutane, 3-methylbutane, cyclopropyl, cyclobutyl, cyclopentyl, cyclohexyl, or cyclohexyl(CH_2)-, which are unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{10}.

32. A compound according to claim 28, wherein R_5 and R_5' are each independently phenyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{11}.

33. A compound according to claim 28, wherein R_5 and R_5' are each independently benzyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{11}.

34. A compound according to any one of claims 1 to 32, wherein R^{10} is halogen, $-OR_a$, oxo, $-NR_aR_b$, $=NO-R_c$, $-C(=O)OR_a$, $-C(O)NR_aR_b$, $-C(=O)OH$, $-C(=O)R_a$, $-C(=NOR_c)R_a$, $-C(=NR_c)NR_aR_b$, $-NR_dC(=O)NR_aR_b$, $-NR_bC(=O)R_a$, $-NR_dC(=NR_c)NR_aR_b$, $-NR_bC(=O)OR_a$, $-OC(=O)NR_aR_b$, $-OC(=O)R_a$, $-OC(=O)OR_a$, hydroxyl, nitro, azido, cyano, $-S(O)_{0-3}R_a$, $-SO_2NR_aR_b$, $-NR_bSO_2R_a$, or $-NR_bSO_2NR_aR_b$, wherein R_a $-R_d$ are each independently H, C_{1-12} alkyl, C_{2-12} alkenyl, C_{2-12} alkynyl, C_{6-12} aryl, C_{7-16} aralkyl, 5-12 membered heteroaryl, 6-18 membered heteroaralkyl, 3-12 membered heterocycle, or 4-18 membered heterocycle-alkyl.

35. A compound according to claim 34, wherein R^{10} is $-NR_aR_b$, $-NR_dC(=O)NR_aR_b$, $-NR_bC(=O)R_a$, $-NR_dC(=NR_c)NR_aR_b$, $-NR_bC(=O)OR_a$, $-NR_bSO_2R_a$, or $-NR_bSO_2NR_aR_b$, wherein R_a, R_b, R_c, and R_d are each independently H, C_{1-12} alkyl, C_{2-12} alkenyl, C_{2-12} alkynyl, C_{6-12} aryl, C_{7-16} aralkyl, 5-12 membered heteroaryl, 6-18 membered heteroaralkyl, 3-12 membered heterocycle, or 4-18 membered heterocycle-alkyl.

36. A compound according to claim 34, wherein R^{10} is $-NR_aR_b$, $-NR_dC(=O)NR_aR_b$, $-NR_bC(=O)R_a$, $-NR_bC(=O)OR_a$, or $-NR_bSO_2R_a$, wherein R_a,R_b, and R_d are each independently H, C_{1-12} alkyl, C_{2-12} alkenyl, C_{2-12} alkynyl, C_{6-12} aryl, C_{7-16} aralkyl, 5-12 membered heteroaryl, 6-18 membered heteroaralkyl, 3-12 membered heterocycle, or 4-18 membered heterocycle-alkyl.

37. A compound according to claim 34, wherein R^{10} is halogen, $-OR_a$, oxo, $-C(=O)OR_a$, $-C(O)NR_aR_b$, $-C(=O)OH$, $-C(=O)R_a$, $-OC(=O)NR_aR_b$, $-OC(=O)R_a$, $-OC(=O)OR_a$, hydroxyl, cyano,

wherein R_a-R_b are each independently H, C_{1-12} alkyl, C_{2-12} alkenyl, C_{2-12} alkynyl, C_{6-12} aryl, C_{7-16} aralkyl, 5-12 membered heteroaryl, 6-18 membered heteroaralkyl, 3-12 membered heterocycle, or 4-18 membered heterocycle-alkyl.

38. A compound according to any one of claims 1 to 29, 32 or 33, wherein R^{11} is halogen, -OR_a, -NR_aR_b, -C(=O)OR_a, -C(O)NR_aR_b, -C(=O)OH, -C(=O)R_a, -C(=NOR_c)R_a, -C(=NR_c)NR_aR_b, -NR_dC(=O)NR_aR_b, -NR_bC(=O)R_a, -NR_dC(=NR_c)NR_aR_b, -NR_bC(=O)OR_a, -OC(=O)NR_aR_b, -OC(=O)R_a, -OC(=O)OR_a, hydroxyl, nitro, azido, cyano, -$S(O)_{0-3}R_a$, -$SO_2NR_aR_b$, -$NR_bSO_2R_a$, or -$NR_bSO_2NR_aR_b$, C_{1-12} alkyl, C_{2-12} alkenyl, C_{2-12} alkynyl, C_{6-12} aryl, C_{7-16} aralkyl, 5-12 membered heteroaryl, 6-18 membered heteroaralkyl, 3-12 membered heterocycle, or 4-18 membered heterocycle-alkyl, wherein R_a, R_b, R_c, and R_d are each independently H, C_{1-12} alkyl, C_{2-12} alkenyl, C_{2-12} alkynyl, C_{6-12} aryl, C_{7-16} aralkyl, 5-12 membered heteroaryl, 6-18 membered heteroaralkyl, 3-12 membered heterocycle, or 4-18 membered heterocycle-alkyl.

39. A compound according to claim 38, wherein R^{11} is halogen, -OR_a, -NR_aR_b, -C(=O)OR_a, -C(O)NR_aR_b, -C(=O)OH, -C(=O)R_a, -NR_dC(=O)NR_aR_b, -NR_bC(=O)R_a, -NR_bC(=O)OR_a, -OC(=O)NR_aR_b, -OC(=O)R_a, -OC(=O)OR_a, hydroxyl, cyano, -$SO_2NR_aR_b$, -$NR_bSO_2R_a$, C_{1-6} alkyl, C_{2-6} alkenyl, C_{2-6} alkynyl, phenyl, C_{7-8} aralkyl, 5-6 membered heteroaryl, 6-8 membered heteroaralkyl, 5-6 membered heterocycle, or 6-8 membered heterocycle-alkyl, wherein R_a,R_b, and R_d are each independently are each independently H, C_{1-12} alkyl, C_{2-12} alkenyl, C_{2-12} alkynyl, C_{6-12} aryl, C_{7-16} aralkyl, 5-12 membered heteroaryl, 6-18 membered heteroaralkyl, 3-12 membered heterocycle, or 4-18 membered heterocycle-alkyl.

40. A compound according to claim 38, wherein R^{11} is halogen, -OR_a, -NR_aR_b, -C(O)NR_aR_b, -C(=O)OH, -C(=O)R_a, -NR_dC(=O)NR_aR_b, -NR_bC(=O)R_a, -NR_bC(=O)OR_a, -OC(=O)NR_aR_b, hydroxyl, cyano, C_{1-6} alkyl, C_{2-6} alkenyl, C_{2-6} alkynyl, phenyl, C_{7-8} aralkyl, 5-6 membered heteroaryl, 6-8 membered heteroaralkyl, 5-6 membered heterocycle, or 6-8 membered heterocycle-alkyl, wherein R_a,R_b, and R_d are each independently H, C_{1-12} alkyl, C_{2-12} alkenyl, C_{2-12} alkynyl, C_{6-12} aryl, C_{7-16} aralkyl, 5-12 membered heteroaryl, 6-18 membered heteroaralkyl, 3-12 membered heterocycle, or 4-18 membered heterocycle-alkyl.

41. A compound according to claim 38, wherein R^{11} is halogen, -OR_a, -NR_aR_b, hydroxyl, cyano, C_{1-6} alkyl, wherein R_a-R_b are each independently H, C_{1-12} alkyl, C_{2-12} alkenyl, C_{2-12} alkynyl, C_{6-12} aryl, C_{7-16} aralkyl, 5-12 membered heteroaryl, 6-18 membered heteroaralkyl, 3-12 membered heterocycle, or 4-18 membered heterocycle-alkyl.

42. A compound according to any one of claims 1 to 29, wherein R^{12} is halogen, $-OR_a$, oxo, $-NR_aR_b$, $=NO-R_c$, $-C(=O)OR_a$, $-C(O)NR_aR_b$, $-C(=O)OH$, $-C(=O)R_a$, $-C(=NOR_c)R_a$, $-C(=NR_c)NR_aR_b$, $-NR_dC(=O)NR_aR_b$, $-NR_bC(=O)R_a$, $-NR_dC(=NR_c)NR_aR_b$, $-NR_bC(=O)OR_a$, $-OC(=O)NR_aR_b$, $-OC(=O)R_a$, $-OC(=O)OR_a$, hydroxyl, nitro, azido, cyano, $-S(O)_{0-3}R_a$, $-SO_2NR_aR_b$, $-NR_bSO_2R_a$, $-NR_bSO_2NR_aR_b$, C_{1-12} alkyl, C_{2-12} alkenyl, C_{2-12} alkynyl, C_{6-12} aryl, C_{7-16} aralkyl, 5-12 membered heteroaryl, 6-18 membered heteroaralkyl, 3-12 membered heterocycle, or 4-18 membered heterocycle-alkyl, wherein R_a, R_b, R_c, and R_d are each independently H, C_{1-12} alkyl, C_{2-12} alkenyl, C_{2-12} alkynyl, C_{6-12} aryl, C_{7-16} aralkyl, 5-12 membered heteroaryl, 6-18 membered heteroaralkyl, 3-12 membered heterocycle, or 4-18 membered heterocycle-alkyl.

43. A compound according to claim 42, wherein R^{12} is halogen, $-OR_a$, oxo, $-NR_aR_b$, $-C(=O)OR_a$, $-C(O)NR_aR_b$, $-C(=O)OH$, $-C(=O)R_a$, $-NR_dC(=O)NR_aR_b$, $-NR_bC(=O)R_a$, $-NR_bC(=O)OR_a$, $-OC(=O)NR_aR_b$, $-OC(=O)R_a$, $-OC(=O)OR_a$, hydroxyl, cyano, $-SO_2NR_aR_b$, $-NR_bSO_2R_a$, C_{1-6} alkyl, C_{2-6} alkenyl, C_{2-6} alkynyl, phenyl, C_{7-8} aralkyl, 5-6 membered heteroaryl, 6-8 membered heteroaralkyl, 5-6 membered heterocycle, or 6-8 membered heterocycle-alkyl, wherein R_a,R_b, and R_d are each independently H, C_{1-12} alkyl, C_{2-12} alkenyl, C_{2-12} alkynyl, C_{6-12} aryl, C_{7-16} aralkyl, 5-12 membered heteroaryl, 6-18 membered heteroaralkyl, 3-12 membered heterocycle, or 4-18 membered heterocycle-alkyl.

44. A compound according to claim 42 wherein R^{12} is halogen, $-OR_a$, oxo, $-NR_aR_b$, $-C(O)NR_aR_b$, $-C(=O)OH$, $-C(=O)R_a$, $-NR_dC(=O)NR_aR_b$, $-NR_bC(=O)R_a$, $-NR_bC(=O)OR_a$, $-OC(=O)NR_aR_b$, hydroxyl, cyano, C_{1-6} alkyl, C_{2-6} alkenyl, C_{2-6} alkynyl, phenyl, C_{7-8} aralkyl, 5-6 membered heteroaryl, 6-8 membered heteroaralkyl, 5-6 membered heterocycle, or 6-8 membered heterocycle-alkyl, wherein R_a,R_b, and R_d are each independently H, C_{1-12} alkyl, C_{2-12} alkenyl, C_{2-12} alkynyl, C_{6-12} aryl, C_{7-16} aralkyl, 5-12 membered heteroaryl, 6-18 membered heteroaralkyl, 3-12 membered heterocycle, or 4-18 membered heterocycle-alkyl.

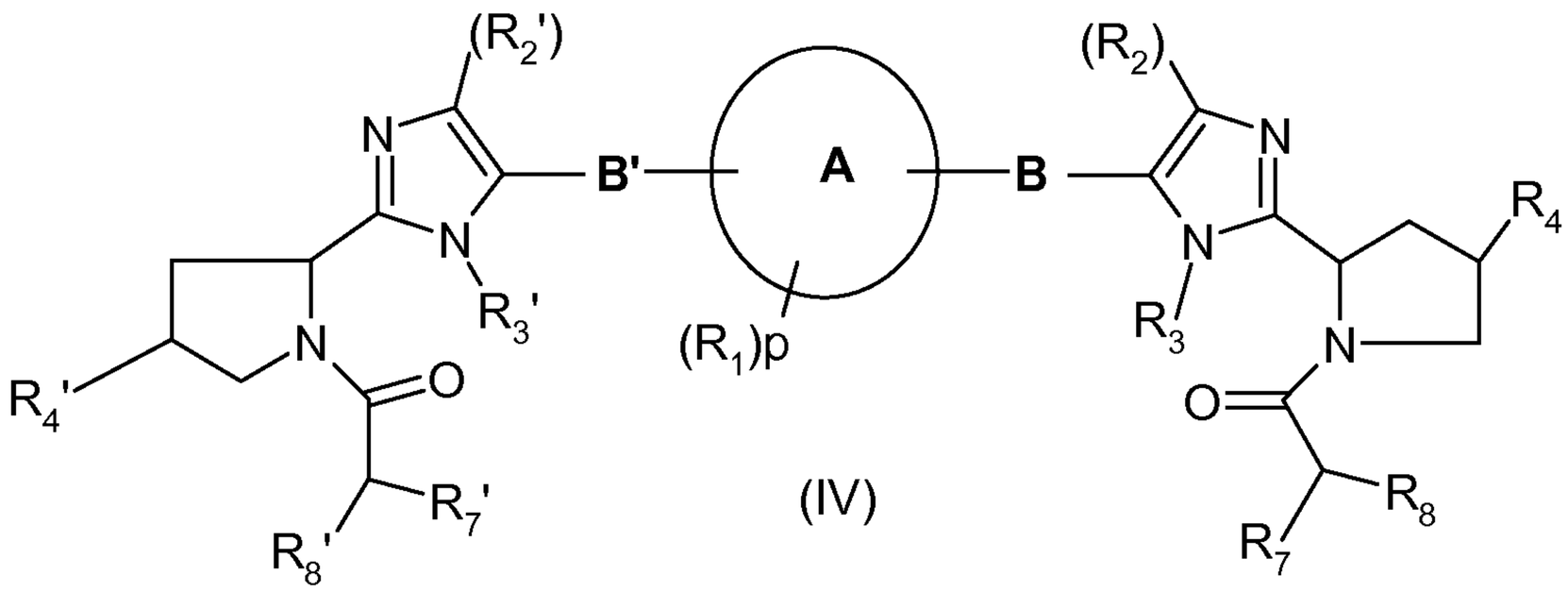
45. A compound according to claim 42, wherein R^{12} is halogen, $-OR_a$, oxo, $-NR_aR_b$, hydroxyl, cyano, C_{1-6} alkyl, wherein R_a-R_b are are each independently H, C_{1-12} alkyl, C_{2-12} alkenyl, C_{2-12} alkynyl, C_{6-12} aryl, C_{7-16} aralkyl, 5-12 membered heteroaryl, 6-18 membered heteroaralkyl, 3-12 membered heterocycle, or 4-18 membered heterocycle-alkyl.

46. A compound according to any one of claim 1 to 45, wherein R_a, R_b, R_c, and R_d are each independently H, C_{1-6} alkyl, C_{2-6} alkenyl, C_{2-6} alkynyl, phenyl, C_{7-8} aralkyl, 5-6 membered heteroaryl, 6-8 membered heteroaralkyl, 5-6 membered heterocycle, or 6-8 membered heterocycle-alkyl.

47. A compound according to claim 46, wherein R_a and R_c are each independently H, C_{1-6} alkyl, C_{2-6} alkenyl, C_{2-6} alkynyl, phenyl, C_{7-8} aralkyl, 5-6 membered heteroaryl, 6-8 membered heteroaralkyl, 5-6 membered heterocycle, or 6-8 membered heterocycle-alkyl, and R_b, and R_d.are each independently H or C_{1-3} alkyl.

48. A compound according to claim 46, wherein R_a, R_b, R_c, and R_d are each independently H or C_{1-3} alkyl.

49. A compound according to any one of claims 1 to 27, wherein wherein said compound is of formula (IV):



(IV)

or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof;

wherein

R_7 and R_7' are each independently C_{1-8} alkyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{10}, C_{2-8} alkenyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{10}, C_{2-8} alkynyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{10}, phenyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{11}, benzyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{11}, 5-6 membered heteroaryl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{11}, 6-7 membered heteroaralkyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{11}, 3-6 membered heterocycle which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{12}, or 4-7 membered heterocycle-alkyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{12}; and

R_8 and R_8' are each independently $-NR_aR_b$, $-NR_dC(=O)NR_aR_b$, $-NR_bC(=O)R_a$, $-NR_dC(=NR_c)NR_aR_b$, $-NR_bC(=O)OR_a$, $-NR_bSO_2R_a$, $-NR_bSO_2NR_aR_b$, wherein R_a, R_b, R_c, and R_d are each independently

H, C_{1-12} alkyl, C_{2-12} alkenyl, C_{2-12} alkynyl, C_{6-12} aryl, C_{7-16} aralkyl, 5-12 membered heteroaryl, 6-18 membered heteroaralkyl, 3-12 membered heterocycle, or 4-18 membered heterocycle-alkyl.

50. A compound according to claim 49, wherein R_8 and R_8' are each independently $-NR_aR_b$, $-NR_bC(=O)R_a$, $-NR_bC(=O)OR_a$, wherein R_a, R_b, R_c, and R_d are each independently H, C_{1-6} alkyl, phenyl, benzyl, 5-6 membered heteroaryl, 6-8 membered heteroaralkyl, 5-6 membered heterocycle, or 6-8 membered heterocycle-alkyl.

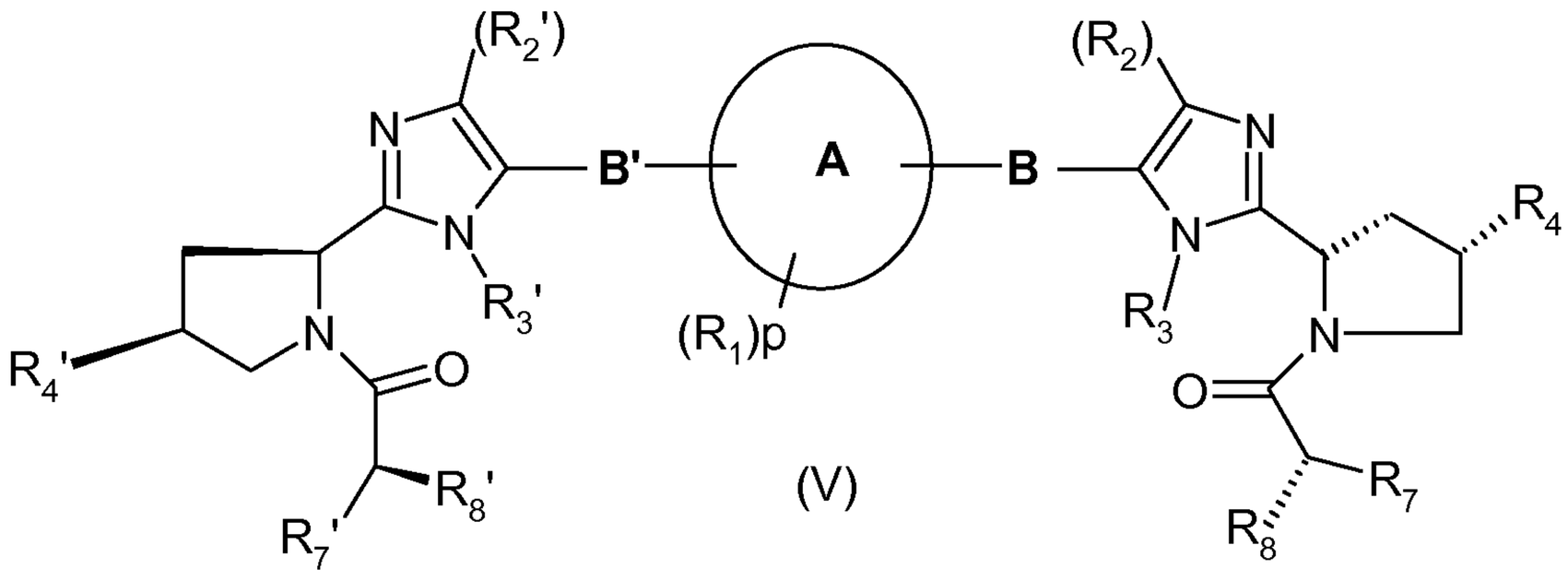
51. A compound according to claim 49, wherein R_8 and R_8' in formulas (IV), are each independently $-NR_bC(=O)OR_a$, wherein R_a-R_b are each independently H, C_{1-6} alkyl, phenyl, tetrahydrofuran, or benzyl.

52. A compound according to any one of claims 49 to 51, wherein R_7 and R_7' are each independently phenyl.

53. A compound according to any one of claims 49to 51, wherein R_7 and R_7' are each independently, C_{1-6} alkyl.

54. A compound according to claim 53 wherein R_7 and R_7' are each independently methyl, ethyl, propyl, isopropyl, butyl, *sec*-butyl, *tert*-butyl, pentyl, 2-methylbutane, 3-methylbutane, cyclopropyl, cyclobutyl, cyclopentyl, or cyclohexyl.

55. A compound according to any one of claims 49 to 54, wherein wherein said compound is of formula (V):



(V)

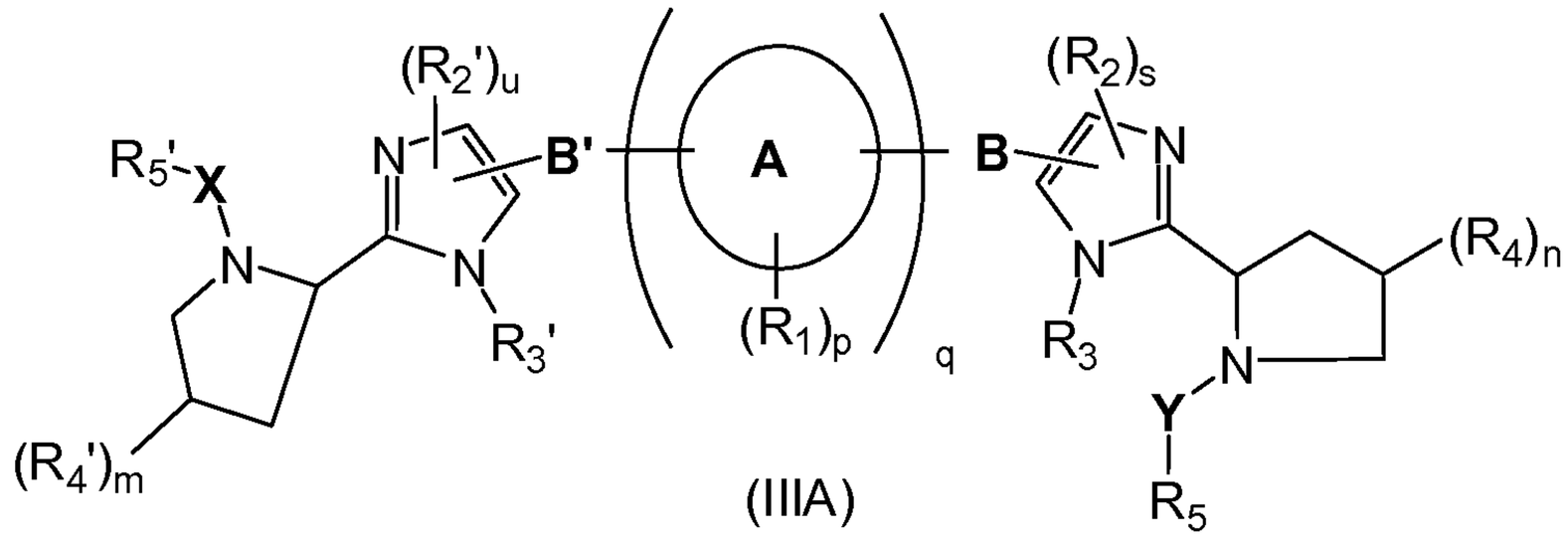
or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

56. A compound according to any one of claims 1 to 55, wherein as the formula and valency allows in B, B', R_a, R_b, R_c, and R_d, R_1, R_2, R_2', R_3, R_3', R_4, R_4', R^{10}, R^{11} and R^{12} each of alkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl, alkoxy, aryl, aralkyl, heteroaryl, heteroaralkyl, heterocycle, or heterocycle-alkyl is independently unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by halogen, $-OR_{a'}$ $-NR_{a'}R_{b'}$, $C(=O)OR_{a'}$, $-C(O)NR_{a'}R_{b'}$, -C(=O)OH, hydroxyl, nitro, azido, cyano; and wherein $R_{a'}$-$R_{d'}$ are each independently H, C_{1-12} alkyl.

57. A compound according to claim 56, wherein as the formula and valency allows in B, B', R_a, R_b, R_c, and R_d, R_1, R_2, R_2', R_3, R_3', R_4, R_4', R^{10}, R^{11} and R^{12} each of alkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl, alkoxy, aryl, aralkyl, heteroaryl, heteroaralkyl, heterocycle, or heterocycle-alkyl is independently unsubstituted or substituted one time by halogen.

58. A compound according to claim 57, wherein as the formula and valency allows in B, B', R_a, R_b, R_c, and R_d, R_1, R_2, R_2', R_3, R_3', R_4, R_4', R^{10}, R^{11} and R^{12} each of alkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl, alkoxy, aryl, aralkyl, heteroaryl, heteroaralkyl, heterocycle, or heterocycle-alkyl is independently unsubstituted or substituted one time by fluoro.

59. A compound of formula (IIIA):



(IIIA)

or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, wherein

each A is independently C_{6-14} aryl, 4-12 membered heterocycle, C_{3-10} cycloalkyl, or 5-12 membered heteroaryl;

B and B' are each independently absent, C_{1-6} alkyl, C_{2-6} alkenyl, or C_{2-6} alkynyl; wherein when q is 1 then at least one of B and B' is absent;

R_1 is halogen, $-OR_a$, $-NR_aR_b$, $-C(=O)OR_a$, $-C(O)NR_aR_b$, -C(=O)OH, $-C(=O)R_a$, $-C(=NOR_c)R_a$, $-C(=NR_c)NR_aR_b$, $-NR_dC(=O)NR_aR_b$, $-NR_bC(=O)R_a$, $-NR_dC(=NR_c)NR_aR_b$, $-NR_bC(=O)OR_a$, $-OC(=O)NR_aR_b$, $-OC(=O)R_a$, $-OC(=O)OR_a$, hydroxyl, nitro, azido, cyano, $-S(O)_{0-}$

$_3R_a$, $-SO_2NR_aR_b$, $-NR_bSO_2R_a$, $-NR_bSO_2NR_aR_b$, $-P(=O)OR_aOR_b$, C_{1-6} alkyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{10}, C_{2-6} alkenyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{10}, C_{2-6} alkynyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{10}, or any two occurrences of R_1 can be taken together with the atoms to which they are attached to form a 5-7 cycloalkyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{11} or a 5-7 membered heterocycle which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{12};

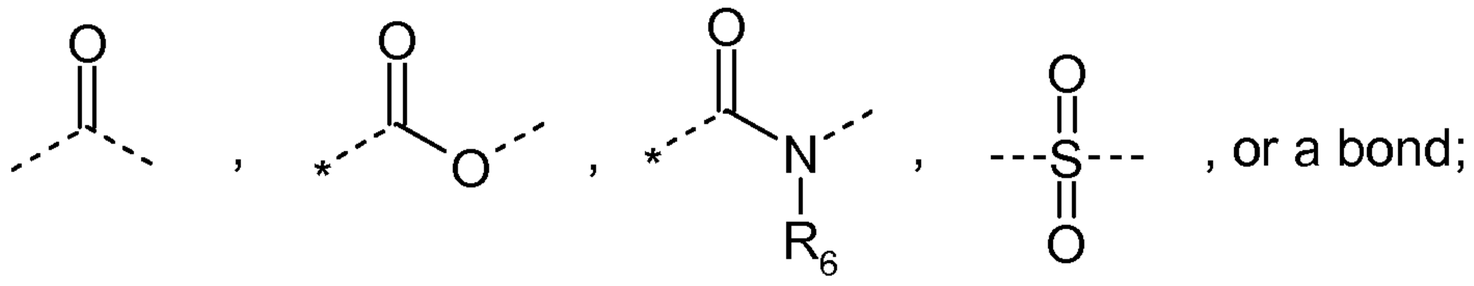
R_a, R_b, R_c, and R_d are each independently H, C_{1-12} alkyl, C_{2-12} alkenyl, C_{2-12} alkynyl, C_{6-12} aryl, C_{7-16} aralkyl, 5-12 membered heteroaryl, 6-18 membered heteroaralkyl, 3-12 membered heterocycle, or 4-18 membered heterocycle-alkyl;

$R_{2'}$ and R_2 are independently H, halogen, C_{1-10} alkyl, C_{1-6} halogenated alkyl, $-(CH_2)_{1-6}OH$, $-NR_bC(=O)R_a$ C_{6-12} aryl, or 5-12 membered heteroaryl;

R_3 and R_3' are each independently H, C_{1-6} alkyl, $-(CH_2)_{1-6}OH$, C_{2-6} alkenyl, or C_{2-6} alkynyl;

R_4 and R_4' are each independently $-NR_aR_b$, $-C(O)NR_aR_b$, $-(CH_2)_{1-6}OH$, C_{1-6} alkyl, C_{1-6} halogenated alkyl, C_{6-14} aryl, or C_{1-6} alkoxy; wherein two occurrence of R_4 can be taken together with the atoms to which they are attached to form a C_{1-6} alkenyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{10}, a 4-7 cycloalkyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{11} or a 4-7 membered heterocycle which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{12}; wherein two occurrence of R_4' can be taken together with the atoms to which they are attached to form a C_{1-6} alkenyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{10}, a 3-7 cycloalkyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{11} or a 4-7 membered heterocycle which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{12}; wherein R_a-R_b are each independently H, C_{1-12} alkyl, C_{2-12} alkenyl, C_{2-12} alkynyl, C_{6-12} aryl, C_{7-16} aralkyl, 5-12 membered heteroaryl, 6-18 membered heteroaralkyl, 3-12 membered heterocycle, or 4-18 membered heterocycle-alkyl;

X and Y are each independently



, or a bond;

wherein the asterisk (*) indicates the point of attachment to the nitrogen of ring C or C';

R_5 and R_5' are each independently H, C_{1-18} alkyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{10}, C_{2-12} alkenyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{10}, C_{2-12} alkynyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{10}, C_{6-14} aryl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{11}, C_{7-16} aralkyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{11}, 5-12 membered heteroaryl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{11}, 6-18 membered heteroaralkyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{11}, 3-12 membered heterocycle which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{12}, or 4-18 membered heterocycle-alkyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{12};

R_6 is H, C_{1-6} alkyl, or halogenated C_{1-6} alkyl;

m and n are a positive integer and when combined are 1, 2, 3, or 4, provided that each of m and n are not 3 or 4;

p is 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4;

q is 1 or 2;

u is 0 or 1;

s is 0 or 1;

R^{10} is halogen, $-OR_a$, oxo, $-NR_aR_b$, $=NO-R_c$, $-C(=O)OR_a$, $-C(O)NR_aR_b$, $-C(=O)OH$, $-C(=O)R_a$, $-C(=NOR_c)R_a$, $-C(=NR_c)NR_aR_b$, $-NR_dC(=O)NR_aR_b$, $-NR_bC(=O)R_a$, $-NR_dC(=NR_c)NR_aR_b$, $-NR_bC(=O)OR_a$, $-OC(=O)NR_aR_b$, $-OC(=O)R_a$, $-OC(=O)OR_a$, hydroxyl, nitro, azido, cyano, $-S(O)_{0-3}R_a$, $-SO_2NR_aR_b$, $-NR_bSO_2R_a$, $-NR_bSO_2NR_aR_b$, or $-P(=O)OR_aOR_b$,;

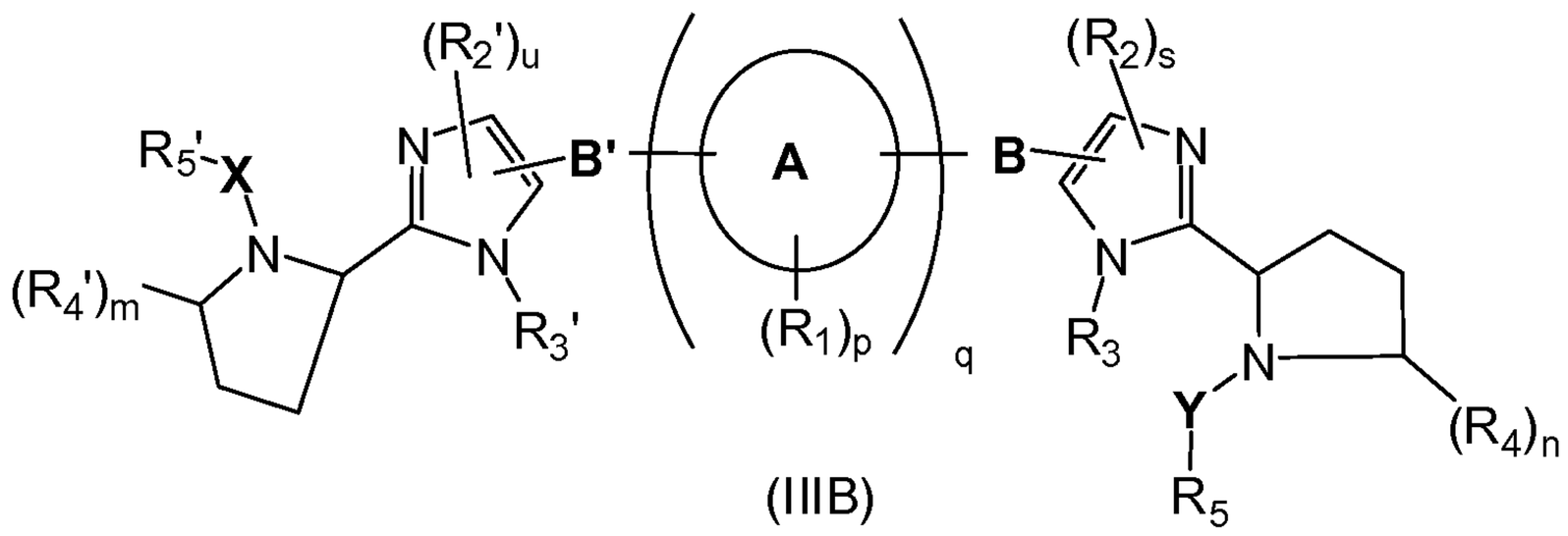
R^{11} is halogen, $-OR_a$, $-NR_aR_b$, $-C(=O)OR_a$, $-C(O)NR_aR_b$, $-C(=O)OH$, $-C(=O)R_a$, $-C(=NOR_c)R_a$, $-C(=NR_c)NR_aR_b$, $-NR_dC(=O)NR_aR_b$, $-NR_bC(=O)R_a$, $-NR_dC(=NR_c)NR_aR_b$, $-NR_bC(=O)OR_a$, $-OC(=O)NR_aR_b$, $-OC(=O)R_a$, $-OC(=O)OR_a$, hydroxyl, nitro, azido, cyano, $-S(O)_{0-3}R_a$, $-SO_2NR_aR_b$, $-NR_bSO_2R_a$, $-NR_bSO_2NR_aR_b$, or $-P(=O)OR_aOR_b$, C_{1-12} alkyl, C_{2-12} alkenyl, C_{2-12} alkynyl, C_{6-12} aryl, C_{7-16} aralkyl, 5-12 membered heteroaryl, 6-18 membered heteroaralkyl, 3-12 membered heterocycle, or 4-18 membered heterocycle-alkyl; and

R^{12} is halogen, $-OR_a$, oxo, $-NR_aR_b$, $=NO-R_c$, $-C(=O)OR_a$, $-C(O)NR_aR_b$, $-C(=O)OH$, $-C(=O)R_a$, $-C(=NOR_c)R_a$, $-C(=NR_c)NR_aR_b$, $-NR_dC(=O)NR_aR_b$, $-NR_bC(=O)R_a$, $-NR_dC(=NR_c)NR_aR_b$, $-NR_bC(=O)OR_a$, $-OC(=O)NR_aR_b$, $-OC(=O)R_a$, $-OC(=O)OR_a$, hydroxyl, nitro, azido, cyano, $-S(O)_{0-3}R_a$, $-SO_2NR_aR_b$, $-NR_bSO_2R_a$, $-NR_bSO_2NR_aR_b$, or $-P(=O)OR_aOR_b$, C_{1-12} alkyl, C_{2-12} alkenyl, C_{2-12} alkynyl, C_{6-12} aryl, C_{7-16} aralkyl, 5-12 membered heteroaryl, 6-18 membered heteroaralkyl, 3-12 membered heterocycle, or 4-18 membered heterocycle-alkyl.

60. A compound according to claim 59, wherein R_4 and R_4' are each independently $-NR_aR_b$, $-C(O)NR_aR_b$, $-(CH_2)_{1-6}OH$, C_{1-6} alkyl, C_{1-6} halogenated alkyl, C_{6-14} aryl, or C_{1-6} alkoxy.

61. A compound according to claim 59, wherein R_4 and R_4' are C_{1-6} alkyl.

62. A compound of formula (IIIB):



(IIIB)

or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, wherein

each A is independently C_{6-14} aryl, 4-12 membered heterocycle, C_{3-10} cycloalkyl, or 5-12 membered heteroaryl wherein when q is 2 then both A rings are not phenyl;

B and B' are each independently absent, C_{1-6} alkyl, C_{2-6} alkenyl, or C_{2-6} alkynyl; wherein q is 1 then at least one of B and B' is absent;

R_1 is halogen, $-OR_a$, $-NR_aR_b$, $-C(=O)OR_a$, $-C(O)NR_aR_b$, $-C(=O)OH$, $-C(=O)R_a$, $-C(=NOR_c)R_a$, $-C(=NR_c)NR_aR_b$, $-NR_dC(=O)NR_aR_b$, $-NR_bC(=O)R_a$, $-NR_dC(=NR_c)NR_aR_b$, $-NR_bC(=O)OR_a$, $-OC(=O)NR_aR_b$, $-OC(=O)R_a$, $-OC(=O)OR_a$, hydroxyl, nitro, azido, cyano, $-S(O)_{0-3}R_a$, $-SO_2NR_aR_b$, $-NR_bSO_2R_a$, $-NR_bSO_2NR_aR_b$, $-P(=O)OR_aOR_b$, C_{1-6} alkyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{10}, C_{2-6} alkenyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{10}, C_{2-6} alkynyl which is

unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{10}, or any two occurrences of R_1 can be taken together with the atoms to which they are attached to form a 5-7 cycloalkyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{11} or a 5-7 membered heterocycle which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{12};

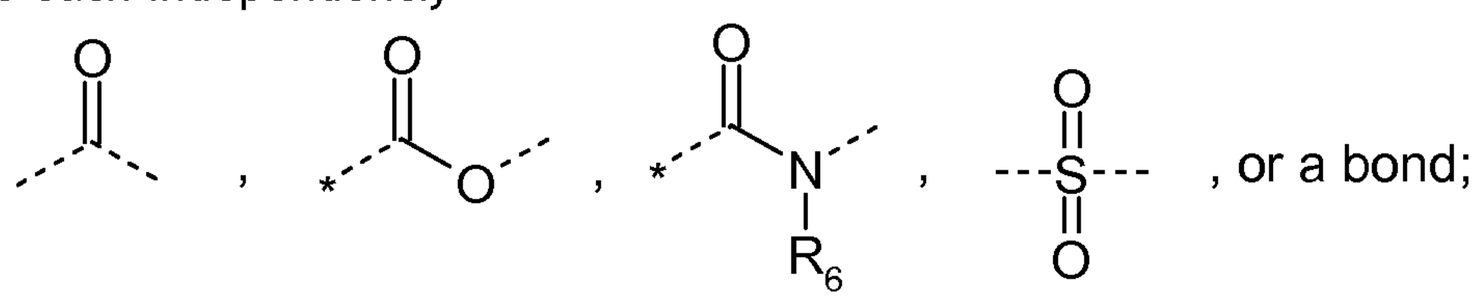
R_a, R_b, R_c, and R_d are each independently H, C_{1-12} alkyl, C_{2-12} alkenyl, C_{2-12} alkynyl, C_{6-12} aryl, C_{7-16} aralkyl, 5-12 membered heteroaryl, 6-18 membered heteroaralkyl, 3-12 membered heterocycle, or 4-18 membered heterocycle-alkyl;

$R_{2'}$ and R_2 are independently H, halogen, C_{1-10} alkyl, C_{1-6} halogenated alkyl, $-(CH_2)_{1-6}OH$, $-NR_bC(=O)R_a$ C_{6-12} aryl, or 5-12 membered heteroaryl;

R_3 and R_3' are each independently H, C_{1-6} alkyl, $-(CH_2)_{1-6}OH$, C_{2-6} alkenyl, or C_{2-6} alkynyl;

R_4 and R_4' are each independently halogen, $-NR_aR_b$, $-C(O)NR_aR_b$, $-(CH_2)_{1-6}OH$, C_{1-6} alkyl, C_{1-6} halogenated alkyl, hydroxyl, or C_{1-6} alkoxy; wherein two occurrence of R_4 can be taken together with the atoms to which they are attached to form a C_{1-6} alkenyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{10}, a 3-7 cycloalkyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{11} or a 4-7 membered heterocycle which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{12}; wherein two occurrence of R_4' can be taken together with the atoms to which they are attached to form a C_{1-6} alkenyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{10}, a 3-7 cycloalkyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{11} or a 4-7 membered heterocycle which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{12}; wherein R_a-R_b are each independently H, C_{1-12} alkyl, C_{2-12} alkenyl, C_{2-12} alkynyl, C_{6-12} aryl, C_{7-16} aralkyl, 5-12 membered heteroaryl, 6-18 membered heteroaralkyl, 3-12 membered heterocycle, or 4-18 membered heterocycle-alkyl;

X and Y are each independently



, or a bond;

wherein the asterisk (*) indicates the point of attachment to the nitrogen of ring C or C';

R_5 and R_5' are each independently H, C_{1-18} alkyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{10}, C_{2-12} alkenyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more

times by R^{10}, C_{2-12} alkynyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{10}, C_{6-14} aryl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{11}, C_{7-16} aralkyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{11}, 5-12 membered heteroaryl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{11}, 6-18 membered heteroaralkyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{11}, 3-12 membered heterocycle which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{12}, or 4-18 membered heterocycle-alkyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{12};

R_6 is H, C_{1-6} alkyl, or halogenated C_{1-6} alkyl;

m and n are a positive integer and when combined are 1, 2, 3, or 4, provided that each of m and n are not 3 or 4;

p is 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4;

q is 1 or 2;

u is 0 or 1;

s is 0 or 1;

R^{10} is halogen, $-OR_a$, oxo, $-NR_aR_b$, $=NO-R_c$, $-C(=O)OR_a$, $-C(O)NR_aR_b$, $-C(=O)OH$, $-C(=O)R_a$, $-C(=NOR_c)R_a$, $-C(=NR_c)NR_aR_b$, $-NR_dC(=O)NR_aR_b$, $-NR_bC(=O)R_a$, $-NR_dC(=NR_c)NR_aR_b$, $-NR_bC(=O)OR_a$, $-OC(=O)NR_aR_b$, $-OC(=O)R_a$, $-OC(=O)OR_a$, hydroxyl, nitro, azido, cyano, $-S(O)_{0-3}R_a$, $-SO_2NR_aR_b$, $-NR_bSO_2R_a$, $-NR_bSO_2NR_aR_b$, or $-P(=O)OR_aOR_b$,;

R^{11} is halogen, $-OR_a$, $-NR_aR_b$, $-C(=O)OR_a$, $-C(O)NR_aR_b$, $-C(=O)OH$, $-C(=O)R_a$, $-C(=NOR_c)R_a$, $-C(=NR_c)NR_aR_b$, $-NR_dC(=O)NR_aR_b$, $-NR_bC(=O)R_a$, $-NR_dC(=NR_c)NR_aR_b$, $-NR_bC(=O)OR_a$, $-OC(=O)NR_aR_b$, $-OC(=O)R_a$, $-OC(=O)OR_a$, hydroxyl, nitro, azido, cyano, $-S(O)_{0-3}R_a$, $-SO_2NR_aR_b$, $-NR_bSO_2R_a$, $-NR_bSO_2NR_aR_b$, or $-P(=O)OR_aOR_b$, C_{1-12} alkyl, C_{2-12} alkenyl, C_{2-12} alkynyl, C_{6-12} aryl, C_{7-16} aralkyl, 5-12 membered heteroaryl, 6-18 membered heteroaralkyl, 3-12 membered heterocycle, or 4-18 membered heterocycle-alkyl; and

R^{12} is halogen, $-OR_a$, oxo, $-NR_aR_b$, $=NO-R_c$, $-C(=O)OR_a$, $-C(O)NR_aR_b$, $-C(=O)OH$, $-C(=O)R_a$, $-C(=NOR_c)R_a$, $-C(=NR_c)NR_aR_b$, $-NR_dC(=O)NR_aR_b$, $-NR_bC(=O)R_a$, $-NR_dC(=NR_c)NR_aR_b$, $-NR_bC(=O)OR_a$, $-OC(=O)NR_aR_b$, $-OC(=O)R_a$, $-OC(=O)OR_a$, hydroxyl, nitro, azido, cyano, -

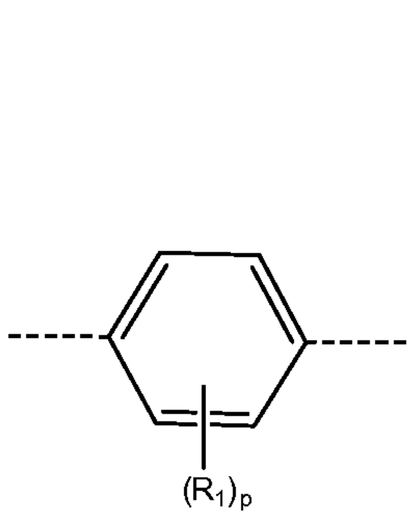
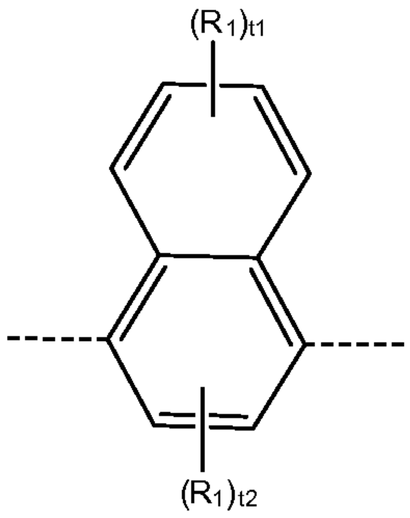
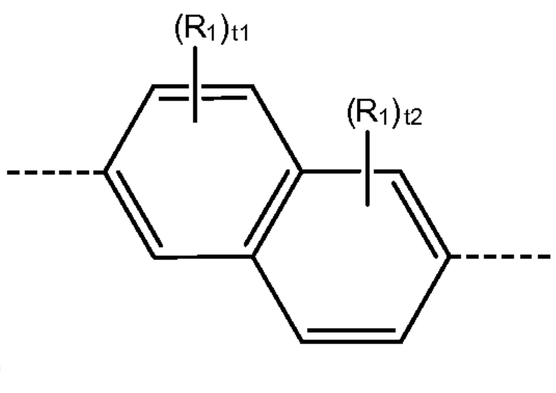
$S(O)_{0-3}R_a$, $-SO_2NR_aR_b$, $-NR_bSO_2R_a$, $-NR_bSO_2NR_aR_b$, or $-P(=O)OR_aOR_b$, C_{1-12} alkyl, C_{2-12} alkenyl, C_{2-12} alkynyl, C_{6-12} aryl, C_{7-16} aralkyl, 5-12 membered heteroaryl, 6-18 membered heteroaralkyl, 3-12 membered heterocycle, or 4-18 membered heterocycle-alkyl.

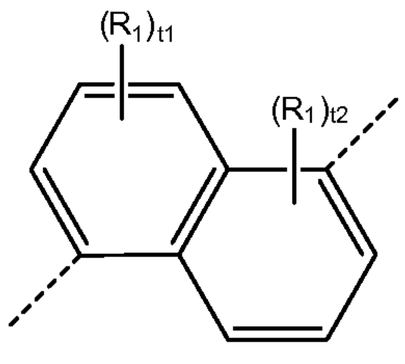
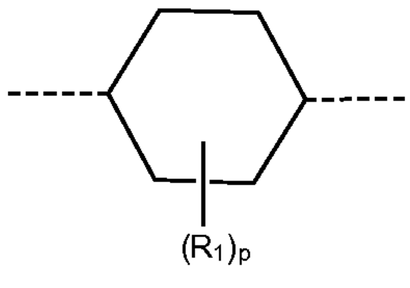
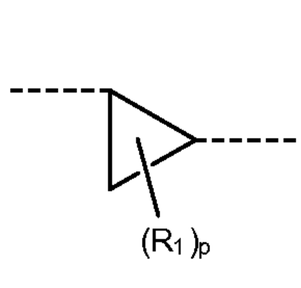
63. The compound according to any one of claims 1 to 3, 18 or 59 to 62, wherein

each A is independently cyclopropyl, cyclohexyl, pyrrolidinyl, pyrazolidinyl, imidazolidinyl, piperazinyl, piperadinyl, phenyl, naphthalenyl, thienyl, furanyl, pyrrolyl, pyrazolyl, imidazolyl, thiazolyl, thiadiazolyl, oxazolyl, oxadiazolyl, pyridyl, pyrimidyl, pyrazinyl, pyridazinyl, indolyl, indazolyl, benzimidazolyl, benzoxazolyl, benzodioxolyl, benzothiazolyl, benzothiadiazolyl, dihydrobenzodioxine, thienofuranyl, thienothienyl, thienopyrrolyl, quinolinyl, quinoxalinyl, quinazolinyl, cinnolinyl, or triazolyl; and wherein each A is independently substituted with $(R_1)_p$.

64. The compound according to claim 63, wherein each A is independently cyclopropyl, cyclohexyl, phenyl, or naphthalenyl, wherein each A is independently substituted with $(R_1)_p$.

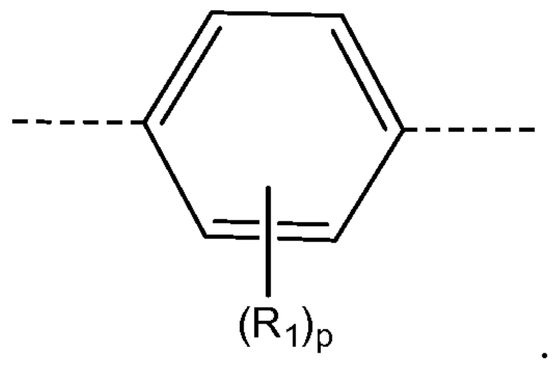
65. The compound according to claim 64, wherein each A is independently selected from the group consisting of:


,

,

,


,

and

; and

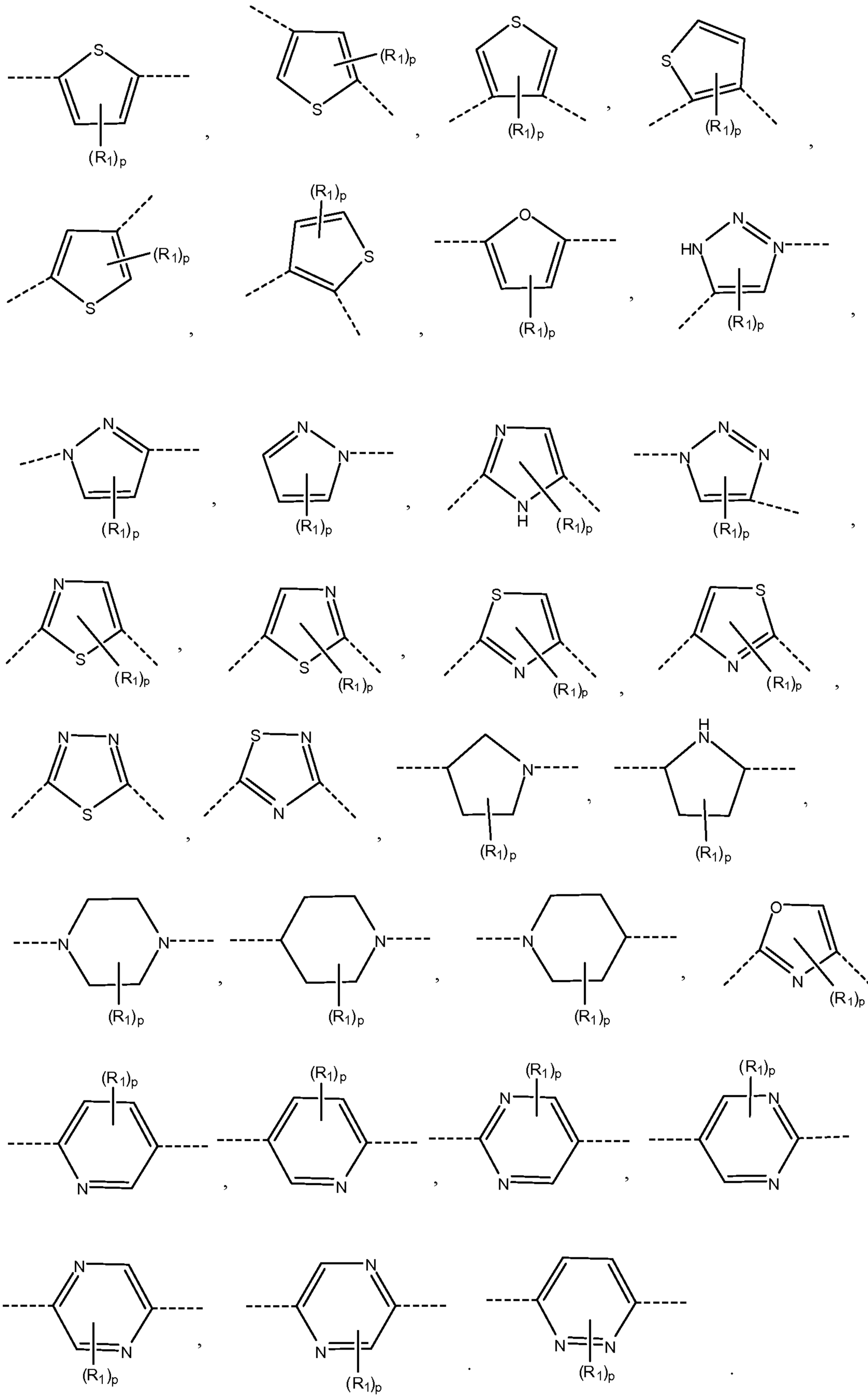
t1 + t2 = p.

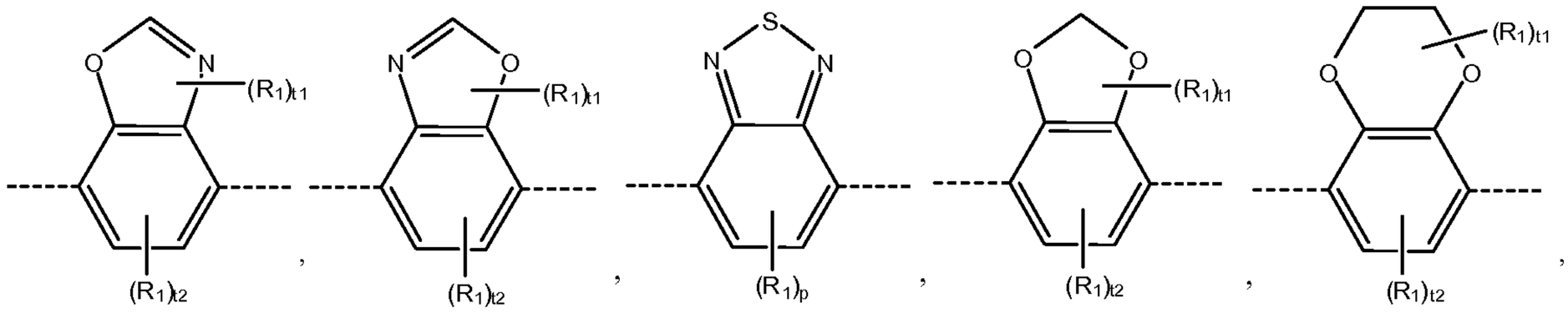
66. The compound according to claim 65, wherein A is:

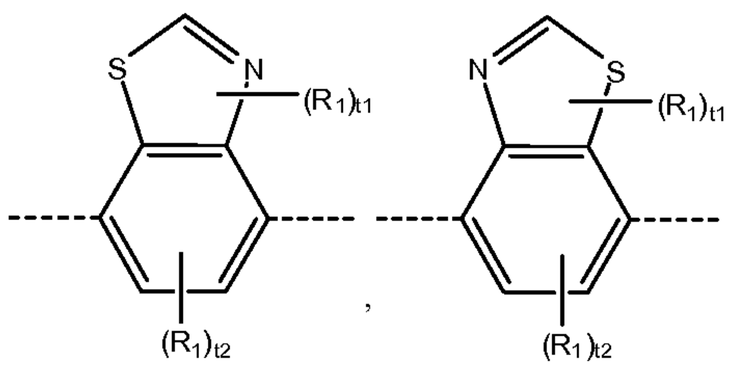


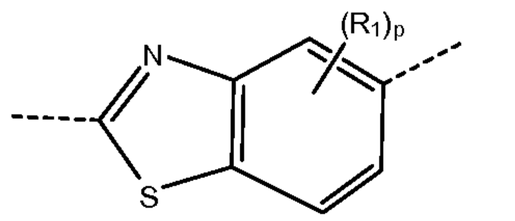
67. The compound according to claim 66, wherein each A is independently piperazinyl, piperadinyl, thienyl, furanyl, pyrrolyl, pyrazolyl, imidazolyl, thiazolyl, oxazolyl, thiadiazolyl, pyrrolidinyl, pyridyl, pyrimidinyl, pyrazinyl, pyridazinyl, benzoxazolyl, benzodioxolyl, benzothiazolyl, benzothiadiazolyl, dihydrobenzodioxinyl, thienofuranyl, thienothienyl, quinolinyl, or triazolyl.

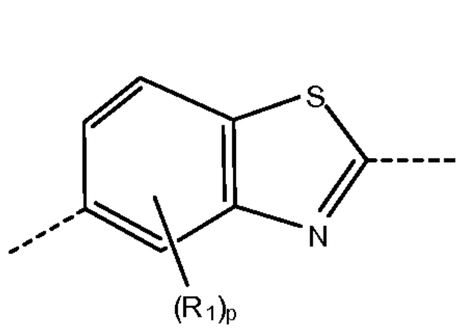
68. The compound according to claim 67, wherein each A is independently selected from the group consisting of:

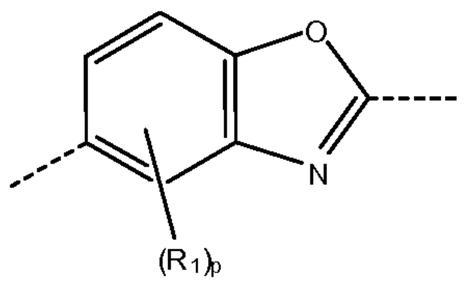


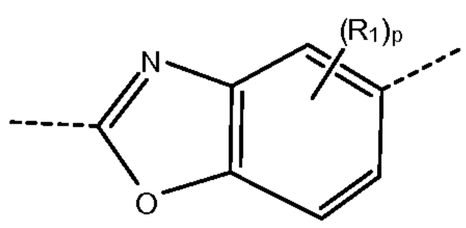


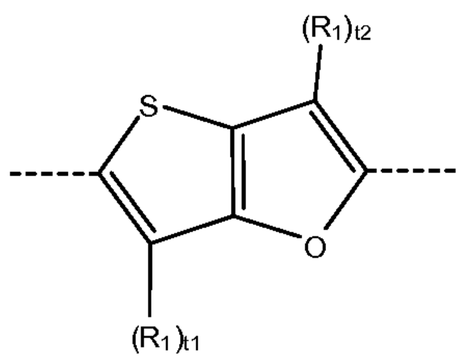


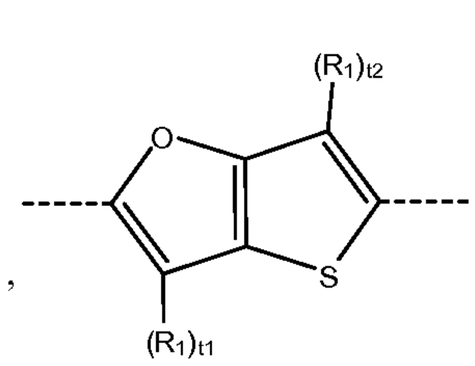


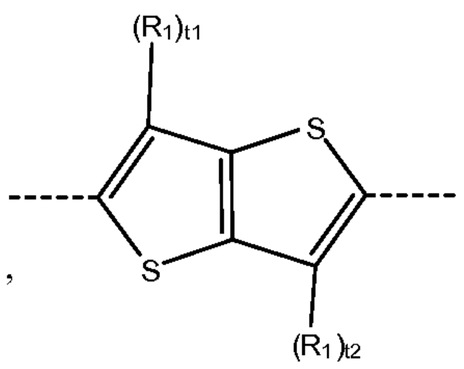


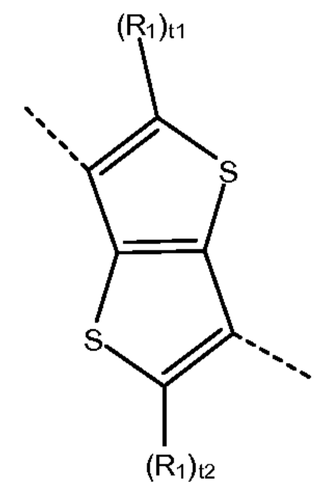


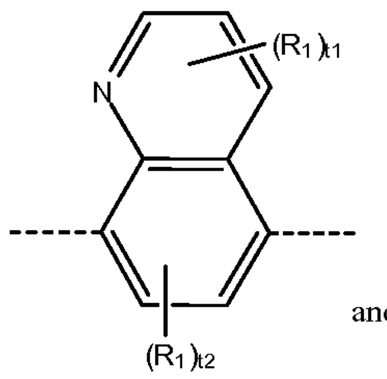




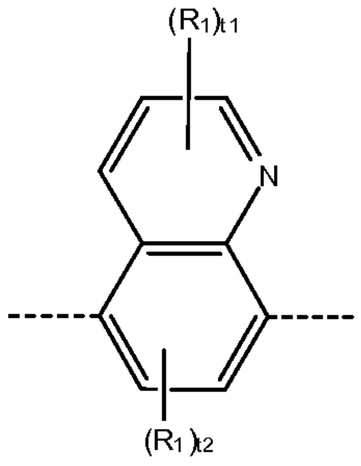








and



;

and

t1 + t2 = p.

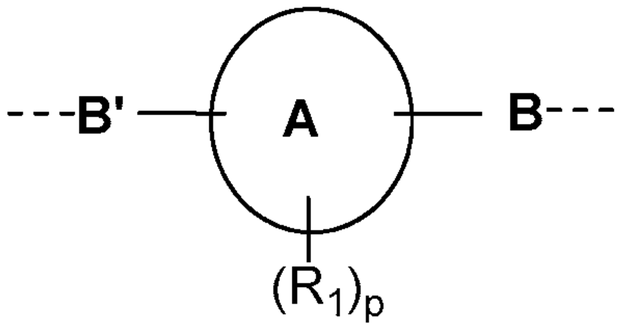
69. The compound according to any one of claims 1 to 3, 18 or 57 to 60, wherein each A is independently a 5-12 membered heteroaryl wherein the heteroatom(s) are selected from the group consisting of oxygen and sulphur; wherein each A is independently substituted with $(R_1)_p$.

70. The compound according to any one of claims 59 to 69, wherein B and B' are independently absent, C_{1-6} alkyl or C_{2-6} alkynyl.

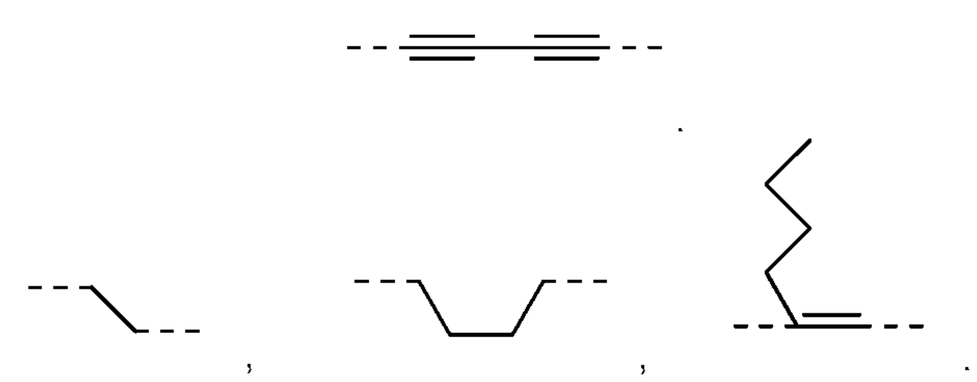
71. The compound according to claim 70, wherein B and B' are independently absent, -$(CH_2)_2$- or -(C≡C)-.

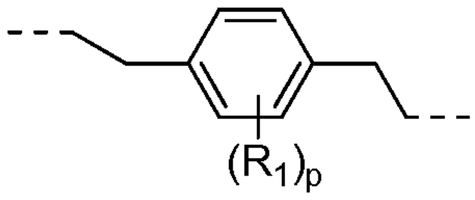
72. The compound according to claim 71, wherein B and B' are independently absent or -(C≡C)-.

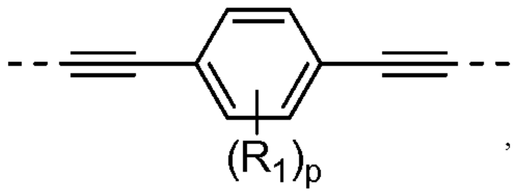
73. The compound according claim 1,

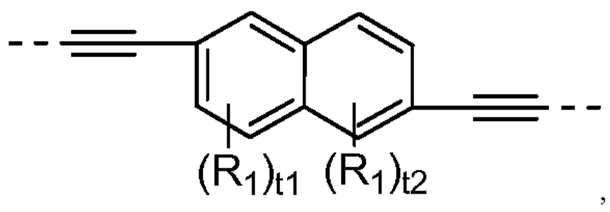


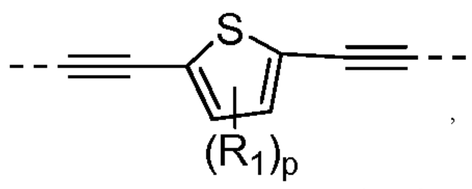
wherein is selected from the group consisting of:

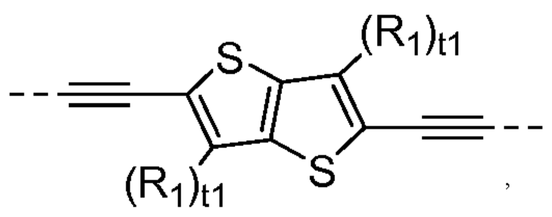


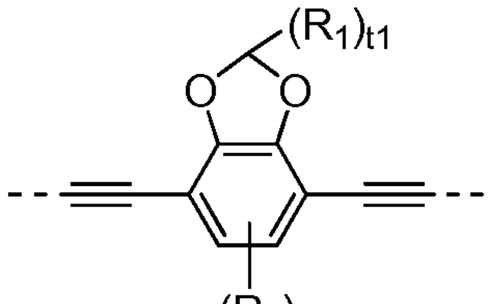


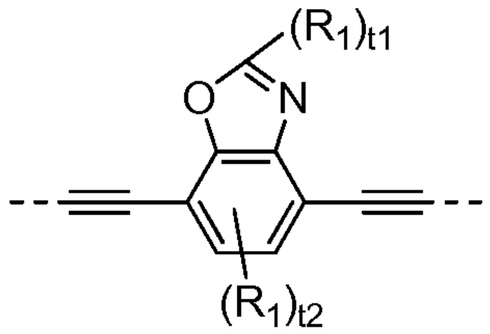




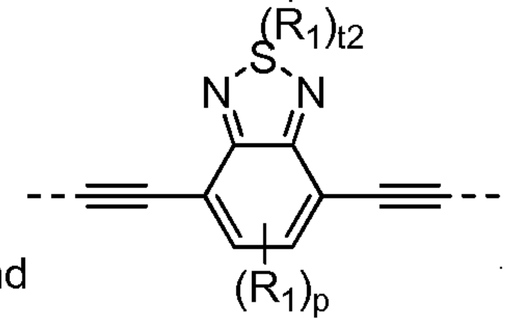


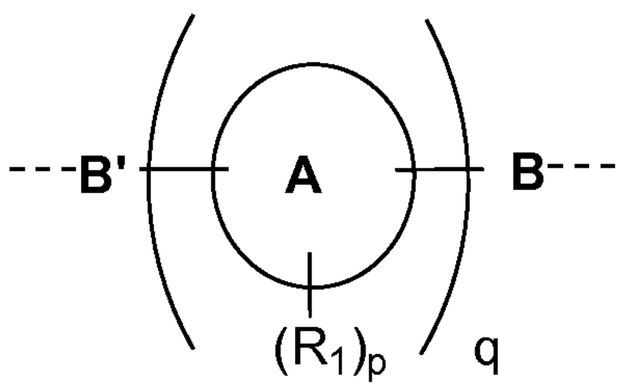


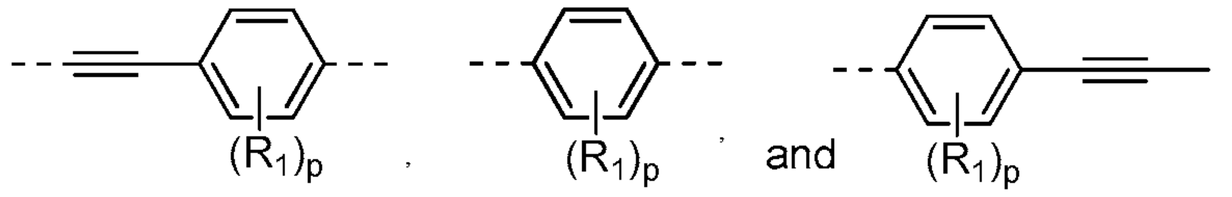


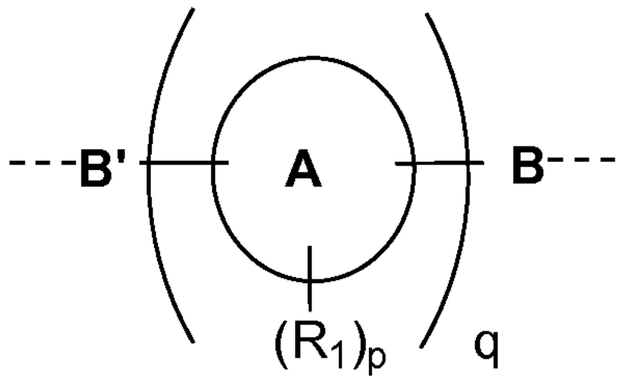


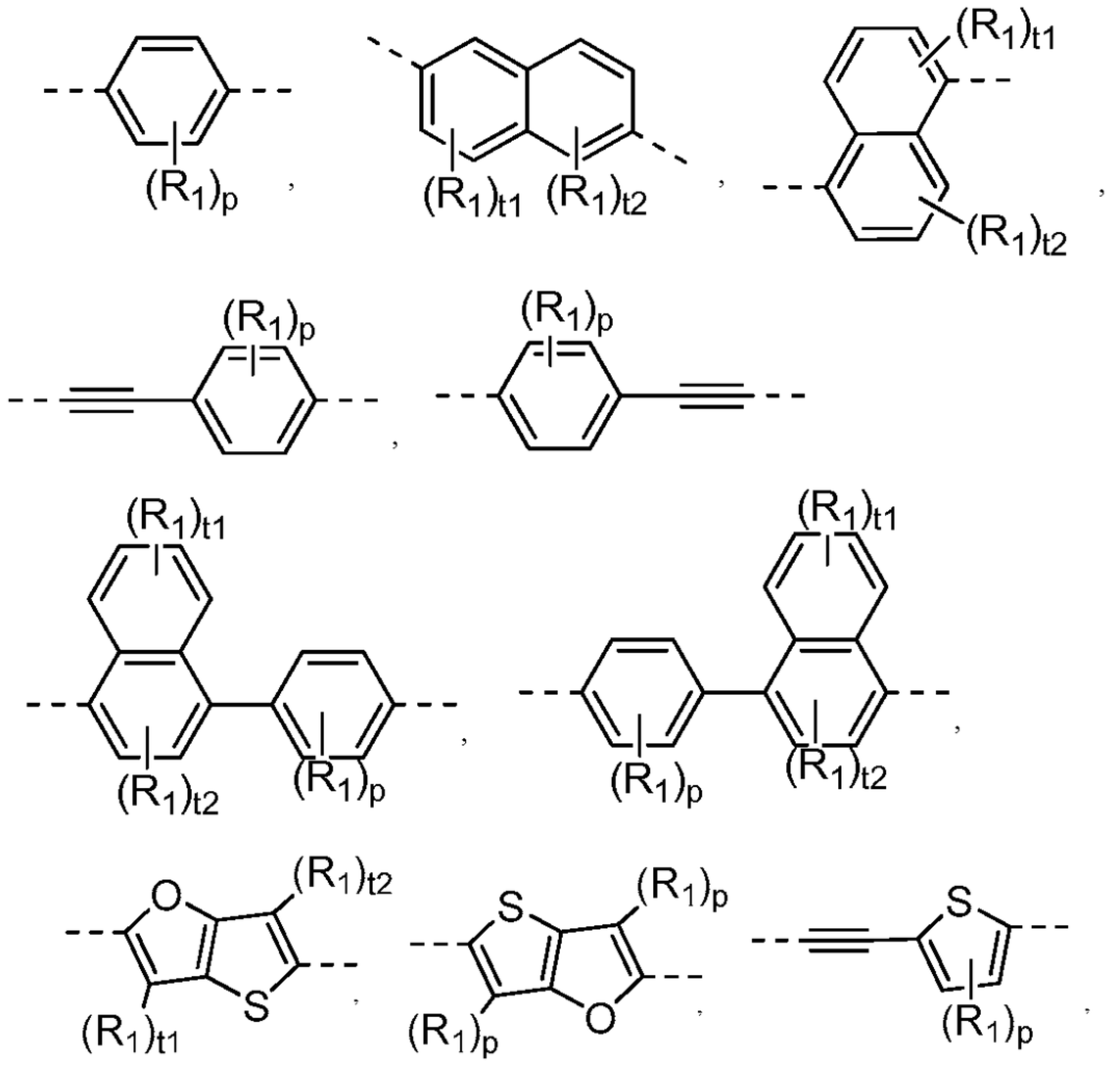
and

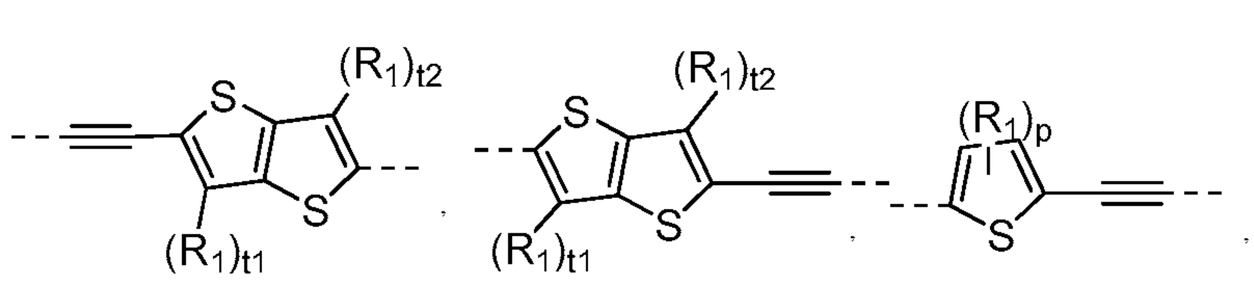


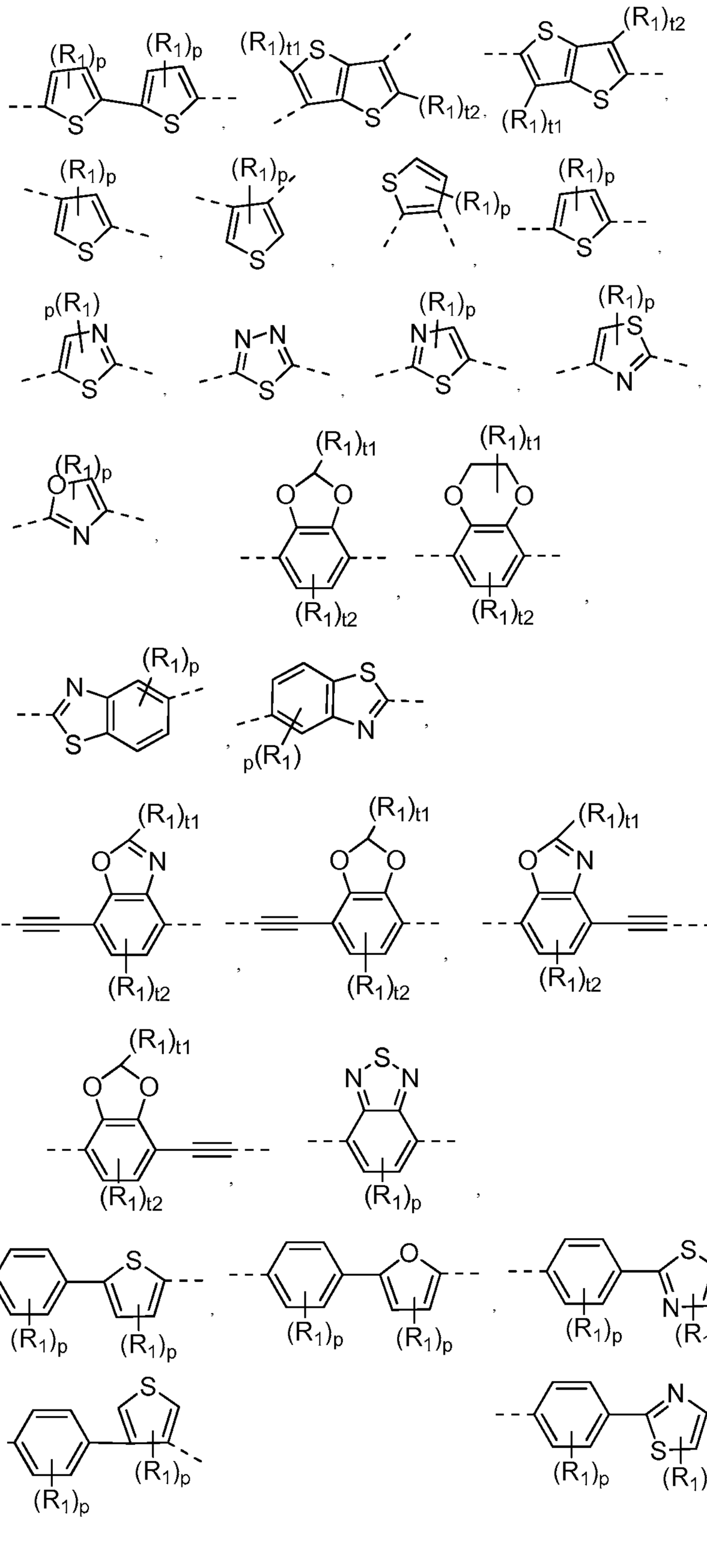
74. The compound according to any one of claims 59 to 66, wherein  is selected from the group consisting of:

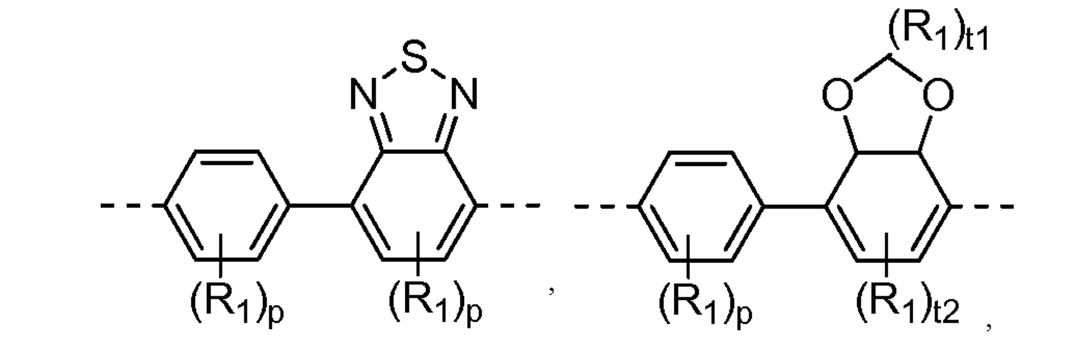
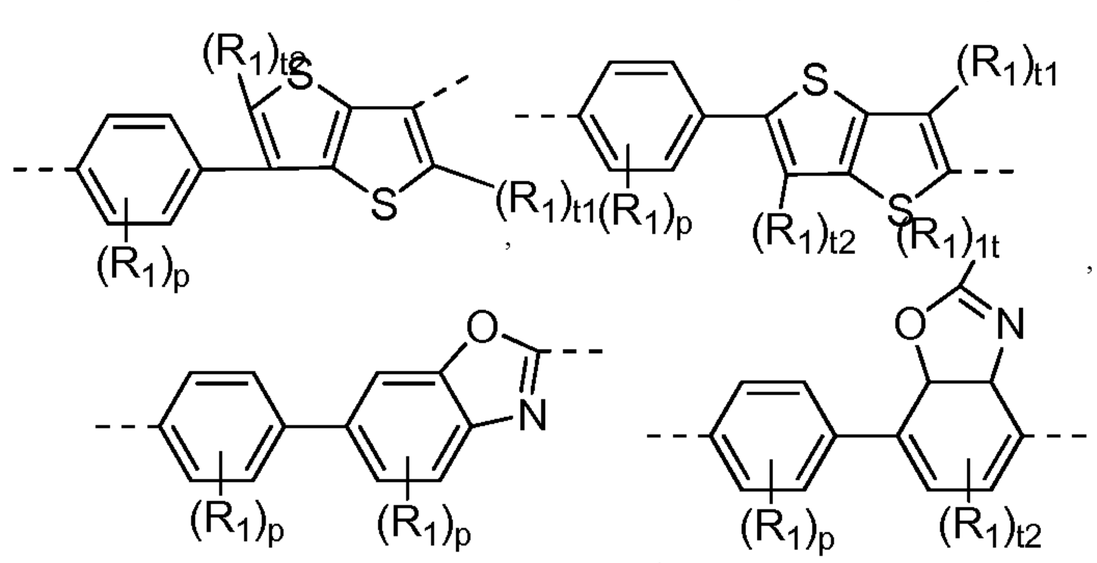
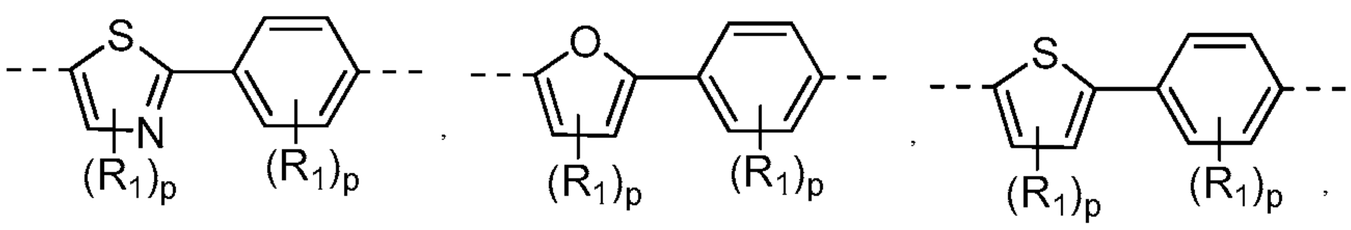
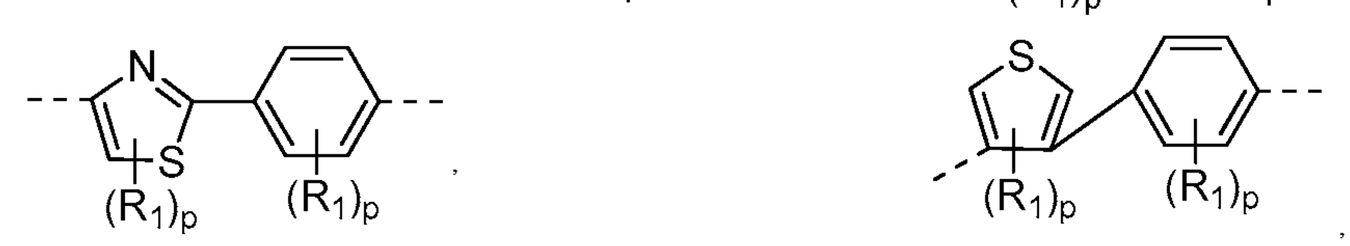
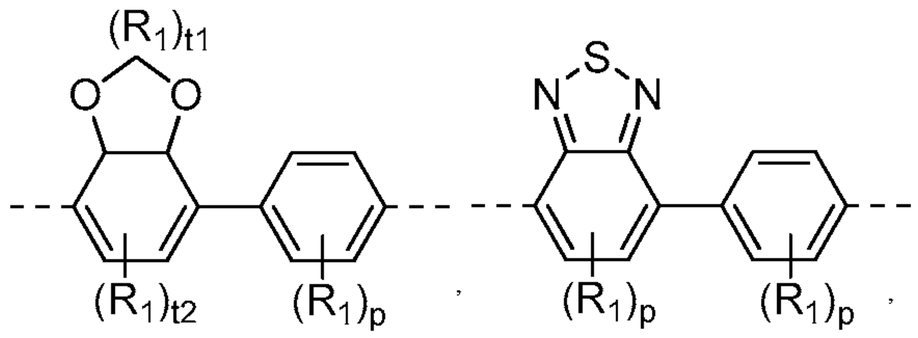
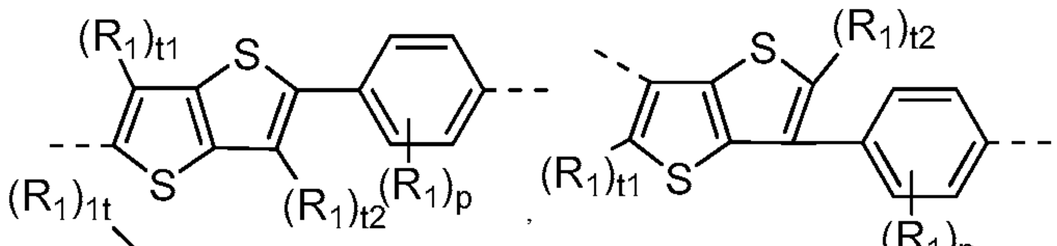
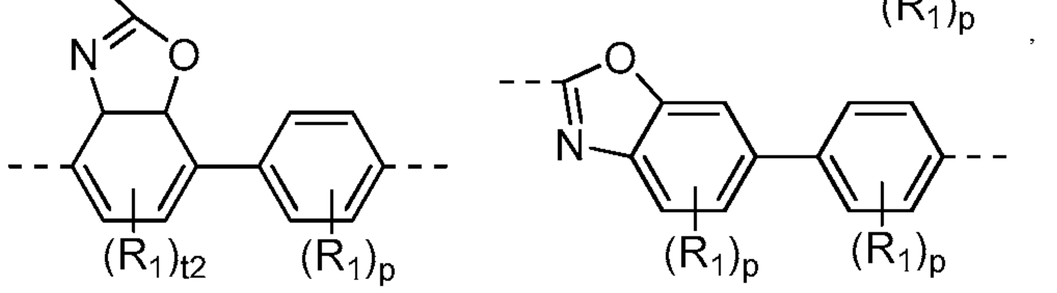


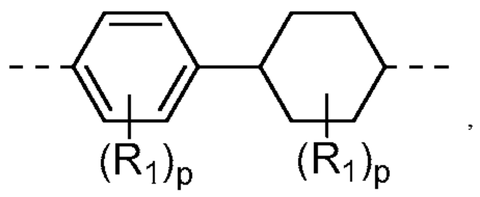
75. The compound according to any one of claims 59 to 62, wherein  is selected from the group consisting of:

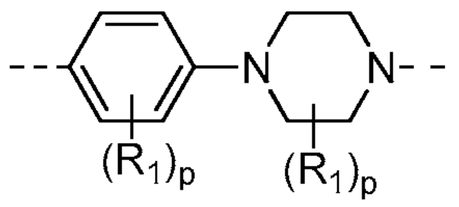


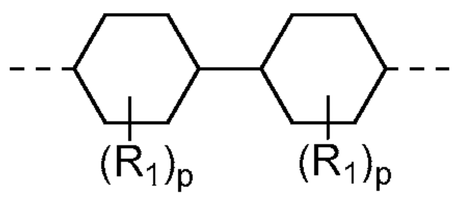


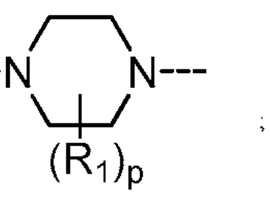



,


,


and

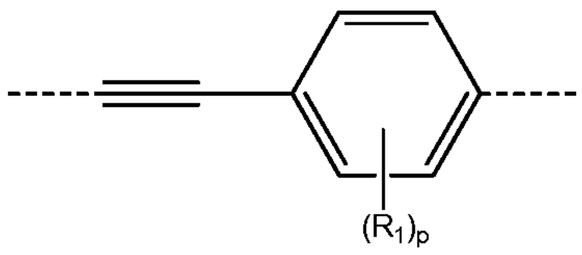
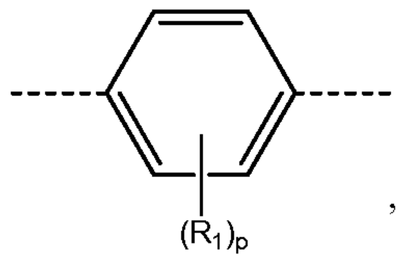
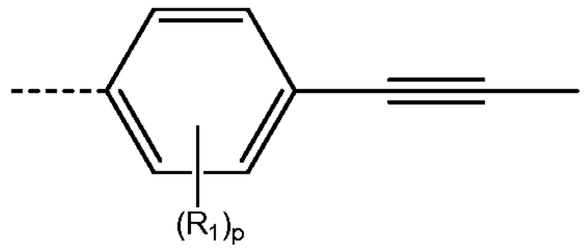
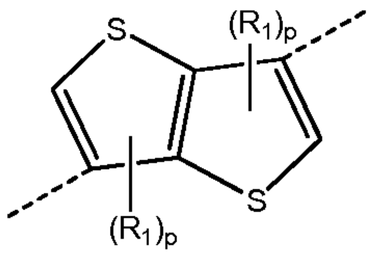
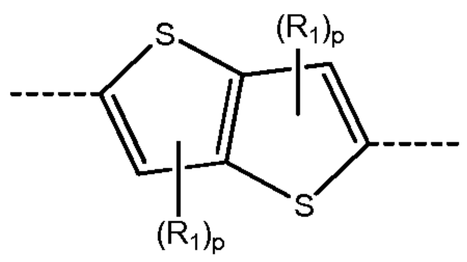

;

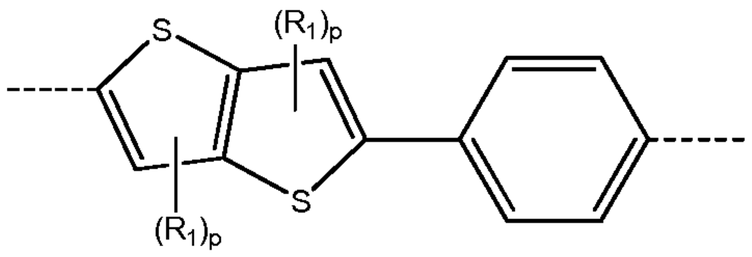
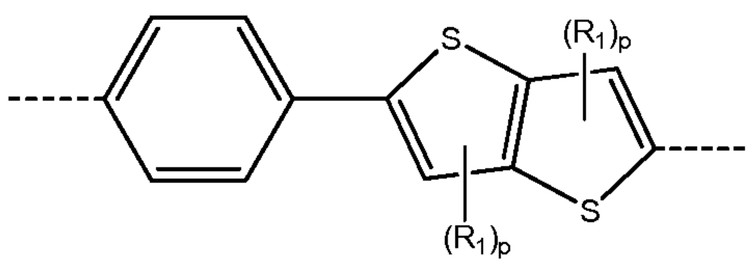
and

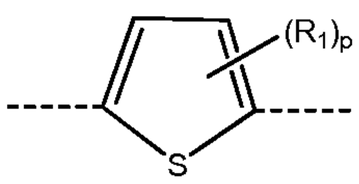
t1 + t2 = p.

10

76. The compound according to claim 75, wherein q is selected from the group consisting of:

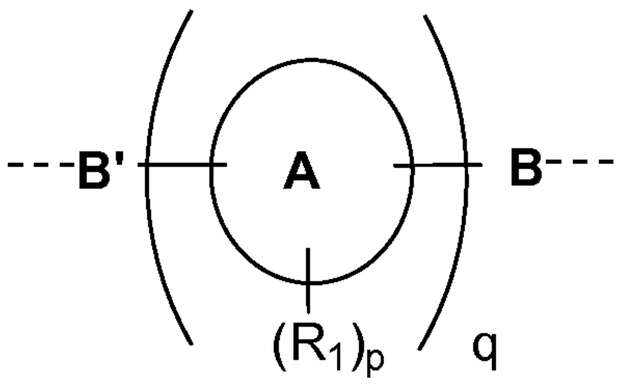

,

,

,

,



,

and

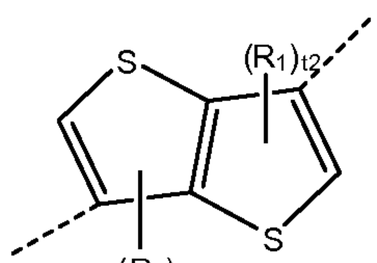
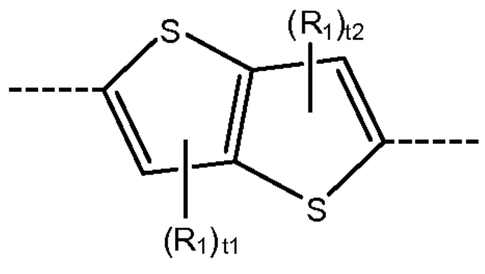

;

and

t1 + t2 = p.

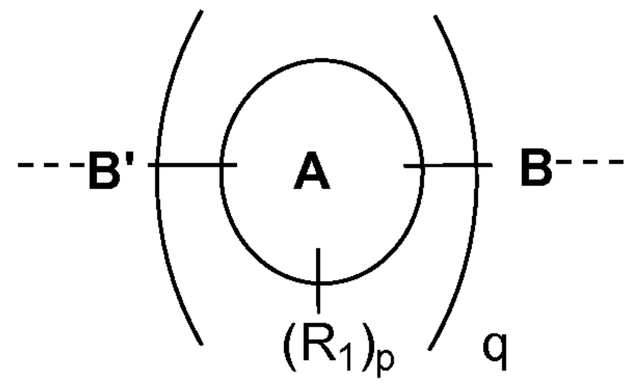


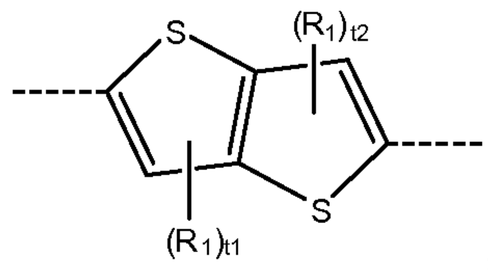
77. The compound according to claim 76, wherein q is selected from the group consisting of:


and

; and

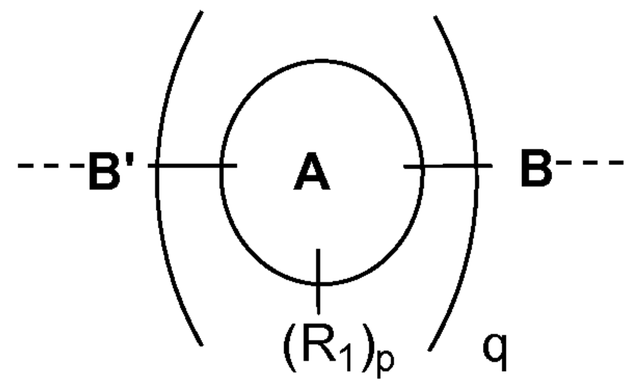
$(R_1)_{t1}$

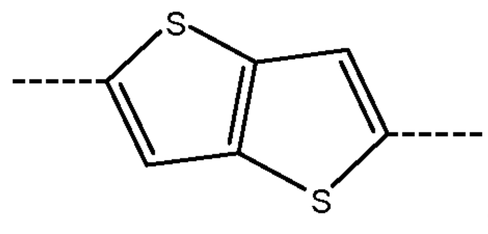
t1 + t2 = p.

78. The compound according to claim 76, wherein  is:

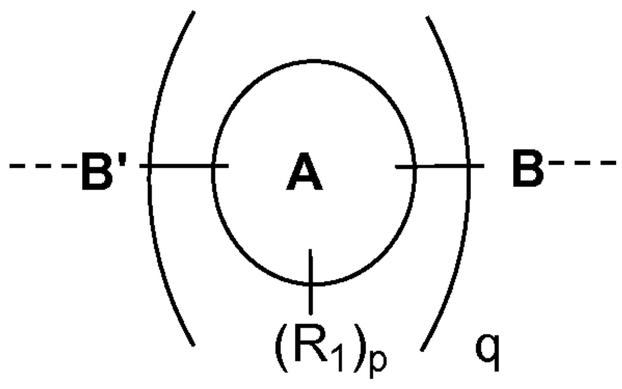
 ; and

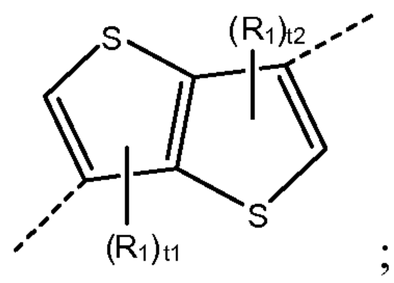
t1 + t2 = p.

79. The compound according to claim 76, wherein  is:

 ; and

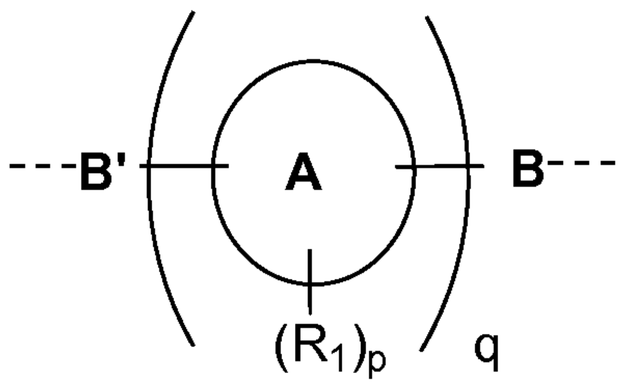
t1 + t2 = p.

80. The compound according to claim 76, wherein  is:

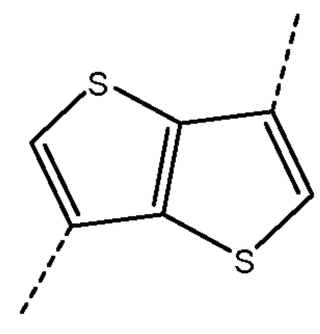
 ; and

t1 + t2 = p.

81. The compound according to claim 76, wherein



is:



; and

t1 + t2 = p.

82. The compound according to any one of claims 59 to 78, wherein R_1 is halogen, C_{1-4} alkyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{10}, -C(=O)OR_a, -C(O)NR_aR_b, hydroxyl, cyano, or C_{1-3} alkoxy.

83. The compound according to claim 82, wherein R_1 is chloro, fluoro, bromo, methyl, ethyl, propyl, butyl, -CH_2OH, difluoromethyl, trifluoromethyl, -C(=O)OR_a, hydroxyl, cyano, or methoxy.

84. The compound according to any one of claims 59 to 83, wherein R_2 and R_2' are each independently H, methyl, trifluoromethyl, iodo, CH_2OH, $NHC(O)CH_3$, or thienothienyl.

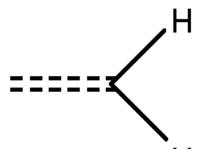
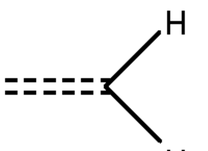
85. The compound according to any one of claims 59 to 83, wherein R_2' is independently methyl, trifluoromethyl, iodo, CH_2OH, or $NHC(O)CH_3$.

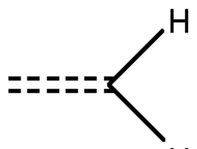
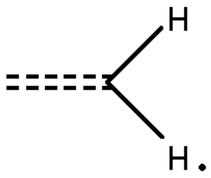
86. The compound according to claim 85, wherein u is 0.

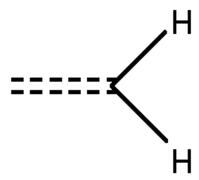
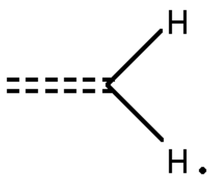
87. The compound according to any one of claims 59 to 83, wherein each R_2 is independently methyl, trifluoromethyl, iodo, CH_2OH, or $NHC(O)CH_3$.

88. The compound according to claim 87, wherein s is 0.

89. The compound according to any one of claims 59 to 88, wherein R_3 and R_3' are H or methyl.

90. The compound according to claim 62, wherein R_4 and R_4' are each independently halogen, methyl, ethyl, isopropyl, di-fluoromethyl, di-fluoroethyl, trifluoromethyl, tri-fluoroethyl, $-CH_2OH$, $-NR_aN_b$, *t*-butoxy-, or hydroxyl; or two R_4 groups together with the atoms to which they are attached form spiro cyclopropyl or , two R_4' groups together with the atoms to which they are attached form spiro cyclopropyl or .

91. The compound according to any one of claims 59 to 61, wherein R_4 and R_4' are each independently methyl, ethyl, isopropyl, di-fluoromethyl, di-fluoroethyl, trifluoromethyl, tri-fluoroethyl, $-CH_2OH$, $-NR_aN_b$ or *t*-butoxy-; or two R_4 groups together with the atoms to which they are attached form , or two R_4' groups together with the atoms to which they are attached form .

92. The compound according to any one of claims 59 to 62, wherein two R_4 groups together with the atoms to which they are attached form , and two R_4' groups together with the atoms to which they are attached form .

93. The compound according claim 62, wherein R_4 and R_4' are each independently methyl, ethyl, methoxy, di-fluoromethyl, trifluoromethyl, or two R_4 groups together with the atoms to which they are attached form spiro cyclopropyl or two R_4' groups together with the atoms to which they are attached form spiro cyclopropyl.

94. The compound according to any one of claims 59 to 62, wherein R_4 and R_4' are each independently methyl, ethyl, methoxy, di-fluoromethyl, trifluoromethyl.

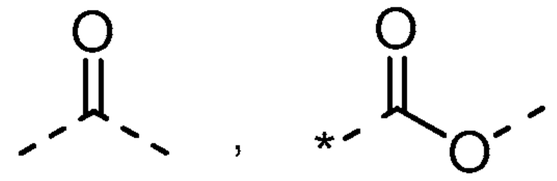
95. The compound according to claim 93, wherein R_4 and R_4' are methyl or ethyl.

96. The compound according to claim 94, wherein R_4 and R_4' are methyl.

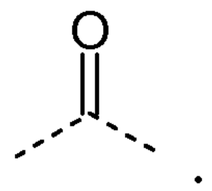
97. The compound according to anyone of claims 59 to 95, wherein m and n are independently 1 or 2.

98. The compound according to claim 96, wherein m and n are 1.

99. The compound according to any one of claims 59 to 97, wherein X and Y are


, or a bond.

100. The compound according to claim 98, wherein X and Y are


.

101. The compound according to any one of claims 59 to 99, wherein R_5 and R_5' are each independently, C_{1-8} alkyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{10}, C_{2-8} alkenyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{10}, C_{2-8} alkynyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{10}, phenyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{11}, C_{7-8} aralkyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{11}, 5-6 membered heteroaryl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{11}, 6-8 membered heteroaralkyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{11}, 3-6 membered heterocycle which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{12}, or 4-8 membered heterocycle-alkyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{12}.

102. The compound according to claim 100, wherein R_5 and R_5' are each independently, C_{1-6} alkyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{10}, C_{2-6} alkenyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{10}, C_{2-6} alkynyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{10}, phenyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{11}, benzyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{11}, 5-6 membered heteroaryl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{11}, 6-7 membered heteroaralkyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{11}, 5-6 membered heterocycle which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{12}, or 6-7 membered heterocycle-alkyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{12}.

103. The compound according to claims 101, wherein R_5 and R_5' are each independently, C_{1-6} alkyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{10},

C_{2-6} alkenyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{10}, C_{2-6} alkynyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{10}.

104. The compound according to claim 102, wherein R_5 and R_5' are each independently methyl, ethyl, propyl, isopropyl, butyl, *sec*-butyl, *tert*-butyl, pentyl, 2-methylbutane, 3-methylbutane, cyclopropyl, cyclobutyl, cyclopentyl, cyclohexyl, or cyclohexyl(CH_2)-, which are unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{10}.

105. The compound according to claim 103, wherein R_5 and R_5' are each independently phenyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{11}.

106. The compound according to claim 104, wherein R_5 and R_5' are each independently benzyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{11}.

107. The compound according to any one of claims 59 to 105, wherein R^{10} is halogen, -OR_a, oxo, -NR_aR_b, =NO-R_c , -$C(=O)OR_a$, -$C(O)NR_aR_b$, -C(=O)OH, -$C(=O)R_a$, -$C(=NOR_c)R_a$, -$C(=NR_c)NR_aR_b$, -$NR_dC(=O)NR_aR_b$, -$NR_bC(=O)R_a$, -$NR_dC(=NR_c)NR_aR_b$, -$NR_bC(=O)OR_a$, -$OC(=O)NR_aR_b$, -$OC(=O)R_a$, -$OC(=O)OR_a$, hydroxyl, nitro, azido, cyano, -$S(O)_{0-3}R_a$, -$SO_2NR_aR_b$, -$NR_bSO_2R_a$, or -$NR_bSO_2NR_aR_b$, wherein R_a -R_d are each independently H, C_{1-12} alkyl, C_{2-12} alkenyl, C_{2-12} alkynyl, C_{6-12} aryl, C_{7-16} aralkyl, 5-12 membered heteroaryl, 6-18 membered heteroaralkyl, 3-12 membered heterocycle, or 4-18 membered heterocycle-alkyl.

108. The compound according to claim 106, wherein R^{10} is -NR_aR_b, -$NR_dC(=O)NR_aR_b$, -$NR_bC(=O)R_a$, -$NR_dC(=NR_c)NR_aR_b$, -$NR_bC(=O)OR_a$, -$NR_bSO_2R_a$, or -$NR_bSO_2NR_aR_b$.

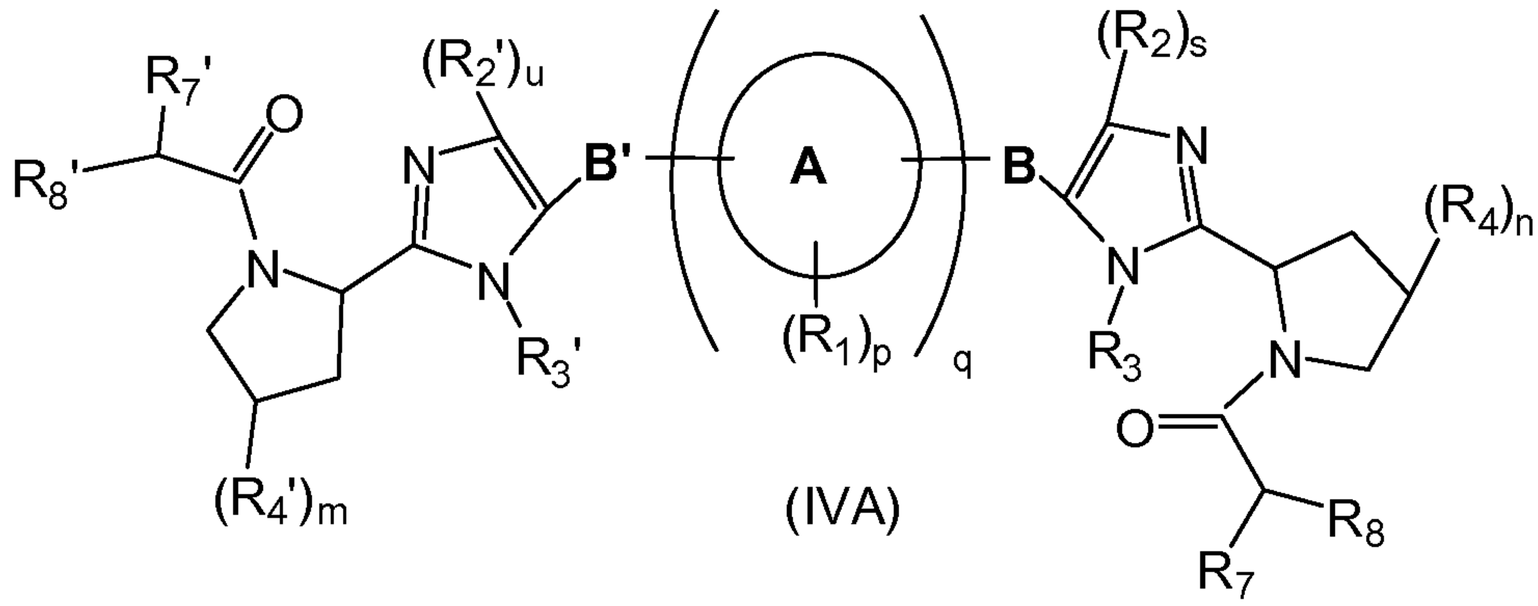
109. The compound according to claim 107, wherein R^{10} is -NR_aR_b, -$NR_dC(=O)NR_aR_b$, -$NR_bC(=O)R_a$, -$NR_bC(=O)OR_a$, or -$NR_bSO_2R_a$.

110. The compound according to any one of claims 59 to 108, wherein R_a, R_b, R_c, and R_d are each independently H, C_{1-6} alkyl, C_{2-6} alkenyl, C_{2-6} alkynyl, phenyl, C_{7-8} aralkyl, 5-6 membered heteroaryl, 6-8 membered heteroaralkyl, 5-6 membered heterocycle, or 6-8 membered heterocycle-alkyl.

111. The compound according to claim 109, wherein R_a and R_c are each independently H, C_{1-6} alkyl, C_{2-6} alkenyl, C_{2-6} alkynyl, phenyl, C_{7-8} aralkyl, 5-6 membered heteroaryl, 6-8 membered heteroaralkyl, 5-6 membered heterocycle, or 6-8 membered heterocycle-alkyl, and R_b, and R_d.are each independently H or C_{1-3} alkyl.

112. The compound according to claim 110, wherein R_a, R_b, R_c, and R_d are each independently H or C_{1-3} alkyl.

113. The compound according to any one of claims 59 to 61, 63 to 72, 74 to 89 or 91 to 111, wherein said compound is of formula (IVA):



(IVA)

or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof wherein

R_7 and R_7' are each independently C_{1-8} alkyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{10}, C_{2-8} alkenyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{10}, C_{2-8} alkynyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{10}, phenyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{11}, benzyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{11}, 5-6 membered heteroaryl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{11}, 6-7 membered heteroaralkyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{11}, 3-6 membered heterocycle which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{12}, or 4-7 membered heterocycle-alkyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{12};

R_8 and R_8' are each independently $-NR_aR_b$, $-NR_dC(=O)NR_aR_b$, $-NR_bC(=O)R_a$, $-NR_dC(=NR_c)NR_aR_b$, $-NR_bC(=O)OR_a$, $-NR_bSO_2R_a$, or $-NR_bSO_2NR_aR_b$, wherein R_a, R_b, R_c, and R_d are each independently H, C_{1-12} alkyl, C_{2-12} alkenyl, C_{2-12} alkynyl, C_{6-12} aryl, C_{7-16} aralkyl, 5-12 membered heteroaryl, 6-18 membered heteroaralkyl, 3-12 membered heterocycle, or 4-18 membered heterocycle-alkyl; and

m and n are a positive integer and when combined are 1, 2, 3 or 4, provided that each of m and n are not 3 or 4.

114. The compound according to claim 113, wherein R_8 and R_8' are each independently $-NR_aR_b$, $-NR_bC(=O)R_a$, $-NR_bC(=O)OR_a$, wherein R_a-R_b are each independently H, C_{1-6} alkyl, phenyl, benzyl, 5-6 membered heteroaryl, 6-8 membered heteroaralkyl, 5-6 membered heterocycle, or 6-8 membered heterocycle-alkyl.

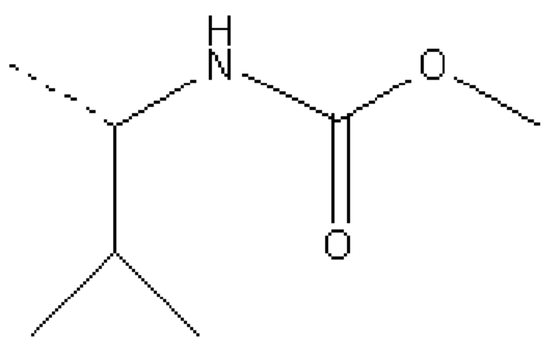
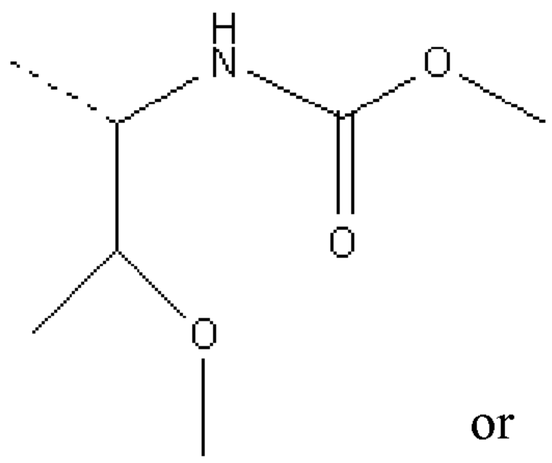
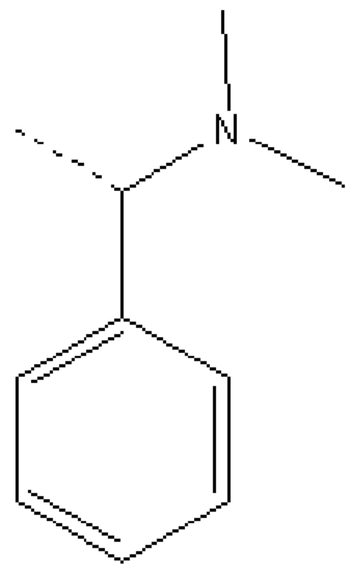
115. The compound according to claim 113, wherein R_8 and R_8' in formulas (IV), are each independently $-NR_bC(=O)OR_a$, wherein R_a, R_b, R_c, and R_d are each independently H, C_{1-6} alkyl, phenyl, tetrahydrofuran, or benzyl.

116. The compound according to any one of claims 113 to 114, wherein R_7 and R_7' are each independently phenyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{11}.

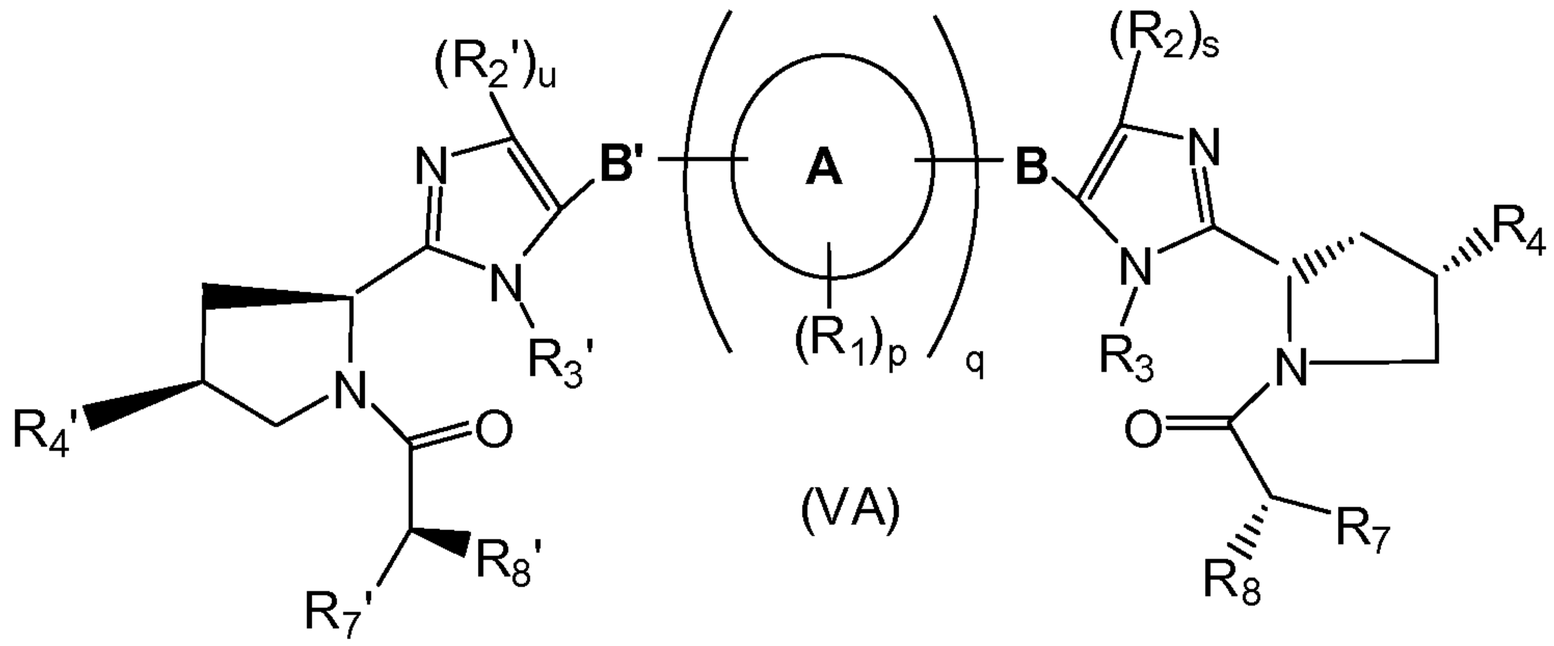
117. The compound according to any one of claims 113 to 114, wherein R_7 and R_7' are each independently, C_{1-6} alkyl which is unsubstituted or substituted one or more times by R^{10}.

118. The compound according to claim 116 wherein R_7 and R_7' are each independently methyl, ethyl, propyl, isopropyl, methoxyisopropyl, butyl, *sec*-butyl, *tert*-butyl, pentyl, 2-methylbutane, 3-methylbutane, cyclopropyl, cyclobutyl, cyclopentyl, or cyclohexyl.

119. The compound according to any one of claims 113 to 114, wherein R_7 and R_8 or R_7, and R_8, together with the carbon to which they are attached are each independently:


,

or

.

120. The compound according to any one of claims 113 to 118, wherein said compound is of formula (VA):

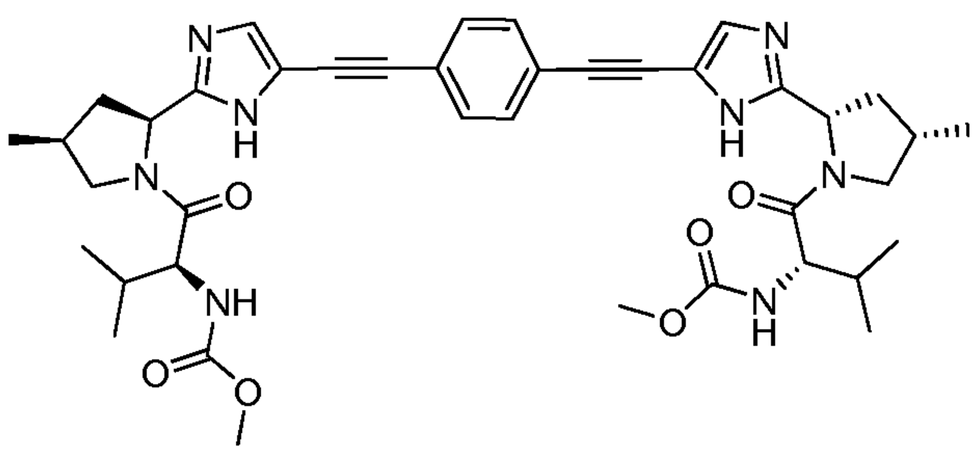


(VA)

or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

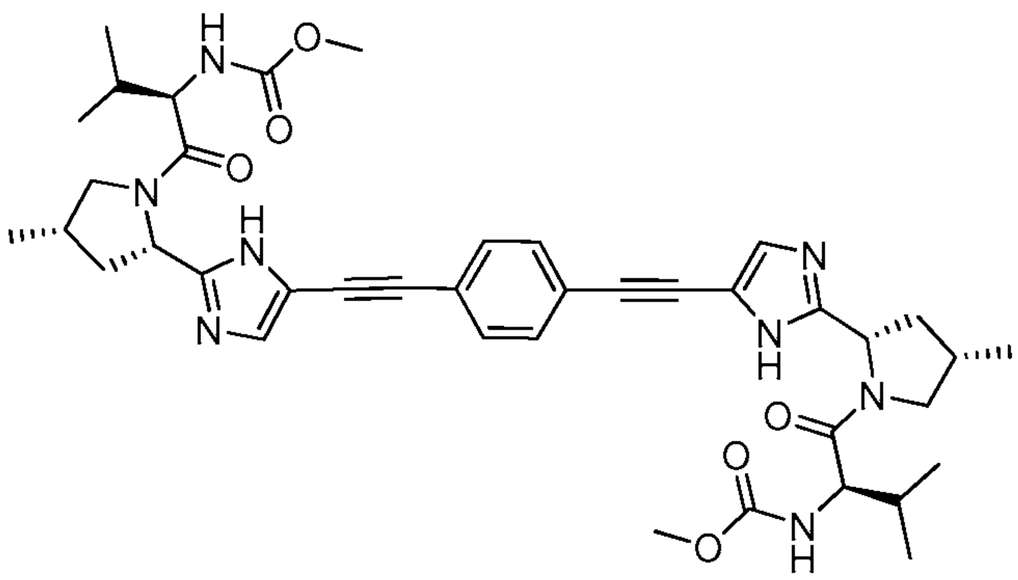
121. The compound selected from Table 1A or Table IB, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

122. A compound of formula:



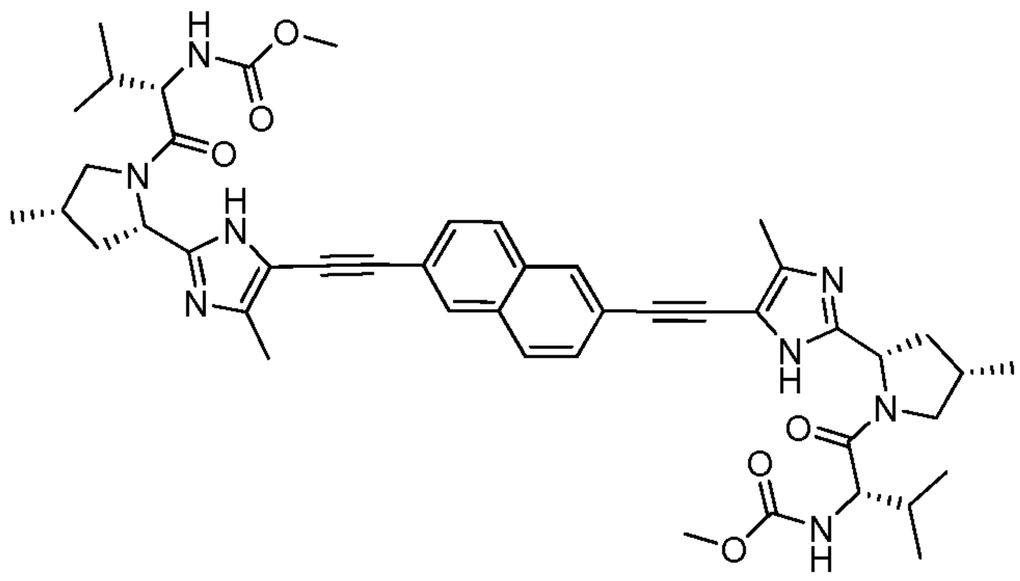
or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

123. A compound of formula:



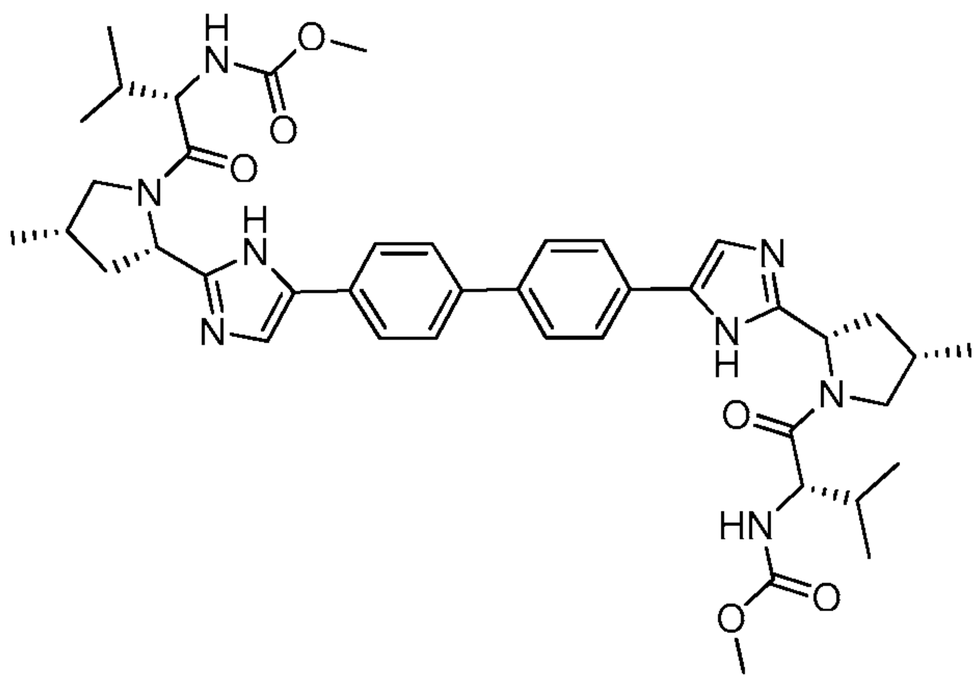
or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

124. A compound of formula:



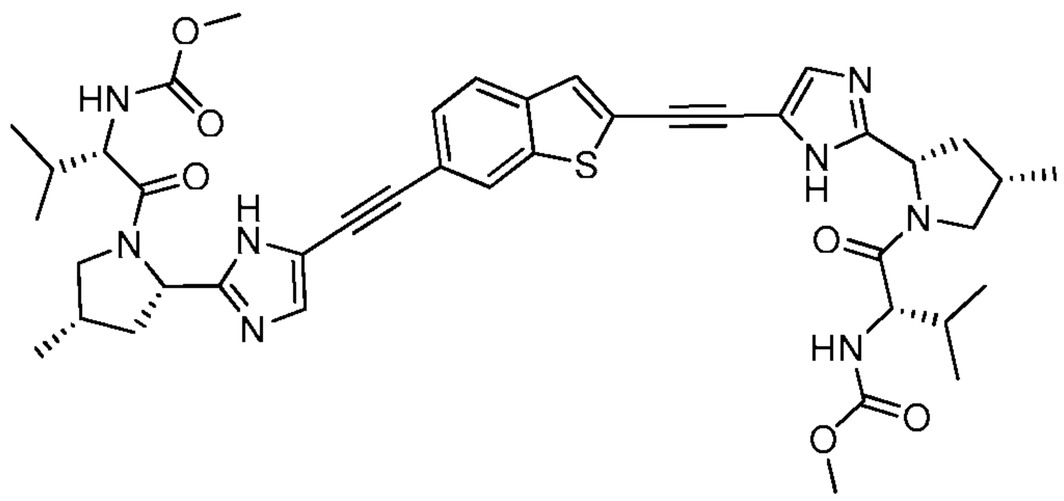
or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

125. A compound of formula:



or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

126. A compound of formula:



or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

127. The compound according to any one of claims 1 to 125, for treating or preventing a Hepatitis C viral infection in a human.

128. A pharmaceutical composition comprising at least one compound according to any one of claims 1 to 126and at least one pharmaceutically acceptable carrier or excipient.

129. A pharmaceutical combination comprising at least one compound according to any one of claims 1 to 126and at least one additional agent and at least one pharmaceutically acceptable carrier or excipient.

130. The pharmaceutical combination according to claim 128, wherein said at least one additional agent is selected from viral serine protease inhibitors, viral polymerase inhibitors, viral helicase inhibitors, immunomudulating agents, antioxidant agents, antibacterial agents, therapeutic vaccines, hepatoprotectant agents, antisense agents, inhibitors of HCV NS2/3 protease and inhibitors of internal ribosome entry site (IRES).

131. The pharmaceutical combination according to claim 126, wherein said at least one additional agent is selected from ribavirin and interferon-α.

132. The pharmaceutical combination according to any one of claim 129 to 130, wherein said compound and said additional agent are in dosage unit forms suitable for sequential administration.

133. The pharmaceutical combination according to any one of claim 127 to 128, wherein said compound and said additional agent are in dosage unit forms suitable for simultaneous administration.

134. The use of a compound according to any one of claims 1 to 125 for treating a Hepatitis C viral infection in a human.

135. The use according to claim 133, further comprising administering at least one additional agent.

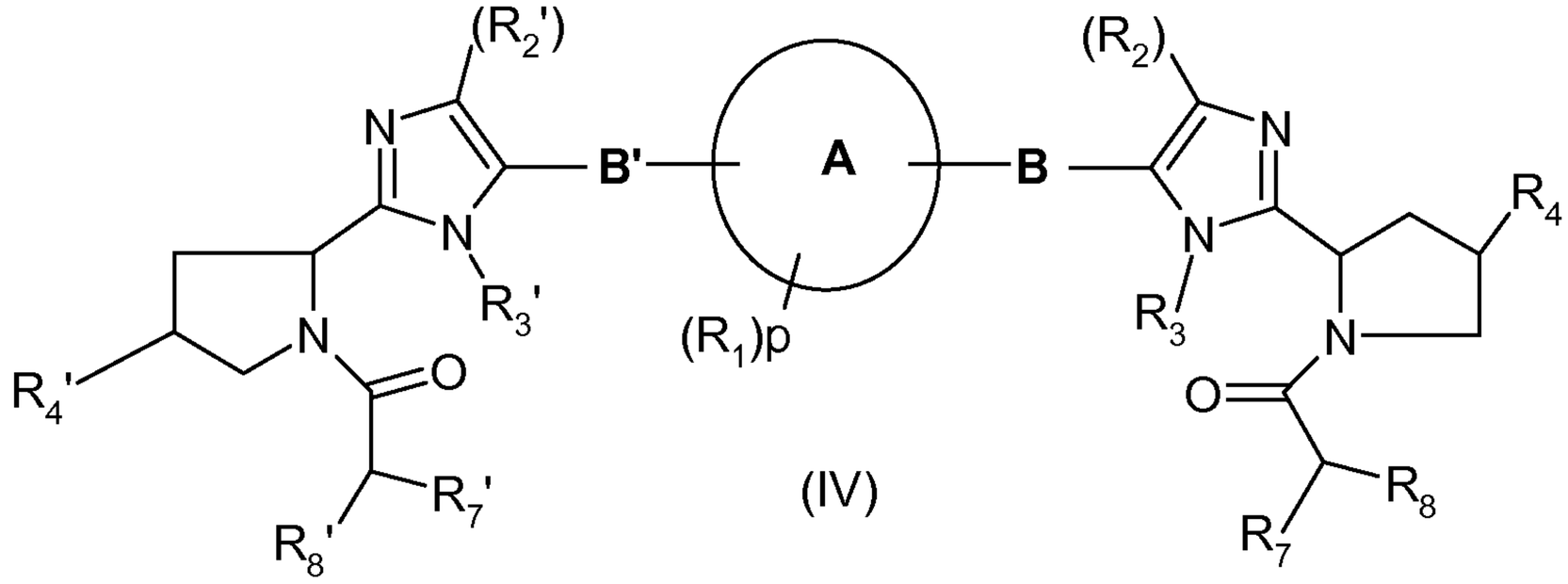
136. The use according to claim 134, wherein said at least one additional agent is selected from viral serine protease inhibitors, viral polymerase inhibitors, viral helicase inhibitors, immunomudulating agents, antioxidant agents, antibacterial agents, therapeutic vaccines, hepatoprotectant agents, antisense agents, inhibitors of HCV NS2/3 protease and inhibitors of internal ribosome entry site (IRES).

137. The use according to claim 134, wherein said at least one additional agent is selected from ribavirin and interferon-α.

138. The use of a compound according to any one of claims 1 to 125 for the manufacture of a medicament.

139. A pharmaceutical formulation comprising at least one compound as defined in any one of claims 1 to 125 and at least one pharmaceutically acceptable carrier or excipient.

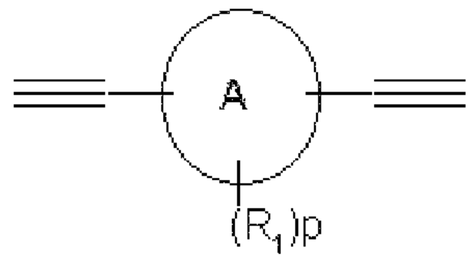
140. A method for preparing a compound of formula (IV) according to claim 49:



or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, wherein each of A, B, B', R^1, p, R_2, $R_{2'}$, R_3, $R_{3'}$, R_4, $R_{4'}$, R_7, $R_{7'}$, R_8, and $R_{8'}$, are as defined in claim 49,

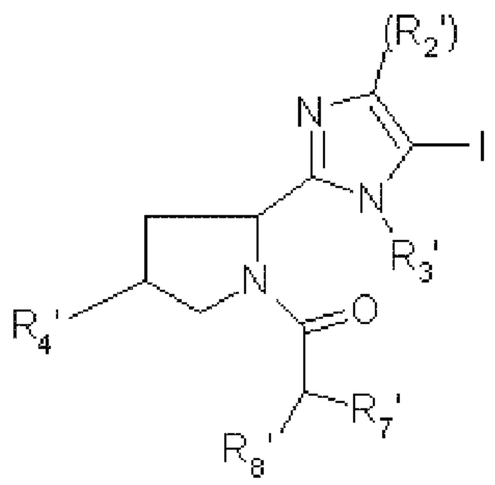
wherein said method comprises the steps of:

a) contacting a compound of formula (XXX):

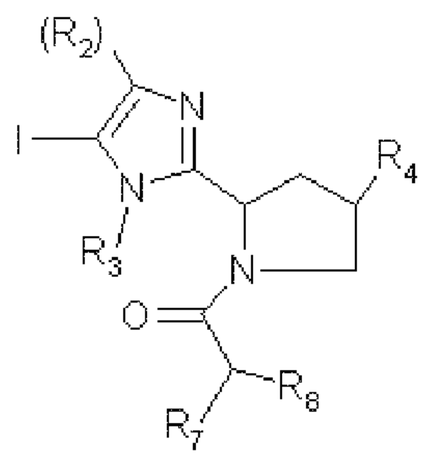


(XXX)

under coupling conditions with a compound of formula (XXXI) and a compound of formula (XXXII); and



(XXXI)

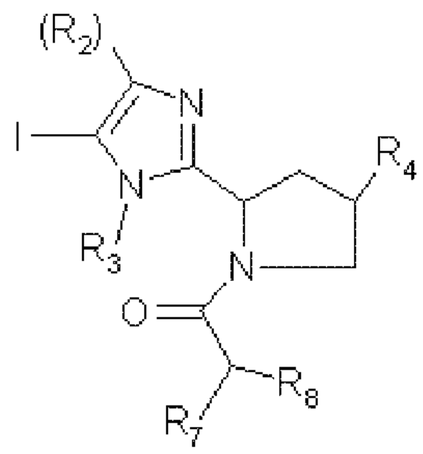


(XXXII)

b) optionally hydrogenating the alkyne groups to provide a compound of formula (IV).

141. A method according to claim 139, wherein the coupling conditions comprise bis(triphenylphosphine)palladiumchloride, copper iodide, and triethylamine.

142. A method for preparing a compound of formula (XXXII):

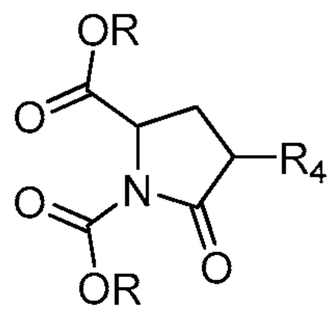


(XXXII)

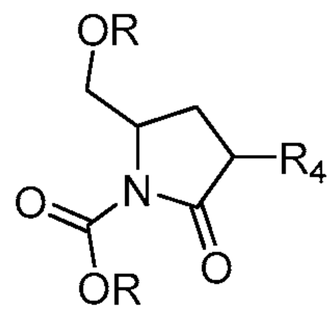
wherein each of R_2, R_3, R_4, R_7, and R_8, are as defined in claim 47,

wherein said method comprises the steps of:

a) reducing a compound of formula (XXVI) to provide a compound of formula (XXVII), where each R is each independently an alkyl group:

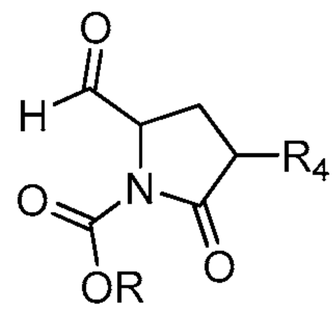


(XXVI)



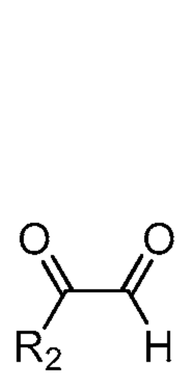
(XXVII)

g) oxidizing a compound of formula (XXVII) to provide a compound of formula (XVI):

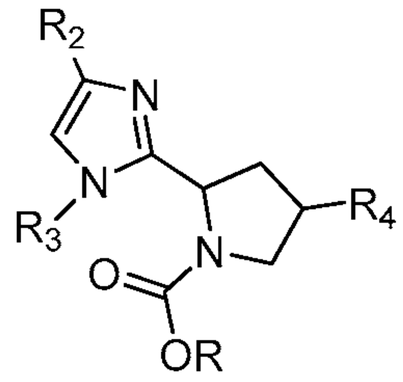


(XVI)

h) contacting a compound of formula (XVI) with a compound of formula (XVII) and optionally a compound of formula R_3-LG, where LG is a leaving group, under reaction conditions sufficient to provide a compound of formula (XV):

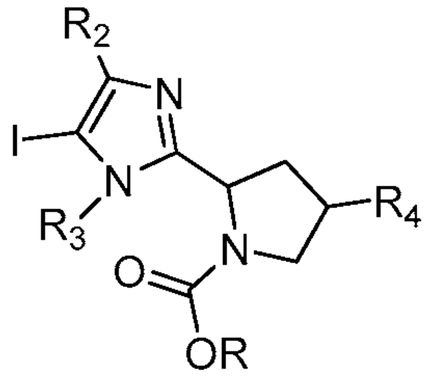


(XVII)



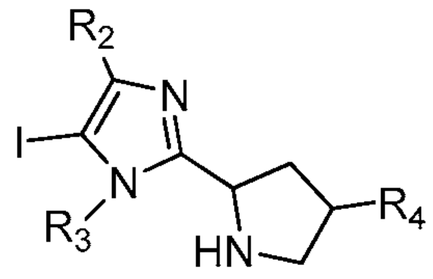
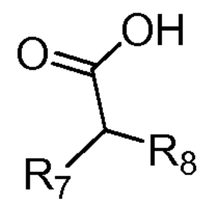
(XV)

e) halogenating a compound of formula (XV) under reaction conditions sufficient to provide a compound of formula (XIII):



(XIII)

f) reacting a compound of formula (XIII) under deprotection conditions to provide a compound of formula (XI); and:

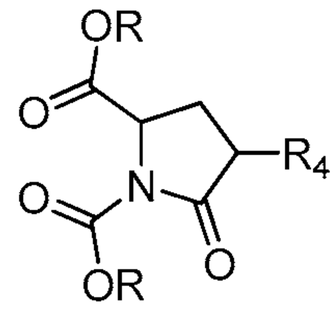

(XI)

(XII)

g) contacting a compound of formula (XI) under coupling conditions with a compound of formula (XII) to provide a compound of formula (XXXII):

to provide a compound of formula (XXXII).

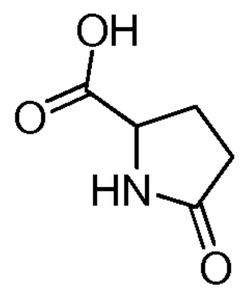
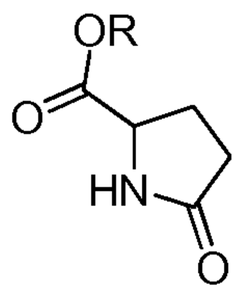
143. A method according to claim 141, wherein the oxidizing of step g) comprises 2,2,6,6-tetramethyl-piperidin-1-oxyl (TEMPO).

144. A method for preparing a compound of formula (XXVI):

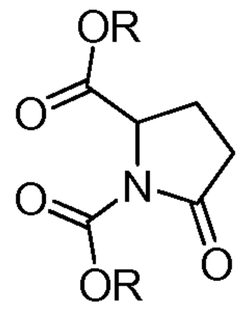

(XXVI)

wherein R_4 is as defined in claim 47, and each R is each independently an alkyl group, wherein said method comprises the steps of:

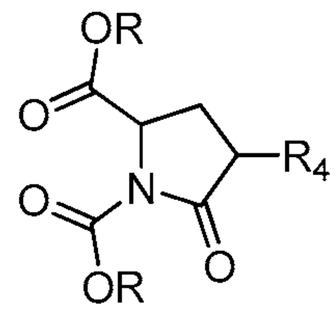
a) contacting a compound of formula (XXI) under reaction conditions sufficient to provide a compound of formula (XXII):


(XXI)

(XXII)

b) contacting a compound of formula (XXII) under reaction conditions sufficient to provide a compound of formula (XXIII), and:

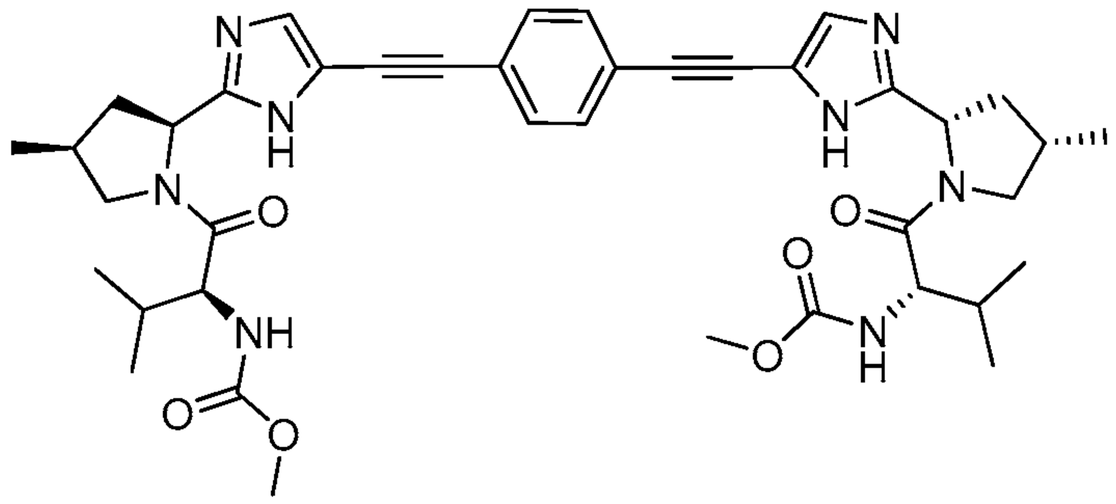

(XXIII)

c) contacting a compound of formula (XXIII) under reaction conditions sufficient to provide a compound of formula (XXVI):


(XXVI)

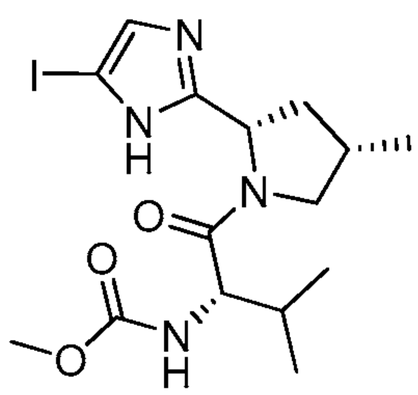
to provide a compound of formula (XXVI).

145. A method for preparing ((S)-1-{(2S,4S)-2-[5-(4-{2-[(2S,4S)-1-((S)-2-Methoxycarbonylamino-3-methyl-butyryl)-4-methyl-pyrrolidin-2-yl]-3H-imidazol-4-ylethynyl}-phenylethynyl)-1H-imidazol-2-yl]-4-methyl-pyrrolidine-1-carbonyl}-2-methylpropyl)-carbamic acid methyl ester:

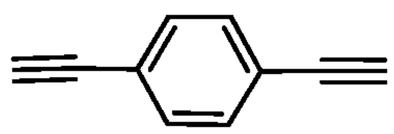


wherein said method comprises:

contacting a compound of formula (X) under coupling conditions with a compound of formula (XXX):



(X)

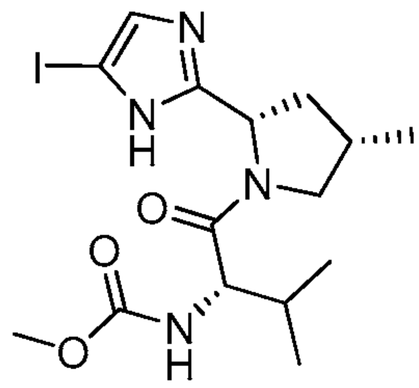


(XXX)

to provide ((S)-1-{(2S,4S)-2-[5-(4-{2-[(2S,4S)-1-((S)-2-Methoxycarbonylamino-3-methyl-butyryl)-4-methyl-pyrrolidin-2-yl]-3H-imidazol-4-ylethynyl}-phenylethynyl)-1H-imidazol-2-yl]-4-methyl-pyrrolidine-1-carbonyl}-2-methylpropyl)-carbamic acid methyl ester.

146. A method according to claim 144, wherein the coupling conditions comprise bis(triphenylphosphine)palladiumchloride, copper iodide, and triethylamine.

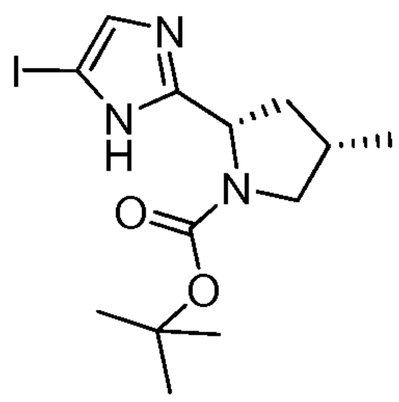
147. A method for preparing a compound of formula (X):



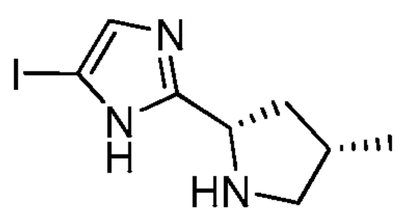
(X)

wherein said method comprises

a) reacting a compound of formula (XIII) under deprotection conditions to provide a compound of formula (XI); and:

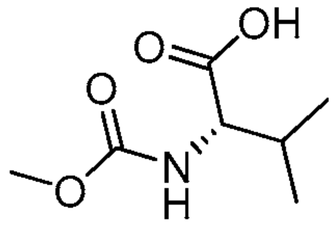


(XIII)



(XI)

b) contacting a compound of formula (XI) under coupling conditions with a compound of formula (XII):



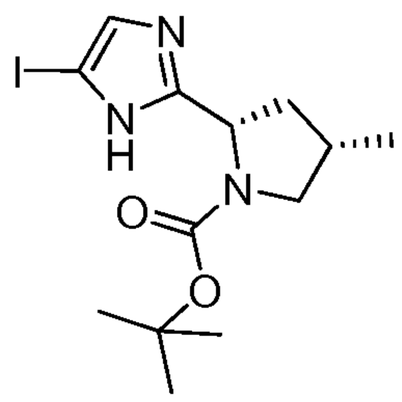
(XII)

to provide a compound of formula (X).

148. A method according to claim 146, wherein the coupling conditions of step b) comprise first contacting a compound of formula (XII) with O-(7-azabenzotriazol-1-yl)-N,N,N',N'-tetramethyluronium hexafluorophosphate (HATU) and diisopropypyethylamine (DIPEA).

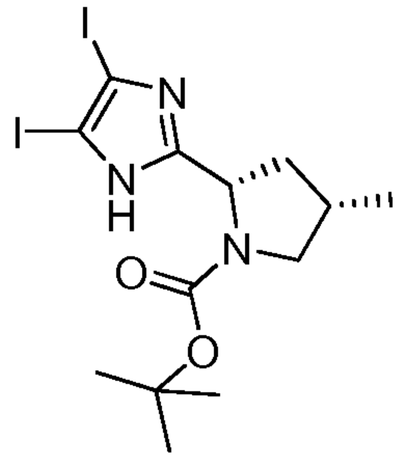
149. A method according to claim 146, wherein the deprotection conditions of step a) comprise a mineral acid.

150. A method for preparing a compound of formula (XIII):



(XIII)

wherein said method comprises reacting a compound of formula (XIV):

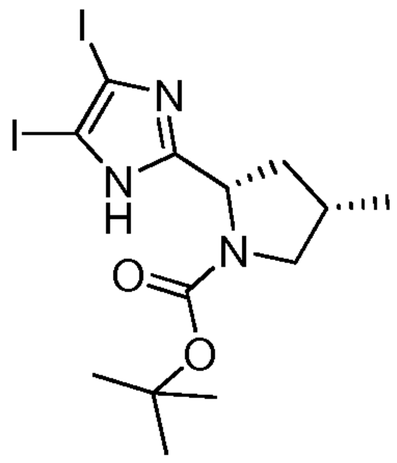


(XIV)

under reaction conditions sufficient to provide a compound of formula (XIII).

151. A method according to claim 149, wherein the reaction conditions comprise methyl magnesium bromide.

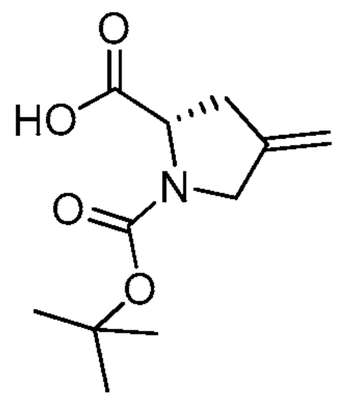
152. A method for preparing a compound of formula (XIV) having a (2S,4S) configuration:



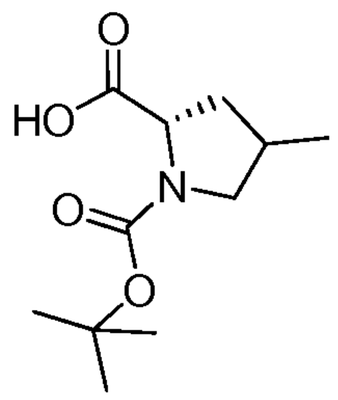
(XIV)

wherein said method comprises the steps of:

a) hydrogenating a compound of formula (XX) to provide a compound of formula (XIX):

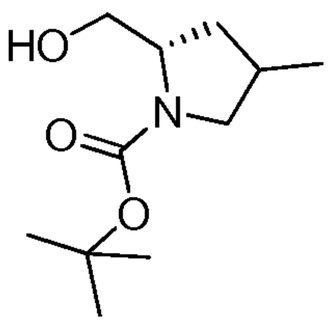


(XX)



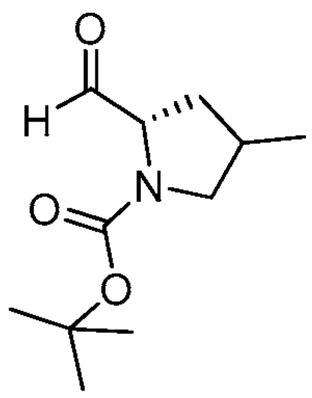
(XIX)

b) reducing a compound of formula (XIX) to provide a compound of formula (XIII):



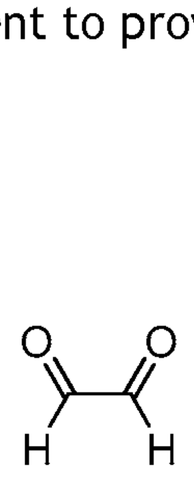
(XIII)

c) oxidizing a compound of formula (XIII) to provide a compound of formula (XVI):

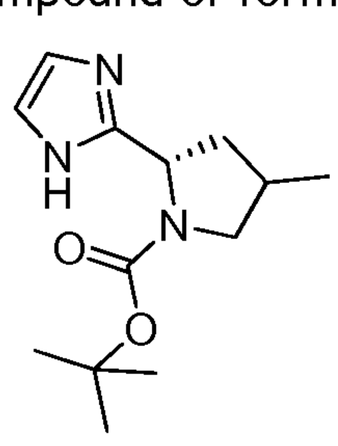


(XVI)

d) contacting a compound of formula (XVI) with a compound of formula (XVII) under reaction conditions sufficient to provide a compound of formula (XV):

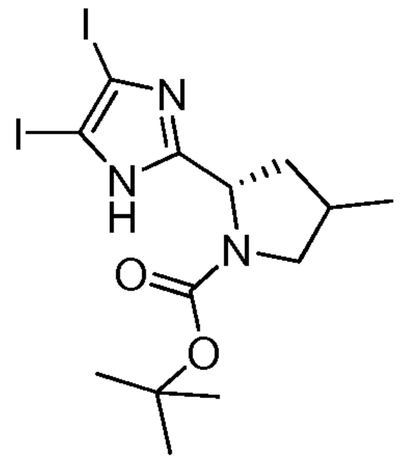


(XVII)



(XV)

e) halogenating a compound of formula (XV) under reaction conditions sufficient to provide a compound of formula (XV), and:



(XIV)

f) separating the mixture of (2S,4S) and (2S,4R) diastereomers to provide a compound of formula (XIV) having a (2S,4S) configuration.

153. A method according to claim 149, wherein the separating of step f) comprises silica gel chromatography.

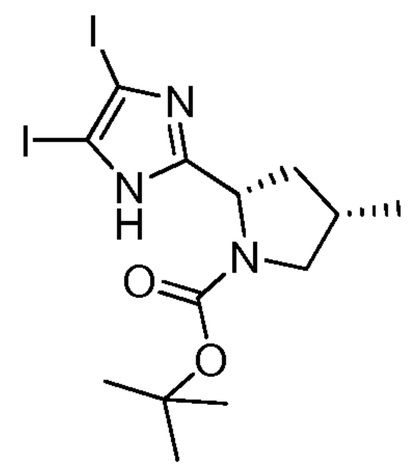
154. A method according to claim 149, wherein the reaction conditions of step e) comprise 1-iodopyrrolidine-2,5-dione.

155. A method according to claim 149, wherein the oxidizing of step c) comprises 2,2,6,6-tetramethyl-piperidin-1-oxyl (TEMPO).

156. A method according to claim 149, wherein the reducing of step b) comprises borane.

157. A method according to claim 149, wherein the hydrogenating of step a) comprises platinum oxide and hydrogen gas.

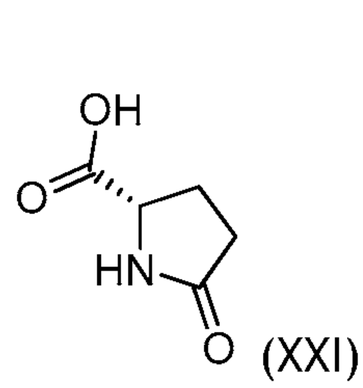
158. A method for preparing a compound of formula (XIV) having a (2S,4S) configuration:

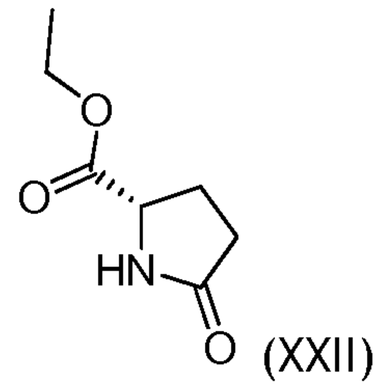


(XIV)

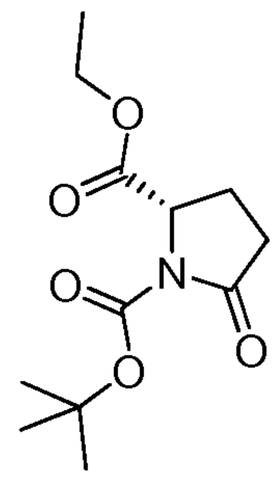
wherein said method comprises the steps of:

a) contacting a compound of formula (XXI) under reaction conditions sufficient to provide a compound of formula (XXII):

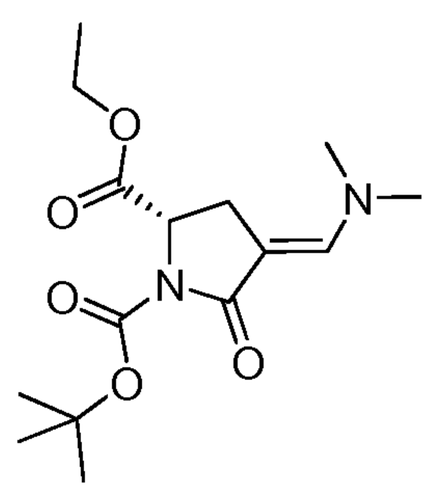

(XXI)


(XXII)

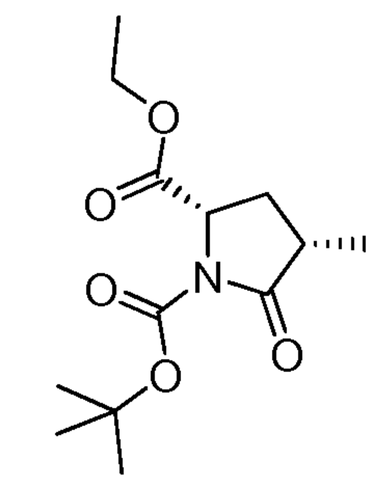
b) contacting a compound of formula (XXII) under reaction conditions sufficient to provide a compound of formula (XXIII):


(XXIII)

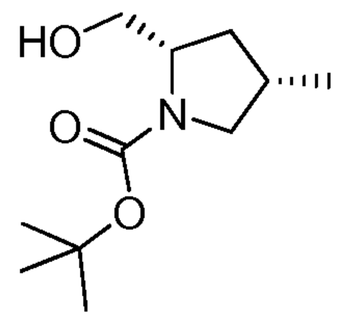
c) contacting a compound of formula (XXIII) with 1-t-butoxy-N,N,N',N'-tetramethylmethanediamine under reaction conditions sufficient to provide a compound of formula (XXIV):


(XXIV)

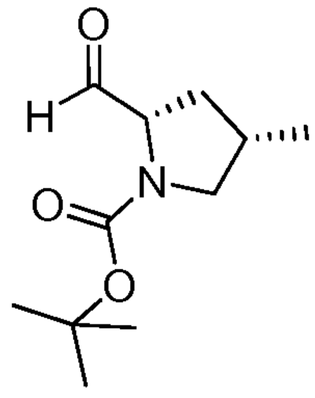
d) reacting a compound of formula (XXIV) under reaction conditions sufficient to provide a compound of formula (XXVI):


(XXVI)

e) reducing a compound of formula (XXVI) to provide a compound of formula (XXVII):

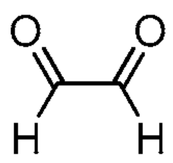

(XXVII)

f) oxidizing a compound of formula (XXVII) to provide a compound of formula (XVI):

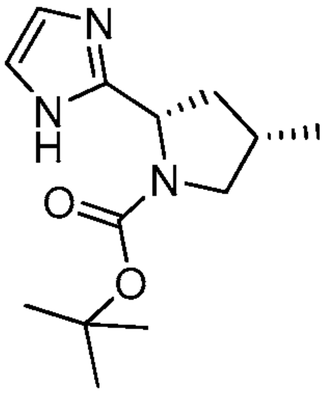


(XVI)

g) contacting a compound of formula (XVI) with a compound of formula (XVII) under reaction conditions sufficient to provide a compound of formula (XV); and:



(XVII)

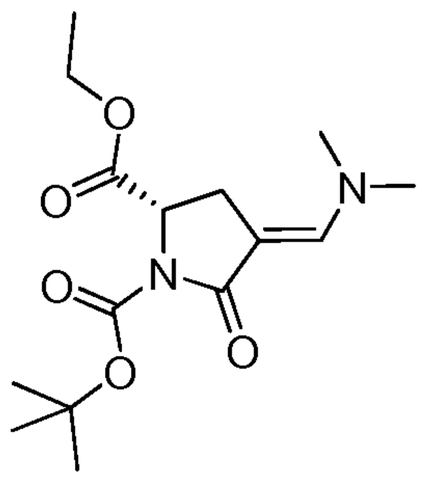


(XV)

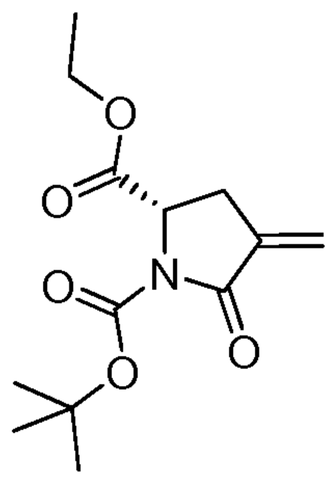
h) halogenating a compound of formula (XV) under reaction conditions sufficient to provide a compound of formula (XIV) having a (2S,4S) configuration.

159. The method of claim 157, wherein the reaction conditions of step d) comprise the steps of:

a) reacting a compound of formula (XXIV) under reaction conditions sufficient to provide a compound of formula (XXV); and:

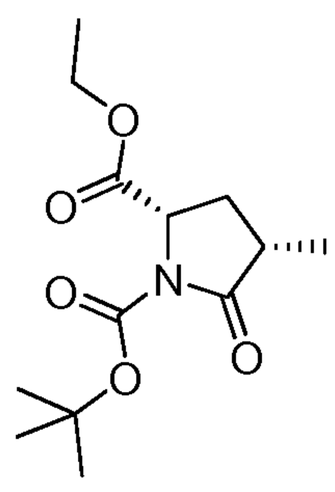


(XXIV)



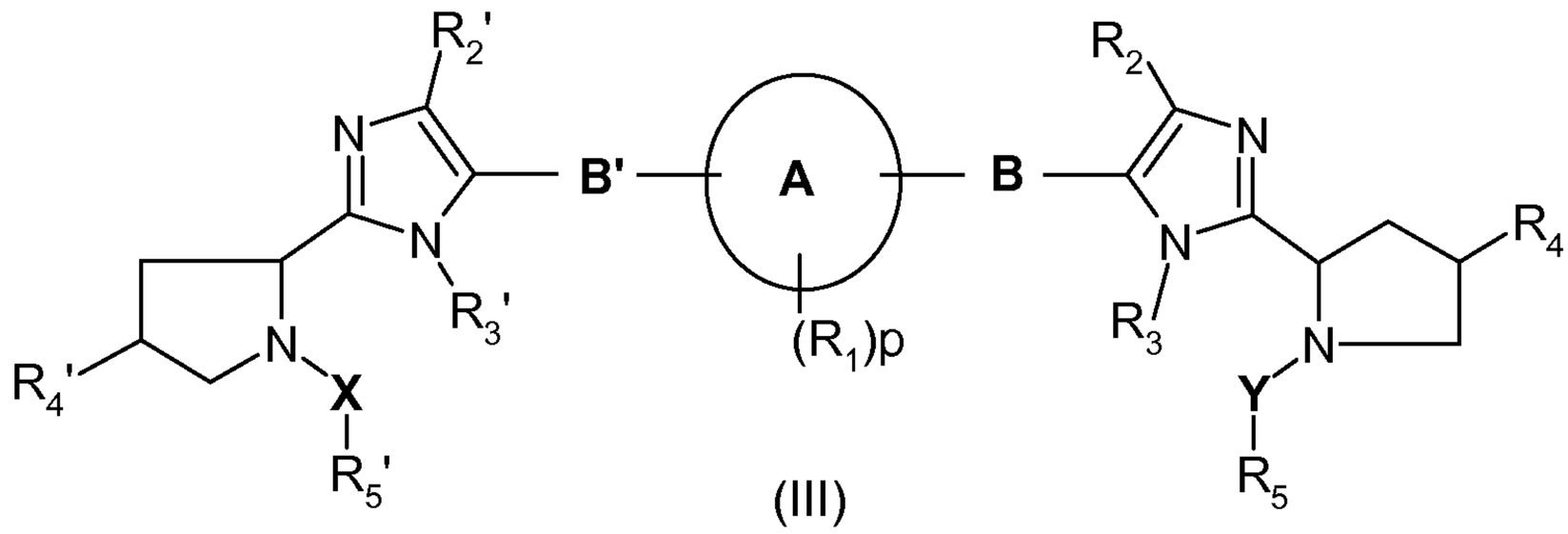
(XXV)

b) hydrogenating a compound of formula (XXV) to provide a compound of formula (XXVI):



(XXVI).

160. A method for preparing a compound of formula (III)

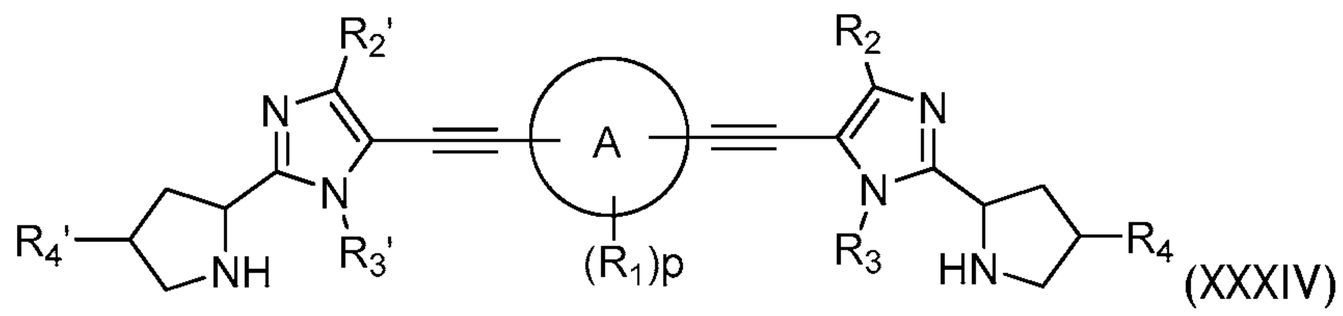


(III)

or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, wherein each of A, B, B', R^1, p, R_2, $R_{2'}$, R_3, $R_{3'}$, R_4, $R_{4'}$, R_7, $R_{7'}$, R_8, and $R_{8'}$, are as defined herein,

wherein said method comprises the steps of:

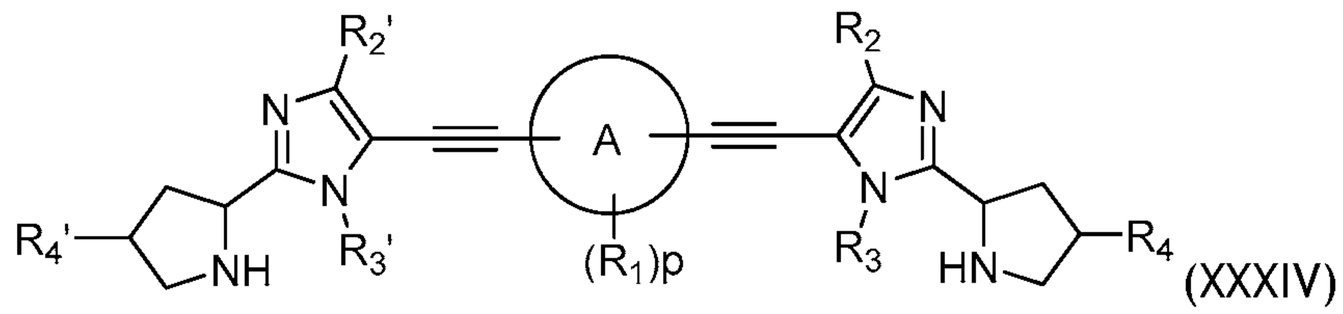
a) contacting the compound of formula (XXXIV) with a compound of formula R^5-X-OH and/or R^5-Y-OH:



(XXXIV)

under reaction conditions to provide a compound of formula (III).

161. A method for preparing a compound of formula (XXXIV)

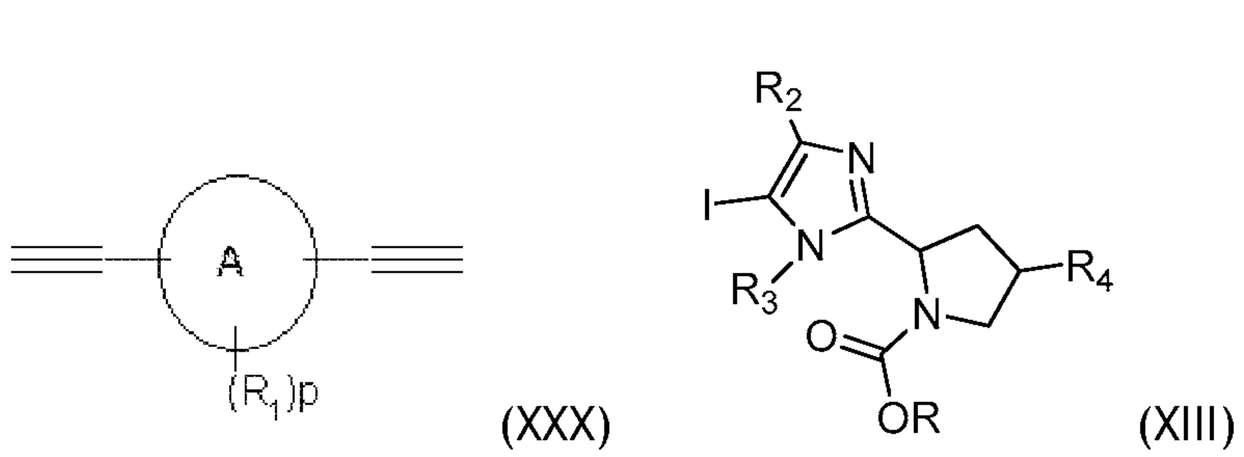


(XXXIV)

wherein each of A, B, B', R^1, p, R_2, $R_{2'}$, R_3, $R_{3'}$, R_4, $R_{4'}$, R_7, $R_{7'}$, R_8, and $R_{8'}$, are as defined herein and each of B and B', R_2 and $R_{2'}$, R_3 and $R_{3'}$, R_4 and $R_{4'}$, R_7 and $R_{7'}$, and R_8, and $R_{8'}$ are the same respectively,

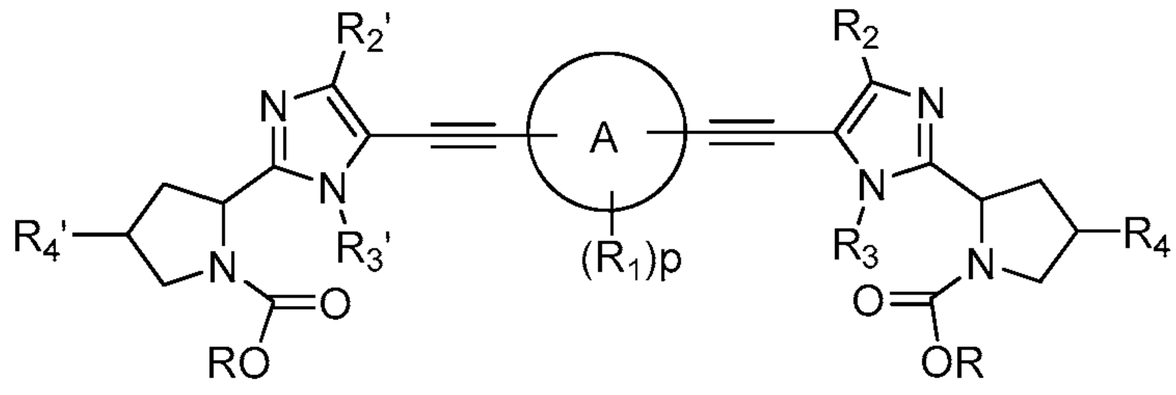
wherein said method comprises the steps of:

a) contacting a compound of formula (XXX) with a compound of formula (XIII) where R is an alkyl group:



(XXX) (XIII)

under coupling conditions to provide a compound of formula (XXXIII):

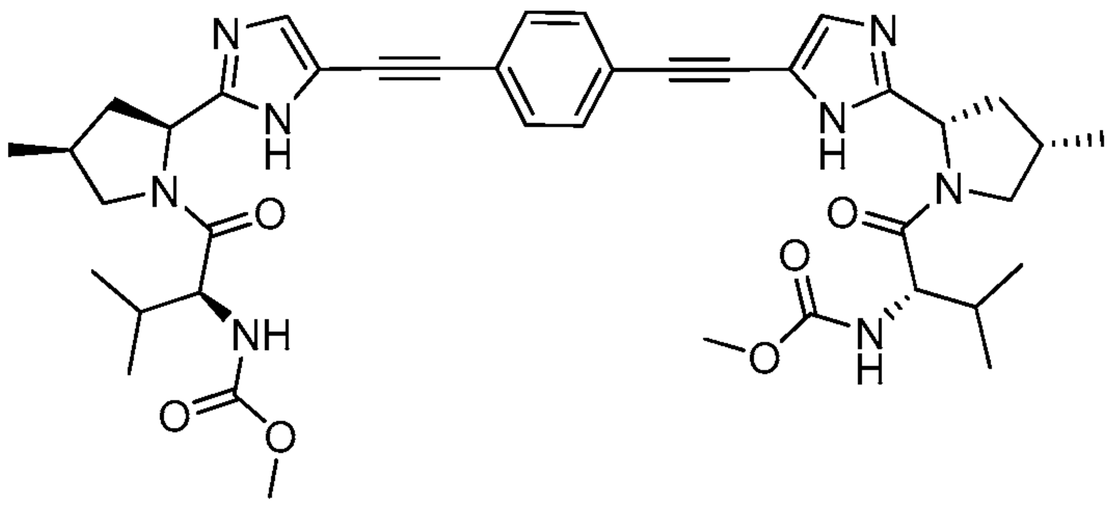


(XXXIII)

b) contacting the compound of formula (XXXIII) under conditions to provide a compound of formula (XXXIV).

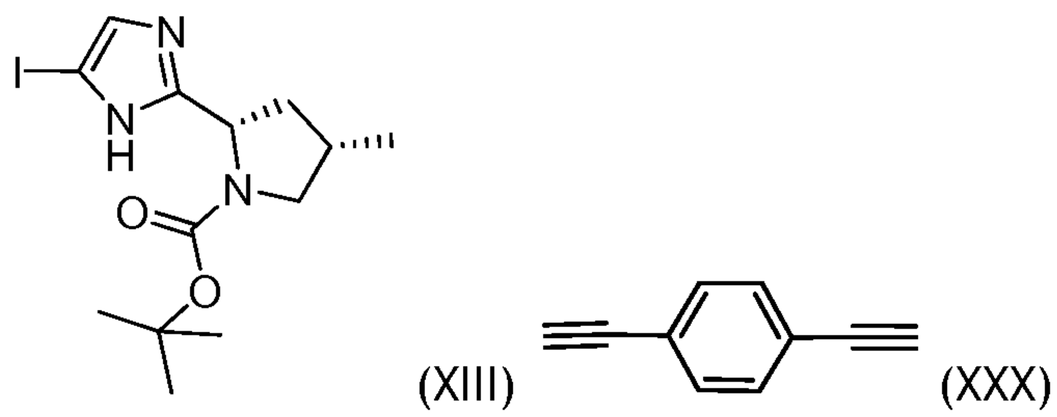
162. The method of claim 156, wherein the coupling conditions comprise bis(triphenylphosphine)palladiumchloride, copper iodide, and triethylamine.

163. A method for preparing ((S)-1-{(2S,4S)-2-[5-(4-{2-[(2S,4S)-1-((S)-2-Methoxycarbonylamino-3-methyl-butyryl)-4-methyl-pyrrolidin-2-yl]-3H-imidazol-4-ylethynyl}-phenylethynyl)-1H-imidazol-2-yl]-4-methyl-pyrrolidine-1-carbonyl}-2-methylpropyl)-carbamic acid methyl ester:



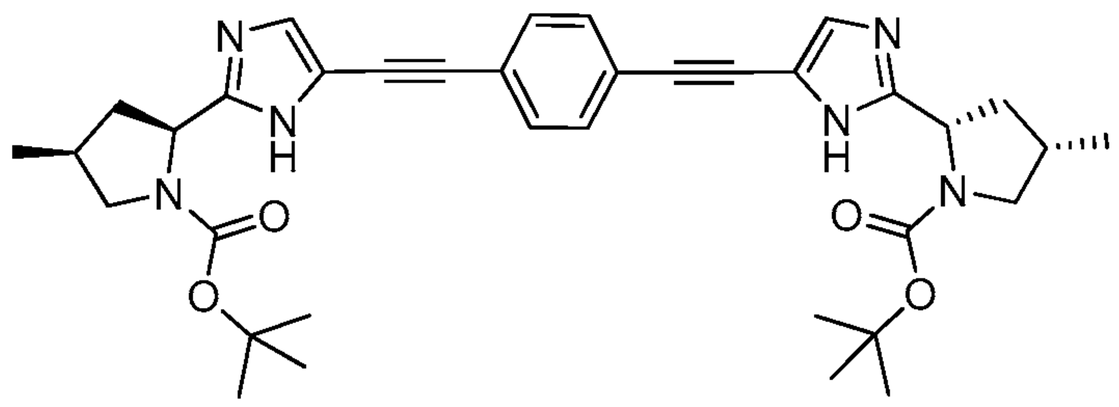
wherein said method comprises the steps of:

a) contacting a compound of formula (X) under coupling conditions with a compound of formula (XXX):



(XIII) (XXX)

to provide a compound of formula (XXXV):



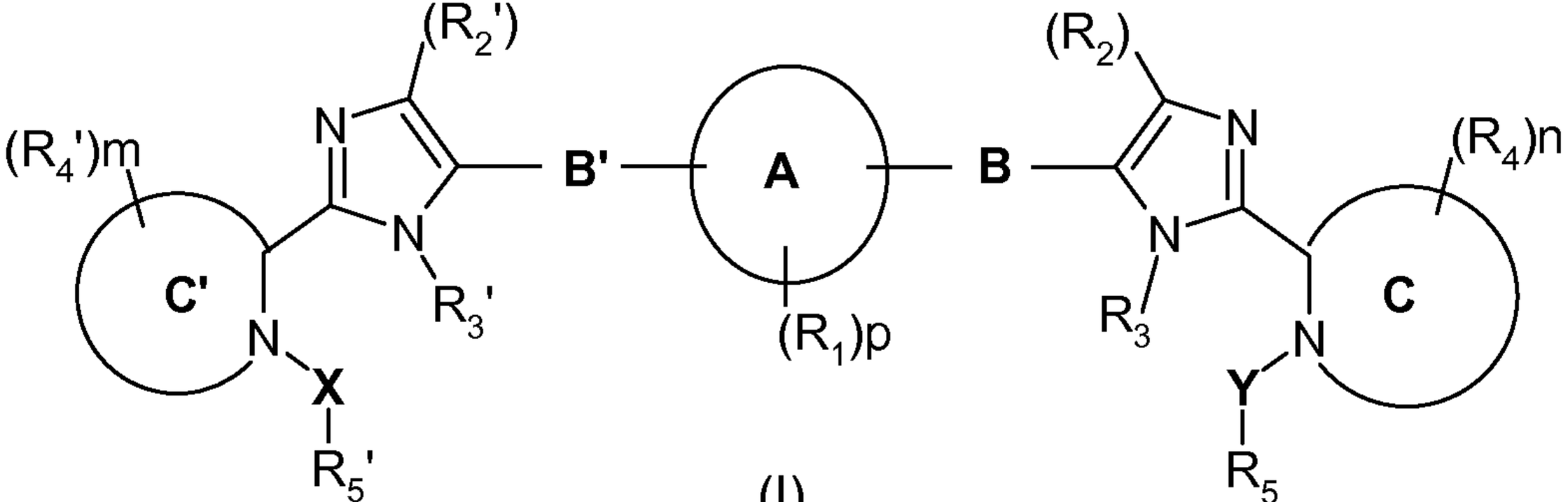
(XXXV)

b) contacting the compound of formula (XXXV) under conditions to provide a compound of formula (XXXVI); and

(XXXVI)

c) contacting the compound of formula (XXXVI) with N-methoxycarbonyl valine under reaction conditions to provide ((S)-1-{(2S,4S)-2-[5-(4-{2-[(2S,4S)-1-((S)-2-Methoxycarbonylamino-3-methyl-butyryl)-4-methyl-pyrrolidin-2-yl]-3H-imidazol-4-ylethynyl}-phenylethynyl)-1H-imidazol-2-yl]-4-methyl-pyrrolidine-1-carbonyl}-2-methylpropyl)-carbamic acid methyl ester.

164. The method of claim 158, wherein the coupling conditions of step a) comprise bis(triphenylphosphine)palladiumchloride, copper iodide, and triethylamine.



(I)